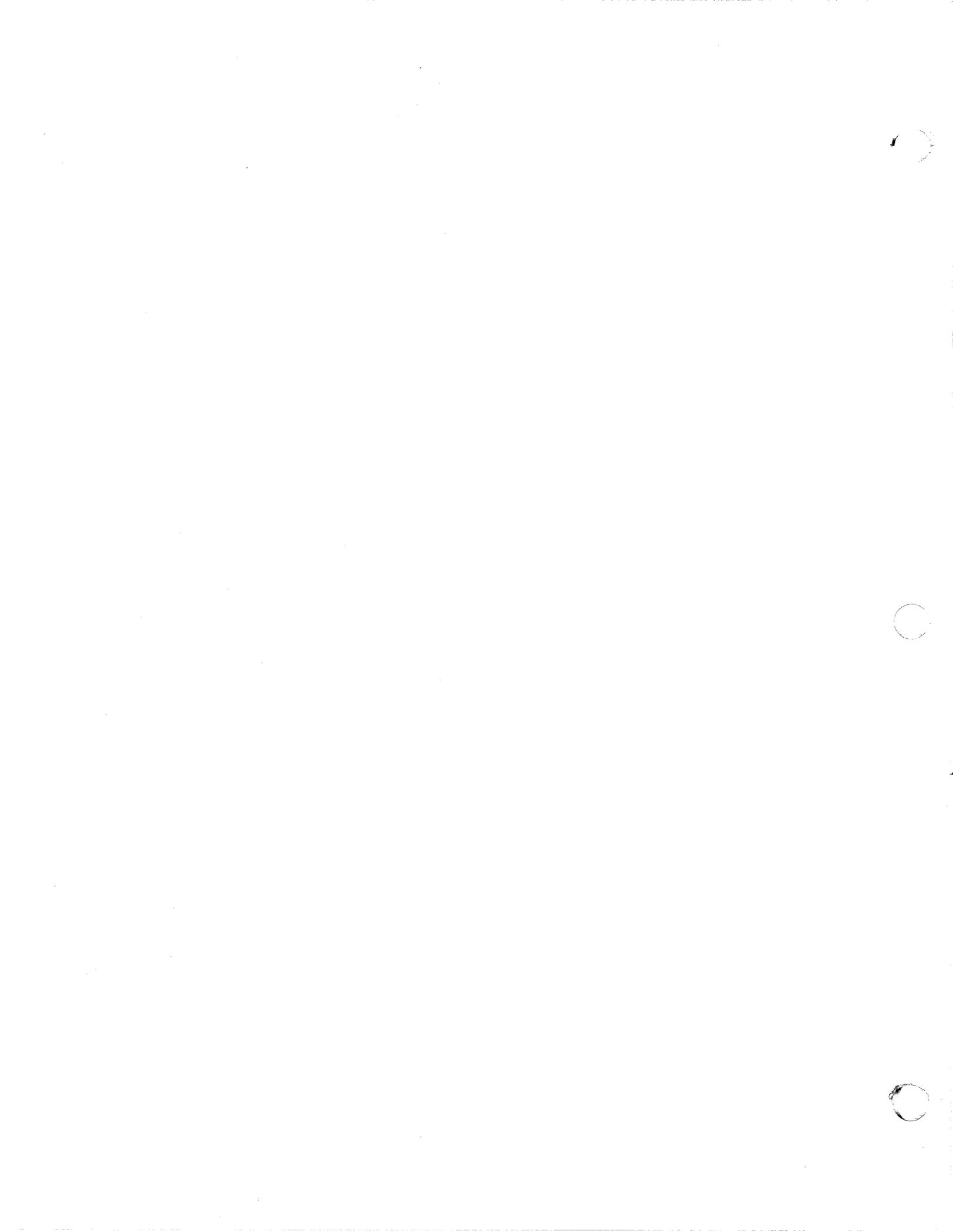




# **ICON/UXV Programmer Guide**

**ICON  
INTERNATIONAL**

764 East Timpanogos Parkway  
Orem, Utah 84057  
(801) 225-6888



PROGRAMMER GUIDE

# **ICON/UXV Operating System**

© Copyright 1988  
Icon International, Inc.  
All rights reserved worldwide.

The information contained within this manual is the property of Icon International, Inc. This manual shall not be reproduced in whole nor in part without prior written approval from Icon International, Inc.

Icon International, Inc. reserves the right to make changes, without notice, to the specifications and materials contained herein, and shall not be responsible for any damages (including consequential) caused by reliance on the material as presented, including, but not limited to, typographical, arithmetic, and listing errors.

The UNIX® Software and Text Source for this manual is under license from AT&T.  
Copyright © 1984 AT&T Technologies

Order No. 172-036-005 A0 (Manual Assembly)  
Order No. 171-063-006 A0 (Manual Pages only)

*This manual was set on an IMAGEN 8/300 laser printer driven by the IROFF formatter operating under the ICON/UXV system.*

## **Trademarks**

The ICON logo is a registered trademark and ICON/UXV is a trademark of Icon International, Inc. UNIX is a registered trademark of AT&T.

3B, WE, and DOCUMENTER'S WORKBENCH are trademarks of AT&T Technologies.

AUSTEC is a trademark of Austec International, Ltd. (Australia)

DEC, PDP, VAX, UNIBUS, SBI, and MASSBUS are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corp.

DIABLO and Ethernet are trademarks of Xerox Corporation.

HP is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard, Inc.

HYPERchannel is a trademark of Network Systems Corporation.

IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

TEKTRONIX is a registered trademark of Tektronix, Inc.

TELETYPE is a trademark of AT&T Teletype Corporation.

Versatec is a registered trademark of Versatec Corporation.

## Change Record Page

### ICON/UXV Programmer Guide

Manual Pages Part No. 171-063-006

Date	Revision	Description	Pages Affected
Apr. 1988	A0	Initial production release	All
Aug. 1988	A1	Add Chapter 26 "A Fast File System For UNIX"	TOC, Chapter 26 - all

# CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1.	INTRODUCTION
CHAPTER 2.	C LANGUAGE
CHAPTER 3.	C LIBRARIES
CHAPTER 4.	THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES
CHAPTER 5.	COMPILER AND C LANGUAGE
CHAPTER 6.	A C PROGRAM CHECKER — “LINT”
CHAPTER 7.	SYMBOLIC DEBUGGING PROGRAM — “SDB”
CHAPTER 8.	ICON/UXV SYSTEM FORTRAN COMMANDS
CHAPTER 9.	FORTRAN 77
CHAPTER 10.	RATFOR
CHAPTER 11.	THE PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE EFL
CHAPTER 12.	THE CURESES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE
CHAPTER 13.	CURSES EXAMPLES
CHAPTER 14.	(make) FOR MAINTAINING COMPUTER PROGRAMS
CHAPTER 15.	SOURCE CODE CONTROL SYSTEM USER GUIDE
CHAPTER 16.	THE M4 MACRO PROCESSOR
CHAPTER 17.	THE AWK PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE
CHAPTER 18.	THE LINK EDITOR
CHAPTER 19.	THE COMMON OBJECT FILE FORMAT
CHAPTER 20.	SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER’S GUIDE
CHAPTER 21.	ARBITRARY PRECISION DESK CALCULATOR LANGUAGE (BC)

- CHAPTER 22. INTERACTIVE DESK CALCULATOR (DC)**
- CHAPTER 23. LEXICAL ANALYZER GENERATOR (LEX)**
- CHAPTER 24. YET ANOTHER COMPILER-COMPILER (YACC)**
- CHAPTER 25. UNIX SYSTEM TO UNIX SYSTEM COPY (UUCP)**
- CHAPTER 26. A FAST FILE SYSTEM FOR UNIX**



# Chapter 1

## INTRODUCTION

This volume describes two main programming languages supported in the ICON/UXV operating system. It also describes the various software "tools" that aid the ICON/UXV operating system user. The user should have at least 2 years of specialized training in computer-related fields such as programming or UNIX® system use primarily for software system development. The following paragraphs contain brief descriptions of the contents of the chapter in this manual.

- **C Language** — A medium-level programming language which was used to write most of the ICON/UXV operating system. Chapter 2 describes the C language. Chapters 3 through 7 describe the libraries and support tools available with the ICON/UXV operating system for the benefit of the C language programmer. These chapters contain the following:

**C LANGUAGE**— Chapter 2 provides a summary of the grammar and rules of the C programming language.

**LIBRARIES**— Chapters 3 and 4 describe functions and declarations that support the C Language and how to use these functions. Chapter 3 describes the C Library and Chapter 4 describes the Object File and Math Libraries.

**THE "cc" COMMAND**— Chapter 5 describes the command used to compile C language programs, produce assembly language programs, and produce executable programs.

**A C PROGRAM CHECKER - "lint"**— Chapter 6 describes a program that attempts to detect compile-time bugs and non-portable features in C programs.

**A SYMBOLIC DEBUGGER - "sdb"** — Chapter 7 describes a symbolic debugging program that is used to debug compiled C language programs.

- **Fortran** — Fortran 77, a rational Fortran preprocessor (Ratfor), and EFL are described as follows:

**ICON/UXV SYSTEM COMMANDS FOR FORTRAN**— Chapter 8 describes the various commands that may be used with Fortran under an ICON/UXV operating system.

**FORTRAN 77** — Chapter 9 describes the implementation of Fortran 77 under the ICON/UXV operating system in terms of the variations from the American National Standard.

---

0. UNIX is a registered trademark of AT&T

## INTRODUCTION

**RATFOR**— Chapter 10 describes the Ratfor preprocessor. This preprocessor provides a means for writing Fortran in a fashion similar to the C language. This preprocessor provides (among other things) simplified control-flow statements.

**EFL**— Chapter 11 describes the programming language EFL.

Chapter 12 describes the **curses** and **terminfo** package that provides the programmer with screen-oriented programming capabilities. Chapter 13 provides examples of **curses** programs.

Chapters 8, 9, 10 and 11 assume that the user is already familiar with Fortran 77. If not familiar, review one of the many texts that describes Fortran 77. The following texts are suggested:

**FORTRAN 77**  
Harry Katzan, Jr.  
Van Nostrand Reinhold

**FORTRAN 77 - FEATURING STRUCTURED PROGRAMMING**  
Loren P. Meissner and Elliot I. Organick  
Addison-Wesley

**AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARD PROGRAMMING  
LANGUAGE FORTRAN**  
ANSI x3.9 - 1978  
American National Standards Institute

Chapter 14, (make) **FOR MAINTAINING COMPUTER PROGRAMS**, describes a software tool for maintaining, updating, and regenerating groups of computer programs. The many activities of program development and maintenance are made simpler by the **make** program.

Chapter 15, **SOURCE CODE CONTROL SYSTEM (SCCS) USER'S GUIDE**, describes the collection of SCCS programs under the ICON/UXV operating system. The SCCS programs act as a "custodian" over the ICON/UXV system files.

Chapter 16, **THE M4 MACRO PROCESSOR**, describes a general purpose macro processor that may be used as a front end for rational Fortran, C, and other programming languages.

Chapter 17, **THE "awk" PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE**, describes a software tool designed to make many common information retrieval and text manipulation tasks easy to state and to perform.

Chapter 18, **THE LINK EDITOR**, describes a software tool (**ld**) that creates load files by combining object files, performing relocation, and resolving internal references.

## INTRODUCTION

Chapter 19, THE COMMON OBJECT FILE FORMAT (COFF), describes the output file produced on some ICON/UXV systems by the assembler and the link editor.

Chapter 20, SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE, describes the ICON/UX resident assembler, **as**. The **as** program allows programmers familiar with the MC68000 family of processors to be able to program in **as**.

Chapter 21, ARBITRARY PRECISION DESK CALCULATOR LANGUAGE (BC), describes a compiler for doing arbitrary precision arithmetic on the ICON/UXV operating system.

Chapter 22, INTERACTIVE DESK CALCULATOR (DC), describes a program implemented on the ICON/UXV operating system to do arbitrary-precision integer arithmetic.

Chapter 23, LEXICAL ANALYZER GENERATOR (Lex), describes a software tool that lexically processes character input streams.

Chapter 24, YET ANOTHER COMPILER-COMPILER (yacc), describes the **yacc** program. The **yacc** program provides a general tool for imposing structure on the input to a computer program.

Chapter 25, UNIX SYSTEM TO UNIX SYSTEM COPY (UUCP), describes a network that provides information exchange (between UNIX systems) over the direct distance dialing network.

Throughout this document, each reference of the form **name(1M)**, **name(7)**, or **name(8)** refers to entries in the *ICON/UXV Administrator Reference Manual*. Each reference of the form **name(1)** and **name(6)** refers to entries in the *ICON/UXV Reference Manual*. All other references to entries of the form **name(N)**, where possibly followed by a letter, refer to entry **name** in section **N** of the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*.



**Chapter 2**  
**C LANGUAGE**

	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>LEXICAL CONVENTIONS</b> .....	<b>2-1</b>
<b>SYNTAX NOTATION</b> .....	<b>2-4</b>
<b>NAMES</b> .....	<b>2-4</b>
<b>OBJECTS AND LVALUES</b> .....	<b>2-5</b>
<b>CONVERSIONS</b> .....	<b>2-6</b>
<b>EXPRESSIONS</b> .....	<b>2-8</b>
<b>DECLARATIONS</b> .....	<b>2-16</b>
<b>STATEMENTS</b> .....	<b>2-28</b>
<b>EXTERNAL DEFINITIONS</b> .....	<b>2-32</b>
<b>SCOPE RULES</b> .....	<b>2-34</b>
<b>COMPILER CONTROL LINES</b> .....	<b>2-35</b>
<b>IMPLICIT DECLARATIONS</b> .....	<b>2-38</b>
<b>TYPES REVISITED</b> .....	<b>2-38</b>
<b>CONSTANT EXPRESSIONS</b> .....	<b>2-41</b>
<b>PORTABILITY CONSIDERATIONS</b> .....	<b>2-42</b>
<b>SYNTAX SUMMARY</b> .....	<b>2-43</b>



## Chapter 2

# C LANGUAGE

### LEXICAL CONVENTIONS

There are six classes of tokens - identifiers, keywords, constants, strings, operators, and other separators. Blanks, tabs, new-lines, and comments (collectively, "white space") as described below are ignored except as they serve to separate tokens. Some white space is required to separate otherwise adjacent identifiers, keywords, and constants.

If the input stream has been parsed into tokens up to a given character, the next token is taken to include the longest string of characters which could possibly constitute a token.

#### Comments

The characters `/*` introduce a comment which terminates with the characters `*/`. Comments do not nest.

#### Identifiers (Names)

An identifier is a sequence of letters and digits. The first character must be a letter. The underscore (`_`) counts as a letter. Uppercase and lowercase letters are different. Although there is no limit on the length of a name, only initial characters are significant: at least eight characters of a non-external name, and perhaps fewer for external names. Moreover, some implementations may collapse case distinctions for external names. The external name sizes include:

PDP-11	7 characters, 2 cases
VAX-11	>100 characters, 2 cases
AT&T 3B 20	>100 characters, 2 cases

#### Keywords

The following identifiers are reserved for use as keywords and may not be used otherwise:

<code>auto</code>	<code>do</code>	<code>for</code>	<code>return</code>	<code>typedef</code>
<code>break</code>	<code>double</code>	<code>goto</code>	<code>short</code>	<code>union</code>
<code>case</code>	<code>else</code>	<code>if</code>	<code>sizeof</code>	<code>unsigned</code>
<code>char</code>	<code>enum</code>	<code>int</code>	<code>static</code>	<code>void</code>
<code>continue</code>	<code>external</code>	<code>long</code>	<code>struct</code>	<code>while</code>
<code>default</code>	<code>float</code>	<code>register</code>	<code>switch</code>	

Some implementations also reserve the words `fortran` and `asm`.

# C LANGUAGE

## Constants

There are several kinds of constants. Each has a type; an introduction to types is given in "NAMES." Hardware characteristics that affect sizes are summarized in "Hardware Characteristics" under "LEXICAL CONVENTIONS."

### *Integer Constants*

An integer constant consisting of a sequence of digits is taken to be octal if it begins with **0** (digit zero). An octal constant consists of the digits **0** through **7** only. A sequence of digits preceded by **0x** or **0X** (digit zero) is taken to be a hexadecimal integer. The hexadecimal digits include **a** or **A** through **f** or **F** with values 10 through 15. Otherwise, the integer constant is taken to be decimal. A decimal constant whose value exceeds the largest signed machine integer is taken to be **long**; an octal or hex constant which exceeds the largest unsigned machine integer is likewise taken to be **long**. Otherwise, integer constants are **int**.

### *Explicit Long Constants*

A decimal, octal, or hexadecimal integer constant immediately followed by **l** (letter ell) or **L** is a long constant. As discussed below, on some machines integer and long values may be considered identical.

### *Character Constants*

A character constant is a character enclosed in single quotes, as in **'x'**. The value of a character constant is the numerical value of the character in the machine's character set.

Certain nongraphic characters, the single quote (**'**) and the backslash (**\**), may be represented according to the following table of escape sequences:

new-line	NL (LF)	<code>\n</code>
horizontal tab	HT	<code>\t</code>
vertical tab	VT	<code>\v</code>
backspace	BS	<code>\b</code>
carriage return	CR	<code>\r</code>
form feed	FF	<code>\f</code>
backslash	<code>\</code>	<code>\\</code>
single quote	<code>'</code>	<code>\'</code>
bit pattern	<code>ddd</code>	<code>\ddd</code>

The escape `\ddd` consists of the backslash followed by 1, 2, or 3 octal digits which are taken to specify the value of the desired character. A special case of this construction is `\0` (not followed by a digit), which indicates the character **NUL**. If the character following a backslash is not one of those specified, the behavior is undefined. A new-line character is illegal in a character constant. The type of a character constant is **int**.

*Floating Constants*

A floating constant consists of an integer part, a decimal point, a fraction part, an **e** or **E**, and an optionally signed integer exponent. The integer and fraction parts both consist of a sequence of digits. Either the integer part or the fraction part (not both) may be missing. Either the decimal point or the **e** and the exponent (not both) may be missing. Every floating constant has type **double**.

*Enumeration Constants*

Names declared as enumerators (see "Structure, Union, and Enumeration Declarations" under "DECLARATIONS") have type **int**.

**Strings**

A string is a sequence of characters surrounded by double quotes, as in "...". A string has type "array of **char**" and storage class **static** (see "NAMES") and is initialized with the given characters. The compiler places a null byte (**\0**) at the end of each string so that programs which scan the string can find its end. In a string, the double quote character (") must be preceded by a **\**; in addition, the same escapes as described for character constants may be used.

A **\** and the immediately following new-line are ignored. All strings, even when written identically, are distinct.

**Hardware Characteristics**

The following figure summarizes certain ICON system hardware properties.

ICON properties (ASCII)	
char	8 bits
int	32
short	16
long	32
float	32
double	64
float range	$\pm 10^{\pm 38}$
double range	$\pm 10^{\pm 38}$

**Figure 2-1. ICON HARDWARE CHARACTERISTICS**

## C LANGUAGE

### SYNTAX NOTATION

Syntactic categories are indicated by *italic* type and literal words and characters in **bold** type. Alternative categories are listed on separate lines. An optional terminal or nonterminal symbol is indicated by the subscript "opt," so that

{ *expression*<sub>opt</sub> }

indicates an optional expression enclosed in braces. The syntax is summarized in "SYNTAX SUMMARY".

### NAMES

The C language bases the interpretation of an identifier upon two attributes of the identifier - its *storage class* and its *type*. The storage class determines the location and lifetime of the storage associated with an identifier; the type determines the meaning of the values found in the identifier's storage.

#### Storage Class

There are four declarable storage classes:

- Automatic
- Static
- External
- Register.

Automatic variables are local to each invocation of a block (see "Compound Statement or Block" in "STATEMENTS") and are discarded upon exit from the block. Static variables are local to a block but retain their values upon reentry to a block even after control has left the block. External variables exist and retain their values throughout the execution of the entire program and may be used for communication between functions, even separately compiled functions. Register variables are (if possible) stored in the fast registers of the machine; like automatic variables, they are local to each block and disappear on exit from the block.

#### Type

The C language supports several fundamental types of objects. Objects declared as characters (**char**) are large enough to store any member of the implementation's character set. If a genuine character from that character set is stored in a **char** variable, its value is equivalent to the integer code for that character. Other quantities may be stored into character variables, but the implementation is machine dependent. In particular, **char** may be signed or unsigned by default.

Up to three sizes of integer, declared **short int**, **int**, and **long int**, are available. Longer integers provide no less storage than shorter ones, but the implementation may make either

short integers or long integers, or both, equivalent to plain integers. “Plain” integers have the natural size suggested by the host machine architecture. The other sizes are provided to meet special needs.

The properties of **enum** types (see “Structure, Union, and Enumeration Declarations” under “DECLARATIONS”) are identical to those of some integer types. The implementation may use the range of values to determine how to allot storage.

Unsigned integers, declared **unsigned**, obey the laws of arithmetic modulo  $2^n$  where  $n$  is the number of bits in the representation.

Single-precision floating point (**float**) and double precision floating point (**double**) may be synonymous in some implementations.

Because objects of the foregoing types can usefully be interpreted as numbers, they will be referred to as *arithmetic* types. **Char**, **int** of all sizes whether **unsigned** or not, and **enum** will collectively be called *integral* types. The **float** and **double** types will collectively be called *floating* types.

The **void** type specifies an empty set of values. It is used as the type returned by functions that generate no value.

Besides the fundamental arithmetic types, there is a conceptually infinite class of derived types constructed from the fundamental types in the following ways:

- *Arrays* of objects of most types
- *Functions* which return objects of a given type
- *Pointers* to objects of a given type
- *Structures* containing a sequence of objects of various types
- *Unions* capable of containing any one of several objects of various types.

In general these methods of constructing objects can be applied recursively.

## OBJECTS AND LVALUES

An *object* is a manipulatable region of storage. An *lvalue* is an expression referring to an object. An obvious example of an lvalue expression is an identifier. There are operators which yield lvalues: for example, if **E** is an expression of pointer type, then **\*E** is an lvalue expression referring to the object to which **E** points. The name “lvalue” comes from the assignment expression **E1 = E2** in which the left operand **E1** must be an lvalue expression. The discussion of each operator below indicates whether it expects lvalue operands and whether it yields an lvalue.

## C LANGUAGE

### CONVERSIONS

A number of operators may, depending on their operands, cause conversion of the value of an operand from one type to another. This part explains the result to be expected from such conversions. The conversions demanded by most ordinary operators are summarized under "Arithmetic Conversions." The summary will be supplemented as required by the discussion of each operator.

#### Characters and Integers

A character or a short integer may be used wherever an integer may be used. In all cases the value is converted to an integer. Conversion of a shorter integer to a longer preserves sign. Whether or not sign-extension occurs for characters is machine dependent, but it is guaranteed that a member of the standard character set is non-negative.

On machines that treat characters as signed, the characters of the ASCII set are all non-negative. However, a character constant specified with an octal escape suffers sign extension and may appear negative; for example, `'\377'` has the value `-1`.

When a longer integer is converted to a shorter integer or to a `char`, it is truncated on the left. Excess bits are simply discarded.

#### Float and Double

All floating arithmetic in C is carried out in double precision. Whenever a `float` appears in an expression it is lengthened to `double` by zero padding its fraction. When a `double` must be converted to `float`, for example by an assignment, the `double` is rounded before truncation to `float` length. This result is undefined if it cannot be represented as a float.

#### Floating and Integral

Conversions of floating values to integral type are rather machine dependent. In particular, the direction of truncation of negative numbers varies. The result is undefined if it will not fit in the space provided.

Conversions of integral values to floating type are well behaved. Some loss of accuracy occurs if the destination lacks sufficient bits.

#### Pointers and Integers

An expression of integral type may be added to or subtracted from a pointer; in such a case, the first is converted as specified in the discussion of the addition operator. Two pointers to objects of the same type may be subtracted; in this case, the result is converted to an integer as specified in the discussion of the subtraction operator.

**Unsigned**

Whenever an unsigned integer and a plain integer are combined, the plain integer is converted to unsigned and the result is unsigned. The value is the least unsigned integer congruent to the signed integer (modulo  $2^{\text{wordsize}}$ ). In a 2's complement representation, this conversion is conceptual; and there is no actual change in the bit pattern.

When an unsigned **short** integer is converted to **long**, the value of the result is the same numerically as that of the unsigned integer. Thus the conversion amounts to padding with zeros on the left.

**Arithmetic Conversions**

A great many operators cause conversions and yield result types in a similar way. This pattern will be called the "usual arithmetic conversions."

1. First, any operands of type **char** or **short** are converted to **int**, and any operands of type **unsigned char** or **unsigned short** are converted to **unsigned int**.
2. Then, if either operand is **double**, the other is converted to **double** and that is the type of the result.
3. Otherwise, if either operand is **unsigned long**, the other is converted to **unsigned long** and that is the type of the result.
4. Otherwise, if either operand is **long**, the other is converted to **long** and that is the type of the result.
5. Otherwise, if one operand is **long**, and the other is **unsigned int**, they are both converted to **unsigned long** and that is the type of the result.
6. Otherwise, if either operand is **unsigned**, the other is converted to **unsigned** and that is the type of the result.
7. Otherwise, both operands must be **int**, and that is the type of the result.

**Void**

The (nonexistent) value of a **void** object may not be used in any way, and neither explicit nor implicit conversion may be applied. Because a void expression denotes a nonexistent value, such an expression may be used only as an expression statement (see "Expression Statement" under "STATEMENTS") or as the left operand of a comma expression (see "Comma Operator" under "EXPRESSIONS").

An expression may be converted to type **void** by use of a cast. For example, this makes explicit the discarding of the value of a function call used as an expression statement.

## C LANGUAGE

### EXPRESSIONS

The precedence of expression operators is the same as the order of the major subsections of this section, highest precedence first. Thus, for example, the expressions referred to as the operands of + (see "Additive Operators") are those expressions defined under "Primary Expressions", "Unary Operators", and "Multiplicative Operators". Within each subpart, the operators have the same precedence. Left- or right-associativity is specified in each subsection for the operators discussed therein. The precedence and associativity of all the expression operators are summarized in the grammar of "SYNTAX SUMMARY".

Otherwise, the order of evaluation of expressions is undefined. In particular, the compiler considers itself free to compute subexpressions in the order it believes most efficient even if the subexpressions involve side effects. The order in which subexpression evaluation takes place is unspecified. Expressions involving a commutative and associative operator (\*, +, &, |, ^) may be rearranged arbitrarily even in the presence of parentheses; to force a particular order of evaluation, an explicit temporary must be used.

The handling of overflow and divide check in expression evaluation is undefined. Most existing implementations of C ignore integer overflows; treatment of division by 0 and all floating-point exceptions varies between machines and is usually adjustable by a library function.

#### Primary Expressions

Primary expressions involving ., ->, subscripting, and function calls group left to right.

*primary-expression:*  
    *identifier*  
    *constant*  
    *string*  
    (*expression*)  
    *primary-expression* [*expression*]  
    *primary-expression* (*expression-list*<sub>opt</sub>)  
    *primary-expression* . *identifier*  
    *primary-expression* -> *identifier*

*expression-list:*  
    *expression*  
    *expression-list* , *expression*

An identifier is a primary expression provided it has been suitably declared as discussed below. Its type is specified by its declaration. If the type of the identifier is "array of ...", then the value of the identifier expression is a pointer to the first object in the array; and the type of the expression is "pointer to ...". Moreover, an array identifier is not an lvalue expression. Likewise, an identifier which is declared "function returning ...", when used except in the function-name position of a call, is converted to "pointer to function returning ...".

A constant is a primary expression. Its type may be **int**, **long**, or **double** depending on its form. Character constants have type **int** and floating constants have type **double**.

A string is a primary expression. Its type is originally "array of **char**", but following the same rule given above for identifiers, this is modified to "pointer to **char**" and the result is a pointer to the first character in the string. (There is an exception in certain initializers; see "Initialization" under "DECLARATIONS.")

A parenthesized expression is a primary expression whose type and value are identical to those of the unadorned expression. The presence of parentheses does not affect whether the expression is an lvalue.

A primary expression followed by an expression in square brackets is a primary expression. The intuitive meaning is that of a subscript. Usually, the primary expression has type "pointer to ...", the subscript expression is **int**, and the type of the result is "...". The expression **E1[E2]** is identical (by definition) to **\*((E1)+(E2))**. All the clues needed to understand this notation are contained in this subpart together with the discussions in "Unary Operators" and "Additive Operators" on identifiers, **\*** and **+**, respectively. The implications are summarized under "Arrays, Pointers, and Subscripting" under "TYPES REVISITED."

A function call is a primary expression followed by parentheses containing a possibly empty, comma-separated list of expressions which constitute the actual arguments to the function. The primary expression must be of type "function returning ...," and the result of the function call is of type "...". As indicated below, a hitherto unseen identifier followed immediately by a left parenthesis is contextually declared to represent a function returning an integer; thus in the most common case, integer-valued functions need not be declared.

Any actual arguments of type **float** are converted to **double** before the call. Any of type **char** or **short** are converted to **int**. Array names are converted to pointers. No other conversions are performed automatically; in particular, the compiler does not compare the types of actual arguments with those of formal arguments. If conversion is needed, use a cast; see "Unary Operators" and "Type Names" under "DECLARATIONS."

In preparing for the call to a function, a copy is made of each actual parameter. Thus, all argument passing in C is strictly by value. A function may change the values of its formal parameters, but these changes cannot affect the values of the actual parameters. It is possible to pass a pointer on the understanding that the function may change the value of the object to which the pointer points. An array name is a pointer expression. The order of evaluation of arguments is undefined by the language; take note that the various compilers differ. Recursive calls to any function are permitted.

A primary expression followed by a dot followed by an identifier is an expression. The first expression must be a structure or a union, and the identifier must name a member of the structure or union. The value is the named member of the structure or union, and it is an lvalue if the first expression is an lvalue.

A primary expression followed by an arrow (built from **-** and **>**) followed by an identifier is an expression. The first expression must be a pointer to a structure or a union and the identifier must name a member of that structure or union. The result is an lvalue referring to the named member of the structure or union to which the pointer expression points. Thus the

## C LANGUAGE

expression **E1->MOS** is the same as **(\*E1).MOS**. Structures and unions are discussed in "Structure, Union, and Enumeration Declarations" under "DECLARATIONS."

### Unary Operators

Expressions with unary operators group right to left.

*unary-expression:*  
\* *expression*  
& *lvalue*  
- *expression*  
! *expression*  
~ *expression*  
++ *lvalue*  
--*lvalue*  
*lvalue* ++  
*lvalue* --  
( *type-name* ) *expression*  
sizeof *expression*  
sizeof ( *type-name* )

The unary \* operator means *indirection*; the expression must be a pointer, and the result is an lvalue referring to the object to which the expression points. If the type of the expression is "pointer to ...," the type of the result is "...".

The result of the unary & operator is a pointer to the object referred to by the lvalue. If the type of the lvalue is "...", the type of the result is "pointer to ...".

The result of the unary - operator is the negative of its operand. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed. The negative of an unsigned quantity is computed by subtracting its value from  $2^n$  where  $n$  is the number of bits in the corresponding signed type.

There is no unary + operator.

The result of the logical negation operator ! is one if the value of its operand is zero, zero if the value of its operand is nonzero. The type of the result is **int**. It is applicable to any arithmetic type or to pointers.

The ~ operator yields the one's complement of its operand. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed. The type of the operand must be integral.

The object referred to by the lvalue operand of prefix ++ is incremented. The value is the new value of the operand but is not an lvalue. The expression ++**x** is equivalent to **x=x+1**. See the discussions "Additive Operators" and "Assignment Operators" for information on conversions.

The lvalue operand of prefix `--` is decremented analogously to the prefix `++` operator.

When postfix `++` is applied to an lvalue, the result is the value of the object referred to by the lvalue. After the result is noted, the object is incremented in the same manner as for the prefix `++` operator. The type of the result is the same as the type of the lvalue expression.

When postfix `--` is applied to an lvalue, the result is the value of the object referred to by the lvalue. After the result is noted, the object is decremented in the manner as for the prefix `--` operator. The type of the result is the same as the type of the lvalue expression.

An expression preceded by the parenthesized name of a data type causes conversion of the value of the expression to the named type. This construction is called a *cast*. Type names are described in "Type Names" under "Declarations."

The `sizeof` operator yields the size in bytes of its operand. (A *byte* is undefined by the language except in terms of the value of `sizeof`. However, in all existing implementations, a byte is the space required to hold a `char`.) When applied to an array, the result is the total number of bytes in the array. The size is determined from the declarations of the objects in the expression. This expression is semantically an **unsigned** constant and may be used anywhere a constant is required. Its major use is in communication with routines like storage allocators and I/O systems.

The `sizeof` operator may also be applied to a parenthesized type name. In that case it yields the size in bytes of an object of the indicated type.

The construction `sizeof(type)` is taken to be a unit, so the expression `sizeof(type)-2` is the same as `(sizeof(type))-2`.

### Multiplicative Operators

The multiplicative operators `*`, `/`, and `%` group left to right. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed.

*multiplicative expression:*

*expression \* expression*

*expression / expression*

*expression % expression*

The binary `*` operator indicates multiplication. The `*` operator is associative, and expressions with several multiplications at the same level may be rearranged by the compiler. The binary `/` operator indicates division.

The binary `%` operator yields the remainder from the division of the first expression by the second. The operands must be integral.

## C LANGUAGE

When positive integers are divided, truncation is toward 0; but the form of truncation is machine-dependent if either operand is negative. On all machines covered by this manual, the remainder has the same sign as the dividend. It is always true that  $(a/b)*b + a\%b$  is equal to  $a$  (if  $b$  is not 0).

### Additive Operators

The additive operators  $+$  and  $-$  group left to right. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed. There are some additional type possibilities for each operator.

*additive-expression:*

*expression + expression*

*expression - expression*

The result of the  $+$  operator is the sum of the operands. A pointer to an object in an array and a value of any integral type may be added. The latter is in all cases converted to an address offset by multiplying it by the length of the object to which the pointer points. The result is a pointer of the same type as the original pointer which points to another object in the same array, appropriately offset from the original object. Thus if  $P$  is a pointer to an object in an array, the expression  $P+1$  is a pointer to the next object in the array. No further type combinations are allowed for pointers.

The  $+$  operator is associative, and expressions with several additions at the same level may be rearranged by the compiler.

The result of the  $-$  operator is the difference of the operands. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed. Additionally, a value of any integral type may be subtracted from a pointer, and then the same conversions for addition apply.

If two pointers to objects of the same type are subtracted, the result is converted (by division by the length of the object) to an `int` representing the number of objects separating the pointed-to objects. This conversion will in general give unexpected results unless the pointers point to objects in the same array, since pointers, even to objects of the same type, do not necessarily differ by a multiple of the object length.

### Shift Operators

The shift operators  $\ll$  and  $\gg$  group left to right. Both perform the usual arithmetic conversions on their operands, each of which must be integral. Then the right operand is converted to `int`; the type of the result is that of the left operand. The result is undefined if the right operand is negative or greater than or equal to the length of the object in bits.

*shift-expression:*

*expression << expression*

*expression >> expression*

The value of  $E1 \ll E2$  is  $E1$  (interpreted as a bit pattern) left-shifted  $E2$  bits. Vacated bits are 0 filled. The value of  $E1 \gg E2$  is  $E1$  right-shifted  $E2$  bit positions. The right shift is guaranteed to be logical (0 fill) if  $E1$  is **unsigned**; otherwise, it may be arithmetic.

### Relational Operators

The relational operators group left to right.

*relational-expression:*

```
expression < expression
expression > expression
expression <= expression
expression >= expression
```

The operators  $<$  (less than),  $>$  (greater than),  $<=$  (less than or equal to), and  $>=$  (greater than or equal to) all yield 0 if the specified relation is false and 1 if it is true. The type of the result is `int`. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed. Two pointers may be compared; the result depends on the relative locations in the address space of the pointed-to objects. Pointer comparison is portable only when the pointers point to objects in the same array.

### Equality Operators

*equality-expression:*

```
expression == expression
expression != expression
```

The  $==$  (equal to) and the  $!=$  (not equal to) operators are exactly analogous to the relational operators except for their lower precedence. (Thus  $a < b == c < d$  is 1 whenever  $a < b$  and  $c < d$  have the same truth value).

A pointer may be compared to an integer only if the integer is the constant 0. A pointer to which 0 has been assigned is guaranteed not to point to any object and will appear to be equal to 0. In conventional usage, such a pointer is considered to be null.

### Bitwise AND Operator

*and-expression:*

```
expression & expression
```

The  $\&$  operator is associative, and expressions involving  $\&$  may be rearranged. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed. The result is the bitwise AND function of the operands. The operator applies only to integral operands.

## C LANGUAGE

### Bitwise Exclusive OR Operator

*exclusive-or-expression:*  
*expression ^ expression*

The ^ operator is associative, and expressions involving ^ may be rearranged. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed; the result is the bitwise exclusive OR function of the operands. The operator applies only to integral operands.

### Bitwise Inclusive OR Operator

*inclusive-or-expression:*  
*expression | expression*

The | operator is associative, and expressions involving | may be rearranged. The usual arithmetic conversions are performed; the result is the bitwise inclusive OR function of its operands. The operator applies only to integral operands.

### Logical AND Operator

*logical-and-expression:*  
*expression && expression*

The && operator groups left to right. It returns 1 if both its operands evaluate to nonzero, 0 otherwise. Unlike &, && guarantees left to right evaluation; moreover, the second operand is not evaluated if the first operand is 0.

The operands need not have the same type, but each must have one of the fundamental types or be a pointer. The result is always `int`.

### Logical OR Operator

*logical-or-expression:*  
*expression || expression*

The || operator groups left to right. It returns 1 if either of its operands evaluates to nonzero, 0 otherwise. Unlike |, || guarantees left to right evaluation; moreover, the second operand is not evaluated if the value of the first operand is nonzero.

The operands need not have the same type, but each must have one of the fundamental types or be a pointer. The result is always `int`.

## Conditional Operator

*conditional-expression:*

*expression ? expression : expression*

Conditional expressions group right to left. The first expression is evaluated; and if it is nonzero, the result is the value of the second expression, otherwise that of third expression. If possible, the usual arithmetic conversions are performed to bring the second and third expressions to a common type. If both are structures or unions of the same type, the result has the type of the structure or union. If both pointers are of the same type, the result has the common type. Otherwise, one must be a pointer and the other the constant 0, and the result has the type of the pointer. Only one of the second and third expressions is evaluated.

## Assignment Operators

There are a number of assignment operators, all of which group right to left. All require an lvalue as their left operand, and the type of an assignment expression is that of its left operand. The value is the value stored in the left operand after the assignment has taken place. The two parts of a compound assignment operator are separate tokens.

*assignment-expression:*

*lvalue = expression*

*lvalue += expression*

*lvalue -= expression*

*lvalue \*= expression*

*lvalue /= expression*

*lvalue %= expression*

*lvalue >>= expression*

*lvalue <<= expression*

*lvalue &= expression*

*lvalue ^= expression*

*lvalue |= expression*

In the simple assignment with =, the value of the expression replaces that of the object referred to by the lvalue. If both operands have arithmetic type, the right operand is converted to the type of the left preparatory to the assignment. Second, both operands may be structures or unions of the same type. Finally, if the left operand is a pointer, the right operand must in general be a pointer of the same type. However, the constant 0 may be assigned to a pointer; it is guaranteed that this value will produce a null pointer distinguishable from a pointer to any object.

The behavior of an expression of the form **E1 op = E2** may be inferred by taking it as equivalent to **E1 = E1 op (E2)**; however, **E1** is evaluated only once. In += and -=, the left operand may be a pointer; in which case, the (integral) right operand is converted as explained in "Additive Operators." All right operands and all nonpointer left operands must have arithmetic type.

## C LANGUAGE

### Comma Operator

*comma-expression:*  
*expression , expression*

A pair of expressions separated by a comma is evaluated left to right, and the value of the left expression is discarded. The type and value of the result are the type and value of the right operand. This operator groups left to right. In contexts where comma is given a special meaning, e.g., in lists of actual arguments to functions (see "Primary Expressions") and lists of initializers (see "Initialization" under "DECLARATIONS"), the comma operator as described in this subpart can only appear in parentheses. For example,

`f(a, (t=3, t+2), c)`

has three arguments, the second of which has the value 5.

### DECLARATIONS

Declarations are used to specify the interpretation which C gives to each identifier; they do not necessarily reserve storage associated with the identifier. Declarations have the form

*declaration:*  
*decl-specifiers declarator-list<sub>opt</sub> ;*

The declarators in the declarator-list contain the identifiers being declared. The decl-specifiers consist of a sequence of type and storage class specifiers.

*decl-specifiers:*  
*type-specifier decl-specifiers<sub>opt</sub>*  
*sc-specifier decl-specifiers<sub>opt</sub>*

The list must be self-consistent in a way described below.

### Storage Class Specifiers

The sc-specifiers are:

*sc-specifier:*  
**auto**  
**static**  
**extern**  
**register**  
**typedef**

The **typedef** specifier does not reserve storage and is called a “storage class specifier” only for syntactic convenience. See “Typedef” for more information. The meanings of the various storage classes were discussed in “Names.”

The **auto**, **static**, and **register** declarations also serve as definitions in that they cause an appropriate amount of storage to be reserved. In the **extern** case, there must be an external definition (see “External Definitions”) for the given identifiers somewhere outside the function in which they are declared.

A **register** declaration is best thought of as an **auto** declaration, together with a hint to the compiler that the variables declared will be heavily used. Only the first few such declarations in each function are effective. Moreover, only variables of certain types will be stored in registers; on the PDP-11, they are **int** or pointer. One other restriction applies to register variables: the address-of operator **&** cannot be applied to them. Smaller, faster programs can be expected if register declarations are used appropriately, but future improvements in code generation may render them unnecessary.

At most, one sc-specifier may be given in a declaration. If the sc-specifier is missing from a declaration, it is taken to be **auto** inside a function, **extern** outside. Exception: functions are never automatic.

### Type Specifiers

The type-specifiers are

```

type-specifier:
    struct-or-union-specifier
    typedef-name
    enum-specifier
basic-type-specifier:
    basic-type
    basic-type basic-type-specifiers
basic-type:
    char
    short
    int
    long
    unsigned
    float
    double
    void

```

At most one of the words **long** or **short** may be specified in conjunction with **int**; the meaning is the same as if **int** were not mentioned. The word **long** may be specified in conjunction with **float**; the meaning is the same as **double**. The word **unsigned** may be specified alone, or in conjunction with **int** or any of its short or long varieties, or with **char**.

## C LANGUAGE

Otherwise, at most one type-specifier may be given in a declaration. In particular, adjectival use of **long**, **short**, or **unsigned** is not permitted with **typedef** names. If the type-specifier is missing from a declaration, it is taken to be **int**.

Specifiers for structures, unions, and enumerations are discussed in "Structure, Union, and Enumeration Declarations." Declarations with **typedef** names are discussed in "Typedef."

### Declarators

The declarator-list appearing in a declaration is a comma-separated sequence of declarators, each of which may have an initializer.

*declarator-list:*  
*init-declarator*  
*init-declarator* , *declarator-list*

*init-declarator:*  
*declarator initializer*<sub>opt</sub>

Initializers are discussed in "Initialization". The specifiers in the declaration indicate the type and storage class of the objects to which the declarators refer. Declarators have the syntax:

*declarator:*  
*identifier*  
*( declarator )*  
*\* declarator*  
*declarator ( )*  
*declarator [ constant-expression*<sub>opt</sub> *]*

The grouping is the same as in expressions.

### Meaning of Declarators

Each declarator is taken to be an assertion that when a construction of the same form as the declarator appears in an expression, it yields an object of the indicated type and storage class.

Each declarator contains exactly one identifier; it is this identifier that is declared. If an unadorned identifier appears as a declarator, then it has the type indicated by the specifier heading the declaration.

A declarator in parentheses is identical to the unadorned declarator, but the binding of complex declarators may be altered by parentheses. See the examples below.

Now imagine a declaration

**T D1**

where **T** is a type-specifier (like `int`, etc.) and **D1** is a declarator. Suppose this declaration makes the identifier have type "... **T**," where the "..." is empty if **D1** is just a plain identifier (so that the type of `x` in "`int x`" is just `int`). Then if **D1** has the form

**\*D**

the type of the contained identifier is "... pointer to **T**."

If **D1** has the form

**D()**

then the contained identifier has the type "... function returning **T**."

If **D1** has the form

**D**[*constant-expression*]

or

**D**[]

then the contained identifier has type "... array of **T**." In the first case, the constant expression is an expression whose value is determinable at compile time, whose type is `int`, and whose value is positive. (Constant expressions are defined precisely in "Constant Expressions.") When several "array of" specifications are adjacent, a multidimensional array is created; the constant expressions which specify the bounds of the arrays may be missing only for the first member of the sequence. This elision is useful when the array is external and the actual definition, which allocates storage, is given elsewhere. The first constant expression may also be omitted when the declarator is followed by initialization. In this case the size is calculated from the number of initial elements supplied.

An array may be constructed from one of the basic types, from a pointer, from a structure or union, or from another array (to generate a multidimensional array).

Not all the possibilities allowed by the syntax above are actually permitted. The restrictions are as follows: functions may not return arrays or functions although they may return pointers; there are no arrays of functions although there may be arrays of pointers to functions. Likewise, a structure or union may not contain a function; but it may contain a pointer to a function.

## C LANGUAGE

As an example, the declaration

```
int i, *ip, f(), *fp(), (*pfi());
```

declares an integer **i**, a pointer **ip** to an integer, a function **f** returning an integer, a function **fp** returning a pointer to an integer, and a pointer **pfi** to a function which returns an integer. It is especially useful to compare the last two. The binding of **\*fp()** is **\*(fp())**. The declaration suggests, and the same construction in an expression requires, the calling of a function **fp**. Using indirection through the (pointer) result to yield an integer. In the declarator **(\*pfi)()**, the extra parentheses are necessary, as they are also in an expression, to indicate that indirection through a pointer to a function yields a function, which is then called; it returns an integer.

As another example,

```
float fa[17], *afp[17];
```

declares an array of **float** numbers and an array of pointers to **float** numbers. Finally,

```
static int x3d[3][5][7];
```

declares a static 3-dimensional array of integers, with rank  $3 \times 5 \times 7$ . In complete detail, **x3d** is an array of three items; each item is an array of five arrays; each of the latter arrays is an array of seven integers. Any of the expressions **x3d**, **x3d[i]**, **x3d[i][j]**, **x3d[i][j][k]** may reasonably appear in an expression. The first three have type "array" and the last has type **int**.

### Structure and Union Declarations

A structure is an object consisting of a sequence of named members. Each member may have any type. A union is an object which may, at a given time, contain any one of several members. Structure and union specifiers have the same form.

*struct-or-union-specifier:*

```
struct-or-union { struct-decl-list }  
struct-or-union identifier { struct-decl-list }  
struct-or-union identifier
```

*struct-or-union:*

```
struct  
union
```

The struct-decl-list is a sequence of declarations for the members of the structure or union:

*struct-decl-list:*  
*struct-declaration*  
*struct-declaration struct-decl-list*

*struct-declaration:*  
*type-specifier struct-declarator-list ;*

*struct-declarator-list:*  
*struct-declarator*  
*struct-declarator , struct-declarator-list*

In the usual case, a struct-declarator is just a declarator for a member of a structure or union. A structure member may also consist of a specified number of bits. Such a member is also called a *field*; its length, a non-negative constant expression, is set off from the field name by a colon.

*struct-declarator:*  
*declarator*  
*declarator : constant-expression*  
*: constant-expression*

Within a structure, the objects declared have addresses which increase as the declarations are read left to right. Each nonfield member of a structure begins on an addressing boundary appropriate to its type; therefore, there may be unnamed holes in a structure. Field members are packed into machine integers; they do not straddle words. A field which does not fit into the space remaining in a word is put into the next word. No field may be wider than a word.

A struct-declarator with no declarator, only a colon and a width, indicates an unnamed field useful for padding to conform to externally-imposed layouts. As a special case, a field with a width of 0 specifies alignment of the next field at an implementation dependant boundary.

The language does not restrict the types of things that are declared as fields, but implementations are not required to support any but integer fields. Moreover, even `int` fields may be considered to be unsigned. For these reasons, it is strongly recommended that fields be declared as **unsigned**. In all implementations, there are no arrays of fields, and the address-of operator `&` may not be applied to them, so that there are no pointers to fields.

A union may be thought of as a structure all of whose members begin at offset 0 and whose size is sufficient to contain any of its members. At most, one of the members can be stored in a union at any time.

A structure or union specifier of the second form, that is, one of

## C LANGUAGE

```
struct identifier { struct-decl-list }  
union identifier { struct-decl-list }
```

declares the identifier to be the *structure tag* (or union tag) of the structure specified by the list. A subsequent declaration may then use the third form of specifier, one of

```
struct identifier  
union identifier
```

Structure tags allow definition of self-referential structures. Structure tags also permit the long part of the declaration to be given once and used several times. It is illegal to declare a structure or union which contains an instance of itself, but a structure or union may contain a pointer to an instance of itself.

The third form of a structure or union specifier may be used prior to a declaration which gives the complete specification of the structure or union in situations in which the size of the structure or union is unnecessary. The size is unnecessary in two situations: when a pointer to a structure or union is being declared and when a **typedef** name is declared to be a synonym for a structure or union. This, for example, allows the declaration of a pair of structures which contain pointers to each other.

The names of members and tags do not conflict with each other or with ordinary variables. A particular name may not be used twice in the same structure, but the same name may be used in several different structures in the same scope.

A simple but important example of a structure declaration is the following binary tree structure:

```
struct tnode  
{  
    char tword[20];  
    int count;  
    struct tnode *left;  
    struct tnode *right;  
};
```

which contains an array of 20 characters, an integer, and two pointers to similar structures. Once this declaration has been given, the declaration

```
struct tnode s, *sp;
```

declares **s** to be a structure of the given sort and **sp** to be a pointer to a structure of the given sort. With these declarations, the expression

**sp->count**

refers to the **count** field of the structure to which **sp** points;

**s.left**

refers to the left subtree pointer of the structure **s**; and

**s.right->tword[0]**

refers to the first character of the **tword** member of the right subtree of **s**.

### Enumeration Declarations

Enumeration variables and constants have integral type.

*enum-specifier:*

```
enum { enum-list }
enum identifier { enum-list }
enum identifier
```

*enum-list:*

```
enumerator
enum-list , enumerator
```

*enumerator:*

```
identifier
identifier = constant-expression
```

The identifiers in an *enum-list* are declared as constants and may appear wherever constants are required. If no enumerators with **=** appear, then the values of the corresponding constants begin at 0 and increase by 1 as the declaration is read from left to right. An enumerator with **=** gives the associated identifier the value indicated; subsequent identifiers continue the progression from the assigned value.

The names of enumerators in the same scope must all be distinct from each other and from those of ordinary variables.

The role of the identifier in the *enum-specifier* is entirely analogous to that of the structure tag in a *struct-specifier*; it names a particular enumeration. For example,

## C LANGUAGE

```
enum color { chartreuse, burgundy, claret=20, winedark };
...
enum color *cp, col;
...
col = claret;
cp = &col;
...
if (*cp == burgundy) ...
```

makes **color** the enumeration-tag of a type describing various colors, and then declares **cp** as a pointer to an object of that type, and **col** as an object of that type. The possible values are drawn from the set {0,1,20,21}.

### Initialization

A declarator may specify an initial value for the identifier being declared. The initializer is preceded by = and consists of an expression or a list of values nested in braces.

*initializer:*

```
= expression
= { initializer-list }
= { initializer-list , }
```

*initializer-list:*

```
expression
initializer-list , initializer-list
{ initializer-list }
{ initializer-list , }
```

All the expressions in an initializer for a static or external variable must be constant expressions, which are described in "CONSTANT EXPRESSIONS", or expressions which reduce to the address of a previously declared variable, possibly offset by a constant expression. Automatic or register variables may be initialized by arbitrary expressions involving constants and previously declared variables and functions.

Static and external variables that are not initialized are guaranteed to start off as zero. Automatic and register variables that are not initialized are guaranteed to start off as garbage.

When an initializer applies to a *scalar* (a pointer or an object of arithmetic type), it consists of a single expression, perhaps in braces. The initial value of the object is taken from the expression; the same conversions as for assignment are performed.

When the declared variable is an *aggregate* (a structure or array), the initializer consists of a brace-enclosed, comma-separated list of initializers for the members of the aggregate written in increasing subscript or member order. If the aggregate contains subaggregates, this rule

applies recursively to the members of the aggregate. If there are fewer initializers in the list than there are members of the aggregate, then the aggregate is padded with zeros. It is not permitted to initialize unions or automatic aggregates.

Braces may in some cases be omitted. If the initializer begins with a left brace, then the succeeding comma-separated list of initializers initializes the members of the aggregate; it is erroneous for there to be more initializers than members. If, however, the initializer does not begin with a left brace, then only enough elements from the list are taken to account for the members of the aggregate; any remaining members are left to initialize the next member of the aggregate of which the current aggregate is a part.

A final abbreviation allows a **char** array to be initialized by a string. In this case successive characters of the string initialize the members of the array.

For example,

```
int x[] = { 1, 3, 5 };
```

declares and initializes **x** as a one-dimensional array which has three members, since no size was specified and there are three initializers.

```
float y[4][3] =
{
    { 1, 3, 5 },
    { 2, 4, 6 },
    { 3, 5, 7 },
};
```

is a completely-bracketed initialization: 1, 3, and 5 initialize the first row of the array **y[0]**, namely **y[0][0]**, **y[0][1]**, and **y[0][2]**. Likewise, the next two lines initialize **y[1]** and **y[2]**. The initializer ends early and therefore **y[3]** is initialized with 0. Precisely, the same effect could have been achieved by

```
float y[4][3] =
{
    1, 3, 5, 2, 4, 6, 3, 5, 7
};
```

The initializer for **y** begins with a left brace but that for **y[0]** does not; therefore, three elements from the list are used. Likewise, the next three are taken successively for **y[1]** and **y[2]**. Also,

## C LANGUAGE

```
float y[4][3] =  
{  
    { 1 }, { 2 }, { 3 }, { 4 }  
};
```

initializes the first column of `y` (regarded as a two-dimensional array) and leaves the rest 0.

Finally,

```
char msg[] = "Syntax error on line %s\n";
```

shows a character array whose members are initialized with a string.

### Type Names

In two contexts (to specify type conversions explicitly by means of a cast and as an argument of `sizeof`), it is desired to supply the name of a data type. This is accomplished using a "type name", which in essence is a declaration for an object of that type which omits the name of the object.

*type-name:*  
*type-specifier abstract-declarator*

*abstract-declarator:*  
*empty*  
*( abstract-declarator )*  
*\* abstract-declarator*  
*abstract-declarator ( )*  
*abstract-declarator [ constant-expression<sub>opt</sub> ]*

To avoid ambiguity, in the construction

*( abstract-declarator )*

the abstract-declarator is required to be nonempty. Under this restriction, it is possible to identify uniquely the location in the abstract-declarator where the identifier would appear if the construction were a declarator in a declaration. The named type is then the same as the type of the hypothetical identifier. For example,

```

int
int *
int *[3]
int (*)(3)
int *()
int (*)()
int (*[3])()

```

name respectively the types “integer,” “pointer to integer,” “array of three pointers to integers,” “pointer to an array of three integers,” “function returning pointer to integer,” “pointer to function returning an integer,” and “array of three pointers to functions returning an integer.”

### Typedef

Declarations whose “storage class” is **typedef** do not define storage but instead define identifiers which can be used later as if they were type keywords naming fundamental or derived types.

```

typedef-name:
    identifier

```

Within the scope of a declaration involving **typedef**, each identifier appearing as part of any declarator therein becomes syntactically equivalent to the type keyword naming the type associated with the identifier in the way described in “Meaning of Declarators.” For example, after

```

typedef int MILES, *KCLICKSP;
typedef struct { double re, im; } complex;

```

the constructions

```

MILES distance;
extern KCLICKSP metricp;
complex z, *zp;

```

are all legal declarations; the type of **distance** is **int**, that of **metricp** is “pointer to **int**,” and that of **z** is the specified structure. The **zp** is a pointer to such a structure.

The **typedef** does not introduce brand-new types, only synonyms for types which could be specified in another way. Thus in the example above **distance** is considered to have exactly the same type as any other **int** object.

## C LANGUAGE

### STATEMENTS

Except as indicated, statements are executed in sequence.

#### Expression Statement

Most statements are expression statements, which have the form

*expression ;*

Usually expression statements are assignments or function calls.

#### Compound Statement or Block

So that several statements can be used where one is expected, the compound statement (also, and equivalently, called "block") is provided:

*compound-statement:*  
*{ declaration-list<sub>opt</sub> statement-list<sub>opt</sub> }*

*declaration-list:*  
*declaration*  
*declaration declaration-list*

*statement-list:*  
*statement*  
*statement statement-list*

If any of the identifiers in the declaration-list were previously declared, the outer declaration is pushed down for the duration of the block, after which it resumes its force.

Any initializations of **auto** or **register** variables are performed each time the block is entered at the top. It is currently possible (but a bad practice) to transfer into a block; in that case the initializations are not performed. Initializations of **static** variables are performed only once when the program begins execution. Inside a block, **extern** declarations do not reserve storage so initialization is not permitted.

#### Conditional Statement

The two forms of the conditional statement are

*if ( expression ) statement*  
*if ( expression ) statement else statement*

In both cases, the expression is evaluated; and if it is nonzero, the first substatement is executed. In the second case, the second substatement is executed if the expression is 0. The "else" ambiguity is resolved by connecting an **else** with the last encountered **else-less if**.

#### While Statement

The **while** statement has the form

```
while ( expression ) statement
```

The substatement is executed repeatedly so long as the value of the expression remains nonzero. The test takes place before each execution of the statement.

#### Do Statement

The **do** statement has the form

```
do statement while ( expression );
```

The substatement is executed repeatedly until the value of the expression becomes 0. The test takes place after each execution of the statement.

#### For Statement

The **for** statement has the form:

```
for ( exp-1opt ; exp-2opt ; exp-3opt ) statement
```

Except for the behavior of **continue**, this statement is equivalent to

```
exp-1 ;  
while ( exp-2 )  
{  
    statement  
    exp-3 ;  
}
```

Thus the first expression specifies initialization for the loop; the second specifies a test, made before each iteration, such that the loop is exited when the expression becomes 0. The third expression often specifies an incrementing that is performed after each iteration.

Any or all of the expressions may be dropped. A missing *exp-2* makes the implied **while** clause equivalent to **while(1)**; other missing expressions are simply dropped from the expansion above.

## C LANGUAGE

### Switch Statement

The **switch** statement causes control to be transferred to one of several statements depending on the value of an expression. It has the form

**switch** ( *expression* ) *statement*

The usual arithmetic conversion is performed on the expression, but the result must be **int**. The statement is typically compound. Any statement within the statement may be labeled with one or more case prefixes as follows:

**case** *constant-expression* :

where the constant expression must be **int**. No two of the case constants in the same switch may have the same value. Constant expressions are precisely defined in "CONSTANT EXPRESSIONS."

There may also be at most one statement prefix of the form

**default** :

When the **switch** statement is executed, its expression is evaluated and compared with each case constant. If one of the case constants is equal to the value of the expression, control is passed to the statement following the matched case prefix. If no case constant matches the expression and if there is a **default**, prefix, control passes to the prefixed statement. If no case matches and if there is no **default**, then none of the statements in the switch is executed.

The prefixes **case** and **default** do not alter the flow of control, which continues unimpeded across such prefixes. To exit from a switch, see "Break Statement."

Usually, the statement that is the subject of a switch is compound. Declarations may appear at the head of this statement, but initializations of automatic or register variables are ineffective.

### Break Statement

The statement

**break** ;

causes termination of the smallest enclosing **while**, **do**, **for**, or **switch** statement; control passes to the statement following the terminated statement.

**Continue Statement**

The statement

```
continue ;
```

causes control to pass to the loop-continuation portion of the smallest enclosing **while**, **do**, or **for** statement; that is to the end of the loop. More precisely, in each of the statements

```
while (...)      do          for (...)
{                {            {
    ...            ...          ...
contin: ;        contin: ;    contin: ;
}                } while (...); }
```

a **continue** is equivalent to **goto contin**. (Following the **contin:** is a null statement, see "Null Statement".)

**Return Statement**

A function returns to its caller by means of the **return** statement which has one of the forms

```
return ;
return expression ;
```

In the first case, the returned value is undefined. In the second case, the value of the expression is returned to the caller of the function. If required, the expression is converted, as if by assignment, to the type of function in which it appears. Flowing off the end of a function is equivalent to a return with no returned value. The expression may be parenthesized.

**Goto Statement**

Control may be transferred unconditionally by means of the statement

```
goto identifier ;
```

The identifier must be a label (see "Labeled Statement") located in the current function.

**Labeled Statement**

Any statement may be preceded by label prefixes of the form

```
identifier :
```

## C LANGUAGE

which serve to declare the identifier as a label. The only use of a label is as a target of a **goto**. The scope of a label is the current function, excluding any subblocks in which the same identifier has been redeclared. See "SCOPE RULES."

### Null Statement

The null statement has the form

;

A null statement is useful to carry a label just before the } of a compound statement or to supply a null body to a looping statement such as **while**.

## EXTERNAL DEFINITIONS

A C program consists of a sequence of external definitions. An external definition declares an identifier to have storage class **extern** (by default) or perhaps **static**, and a specified type. The type-specifier (see "Type Specifiers" in "DECLARATIONS") may also be empty, in which case the type is taken to be **int**. The scope of external definitions persists to the end of the file in which they are declared just as the effect of declarations persists to the end of a block. The syntax of external definitions is the same as that of all declarations except that only at this level may the code for functions be given.

### External Function Definitions

Function definitions have the form

*function-definition:*  
*decl-specifiers*<sub>opt</sub> *function-declarator* *function-body*

The only sc-specifiers allowed among the decl-specifiers are **extern** or **static**; see "Scope of Externals" in "SCOPE RULES" for the distinction between them. A function declarator is similar to a declarator for a "function returning ..." except that it lists the formal parameters of the function being defined.

*function-declarator:*  
*declarator* ( *parameter-list*<sub>opt</sub> )

*parameter-list:*  
*identifier*  
*identifier* , *parameter-list*

The function-body has the form

*function-body:*  
*declaration-list* *opt* *compound-statement*

The identifiers in the parameter list, and only those identifiers, may be declared in the declaration list. Any identifiers whose type is not given are taken to be **int**. The only storage class which may be specified is **register**; if it is specified, the corresponding actual parameter will be copied, if possible, into a register at the outset of the function.

A simple example of a complete function definition is

```
int max(a, b, c)
    int a, b, c;
{
    int m;

    m = (a > b) ? a : b;
    return((m > c) ? m : c);
}
```

Here **int** is the type-specifier; **max(a, b, c)** is the function-declarator; **int a, b, c;** is the declaration-list for the formal parameters; { ... } is the block giving the code for the statement.

The C program converts all **float** actual parameters to **double**, so formal parameters declared **float** have their declaration adjusted to read **double**. All **char** and **short** formal parameter declarations are similarly adjusted to read **int**. Also, since a reference to an array in any context (in particular as an actual parameter) is taken to mean a pointer to the first element of the array, declarations of formal parameters declared "array of ..." are adjusted to read "pointer to ...."

#### External Data Definitions

An external data definition has the form

*data-definition:*  
*declaration*

The storage class of such data may be **extern** (which is the default) or **static** but not **auto** or **register**.

## C LANGUAGE

### SCOPE RULES

A C program need not all be compiled at the same time. The source text of the program may be kept in several files, and precompiled routines may be loaded from libraries. Communication among the functions of a program may be carried out both through explicit calls and through manipulation of external data.

Therefore, there are two kinds of scopes to consider: first, what may be called the lexical scope of an identifier, which is essentially the region of a program during which it may be used without drawing "undefined identifier" diagnostics; and second, the scope associated with external identifiers, which is characterized by the rule that references to the same external identifier are references to the same object.

#### Lexical Scope

The lexical scope of identifiers declared in external definitions persists from the definition through the end of the source file in which they appear. The lexical scope of identifiers which are formal parameters persists through the function with which they are associated. The lexical scope of identifiers declared at the head of a block persists until the end of the block. The lexical scope of labels is the whole of the function in which they appear.

In all cases, however, if an identifier is explicitly declared at the head of a block, including the block constituting a function, any declaration of that identifier outside the block is suspended until the end of the block.

Remember also (see "Structure, Union, and Enumeration Declarations" in "DECLARATIONS") that tags, identifiers associated with ordinary variables, and identities associated with structure and union members form three disjoint classes which do not conflict. Members and tags follow the same scope rules as other identifiers. The **enum** constants are in the same class as ordinary variables and follow the same scope rules. The **typedef** names are in the same class as ordinary identifiers. They may be redeclared in inner blocks, but an explicit type must be given in the inner declaration:

```
typedef float distance;  
...  
{  
    auto int distance;  
    ...  
}
```

The **int** must be present in the second declaration, or it would be taken to be a declaration with no declarators and type **distance**.

### Scope of Externals

If a function refers to an identifier declared to be **extern**, then somewhere among the files or libraries constituting the complete program there must be at least one external definition for the identifier. All functions in a given program which refer to the same external identifier refer to the same object, so care must be taken that the type and size specified in the definition are compatible with those specified by each function which references the data.

It is illegal to explicitly initialize any external identifier more than once in the set of files and libraries comprising a multi-file program. It is legal to have more than one data definition for any external non-function identifier; explicit use of **extern** does not change the meaning of an external declaration.

In restricted environments, the use of the **extern** storage class takes on an additional meaning. In these environments, the explicit appearance of the **extern** keyword in external data declarations of identities without initialization indicates that the storage for the identifiers is allocated elsewhere, either in this file or another file. It is required that there be exactly one definition of each external identifier (without **extern**) in the set of files and libraries comprising a multi-file program.

Identifiers declared **static** at the top level in external definitions are not visible in other files. Functions may be declared **static**.

## COMPILER CONTROL LINES

The C compiler contains a preprocessor capable of macro substitution, conditional compilation, and inclusion of named files. Lines beginning with **#** communicate with this preprocessor. There may be any number of blanks and horizontal tabs between the **#** and the directive. These lines have syntax independent of the rest of the language; they may appear anywhere and have effect which lasts (independent of scope) until the end of the source program file.

### Token Replacement

A compiler-control line of the form

```
#define identifier token-stringopt
```

causes the preprocessor to replace subsequent instances of the identifier with the given string of tokens. Semicolons in or at the end of the token-string are part of that string. A line of the form

```
#define identifier(identifier, ... )token-stringopt
```

where there is no space between the first identifier and the (, is a macro definition with arguments. There may be zero or more formal parameters. Subsequent instances of the first identifier followed by a (, a sequence of tokens delimited by commas, and a ) are replaced by

## C LANGUAGE

the token string in the definition. Each occurrence of an identifier mentioned in the formal parameter list of the definition is replaced by the corresponding token string from the call. The actual arguments in the call are token strings separated by commas; however, commas in quoted strings or protected by parentheses do not separate arguments. The number of formal and actual parameters must be the same. Strings and character constants in the token-string are scanned for formal parameters, but strings and character constants in the rest of the program are not scanned for defined identifiers to replacement.

In both forms the replacement string is rescanned for more defined identifiers. In both forms a long definition may be continued on another line by writing `\` at the end of the line to be continued.

This facility is most valuable for definition of "manifest constants," as in

```
#define TABSIZE 100  
  
int table[TABSIZE];
```

A control line of the form

```
#undef identifier
```

causes the identifier's preprocessor definition (if any) to be forgotten.

If a **#defined** identifier is the subject of a subsequent **#define** with no intervening **#undef**, then the two token-strings are compared textually. If the two token-strings are not identical (all white space is considered as equivalent), then the identifier is considered to be redefined.

### File Inclusion

A compiler control line of the form

```
#include "filename"
```

causes the replacement of that line by the entire contents of the file *filename*. The named file is searched for first in the directory of the file containing the **#include**, and then in a sequence of specified or standard places. Alternatively, a control line of the form

```
#include <filename>
```

searches only the specified or standard places and not the directory of the **#include**. (How the places are specified is not part of the language.)

**#includes** may be nested.

### Conditional Compilation

A compiler control line of the form

```
#if restricted-constant-expression
```

checks whether the restricted-constant expression evaluates to nonzero. (Constant expressions are discussed in "CONSTANT EXPRESSIONS"; the following additional restrictions apply here: the constant expression may not contain **sizeof** casts, or an enumeration constant.)

A restricted constant expression may also contain the additional unary expression

```
defined identifier  
or  
defined( identifier
```

which evaluates to one if the identifier is currently defined in the preprocessor and zero if it is not.

All currently defined identifiers in restricted-constant-expressions are replaced by their token-strings (except those identifiers modified by **defined**) just as in normal text. The restricted constant expression will be evaluated only after all expressions have finished. During this evaluation, all undefined (to the procedure) identifiers evaluate to zero.

A control line of the form

```
#ifdef identifier
```

checks whether the identifier is currently defined in the preprocessor; i.e., whether it has been the subject of a **#define** control line. It is equivalent to **#ifdef(identifier)**. A control line of the form

```
#ifndef identifier
```

checks whether the identifier is currently undefined in the preprocessor. It is equivalent to **#ifndef(identifier)**.

All three forms are followed by an arbitrary number of lines, possibly containing a control line

```
#else
```

## C LANGUAGE

and then by a control line

**#endif**

If the checked condition is true, then any lines between **#else** and **#endif** are ignored. If the checked condition is false, then any lines between the test and a **#else** or, lacking a **#else**, the **#endif** are ignored.

These constructions may be nested.

### Line Control

For the benefit of other preprocessors which generate C programs, a line of the form

**#line constant "filename"**

causes the compiler to believe, for purposes of error diagnostics, that the line number of the next source line is given by the constant and the current input file is named by *"filename"*. If *"filename"* is absent, the remembered file name does not change.

## IMPLICIT DECLARATIONS

It is not always necessary to specify both the storage class and the type of identifiers in a declaration. The storage class is supplied by the context in external definitions and in declarations of formal parameters and structure members. In a declaration inside a function, if a storage class but no type is given, the identifier is assumed to be **int**; if a type but no storage class is indicated, the identifier is assumed to be **auto**. An exception to the latter rule is made for functions because **auto** functions do not exist. If the type of an identifier is "function returning ...," it is implicitly declared to be **extern**.

In an expression, an identifier followed by ( and not already declared is contextually declared to be "function returning **int**."

## TYPES REVISITED

This part summarizes the operations which can be performed on objects of certain types.

## Structures and Unions

Structures and unions may be assigned, passed as arguments to functions, and returned by functions. Other plausible operators, such as equality comparison and structure casts, are not implemented.

In a reference to a structure or union member, the name on the right of the `->` or the `.` must specify a member of the aggregate named or pointed to by the expression on the left. In general, a member of a union may not be inspected unless the value of the union has been assigned using that same member. However, one special guarantee is made by the language in order to simplify the use of unions: if a union contains several structures that share a common initial sequence and if the union currently contains one of these structures, it is permitted to inspect the common initial part of any of the contained structures. For example, the following is a legal fragment:

```
union
{
    struct
    {
        int    type;
    } n;
    struct
    {
        int    type;
        int    intnode;
    } ni;
    struct
    {
        int    type;
        float  floatnode;
    } nf;
} u;
...
u.nf.type = FLOAT;
u.nf.floatnode = 3.14;
...
if (u.n.type == FLOAT)
    ... sin(u.nf.floatnode) ...
```

## Functions

There are only two things that can be done with a function: call it or take its address. If the name of a function appears in an expression not in the function-name position of a call, a pointer to the function is generated. Thus, to pass one function to another, one might say

```
int f();
...
g(f);
```

## C LANGUAGE

Then the definition of **g** might read

```
g(funcp)
    int (*funcp)();
{
    ...
    (*funcp)();
    ...
}
```

Notice that **f** must be declared explicitly in the calling routine since its appearance in **g(f)** was not followed by (.

### Arrays, Pointers, and Subscripting

Every time an identifier of array type appears in an expression, it is converted into a pointer to the first member of the array. Because of this conversion, arrays are not lvalues. By definition, the subscript operator **[]** is interpreted in such a way that **E1[E2]** is identical to **\*((E1)+(E2))**. Because of the conversion rules which apply to **+**, if **E1** is an array and **E2** an integer, then **E1[E2]** refers to the **E2** -th member of **E1**. Therefore, despite its asymmetric appearance, subscripting is a commutative operation.

A consistent rule is followed in the case of multidimensional arrays. If **E** is an *n*-dimensional array of rank  $i \times j \times \dots \times k$ , then **E** appearing in an expression is converted to a pointer to an (n-1)-dimensional array with rank  $j \times \dots \times k$ . If the **\*** operator, either explicitly or implicitly as a result of subscripting, is applied to this pointer, the result is the pointed-to (n-1)-dimensional array, which itself is immediately converted into a pointer.

For example, consider

```
int x[3][5];
```

Here **x** is a 3×5 array of integers. When **x** appears in an expression, it is converted to a pointer to (the first of three) 5-membered arrays of integers. In the expression **x[i]**, which is equivalent to **\*(x+i)**, **x** is first converted to a pointer as described; then **i** is converted to the type of **x**, which involves multiplying **i** by the length the object to which the pointer points, namely 5-integer objects. The results are added and indirection applied to yield an array (of five integers) which in turn is converted to a pointer to the first of the integers. If there is another subscript, the same argument applies again; this time the result is an integer.

Arrays in C are stored row-wise (last subscript varies fastest) and the first subscript in the declaration helps determine the amount of storage consumed by an array. Arrays play no other part in subscript calculations.

### Explicit Pointer Conversions

Certain conversions involving pointers are permitted but have implementation-dependent aspects. They are all specified by means of an explicit type-conversion operator, see “Unary Operators” under “EXPRESSIONS” and “Type Names” under “DECLARATIONS.”

A pointer may be converted to any of the integral types large enough to hold it. Whether an `int` or `long` is required is machine dependent. The mapping function is also machine dependent but is intended to be unsurprising to those who know the addressing structure of the machine. Details for some particular machines are given below.

An object of integral type may be explicitly converted to a pointer. The mapping always carries an integer converted from a pointer back to the same pointer but is otherwise machine dependent.

A pointer to one type may be converted to a pointer to another type. The resulting pointer may cause addressing exceptions upon use if the subject pointer does not refer to an object suitably aligned in storage. It is guaranteed that a pointer to an object of a given size may be converted to a pointer to an object of a smaller size and back again without change.

For example, a storage-allocation routine might accept a size (in bytes) of an object to allocate, and return a `char` pointer; it might be used in this way.

```
extern char *alloc();
double *dp;

dp = (double *) alloc(sizeof(double));
*dp = 22.0 / 7.0;
```

The `alloc` must ensure (in a machine-dependent way) that its return value is suitable for conversion to a pointer to `double`; then the *use* of the function is portable.

### CONSTANT EXPRESSIONS

In several places C requires expressions that evaluate to a constant: after `case`, as array bounds, and in initializers. In the first two cases, the expression can involve only integer constants, character constants, casts to integral types, enumeration constants, and `sizeof`

## C LANGUAGE

expressions, possibly connected by the binary operators

+ - \* / % & | ^ << >> == != < > <= >= && ||

or by the unary operators

- ~

or by the ternary operator

?:

Parentheses can be used for grouping but not for function calls.

More latitude is permitted for initializers; besides constant expressions as discussed above, one can also use floating constants and arbitrary casts and can also apply the unary & operator to external or static objects and to external or static arrays subscripted with a constant expression. The unary & can also be applied implicitly by appearance of unsubscripted arrays and functions. The basic rule is that initializers must evaluate either to a constant or to the address of a previously declared external or static object plus or minus a constant.

## PORTABILITY CONSIDERATIONS

Certain parts of C are inherently machine dependent. The following list of potential trouble spots is not meant to be all-inclusive but to point out the main ones.

Purely hardware issues like word size and the properties of floating point arithmetic and integer division have proven in practice to be not much of a problem. Other facets of the hardware are reflected in differing implementations. Some of these, particularly sign extension (converting a negative character into a negative integer) and the order in which bytes are placed in a word, are nuisances that must be carefully watched. Most of the others are only minor problems.

The number of **register** variables that can actually be placed in registers varies from machine to machine as does the set of valid types. Nonetheless, the compilers all do things properly for their own machine; excess or invalid **register** declarations are ignored.

Some difficulties arise only when dubious coding practices are used. It is exceedingly unwise to write programs that depend on any of these properties.

The order of evaluation of function arguments is not specified by the language. The order in which side effects take place is also unspecified.

Since character constants are really objects of type **int**, multicharacter character constants may be permitted. The specific implementation is very machine dependent because the order in which characters are assigned to a word varies from one machine to another.

Fields are assigned to words and characters to integers right to left on some machines and left to right on other machines. These differences are invisible to isolated programs that do not indulge in type punning (e.g., by converting an **int** pointer to a **char** pointer and inspecting the pointed-to storage) but must be accounted for when conforming to externally-imposed storage layouts.

## SYNTAX SUMMARY

This summary of C syntax is intended more for aiding comprehension than as an exact statement of the language.

### Expressions

The basic expressions are:

*expression:*

```

primary
* expression
&lvalue
- expression
! expression
~ expression
++ lvalue
--lvalue
lvalue ++
lvalue --
sizeof expression
sizeof (type-name)
( type-name ) expression
expression binop expression
expression ? expression : expression
lvalue asgnop expression
expression , expression

```

## C LANGUAGE

### *primary:*

*identifier*  
*constant*  
*string*  
*( expression )*  
*primary ( expression-list opt )*  
*primary [ expression ]*  
*primary . identifier*  
*primary -> identifier*

### *lvalue:*

*identifier*  
*primary [ expression ]*  
*lvalue . identifier*  
*primary -> identifier*  
*\* expression*  
*( lvalue )*

The primary-expression operators

`() [] . ->`

have highest priority and group left to right. The unary operators

`* & - ! ~ ++ -- sizeof ( type-name )`

have priority below the primary operators but higher than any binary operator and group right to left. Binary operators group left to right; they have priority decreasing as indicated below.

### *binop:*

`* / %`  
`+ -`  
`>> <<`  
`< > <= >=`  
`== !=`  
`&`  
`^`  
`|`  
`&&`  
`||`

The conditional operator groups right to left.

Assignment operators all have the same priority and all group right to left.

*asgnop:*  
 = += -= \*= /= %= >>= <<= &= ^= |=

The comma operator has the lowest priority and groups left to right.

### Declarations

*declaration:*  
*decl-specifiers* *init-declarator-list* *opt* ;

*decl-specifiers:*  
*type-specifier decl-specifiers*  
*sc-specifier decl-specifiers* *opt*

*sc-specifier:*  
**auto**  
**static**  
**extern**  
**register**  
**typedef**

*type-specifier:*  
*struct-or-union-specifier*  
*typedef-name*  
*enum-specifier*  
*basic-type-specifier:*  
*basic-type*  
*basic-type basic-type-specifiers*

*basic-type:*  
**char**  
**short**  
**int**  
**long**  
**unsigned**  
**float**  
**double**  
**void**

*enum-specifier:*  
**enum** { *enum-list* }  
**enum** *identifier* { *enum-list* }  
**enum** *identifier*

## C LANGUAGE

*enum-list:*

*enumerator*  
*enum-list , enumerator*

*enumerator:*

*identifier*  
*identifier = constant-expression*

*init-declarator-list:*

*init-declarator*  
*init-declarator , init-declarator-list*

*init-declarator:*

*declarator initializer*<sub>opt</sub>

*declarator:*

*identifier*  
*( declarator )*  
*\* declarator*  
*declarator ( )*  
*declarator [ constant-expression*<sub>opt</sub> *]*

*struct-or-union-specifier:*

**struct** { *struct-decl-list* }  
**struct** *identifier* { *struct-decl-list* }  
**struct** *identifier*  
**union** { *struct-decl-list* }  
**union** *identifier* { *struct-decl-list* }  
**union** *identifier*

*struct-decl-list:*

*struct-declaration*  
*struct-declaration struct-decl-list*

*struct-declaration:*

*type-specifier struct-declarator-list ;*

*struct-declarator-list:*

*struct-declarator*  
*struct-declarator , struct-declarator-list*

*struct-declarator:*

*declarator*  
*declarator : constant-expression*  
*: constant-expression*

*initializer:*

= *expression*  
 = { *initializer-list* }  
 = { *initializer-list* , }

*initializer-list:*

*expression*  
*initializer-list* , *initializer-list*  
 { *initializer-list* }  
 { *initializer-list* , }

*type-name:**type-specifier abstract-declarator**abstract-declarator:*

*empty*  
 ( *abstract-declarator* )  
 \* *abstract-declarator*  
*abstract-declarator* ()  
*abstract-declarator* [ *constant-expression*<sub>opt</sub> ]

*typedef-name:**identifier***Statements***compound-statement:*

{ *declaration-list*<sub>opt</sub> *statement-list*<sub>opt</sub> }

*declaration-list:*

*declaration*  
*declaration declaration-list*

*statement-list:*

*statement*  
*statement statement-list*

## C LANGUAGE

### *statement:*

*compound-statement*  
*expression ;*  
*if ( expression ) statement*  
*if ( expression ) statement else statement*  
*while ( expression ) statement*  
*do statement while ( expression ) ;*  
*for ( exp<sub>opt</sub> ; exp<sub>opt</sub> ; exp<sub>opt</sub> ) statement*  
*switch ( expression ) statement*  
*case constant-expression : statement*  
*default : statement*  
*break ;*  
*continue ;*  
*return ;*  
*return expression ;*  
*goto identifier ;*  
*identifier : statement*  
*;*

### External definitions

### *program:*

*external-definition*  
*external-definition program*

### *external-definition:*

*function-definition*  
*data-definition*

### *function-definition:*

*decl-specifier*<sub>opt</sub> *function-declarator* *function-body*

### *function-declarator:*

*declarator ( parameter-list*<sub>opt</sub> *)*

### *parameter-list:*

*identifier*  
*identifier , parameter-list*

### *function-body:*

*declaration-list*<sub>opt</sub> *compound-statement*

### *data-definition:*

**extern** *declaration ;*  
**static** *declaration ;*

## Preprocessor

```
#define identifier token-stringopt  
#define identifier(identifier,...)token-stringopt  
#undef identifier  
#include "filename"  
#include <filename>  
#if restricted-constant-expression  
#ifdef identifier  
#ifndef identifier  
#else  
#endif  
#line constant "filename"
```



**Chapter 3**  
**C LIBRARIES**

	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>GENERAL</b> .....	<b>3-1</b>
<b>Including Functions</b> .....	<b>3-1</b>
<b>Including Declarations</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>
<b>THE C LIBRARY</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>
<b>Input/Output Control</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>
<b>File Access Functions</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>
<b>File Status Functions</b> .....	<b>3-4</b>
<b>Input Functions</b> .....	<b>3-4</b>
<b>Output Functions</b> .....	<b>3-5</b>
<b>Miscellaneous Functions</b> .....	<b>3-6</b>
<b>String Manipulation Functions</b> .....	<b>3-6</b>
<b>Character Manipulation</b> .....	<b>3-8</b>
<b>Character Testing Functions</b> .....	<b>3-8</b>
<b>Character Translation Functions</b> .....	<b>3-9</b>
<b>Time Functions</b> .....	<b>3-9</b>
<b>Miscellaneous Functions</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>
<b>Numerical Conversion</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>
<b>DES Algorithm Access</b> .....	<b>3-11</b>
<b>Group File Access</b> .....	<b>3-11</b>
<b>Password File Access</b> .....	<b>3-12</b>
<b>Parameter Access</b> .....	<b>3-13</b>
<b>Hash Table Management</b> .....	<b>3-13</b>
<b>Binary Tree Management</b> .....	<b>3-14</b>
<b>Table Management</b> .....	<b>3-14</b>
<b>Memory Allocation</b> .....	<b>3-15</b>
<b>Pseudorandom Number Generation</b> .....	<b>3-16</b>
<b>Signal Handling Functions</b> .....	<b>3-16</b>
<b>Miscellaneous</b> .....	<b>3-17</b>



## Chapter 3

# C LIBRARIES

### GENERAL

This chapter and Chapter 4 describe the libraries that are supported on the ICON/UXV system. A library is a collection of related functions and/or declarations that simplify programming effort by linking only what is needed, allowing use of locally produced functions, etc. All of the functions described are also described in Part 3 of the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*. Most of the declarations described are in Part 5 of the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*. The three main libraries on the ICON/UXV system are:

- C library**                      This is the basic library for C language programs. The C library is composed of functions and declarations used for file access, string testing and manipulation, character testing and manipulation, memory allocation, and other functions. This library is described later in this chapter.
- Object file**                    This library provides functions for the access and manipulation of object files. This library is described in Chapter 4.
- Math library**                   This library provides exponential, bessel functions, logarithmic, hyperbolic, and trigonometric functions. This library is described in Chapter 4.

Some libraries consist of two portions - functions and declarations. In some cases, the user must request that the functions (and/or declarations) of a specific library be included in a program being compiled. In other cases, the functions (and/or declarations) are included automatically.

### Including Functions

When a program is being compiled, the compiler will automatically search the C language library to locate and include functions that are used in the program. This is the case only for the C library and no other library. In order for the compiler to locate and include functions from other libraries, the user must specify these libraries on the command line for the compiler. For example, when using functions of the math library, the user must request that the math library be searched by including the argument **-lm** on the command line, such as:

```
cc file.c -lm
```

The argument **-lm** must come after all files that reference functions in the math library in order for the link editor to know which functions to include in the a.out file.

## C LIBRARIES

This method should be used for all functions that are not part of the C language library.

### Including Declarations

Some functions require a set of declarations in order to operate properly. A set of declarations is stored in a file under the */usr/include* directory. These files are referred to as *header files*. In order to include a certain header file, the user must specify this request within the C language program. The request is in the form:

```
#include <file.h>
```

where *file.h* is the name of the file. Since the header files define the type of the functions and various preprocessor constants, they must be included before invoking the functions they declare.

The remainder of this chapter describes the functions and header files of the C Library. The description of the library begins with the actions required by the user to include the functions and/or header files in a program being compiled (if any). Following the description of the actions required is information in three-column format of the form:

<b>function</b>	<b>reference(N)</b>	<b>Brief description.</b>
-----------------	---------------------	---------------------------

The functions are grouped by type while the reference refers to section 'N' in the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*. Following this, are descriptions of the header files associated with these functions (if any).

## THE C LIBRARY

The C library consists of several types of functions. All the functions of the C library are loaded automatically by the compiler. Various declarations must sometimes be included by the user as required. The functions of the C library are divided into the following types:

- Input/output control
- String manipulation
- Character manipulation
- Time functions
- Miscellaneous functions.

**Input/Output Control**

These functions of the C library are automatically included as needed during the compiling of a C language program. No command line request is needed.

The header file required by the input/output functions should be included in the program being compiled. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

near the beginning of each file that references an input or output function.

The input/output functions are grouped into the following categories:

- File access
- File status
- Input
- Output
- Miscellaneous.

**File Access Functions**

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>fclose</b>	<b>fclose(3S)</b>	Close an open stream.
<b>fdopen</b>	<b>fopen(3S)</b>	Associate stream with an <b>open(2)</b> ed file.
<b>fileno</b>	<b>ferror(3S)</b>	File descriptor associated with an open stream.
<b>fopen</b>	<b>fopen(3S)</b>	Open a file with specified permissions. <b>Fopen</b> returns a pointer to a stream which is used in subsequent references to the file.
<b>freopen</b>	<b>fopen(3S)</b>	Substitute named file in place of open stream.
<b>fseek</b>	<b>fseek(3S)</b>	Reposition the file pointer.

## C LIBRARIES

<b>pclose</b>	<b>popen(3S)</b>	Close a stream opened by <b>popen</b> .
<b>popen</b>	<b>popen(3S)</b>	Create pipe as a stream between calling process and command.
<b>rewind</b>	<b>fseek(3S)</b>	Reposition file pointer at beginning of file.
<b>setbuf</b>	<b>setbuf(3S)</b>	Assign buffering to stream.
<b>vsetbuf</b>	<b>setbuf(3S)</b>	Similar to <b>setbuf</b> , but allowing finer control.

### File Status Functions

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>clearerr</b>	<b>ferror(3S)</b>	Reset error condition on stream.
<b>feof</b>	<b>ferror(3S)</b>	Test for "end of file" on stream.
<b>ferror</b>	<b>ferror(3S)</b>	Test for error condition on stream.
<b>ftell</b>	<b>fseek(3S)</b>	Return current position in the file.

### Input Functions

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>fgetc</b>	<b>getc(3S)</b>	True function for <b>getc(3S)</b> .
<b>fgets</b>	<b>gets(3S)</b>	Read string from stream.
<b>fread</b>	<b>fread(3S)</b>	General buffered read from stream.
<b>fscanf</b>	<b>scanf(3S)</b>	Formatted read from stream.

<b>getc</b>	<b>getc(3S)</b>	Read character from stream.
<b>getchar</b>	<b>getc(3S)</b>	Read character from standard input.
<b>gets</b>	<b>gets(3S)</b>	Read string from standard input.
<b>getw</b>	<b>getc(3S)</b>	Read word from stream.
<b>scanf</b>	<b>scanf(3S)</b>	Read using format from standard input.
<b>sscanf</b>	<b>scanf(3S)</b>	Formatted from string.
<b>ungetc</b>	<b>ungetc(3S)</b>	Put back one character on stream.

## Output Functions

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>flush</b>	<b>fclose(3S)</b>	Write all currently buffered characters from stream.
<b>fprintf</b>	<b>printf(3S)</b>	Formatted write to stream.
<b>fputc</b>	<b>putc(3S)</b>	True function for <b>putc(3S)</b> .
<b>fputs</b>	<b>puts(3S)</b>	Write string to stream.
<b>fwrite</b>	<b>fread(3S)</b>	General buffered write to stream.
<b>printf</b>	<b>printf(3S)</b>	Print using format to standard output.
<b>putc</b>	<b>putc(3S)</b>	Write character to standard output.
<b>putchar</b>	<b>putc(3S)</b>	Write character to standard output.
<b>puts</b>	<b>puts(3S)</b>	Write string to standard output.

## C LIBRARIES

<b>putw</b>	<b>putc(3S)</b>	Write word to stream.
<b>sprintf</b>	<b>printf(3S)</b>	Formatted write to string.
<b>vfprintf</b>	<b>vprint(3C)</b>	Print using format to stream by <b>varargs(5)</b> argument list.
<b>vprintf</b>	<b>vprint(3C)</b>	Print using format to standard output by <b>varargs(5)</b> argument list.
<b>vsprintf</b>	<b>vprintf(3C)</b>	Print using format to stream string by <b>varargs(5)</b> argument list.

### Miscellaneous Functions

<b><i>FUNCTION</i></b>	<b><i>REFERENCE</i></b>	<b><i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i></b>
<b>ctermid</b>	<b>ctermid(3S)</b>	Return file name for controlling terminal.
<b>cuserid</b>	<b>cuserid(3S)</b>	Return login name for owner of current process.
<b>system</b>	<b>system(3S)</b>	Execute shell command.
<b>tempnam</b>	<b>tempnam(3S)</b>	Create temporary file name using directory and prefix.
<b>tmpnam</b>	<b>tmpnam(3S)</b>	Create temporary file name.
<b>tmpfile</b>	<b>tmpfile(3S)</b>	Create temporary file.

### String Manipulation Functions

These functions are used to locate characters within a string, copy, concatenate, and compare strings. These functions are automatically located and loaded during the compiling of a C language program. No command line request is needed since these functions are part of the C library. The string manipulation functions are declared in a header file that may be included in the program being compiled. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <string.h>
```

near the beginning of each file that uses one of these functions.

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>strcat</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Concatenate two strings.
<b>strchr</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Search string for character.
<b>strcmp</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Compares two strings.
<b>strcpy</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Copy string.
<b>strcspn</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Length of initial string not containing set of characters.
<b>strlen</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Length of string.
<b>strncat</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Concatenate two strings with a maximum length.
<b>strncmp</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Compares two strings with a maximum length.
<b>strncpy</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Copy string over string with a maximum length.
<b>strpbrk</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Search string for any set of characters.
<b>strrchr</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Search string backwards for character.
<b>strspn</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Length of initial string containing set of characters.
<b>strtok</b>	<b>string(3C)</b>	Search string for token separated by any of a set of characters.

## C LIBRARIES

### Character Manipulation

The following functions and declarations are used for testing and translating ASCII characters. These functions are located and loaded automatically during the compiling of a C language program. No command line request is needed since these functions are part of the C library.

The declarations associated with these functions should be included in the program being compiled. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

near the beginning of the file being compiled.

### Character Testing Functions

These functions can be used to identify characters as uppercase or lowercase letters, digits, punctuation, etc.

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>isalnum</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character alphanumeric?
<b>isalpha</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character alphabetic?
<b>isascii</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is integer ASCII character?
<b>isctrl</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character a control character?
<b>isdigit</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character a digit?
<b>isgraph</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character a printable character?
<b>islower</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character a lowercase letter?
<b>isprint</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character a printing character including space?
<b>ispunct</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character a punctuation character?
<b>isspace</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character a white space character?

<b>isupper</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character an uppercase letter?
<b>isxdigit</b>	<b>ctype(3C)</b>	Is character a hex digit?

#### Character Translation Functions

These functions provide translation of uppercase to lowercase, lowercase to uppercase, and integer to ASCII.

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>toascii</b>	<b>conv(3C)</b>	Convert integer to ASCII character.
<b>tolower</b>	<b>conv(3C)</b>	Convert character to lowercase.
<b>toupper</b>	<b>conv(3C)</b>	Convert character to uppercase.

#### Time Functions

These functions are used for accessing and reformatting the systems idea of the current date and time. These functions are located and loaded automatically during the compiling of a C language program. No command line request is needed since these functions are part of the C library.

The header file associated with these functions should be included in the program being compiled. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <time.h>
```

near the beginning of any file using the time functions.

These functions (except **tzset**) convert a time such as returned by **time(2)**.

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>asctime</b>	<b>ctime(3C)</b>	Return string representation of date and time.

## C LIBRARIES

<b>ctime</b>	<b>ctime(3C)</b>	Return string representation of date and time, given integer form.
<b>gmtime</b>	<b>ctime(3C)</b>	Return Greenwich Mean Time.
<b>localtime</b>	<b>ctime(3C)</b>	Return local time.
<b>tzset</b>	<b>ctime(3C)</b>	Set time zone field from environment variable.

### Miscellaneous Functions

These functions support a wide variety of operations. Some of these are numerical conversion, password file and group file access, memory allocation, random number generation, and table management. These functions are automatically located and included in a program being compiled. No command line request is needed since these functions are part of the C library.

Some of these functions require declarations to be included. These are described following the descriptions of the functions.

### Numerical Conversion

The following functions perform numerical conversion.

<b><i>FUNCTION</i></b>	<b><i>REFERENCE</i></b>	<b><i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i></b>
<b>a64l</b>	<b>a64l(3C)</b>	Convert string to base 64 ASCII.
<b>atof</b>	<b>atof(3C)</b>	Convert string to floating.
<b>atoi</b>	<b>atof(3C)</b>	Convert string to integer.
<b>atol</b>	<b>atof(3C)</b>	Convert string to long.
<b>frexp</b>	<b>frexp(3C)</b>	Split floating into mantissa and exponent.
<b>l3tol</b>	<b>l3tol(3C)</b>	Convert 3-byte integer to long.

## C LIBRARIES

<b>l3tol</b>	<b>l3tol(3C)</b>	Convert long to 3-byte integer.
<b>ldexp</b>	<b>frexp(3C)</b>	Combine mantissa and exponent.
<b>l64a</b>	<b>a64l(3C)</b>	Convert base 64 ASCII to string.
<b>modf</b>	<b>frexp(3C)</b>	Split mantissa into integer and fraction.

### DES Algorithm Access

The following functions allow access to the Data Encryption Standard (DES) algorithm used in the ICON/UXV operating system. The DES algorithm is implemented with variations to frustrate use of hardware implementations of the DES for key search.

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>crypt</b>	<b>crypt(3C)</b>	Encode string.
<b>encrypt</b>	<b>crypt(3C)</b>	Encode/decode string of 0s and 1s.
<b>setkey</b>	<b>crypt(3C)</b>	Initialize for subsequent use of <b>encrypt</b> .

### Group File Access

The following functions are used to obtain entries from the group file. Declarations for these functions must be included in the program being compiled with the line:

```
#include <grp.h>
```

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>endgrent</b>	<b>getgrent(3C)</b>	Close group file being processed.
<b>getgrent</b>	<b>getgrent(3C)</b>	Get next group file entry.
<b>getgrgid</b>	<b>getgrent(3C)</b>	Return next group with matching gid.

## C LIBRARIES

<b>getgrnam</b>	<b>getgrent(3C)</b>	Return next group with matching name.
<b>setgrent</b>	<b>getgrent(3C)</b>	Rewind group file being processed.
<b>fgetgrent</b>	<b>getgrent(3C)</b>	Get next group file entry from a specified file.

### Password File Access

These functions are used to search and access information stored in the password file (/etc/passwd). Some functions require declarations that can be included in the program being compiled by adding the line:

```
#include <pwd.h>
```

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>endpwent</b>	<b>getpwent(3C)</b>	Close password file being processed.
<b>getpw</b>	<b>getpw(3C)</b>	Search password file for uid.
<b>getpwent</b>	<b>getpwent(3C)</b>	Get next password file entry.
<b>getpwnam</b>	<b>getpwent(3C)</b>	Return next entry with matching name.
<b>getpwuid</b>	<b>getpwent(3C)</b>	Return next entry with matching uid.
<b>putpwent</b>	<b>putpwent(3C)</b>	Write entry on stream.
<b>setpwent</b>	<b>getpwent(3C)</b>	Rewind password file being accessed.
<b>fgetpwent</b>	<b>getpwent(3C)</b>	Get next password file entry from a specified file.

**Parameter Access**

The following functions provide access to several different types of parameters. None require any declarations.

<b><i>FUNCTION</i></b>	<b><i>REFERENCE</i></b>	<b><i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i></b>
<b>getopt</b>	<b>getopt(3C)</b>	Get next option from option list.
<b>getcwd</b>	<b>getcwd(3C)</b>	Return string representation of current working directory.
<b>getenv</b>	<b>getenv(3C)</b>	Return string value associated with environment variable.
<b>getpass</b>	<b>getpass(3C)</b>	Read string from terminal without echoing.
<b>putenv</b>	<b>putenv(3C)</b>	Change or add value of an environment variable.

**Hash Table Management**

The following functions are used to manage hash search tables. The header file associated with these functions should be included in the program being compiled. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <search.h>
```

near the beginning of any file using the search functions.

<b><i>FUNCTION</i></b>	<b><i>REFERENCE</i></b>	<b><i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i></b>
<b>hcreate</b>	<b>hsearch(3C)</b>	Create hash table.
<b>hdestroy</b>	<b>hsearch(3C)</b>	Destroy hash table.
<b>hsearch</b>	<b>hsearch(3C)</b>	Search hash table for entry.

## C LIBRARIES

### Binary Tree Management

The following functions are used to manage a binary tree. The header file associated with these functions should be included in the program being compiled. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <search.h>
```

near the beginning of any file using the search functions.

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>tdelete</b>	<b>tsearch(3C)</b>	Deletes nodes from binary tree.
<b>tfind</b>	<b>tsearch(3C)</b>	Find element in binary tree.
<b>tsearch</b>	<b>tsearch(3C)</b>	Look for and add element to binary tree.
<b>twalk</b>	<b>tsearch(3C)</b>	Walk binary tree.

### Table Management

The following functions are used to manage a table. Since none of these functions allocate storage, sufficient memory must be allocated before using these functions. The header file associated with these functions should be included in the program being compiled. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <search.h>
```

near the beginning of any file using the search functions.

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>bsearch</b>	<b>bsearch(3C)</b>	Search table using binary search.
<b>lfind</b>	<b>lsearch(3C)</b>	Find element in library tree.

<b>lsearch</b>	<b>lsearch(3C)</b>	Look for and add element in binary tree.
<b>qsort</b>	<b>qsort(3C)</b>	Sort table using quick-sort algorithm.

### Memory Allocation

The following functions provide a means by which memory can be dynamically allocated or freed.

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>calloc</b>	<b>malloc(3C)</b>	Allocate zeroed storage.
<b>free</b>	<b>malloc(3C)</b>	Free previously allocated storage.
<b>malloc</b>	<b>malloc(3C)</b>	Allocate storage.
<b>realloc</b>	<b>malloc(3C)</b>	Change size of allocated storage.

The following is another set of memory allocation functions available.

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>calloc</b>	<b>malloc(3X)</b>	Allocate zeroed storage.
<b>free</b>	<b>malloc(3X)</b>	Free previously allocated storage.
<b>malloc</b>	<b>malloc(3X)</b>	Allocate storage.
<b>mallopt</b>	<b>malloc(3X)</b>	Control allocation algorithm.
<b>mallinfo</b>	<b>malloc(3X)</b>	Space usage.
<b>realloc</b>	<b>malloc(3X)</b>	Change size of allocated storage.

## C LIBRARIES

### Pseudorandom Number Generation

The following functions are used to generate pseudorandom numbers. The functions that end with **48** are a family of interfaces to a pseudorandom number generator based upon the linear congruent algorithm and 48-bit integer arithmetic. The **rand** and **srand** functions provide an interface to a multiplicative congruential random number generator with period of 232.

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>drand48</b>	<b>drand48(3C)</b>	Random double over the interval [0 to 1).
<b>lcong48</b>	<b>drand48(3C)</b>	Set parameters for <b>drand48</b> , <b>lrand48</b> , and <b>mrand48</b> .
<b>lrand48</b>	<b>drand48(3C)</b>	Random long over the interval [0 to $2^{31}$ ).
<b>mrand48</b>	<b>drand48(3C)</b>	Random long over the interval [ $-2^{31}$ to $2^{31}$ ).
<b>rand</b>	<b>rand(3C)</b>	Random integer over the interval [0 to 32767).
<b>seed48</b>	<b>drand48(3C)</b>	Seed the generator for <b>drand48</b> , <b>lrand48</b> , and <b>mrand48</b> .
<b>srand</b>	<b>rand(3C)</b>	Seed the generator for <b>rand</b> .
<b>srand48</b>	<b>drand48(3C)</b>	Seed the generator for <b>drand48</b> , <b>lrand48</b> , and <b>mrand48</b> using a long.

### Signal Handling Functions

The functions **gsignal** and **ssignal** implement a software facility similar to **signal(2)** in the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*. This facility enables users to indicate the disposition of error conditions and allows users to handle signals for their own purposes. The declarations associated with these functions can be included in the program being compiled by the line

```
#include <signal.h>
```

These declarations define ASCII names for the 15 software signals.

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>gsignal</b>	<b>ssignal(3C)</b>	Send a software signal.
<b>ssignal</b>	<b>ssignal(3C)</b>	Arrange for handling of software signals.

#### Miscellaneous

The following functions do not fall into any previously described category.

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>abort</b>	<b>abort(3C)</b>	Cause an IOT signal to be sent to the process.
<b>abs</b>	<b>abs(3C)</b>	Return the absolute integer value.
<b>ecvt</b>	<b>ecvt(3C)</b>	Convert double to string.
<b>fcvt</b>	<b>ecvt(3C)</b>	Convert double to string using Fortran Format.
<b>gcvt</b>	<b>ecvt(3C)</b>	Convert double to string using Fortran F or E format.
<b>isatty</b>	<b>ttyname(3C)</b>	Test whether integer file descriptor is associated with a terminal.
<b>mktemp</b>	<b>mktemp(3C)</b>	Create file name using template.
<b>monitor</b>	<b>monitor(3C)</b>	Cause process to record a histogram of program counter location.

## C LIBRARIES

**swab**

**swab(3C)**

Swap and copy bytes.

**ttyname**

**ttyname(3C)**

Return pathname of  
terminal associated with  
integer file descriptor.

## Chapter 4

### THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

	PAGE
GENERAL.....	4-1
THE OBJECT FILE LIBRARY.....	4-1
Common Object File Interface Macros (ldfcn.h).....	4-4
THE MATH LIBRARY.....	4-4
Trigonometric Functions.....	4-5
Bessel Functions.....	4-5
Hyperbolic Functions.....	4-6
Miscellaneous Functions.....	4-6



## Chapter 4

# THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

### GENERAL

This chapter describes the Object and Math Libraries that are supported on the ICON/UXV operating system. A library is a collection of related functions and/or declarations that simplify programming effort. All of the functions described are also described in Part 3 of the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*. Most of the declarations described are in Part 5 of the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*. The three main libraries on the ICON/UXV system are:

- C library**                      This is the basic library for C language programs. The C library is composed of functions and declarations used for file access, string testing and manipulation, character testing and manipulation, memory allocation, and other functions. This library is described in Chapter 3.
- Object file**                    This library provides functions for the access and manipulation of object files. This library is described later in this chapter.
- Math library**                   This library provides exponential, bessel functions, logarithmic, hyperbolic, and trigonometric functions. This library is also described later in this chapter.

### THE OBJECT FILE LIBRARY

The object file library provides functions for the access and manipulation of object files. Some functions locate portions of an object file such as the symbol table, the file header, sections, and line number entries associated with a function. Other functions read these types of entries into memory. For a description of the format of an object file, see "The Common Object File Format" in the *ICON/UXV Support Tools Guide*.

This library consists of several portions. The functions reside in */usr/lib/libld.a* and are located and loaded during the compiling of a C language program by a command line request. The form of this request is:

```
cc file -lld
```

which causes the link editor to search the object file library. The argument *-lld* must appear after all files that reference functions in *libld.a*.

## THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

In addition, various header files must be included. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <a.out.h>
#include <ldfcn.h>
```

<i><b>FUNCTION</b></i>	<i><b>REFERENCE</b></i>	<i><b>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</b></i>
<b>ldaclose</b>	<b>ldclose(3X)</b>	Close object file being processed.
<b>ldahread</b>	<b>ldahread(3X)</b>	Read archive header.
<b>ldaopen</b>	<b>ldopen(3X)</b>	Open object file for reading.
<b>ldclose</b>	<b>ldclose(3X)</b>	Close object file being processed.
<b>ldfhread</b>	<b>ldfhread(3X)</b>	Read file header of object file being processed.
<b>ldgetname</b>	<b>ldgetname(3X)</b>	Retrieve the name of an object file symbol table entry.
<b>ldlinit</b>	<b>ldlread(3X)</b>	Prepare object file for reading line number entries via <b>ldlitem</b> .
<b>ldlitem</b>	<b>ldlread(3X)</b>	Read line number entry from object file after <b>ldlinit</b> .
<b>ldlread</b>	<b>ldlread(3X)</b>	Read line number entry from object file.
<b>ldlseek</b>	<b>ldlseek(3X)</b>	Seeks to the line number entries of the object file being processed.
<b>ldnlseek</b>	<b>ldlseek(3X)</b>	Seeks to the line number entries of the object file being processed given the name of a section.

## THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

<b>ldnrseek</b>	<b>ldrseek(3X)</b>	Seeks to the relocation entries of the object file being processed given the name of a section.
<b>ldnshread</b>	<b>ldshread(3X)</b>	Read section header of the named section of the object file being processed.
<b>ldnsseek</b>	<b>ldsseek(3X)</b>	Seeks to the section of the object file being processed given the name of a section.
<b>ldohseek</b>	<b>ldohseek(3X)</b>	Seeks to the optional file header of the object file being processed.
<b>ldopen</b>	<b>ldopen(3X)</b>	Open object file for reading.
<b>ldrseek</b>	<b>ldrseek(3X)</b>	Seeks to the relocation entries of the object file being processed.
<b>ldshread</b>	<b>ldshread(3X)</b>	Read section header of an object file being processed.
<b>ldsseek</b>	<b>ldsseek(3X)</b>	Seeks to the section of the object file being processed.
<b>ldtbindex</b>	<b>ldtbindex(3X)</b>	Returns the long index of the symbol table entry at the current position of the object file being processed.
<b>ldtbread</b>	<b>ldtbread(3X)</b>	Reads a specific symbol table entry of the object file being processed.
<b>ldtbseek</b>	<b>ldtbseek(3X)</b>	Seeks to the symbol table of the object file being processed.

## THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

<b>sgetl</b>	<b>sputl(3X)</b>	Access long integer data in a machine independent format.
<b>sputl</b>	<b>sputl(3X)</b>	Translate a long integer into a machine independent format.

### Common Object File Interface Macros (ldfcn.h)

The interface between the calling program and the object file access routines is based on the defined type **LDFILE** which is defined in the header file **ldfcn.h** (see **ldfcn(4)**). The primary purpose of this structure is to provide uniform access to both simple object files and to object files that are members of an archive file.

The function **ldopen(3X)** allocates and initializes the **LDFILE** structure and returns a pointer to the structure to the calling program. The fields of the **LDFILE** structure may be accessed individually through the following macros: the **type** macro returns the magic number of the file, which is used to distinguish between archive files and simple object files. The **IOPTR** macro returns the file pointer which was opened by **ldopen(3X)** and is used by the input/output functions of the C library. The **OFFSET** macro returns the file address of the beginning of the object file. This value is non-zero only if the object file is a member of the archive file. The **HEADER** macro accesses the file header structure of the object file.

Additional macros are provided to access an object file. These macros parallel the input/output functions in the C library; each macro translates a reference to an **LDFILE** structure into a reference to its file descriptor field. The available macros are described in **ldfcn(4)** in the *ICON/UXV System Reference Manual*.

## THE MATH LIBRARY

The math library consists of functions and a header file. The functions are located and loaded during the compiling of a C language program by a command line request. The form of this request is:

```
cc file -lm
```

which causes the link editor to search the math library. In addition to the request to load the functions, the header file of the math library should be included in the program being compiled. This is accomplished by including the line:

```
#include <math.h>
```

near the beginning of the (first) file being compiled.

## THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

The functions are grouped into the following categories:

- Trigonometric functions
- Bessel functions
- Hyperbolic functions
- Miscellaneous functions.

### Trigonometric Functions

These functions are used to compute angles (in radian measure), sines, cosines, and tangents. All of these values are expressed in double precision.

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>acos</b>	<b>trig(3M)</b>	Return arc cosine.
<b>asin</b>	<b>trig(3M)</b>	Return arc sine.
<b>atan</b>	<b>trig(3M)</b>	Return arc tangent.
<b>atan2</b>	<b>trig(3M)</b>	Return arc tangent of a ratio.
<b>cos</b>	<b>trig(3M)</b>	Return cosine.
<b>sin</b>	<b>trig(3M)</b>	Return sine.
<b>tan</b>	<b>trig(3M)</b>	Return tangent.

### Bessel Functions

These functions calculate bessel functions of the first and second kinds of several orders for real values. The bessel functions are **j0**, **j1**, **jn**, **y0**, **y1**, and **yn**. The functions are located in section **bessel(3M)**.

## THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

### Hyperbolic Functions

These functions are used to compute the hyperbolic sine, cosine, and tangent for real values.

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>cosh</b>	<b>sinh(3M)</b>	Return hyperbolic cosine.
<b>sinh</b>	<b>sinh(3M)</b>	Return hyperbolic sine.
<b>tanh</b>	<b>sinh(3M)</b>	Return hyperbolic tangent.

### Miscellaneous Functions

These functions cover a wide variety of operations, such as natural logarithm, exponential, and absolute value. In addition, several are provided to truncate the integer portion of double precision numbers.

<i>FUNCTION</i>	<i>REFERENCE</i>	<i>BRIEF DESCRIPTION</i>
<b>ceil</b>	<b>floor(3M)</b>	Returns the smallest integer not less than a given value.
<b>exp</b>	<b>exp(3M)</b>	Returns the exponential function of a given value.
<b>fabs</b>	<b>floor(3M)</b>	Returns the absolute value of a given value.
<b>floor</b>	<b>floor(3M)</b>	Returns the largest integer not greater than a given value.
<b>fmod</b>	<b>floor(3M)</b>	Returns the remainder produced by the division of two given values.
<b>gamma</b>	<b>gamma(3M)</b>	Returns the natural log of the absolute value of the result of applying the gamma function to a given value.
<b>hypot</b>	<b>hypot(3M)</b>	Return the square root of the sum of the squares of two numbers.

## THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

<b>log</b>	<b>exp(3M)</b>	Returns the natural logarithm of a given value.
<b>log10</b>	<b>exp(3M)</b>	Returns the logarithm base ten of a given value.
<b>matherr</b>	<b>matherr(3M)</b>	Error-handling function.
<b>pow</b>	<b>exp(3M)</b>	Returns the result of a given value raised to another given value.
<b>sqrt</b>	<b>exp(3M)</b>	Returns the square root of a given value.

# THE OBJECT AND MATH LIBRARIES

**Chapter 5**

**COMPILER AND C LANGUAGE**

	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>USE OF THE COMPILER</b> .....	<b>5-1</b>
<b>COMPILER OPTIONS</b> .....	<b>5-2</b>



## Chapter 5

### COMPILER AND C LANGUAGE

This chapter describes the ICON/UXV Operating System's C compiler, **cc**, and the C programming language that the compiler translates. The compiler is part of the ICON/UXV System Software Generation System (SGS).

The SGS is a package of tools used to create and test programs for UNIX Systems. These tools allow high-level program coding and source-level testing of code. The C language is implemented for high-level programming; it contains many control and structuring facilities that greatly simplify the task of algorithm construction. Within the SGS, a C compiler converts C programs into assembly language programs that are ultimately translated into object files by the assembler, **as**. The link editor, **ld**, collects and merges object files into executable load modules. Each of these tools preserves all symbolic information necessary for meaningful symbolic testing at C-language source level. In addition, a utility package aids in testing and debugging.

The current manual page for the C compiler can be obtained with the SGS command:

```
man cc
```

### USE OF THE COMPILER

The main command of the SGS is **cc**; it operates much like the ICON/UXV **cc** command. To use the compiler, first create a file (typically by using the ICON/UXV text editor) containing C source code. The name of the file created must have a special format; the last two characters of the file name must be **.c** as in *file1.c*.

Next, enter the SGS command

```
cc options file.c
```

to invoke the compiler on the C source file *file.c* with the appropriate *options* selected. The compilation process creates an absolute binary file named **a.out** that reflects the contents of *file.c* and any referenced library routines. The resulting binary file, **a.out**, can then be executed on the target system.

Options can control the steps in the compilation process. When none of the controlling options are used, and only one file is named, **cc** automatically calls the assembler, **as**, and the link editor, **ld**, thus resulting in an executable file, named **a.out**. If more than one file is named in a command,

```
cc file1.c file2.c file3.c
```

## COMPILER AND C LANGUAGE

then the output will be placed on files *file1.o*, *file2.o*, and *file3.o*. These files can then be linked and executed through the `ld` command.

The `cc` compiler also accepts input file names with the last two characters `.s`. The `.s` signifies a source file in assembly language. The `cc` compiler passes this type of file directly to `as`, which assembles the file and places the output on a file of the same name with `.o` substituted for `.s`.

`Cc` is based on a portable C compiler and translates C source files into assembly code. Whenever the command `cc` is used, the standard C preprocessor (which resides on the file `/lib/cpp`) is called. The preprocessor performs file inclusion and macro substitution. The preprocessor is always invoked by `cc` and need not be called directly by the programmer. Then, unless the appropriate flags are set, `cc` calls the assembler and the link editor to produce an executable file.

### COMPILER OPTIONS

All options recognized by the `cc` command are listed below:

<i>Option</i>	<i>Argument</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>-c</code>	none	Suppress the link-editing phase of compilation and force an object file to be produced even if only one file is compiled.
<code>-g</code>	none	Produce symbolic debugging information.
<code>-p</code>	none	Reserved for invoking a profiler.
<code>-D</code>	<i>identifier</i> [= <i>constant</i> ]	Define the external symbol <i>identifier</i> to the preprocessor, and give it the value <i>constant</i> (if specified).
<code>-E</code>	none	Same as the <code>-P</code> option except output is directed to the standard output.
<code>-I</code>	<i>directory</i>	Change the algorithm that searches for <code>#include</code> files whose names do not begin with <code>/</code> to look in the named <i>directory</i> before looking in the directories on the standard list. Thus, <code>#include</code> files whose names are enclosed in "" are searched for

## COMPILER AND C LANGUAGE

first in the directory of the file being compiled, then in directories named by the **-I** options, and last in directories on the standard list. For **#include** files whose names are enclosed in **<>**, the directory of the *file* argument is not searched.

<b>-O</b>	none	Invoke an object code optimizer.
<b>-P</b>	none	Suppress compilation and loading; i.e., invoke only the preprocessor and leave out the output on corresponding files suffixed <b>.i</b> .
<b>-U</b>	<i>identifier</i>	Undefine the named <i>identifier</i> to the preprocessor.
<b>-V</b>	none	Print the version of the assembler that is invoked.
<b>-W</b>	<i>c, arg1[, arg2...]</i>	Pass along the argument(s) <i>argi</i> to pass <i>c</i> , where <i>c</i> is one of <b>[p012a]</b> , indicating preprocessor, compiler first pass, compiler second pass, optimizer, assembler, or link editor, respectively.

This part provides additional information for those options not completely described above.

By using appropriate options, compilation can be terminated early to produce one of several intermediate translations such as relocatable object files (**-c** option), assembly source expansions for C code (**-S** option), or the output of the preprocessor (**-P** option). In general, the intermediate files may be saved and later resubmitted to the **cc** command, with other files or libraries included as necessary.

When compiling C source files, the most common practice is to use the **-c** option to save relocatable files. Subsequent changes to one file do not then require that the others be recompiled. A separate call to **cc** without the **-c** option then creates the linked executable **a.out** file. A relocatable object file created under the **-c** option is named by adding a **.o** suffix to the source file name.

The **-W** option provides the mechanism to specify options for each step that is normally invoked from the **cc** command line. These steps are preprocessing, the first pass of the compiler, the second pass of the compiler, optimization, assembly, and link editing. At this time, only assembler and link editor options can be used with the **-W** option. The most common example of use of the **-W** option is **"-Wa,-m"**, which passes the **-m** option to the assembler. Specifying **"-wl,-m"** passes the **-m** option to the link editor.

## COMPILER AND C LANGUAGE

When the **-P** option is used, the compilation process stops after only preprocessing, with output left on *file.i*. This file will be unsuitable for subsequent processing by **cc**.

The **-O** option decreases the size and increases the execution speed of programs by moving, merging, and deleting code. However, line numbers used for symbolic debugging may be transposed when the optimizer is used.

The **-g** option produces information for a symbolic debugger. The SGS currently supports the SDB symbolic debugger.

## Chapter 6

### A C PROGRAM CHECKER—"lint"

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	6-1
Usage .....	6-1
TYPES OF MESSAGES .....	6-2
Unused Variables and Functions .....	6-3
Set/Used Information .....	6-4
Flow of Control .....	6-4
Function Values .....	6-5
Type Checking .....	6-6
Type Casts .....	6-7
Nonportable Character Use .....	6-7
Assignments of "longs" to "ints" .....	6-8
Strange Constructions .....	6-8
Old Syntax .....	6-9
Pointer Alignment .....	6-10
Multiple Uses and Side Effects .....	6-10



## Chapter 6

# A C PROGRAM CHECKER—"lint"

### GENERAL

The **lint** program examines C language source programs detecting a number of bugs and obscurities. It enforces the type rules of C language more strictly than the C compiler. It may also be used to enforce a number of portability restrictions involved in moving programs between different machines and/or operating systems. Another option detects a number of wasteful or error prone constructions which nevertheless are legal. The **lint** program accepts multiple input files and library specifications and checks them for consistency.

### Usage

The **lint** command has the form:

```
lint [options] files ... library-descriptors ...
```

where *options* are optional flags to control **lint** checking and messages; *files* are the files to be checked which end with **.c** or **.ln**; and *library-descriptors* are the names of libraries to be used in checking the program.

The options that are currently supported by the **lint** command are:

- a** Suppress messages about assignments of long values to variables that are not long.
- b** Suppress messages about break statements that cannot be reached.
- c** Only check for intra-file bugs; leave external information in files suffixed with **.ln**.
- h** Do not apply heuristics (which attempt to detect bugs, improve style, and reduce waste).
- n** Do not check for compatibility with either the standard or the portable **lint** library.
- o name** Create a lint library from input files named **llib-lname.ln**.
- p** Attempt to check portability to other dialects of C language.
- u** Suppress messages about function and external variables used and not defined or defined and not used.

## A C PROGRAM CHECKER—"lint"

- v            Suppress messages about unused arguments in functions.
- x            Do not report variables referred to by external declarations but never used.

When more than one option is used, they should be combined into a single argument, such as, **-ab** or **-xha**.

The names of files that contain C language programs should end with the suffix **.c** which is mandatory or **lint** and the C compiler.

The **lint** program accepts certain arguments, such as:

    -ly

These arguments specify libraries that contain functions used in the C language program. The source code is tested for compatibility with these libraries. This is done by accessing library description files whose names are constructed from the library arguments. These files all begin with the comment:

```
/* LINTLIBRARY */
```

which is followed by a series of dummy function definitions. The critical parts of these definitions are the declaration of the function return type, whether the dummy function returns a value, and the number and types of arguments to the function. The **VARARGS** and **ARGSUSED** comments can be used to specify features of the library functions.

The **lint** library files are processed almost exactly like ordinary source files. The only difference is that functions which are defined on a library file but are not used on a source file do not result in messages. The **lint** program does not simulate a full library search algorithm and will print messages if the source files contain a redefinition of a library routine.

By default, **lint** checks the programs it is given against a standard library file which contains descriptions of the programs which are normally loaded when a C language program is run. When the **-p** option is used, another file is checked containing descriptions of the standard library routines which are expected to be portable across various machines. The **-n** option can be used to suppress all library checking.

## TYPES OF MESSAGES

The following paragraphs describe the major categories of messages printed by **lint**.

### Unused Variables and Functions

As sets of programs evolve and develop, previously used variables and arguments to functions may become unused. It is not uncommon for external variables or even entire functions to become unnecessary and yet not be removed from the source. These types of errors rarely cause working programs to fail, but are a source of inefficiency and make programs harder to understand and change. Also, information about such unused variables and functions can occasionally serve to discover bugs.

The `lint` program prints messages about variables and functions which are defined but not otherwise mentioned. An exception is variables which are declared through explicit `extern` statements but are never referenced; thus the statement

```
extern double sin();
```

will evoke no comment if `sin` is never used. Note that this agrees with the semantics of the C compiler. In some cases, these unused external declarations might be of some interest and can be discovered by using the `-x` option with the `lint` command.

Certain styles of programming require many functions to be written with similar interfaces; frequently, some of the arguments may be unused in many of the calls. The `-v` option is available to suppress the printing of messages about unused arguments. When `-v` is in effect, no messages are produced about unused arguments except for those arguments which are unused and also declared as register arguments. This can be considered an active (and preventable) waste of the register resources of the machine.

Messages about unused arguments can be suppressed for one function by adding the comment:

```
/* ARGSUSED */
```

to the program before the function. This has the effect of the `-v` option for only one function. Also, the comment:

```
/* VARARGS */
```

can be used to suppress messages about variable number of arguments in calls to a function. The comment should be added before the function definition. In some cases, it is desirable to check the first several arguments and leave the later arguments unchecked. This can be done with a digit giving the number of arguments which should be checked. For example:

```
/* VARARGS2 */
```

will cause only the first two arguments to be checked.

## A C PROGRAM CHECKER—"lint"

There is one case where information about unused or undefined variables is more distracting than helpful. This is when **lint** is applied to some but not all files out of a collection which are to be loaded together. In this case, many of the functions and variables defined may not be used. Conversely, many functions and variables defined elsewhere may be used. The **-u** option may be used to suppress the spurious messages which might otherwise appear.

### Set/Used Information

The **lint** program attempts to detect cases where a variable is used before it is set. The **lint** program detects local variables (automatic and register storage classes) whose first use appears physically earlier in the input file than the first assignment to the variable. It assumes that taking the address of a variable constitutes a "use", since the actual use may occur at any later time, in a data dependent fashion.

The restriction to the physical appearance of variables in the file makes the algorithm very simple and quick to implement since the true flow of control need not be discovered. It does mean that **lint** can print messages about some programs which are legal, but these programs would probably be considered bad on stylistic grounds. Because static and external variables are initialized to zero, no meaningful information can be discovered about their uses. The **lint** program does deal with initialized automatic variables.

The set/used information also permits recognition of those local variables which are set and never used. These form a frequent source of inefficiencies and may also be symptomatic of bugs.

### Flow of Control

The **lint** program attempts to detect unreachable portions of the programs which it processes. It will print messages about unlabeled statements immediately following **goto**, **break**, **continue**, or **return** statements. An attempt is made to detect loops which can never be left at the bottom and to recognize the special cases **while(1)** and **for(;;)** as infinite loops. The **lint** program also prints messages about loops which cannot be entered at the top. Some valid programs may have such loops which are considered to be bad style at best and bugs at worst.

The **lint** program has no way of detecting functions which are called and never returned. Thus, a call to **exit** may cause an unreachable code which **lint** does not detect. The most serious effects of this are in the determination of returned function values (see "Function Values"). If a particular place in the program cannot be reached but it is not apparent to **lint**, the comment

```
/* NOTREACHED */
```

can be added at the appropriate place. This comment will inform **lint** that a portion of the program cannot be reached.

The **lint** program will not print a message about unreachable **break** statements. Programs generated by **yacc** and especially **lex** may have hundreds of unreachable **break** statements. The **-O** option in the C compiler will often eliminate the resulting object code inefficiency.

Thus, these unreachable statements are of little importance. There is typically nothing the user can do about them, and the resulting messages would clutter up the `lint` output. If these messages are desired, `lint` can be invoked with the `-b` option.

### Function Values

Sometimes functions return values that are never used. Sometimes programs incorrectly use function "values" that have never been returned. The `lint` program addresses this problem in a number of ways.

Locally, within a function definition, the appearance of both

```
return( expr );
```

and

```
return ;
```

statements is cause for alarm; the `lint` program will give the message

```
function name contains return(e) and return
```

The most serious difficulty with this is detecting when a function return is implied by flow of control reaching the end of the function. This can be seen with a simple example:

```
f ( a ) {
    if ( a ) return ( 3 );
    g ();
}
```

Notice that, if *a* tests false, *f* will call *g* and then return with no defined return value; this will trigger a message from `lint`. If *g*, like `exit`, never returns, the message will still be produced when in fact nothing is wrong.

In practice, some potentially serious bugs have been discovered by this feature.

On a global scale, `lint` detects cases where a function returns a value that is sometimes or never used. When the value is never used, it may constitute an inefficiency in the function definition. When the value is sometimes unused, it may represent bad style (e.g., not testing for error conditions).

The dual problem, using a function value when the function does not return one, is also detected. This is a serious problem.

## A C PROGRAM CHECKER—"lint"

### Type Checking

The **lint** program enforces the type checking rules of C language more strictly than the compilers do. The additional checking is in four major areas:

- Across certain binary operators and implied assignments
- At the structure selection operators
- Between the definition and uses of functions
- In the use of enumerations.

There are a number of operators which have an implied balancing between types of the operands. The assignment, conditional (?:), and relational operators have this property. The argument of a **return** statement and expressions used in initialization suffer similar conversions. In these operations, **char**, **short**, **int**, **long**, **unsigned**, **float**, and **double** types may be freely intermixed. The types of pointers must agree exactly except that arrays of *x*'s can, of course, be intermixed with pointers to *x*'s.

The type checking rules also require that, in structure references, the left operand of the **->** be a pointer to structure, the left operand of the **.** be a structure, and the right operand of these operators be a member of the structure implied by the left operand. Similar checking is done for references to unions.

Strict rules apply to function argument and return value matching. The types **float** and **double** may be freely matched, as may the types **char**, **short**, **int**, and **unsigned**. Also, pointers can be matched with the associated arrays. Aside from this, all actual arguments must agree in type with their declared counterparts.

With enumerations, checks are made that enumeration variables or members are not mixed with other types or other enumerations and that the only operations applied are **=**, initialization, **==**, **!=**, and function arguments and return values.

If it is desired to turn off strict type checking for an expression, the comment

```
/* NOSTRICT */
```

should be added to the program immediately before the expression. This comment will prevent strict type checking for only the next line in the program.

**Type Casts**

The type cast feature in C language was introduced largely as an aid to producing more portable programs. Consider the assignment

```
p = 1 ;
```

where *p* is a character pointer. The **lint** program will print a message as a result of detecting this. Consider the assignment

```
p = (char *)1 ;
```

in which a cast has been used to convert the integer to a character pointer. The programmer obviously had a strong motivation for doing this and has clearly signaled his intentions. It seems harsh for **lint** to continue to print messages about this. On the other hand, if this code is moved to another machine, such code should be looked at carefully. The **-c** flag controls the printing of comments about casts. When **-c** is in effect, casts are treated as though they were assignments subject to messages; otherwise, all legal casts are passed without comment, no matter how strange the type mixing seems to be.

**Nonportable Character Use**

On some systems, characters are signed quantities with a range from -128 to 127. On other C language implementations, characters take on only positive values. Thus, **lint** will print messages about certain comparisons and assignments as being illegal or nonportable. For example, the fragment

```
char c;
...
if( (c = getchar()) < 0 ) ...
```

will work on one machine but will fail on machines where characters always take on positive values. The real solution is to declare *c* as an integer since **getchar** is actually returning integer values. In any case, **lint** will print the message "nonportable character comparison".

A similar issue arises with bit fields. When assignments of constant values are made to bit fields, the field may be too small to hold the value. This is especially true because on some machines bit fields are considered as signed quantities. While it may seem logical to consider that a two-bit field declared of type **int** cannot hold the value 3, the problem disappears if the bit field is declared to have type **unsigned**

## A C PROGRAM CHECKER—"lint"

### Assignments of "longs" to "ints"

Bugs may arise from the assignment of **long** to an **int**, which will truncate the contents. This may happen in programs which have been incompletely converted to use **typedefs**. When a **typedef** variable is changed from **int** to **long**, the program can stop working because some intermediate results may be assigned to **ints**, which are truncated. Since there are a number of legitimate reasons for assigning **longs** to **ints**, the detection of these assignments is enabled by the **-a** option.

### Strange Constructions

Several perfectly legal, but somewhat strange, constructions are detected by **lint**. The messages hopefully encourage better code quality, clearer style, and may even point out bugs. The **-h** option is used to suppress these checks. For example, in the statement

```
*p++;
```

the **\*** does nothing. This provokes the message "null effect" from **lint**. The following program fragment:

```
unsigned x ;  
if( x < 0 ) ...
```

results in a test that will never succeed. Similarly, the test

```
if( x > 0 ) ...
```

is equivalent to

```
if( x != 0 )
```

which may not be the intended action. The **lint** program will print the message "degenerate unsigned comparison" in these cases. If a program contains something similar to

```
if( 1 != 0 ) ...
```

**lint** will print the message "constant in conditional context" since the comparison of 1 with 0 gives a constant result.

Another construction detected by **lint** involves operator precedence. Bugs which arise from misunderstandings about the precedence of operators can be accentuated by spacing and formatting, making such bugs extremely hard to find. For example, the statement

```
if( x&077 == 0 ) ...
```

or

```
x<<2 + 40
```

probably do not do what was intended. The best solution is to parenthesize such expressions, and **lint** encourages this by an appropriate message.

Finally, when the **-h** option has not been used, **lint** prints messages about variables which are redeclared in inner blocks in a way that conflicts with their use in outer blocks. This is legal but is considered to be bad style, usually unnecessary, and frequently a bug.

#### Old Syntax

Several forms of older syntax are now illegal. These fall into two classes - assignment operators and initialization.

The older forms of assignment operators (e.g., **=+**, **=**, ...) could cause ambiguous expressions, such as:

```
a ==-1 ;
```

which could be taken as either

```
a ==- 1 ;
```

or

```
a = -1 ;
```

The situation is especially perplexing if this kind of ambiguity arises as the result of a macro substitution. The newer and preferred operators (e.g., **+=**, **-=**, ...) have no such ambiguities. To encourage the abandonment of the older forms, **lint** prints messages about these old-fashioned operators.

A similar issue arises with initialization. The older language allowed

```
int x 1 ;
```

## A C PROGRAM CHECKER—"lint"

to initialize  $x$  to 1. This also caused syntactic difficulties. For example, the initialization

```
int x ( -1 );
```

looks somewhat like the beginning of a function definition:

```
int x ( y ) { . . .
```

and the compiler must read past  $x$  in order to determine the correct meaning. Again, the problem is even more perplexing when the initializer involves a macro. The current syntax places an equals sign between the variable and the initializer:

```
int x = -1 ;
```

This is free of any possible syntactic ambiguity.

### Pointer Alignment

Certain pointer assignments may be reasonable on some machines and illegal on others due entirely to alignment restrictions. The `lint` program tries to detect cases where pointers are assigned to other pointers and such alignment problems might arise. The message "possible pointer alignment problem" results from this situation.

### Multiple Uses and Side Effects

In complicated expressions, the best order in which to evaluate subexpressions may be highly machine dependent. For example, on machines in which the stack runs backwards, function arguments will probably be best evaluated from right to left. On machines with a stack running forward, left to right seems most attractive. Function calls embedded as arguments of other functions may or may not be treated similarly to ordinary arguments. Similar issues arise with other operators which have side effects, such as the assignment operators and the increment and decrement operators.

In order that the efficiency of C language on a particular machine not be unduly compromised, the C language leaves the order of evaluation of complicated expressions up to the local compiler. In fact, the various C compilers have considerable differences in the order in which they will evaluate complicated expressions. In particular, if any variable is changed by a side effect and also used elsewhere in the same expression, the result is explicitly undefined.

The `lint` program checks for the important special case where a simple scalar variable is affected. For example, the statement

```
a[i] = b[i++];
```

will cause `lint` to print the message

warning: i evaluation order undefined

in order to call attention to this condition.

**A C PROGRAM CHECKER—"lint"**

## Chapter 7

### SYMBOLIC DEBUGGING PROGRAM—"sdb"

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	7-1
USAGE .....	7-1
Printing a Stack Trace .....	7-2
Examining Variables .....	7-2
SOURCE FILE DISPLAY AND MANIPULATION .....	7-5
Displaying the Source File .....	7-6
Changing the Current Source File or Function .....	7-6
Changing the Current Line in the Source File .....	7-6
A CONTROLLED ENVIRONMENT FOR PROGRAM TESTING .....	7-7
Setting and Deleting Breakpoints .....	7-7
Running the Program .....	7-8
Calling Functions .....	7-9
MACHINE LANGUAGE DEBUGGING .....	7-10
Displaying Machine Language Statements .....	7-10
Manipulating Registers .....	7-10
OTHER COMMANDS .....	7-11



## Chapter 7

# SYMBOLIC DEBUGGING PROGRAM—"sdb"

### GENERAL

This chapter describes the symbolic debugger **sdb(1)** as implemented for the C language and Fortran 77 programs on ICON/UXV. The **sdb** program is useful both for examining "core images" of aborted programs and for providing an environment in which execution of a program can be monitored and controlled.

The **sdb** program allows interaction with a debugged program at the source language level. When debugging a core image from an aborted program, **sdb** reports which line in the source program caused the error and allows all variables to be accessed symbolically and to be displayed in the correct format.

Breakpoints may be placed at selected statements or the program may be single stepped on a line-by-line basis. To facilitate specification of lines in the program without a source listing, **sdb** provides a mechanism for examining the source text. Procedures may be called directly from the debugger. This feature is useful both for testing individual procedures and for calling user-provided routines which provided formatted printout of structured data.

### USAGE

In order to use **sdb** to its full capabilities, it is necessary to compile the source program with the **-g** option. This causes the compiler to generate additional information about the variables and statements of the compiled program. When the **-g** option has been specified, **sdb** can be used to obtain a trace of the called functions at the time of the abort and interactively display the values of variables.

A typical sequence of **shell** commands for debugging a core image is

```
$ cc -g prgm.c -o prgm
$ prgm
Bus error - core dumped
$ sdb prgm
main:25:    x[i] = 0;
*
```

The program **prgm** was compiled with the **-g** option and then executed. An error occurred which caused a core dump. The **sdb** program is then invoked to examine the core dump to determine the cause of the error. It reports that the bus error occurred in function *main* at line 25 (line numbers are always relative to the beginning of the file) and outputs the source text of the offending line. The **sdb** program then prompts the user with an **\*** indicating that it awaits a command.

## sdb

It is useful to know that **sdb** has a notion of current function and current line. In this example, they are initially set to *main* and "25", respectively.

In the above example, **sdb** was called with one argument, *prgm*. In general, it takes three arguments on the command line. The first is the name of the executable file which is to be debugged; it defaults to *a.out* when not specified. The second is the name of the core file, defaulting to *core*; and the third is the name of the directory containing the source of the program being debugged. The **sdb** program currently requires all source to reside in a single directory. The default is the working directory. In the example, the second and third arguments defaulted to the correct values, so only the first was specified.

It is possible that the error occurred in a function which was not compiled with the **-g** option. In this case, **sdb** prints the function name and the address at which the error occurred. The current line and function are set to the first executable line in *main*. The **sdb** program will print an error message if *main* was not compiled with the **-g** option, but debugging can continue for those routines compiled with the **-g** option. Figure 7-1 shows a typical example of **sdb** usage.

### Printing a Stack Trace

It is often useful to obtain a listing of the function calls which led to the error. This is obtained with the **t** command. For example:

```
*t
sub(x=2,y=3) [prgm.c:25]
inter(i=16012) [prgm.c:96]
main(argc=1,argv=0x7ffff54,envp=0x7ffff5c)[prgm.c:15]
```

This indicates that the error occurred within the function *sub* at line 25 in file *prgm.c*. The *sub* function was called with the arguments *x=2* and *y=3* from *inter* at line 96. The *inter* function was called from *main* at line 15. The *main* function is always called by the **shell** with three arguments often referred to as *argc*, *argv*, and *envp*. Note that *argv* and *envp* are pointers, so their values are printed in hexadecimal.

### Examining Variables

The **sdb** program can be used to display variables in the stopped program. Variables are displayed by typing their name followed by a slash, so

```
*errflag/
```

causes **sdb** to display the value of variable *errflag*. Unless otherwise specified, variables are assumed to be either local to or accessible from the current function. To specify a different function, use the form

```
*sub:i/
```

to display variable *i* in function *sub*. F77 users can specify a common block variable in the same manner.

The **sdb** program supports a limited form of pattern matching for variable and function names. The symbol **\*** is used to match any sequence of characters of a variable name and **?** to match any single character. Consider the following commands

```
*x*/
*sub:y?/
**/
```

The first prints the values of all variables beginning with *x*, the second prints the values of all two letter variables in function *sub* beginning with *y*, and the last prints all variables. In the first and last examples, only variables accessible from the current function are printed. The command

```
**:/
```

displays the variables for each function on the call stack.

The **sdb** program normally displays the variable in a format determined by its type as declared in the source program. To request a different format, a specifier is placed after the slash. The specifier consists of an optional length specification followed by the format. The length specifiers are:

- b**           · One byte
- h**           Two bytes (half word)
- l**           Four bytes (long word).

The lengths are effective only with the formats **d**, **o**, **x**, and **u**. If no length is specified, the word length of the host machine is used. A numeric length specifier may be used for the **s** or **a** commands. These commands normally print characters until either a null is reached or 128 characters are printed. The number specifies how many characters should be printed.

There are a number of format specifiers available:

- c**           Character.
- d**           Decimal.

## **sdb**

- u**        Decimal unsigned.
- o**        Octal.
- x**        Hexadecimal.
- f**        32-bit single-precision floating point.
- g**        64-bit double-precision floating point.
- s**        Assume variable is a string pointer and print characters starting at the address pointed to by the variable until a null is reached.
- a**        Print characters starting at the variable's address until a null is reached.
- p**        Pointer to function.
- i**        Interpret as a machine-language instruction.

For example, the variable *i* can be displayed with

```
*i/x
```

which prints out the value of *i* in hexadecimal.

The **sdb** program also knows about structures, arrays, and pointers so that all of the following commands work.

```
*array[2][3]/  
*sym.id/  
*psym->usage/  
*xsym[20].p->usage/
```

The only restriction is that array subscripts must be numbers. Depending on your machine, accessing arrays may be limited to 1-dimensional arrays. Note that as a special case:

```
*psym->/d
```

displays the location pointed to by *psym* in decimal.

Core locations can also be displayed by specifying their absolute addresses. The command

```
*1024/
```

displays location 1024 in decimal. As in C language, numbers may also be specified in octal or hexadecimal so the above command is equivalent to both

```
*02000/
```

and

```
*0x400/
```

It is possible to mix numbers and variables so that

```
*1000.x/
```

refers to an element of a structure starting at address 1000, and

```
*1000->x/
```

refers to an element of a structure whose address is at 1000. For commands of the type `*1000.x/` and `*1000->x/`, the **sdb** program uses the structure template of the last structured referenced.

The address of a variable is printed with the `=`, so

```
*i=
```

displays the address of `i`. Another feature whose usefulness will become apparent later is the command

```
*./
```

which redisplay the last variable typed.

## SOURCE FILE DISPLAY AND MANIPULATION

The **sdb** program has been designed to make it easy to debug a program without constant reference to a current source listing. Facilities are provided which perform context searches within the source files of the program being debugged and to display selected portions of the source files. The commands are similar to those of the system text editor `ed(1)`. Like the editor, **sdb** has a notion of current file and line within the file. The **sdb** program also knows how the lines of a file are partitioned into functions, so it also has a notion of current function. As noted in other parts of this document, the current function is used by a number of **sdb** commands.

**sdb**

### Displaying the Source File

Four commands exist for displaying lines in the source file. They are useful for perusing the source program and for determining the context of the current line. The commands are:

- p** Prints the current line.
- w** Window; prints a window of ten lines around the current line.
- z** Prints ten lines starting at the current line. Advances the current line by ten.
- control-d** Scrolls; prints the next ten lines and advances the current line by ten. This command is used to cleanly display long segments of the program.

When a line from a file is printed, it is preceded by its line number. This not only gives an indication of its relative position in the file but is also used as input by some **sdb** commands.

### Changing the Current Source File or Function

The **e** command is used to change the current source file. Either of the forms

- \*e function
- \*e file.c

may be used. The first causes the file containing the named function to become the current file, and the current line becomes the first line of the function. The other form causes the named file to become current. In this case, the current line is set to the first line of the named file. Finally, an **e** command with no argument causes the current function and file named to be printed.

### Changing the Current Line in the Source File

The **z** and **control-d** commands have a side effect of changing the current line in the source file. The following paragraphs describe other commands that change the current line.

There are two commands for searching for instances of regular expressions in source files. They are

- \*/regular expression/
- \*?regular expression?

The first command searches forward through the file for a line containing a string that matches the regular expression and the second searches backwards. The trailing / and ? may be omitted from these commands. Regular expression matching is identical to that of **ed(1)**.

The + and - commands may be used to move the current line forwards or backwards by a specified number of lines. Typing a new-line advances the current line by one, and typing a number causes that line to become the current line in the file. These commands may be combined with the display commands so that

```
*+15z
```

advances the current line by 15 and then prints ten lines.

## A CONTROLLED ENVIRONMENT FOR PROGRAM TESTING

One very useful feature of **sdb** is breakpoint debugging. After entering **sdb**, certain lines in the source program may be specified to be *breakpoints*. The program is then started with a **sdb** command. Execution of the program proceeds as normal until it is about to execute one of the lines at which a breakpoint has been set. The program **stops** and **sdb** reports the breakpoint where the program stopped. Now, **sdb** commands may be used to display the trace of function calls and the values of variables. If the user is satisfied the program is working correctly to this point, some breakpoints can be deleted and others set; then program execution may be continued from the point where it stopped.

A useful alternative to setting breakpoints is single stepping. The **sdb** program can be requested to execute the next line of the program and then stop. This feature is especially useful for testing new programs, so they can be verified on a statement-by-statement basis. If an attempt is made to single step through a function which has not been compiled with the **-g** option, execution proceeds until a statement in a function compiled with the **-g** option is reached. It is also possible to have the program execute one machine level instruction at a time. This is particularly useful when the program has not been compiled with the **-g** option.

### Setting and Deleting Breakpoints

Breakpoints can be set at any line in a function which contains executable code. The command format is:

```
*12b
*proc:12b
*proc:b
*b
```

The first form sets a breakpoint at line 12 in the current file. The line numbers are relative to the beginning of the file as printed by the source file display commands. The second form sets a breakpoint at line 12 of function *proc*, and the third sets a breakpoint at the first line of *proc*. The last sets a breakpoint at the current line.

Breakpoints are deleted similarly with the commands

**sdb**

```
*12d
*proc:12d
*proc:d
```

In addition, if the command **d** is given alone, the breakpoints are deleted interactively. Each breakpoint location is printed, and a line is read from the user. If the line begins with a **y** or **d**, the breakpoint is deleted.

A list of the current breakpoints is printed in response to a **B** command, and the **D** command deletes all breakpoints. It is sometimes desirable to have **sdb** automatically perform a sequence of commands at a breakpoint and then have execution continue. This is achieved with another form of the **b** command.

```
*12b t;x/
```

causes both a trace back and the value of *x* to be printed each time execution gets to line 12. The **a** command is a variation of the above command. There are two forms:

```
*proc:a
*proc:12a
```

The first prints the function name and its arguments each time it is called, and the second prints the source line each time it is about to be executed. For both forms of the **a** command, execution continues after the function name or source line is printed.

### Running the Program

The **r** command is used to begin program execution. It restarts the program as if it were invoked from the **shell**. The command

```
*r args
```

runs the program with the given arguments as if they had been typed on the **shell** command line. If no arguments are specified, then the arguments from the last execution of the program are used. To run a program with no arguments, use the **R** command.

After the program is started, execution continues until a breakpoint is encountered, a signal such as **INTERRUPT** or **QUIT** occurs, or the program terminates. In all cases after an appropriate message is printed, control returns to **sdb**.

The **c** command may be used to continue execution of a stopped program. A line number may be specified, as in:

\*proc:12c

This places a temporary breakpoint at the named line. The breakpoint is deleted when the **c** command finishes. There is also a **c** command which continues but passes the signal which stopped the program back to the program. This is useful for testing user-written signal handlers. Execution may be continued at a specified line with the **g** command. For example:

\*17 g

continues at line 17 of the current function. A use for this command is to avoid executing a section of code which is known to be bad. The user should not attempt to continue execution in a function different than that of the breakpoint.

The **s** command is used to run the program for a single line. It is useful for slowly executing the program to examine its behavior in detail. An important alternative is the **S** command. This command is like the **s** command but does not stop within called functions. It is often used when one is confident that the called function works correctly but is interested in testing the calling routine.

The **i** command is used to run the program one machine level instruction at a time while ignoring the signal which stopped the program. Its uses are similar to the **s** command. There is also an **I** command which causes the program to execute one machine level instruction at a time, but also passes the signal which stopped the program back to the program.

### Calling Functions

It is possible to call any of the functions of the program from **sdb**. This feature is useful both for testing individual functions with different arguments and for calling a function which prints structured data in a nice way. There are two ways to call a function:

```
*proc(arg1, arg2, ...)
*proc(arg1, arg2, ...)/m
```

The first simply executes the function. The second is intended for calling functions (it executes the function and prints the value that it returns). The value is printed in decimal unless some other format is specified by *m*. Arguments to functions may be integer, character or string constants, or values of variables which are accessible from the current function.

An unfortunate bug in the current implementation is that if a function is called when the program is *not* stopped at a breakpoint (such as when a core image is being debugged) all variables are initialized before the function is started. This makes it impossible to use a function which formats data from a dump.

**sdb**

## MACHINE LANGUAGE DEBUGGING

The **sdb** program has facilities for examining programs at the machine language level. It is possible to print the machine language statements associated with a line in the source and to place breakpoints at arbitrary addresses. The **sdb** program can also be used to display or modify the contents of the machine registers.

### Displaying Machine Language Statements

To display the machine language statements associated with line 25 in function *main*, use the command

```
*main:25?
```

The **?** command is identical to the **/** command except that it displays from text space. The default format for printing text space is the **i** format which interprets the machine language instruction. The **control-d** command may be used to print the next ten instructions.

Absolute addresses may be specified instead of line numbers by appending a **:** to them so that

```
*0x1024:?
```

displays the contents of address *0x1024* in text space. Note that the command

```
*0x1024?
```

displays the instruction corresponding to line *0x1024* in the current function. It is also possible to set or delete a breakpoint by specifying its absolute address;

```
*0x1024:b
```

sets a breakpoint at address *0x1024*.

### Manipulating Registers

The **x** command prints the values of all the registers. Also, individual registers may be named instead of variables by appending a **%** to their name so that

```
*r3%
```

displays the value of register *r3*.

## OTHER COMMANDS

To exit **sdb**, use the **q** command.

The **!** command is identical to that in **ed(1)** and is used to have the **shell** execute a command.

It is possible to change the values of variables when the program is stopped at a breakpoint. This is done with the command

```
*variable!value
```

which sets the variable to the given value. The value may be a number, character constant, register, or the name of another variable. If the variable is of type float or double, the value can also be a floating-point constant.

```
$ cat testdiv2.c
main(argc, argv, envp)
char **argv, **envp; {
    int i;
    i = div2(-1);
    printf("-1/2 = %d\n", i);
}
div2(i) {
    int j;
    j = i>>1;
    return(j);
}
$ cc -g testdiv2.c
$ a.out
-1/2 = -1
$ sdb
No core image      # Warning message from sdb
*/^div2           # Search for function "div2"
7: div2(i) {       # It starts on line 7
*z               # Print the next few lines
7: div2(i) {
8:  int j;
9:  j = i>>1;
10: return(j);
11: }
*div2:b          # Place breakpoint at beginning of "div2"
div2:9 b        # Sdb echoes proc name and line number
*r             # Run the function
a.out          # Sdb echoes command line executed
Breakpoint at # Executions stops just before line 9
div2:9:  j = i>>1;
*t         # Print trace of subroutine calls
div2(i=-1) [testdiv2.c:9]
```

## sdb

```
main(argc=1,argv=0x7ffff50,envp=0x7ffff58)[testdiv2.c:4]
*i/      # Print i
-1
*s       # Single step
div2:10: return(j); # Execution stops before line 10
*j/      # Print j
-1
*9d     # Delete the breakpoint
*div2(1)/ # Try running "div2" with different arguments
0
*div2(-2)/
-1
*div2(-3)/
-2
*q
$
```

Figure 7-1. EXAMPLE OF sdb USAGE

## Chapter 8

### ICON/UXV FORTRAN SYSTEM COMMANDS

An ICON/UXV Fortran 77 user should be familiar with the following commands:

- **f77** [options] files - This command invokes the ICON/UXV Fortran 77 compiler
- **ratfor** [options] [files] - This command invokes the Ratfor preprocessor
- **efl** [options] [files] - This command compiles a program written in Extended Fortran Language (EFL) into clean Fortran
- **asa** [files] - This command interprets the output of Fortran programs that utilize ASA carriage control characters
- **fsplit** options files - This command splits the named file(s) into separate files, with one procedure per file.

For more information about the above commands, see the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*.



**Chapter 9**  
**FORTRAN 77**

	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>USAGE</b> .....	<b>9-1</b>
<b>LANGUAGE EXTENSIONS</b> .....	<b>9-1</b>
<b>Double Complex Data Type</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
<b>Internal Files</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
<b>Implicit Undefined Statement</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
<b>Recursion</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
<b>Automatic Storage</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
<b>Variable Length Input Lines</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
<b>Include Statement</b> .....	<b>9-3</b>
<b>Binary Initialization Constants</b> .....	<b>9-3</b>
<b>Character Strings</b> .....	<b>9-3</b>
<b>Hollerith</b> .....	<b>9-4</b>
<b>Equivalence Statements</b> .....	<b>9-4</b>
<b>One-Trip DO Loops</b> .....	<b>9-4</b>
<b>Commas in Formatted Input</b> .....	<b>9-5</b>
<b>Short Integers</b> .....	<b>9-5</b>
<b>Additional Intrinsic Functions</b> .....	<b>9-5</b>
<b>VIOLATIONS OF THE STANDARD</b> .....	<b>9-8</b>
<b>Double Precision Alignment</b> .....	<b>9-8</b>
<b>Dummy Procedure Arguments</b> .....	<b>9-8</b>
<b>T and TL Formats</b> .....	<b>9-8</b>
<b>INTERPROCEDURE INTERFACE</b> .....	<b>9-9</b>
<b>Procedure Names</b> .....	<b>9-9</b>
<b>Data Representations</b> .....	<b>9-9</b>
<b>Return Values</b> .....	<b>9-9</b>
<b>Argument Lists</b> .....	<b>9-10</b>
<b>FILE FORMATS</b> .....	<b>9-11</b>
<b>Structure of Fortran Files</b> .....	<b>9-11</b>
<b>Preconnected Files and File Positions</b> .....	<b>9-11</b>



## Chapter 9

### FORTRAN 77

This chapter describes the compiler and run-time system for Fortran 77 as implemented in ICON/UXV. This chapter also describes the interfaces between procedures and the file formats assumed by the I/O system.

#### USAGE

The command to run the compiler is

**f77** options file

The **f77(1)** command is a general purpose command for compiling and loading Fortran and Fortran-related files into an executable module. EFL (compiler) and Ratfor (preprocessor) source files will be translated into Fortran before being presented to the Fortran compiler. The **f77** command invokes the C compiler to translate C source files and invokes the assembler to translate assembler source files. Object files will be link edited. [The **f77(1)** and **cc(1)** commands have slightly different link editing sequences. Fortran programs need two extra libraries (libI77.a, libF77.a) and an additional startup routine.] The following file name suffixes are understood:

<b>.f</b>	Fortran source file
<b>.e</b>	EFL source file
<b>.r</b>	Ratfor source file
<b>.c</b>	C language source file
<b>.s</b>	Assembler source file
<b>.o</b>	Object file.

#### LANGUAGE EXTENSIONS

Fortran 77 includes almost all of Fortran 66 as a subset. The most important additions are a character string data type, file-oriented input/output statements, and random access I/O. Also, the language has been cleaned up considerably.

In addition to implementing the language specified in the Fortran 77 American National Standard, this compiler implements a few extensions. Most are useful additions to the language. The remainder are extensions to make it easier to communicate with C language procedures or to permit compilation of old (1966 Standard Fortran) programs.

## FORTRAN 77

### Double Complex Data Type

The data type `double complex` is added. Each datum is represented by a pair of double-precision real variables. A double complex version of every `complex` built-in function is provided.

### Internal Files

The Fortran 77 American National Standard introduces *internal files* (memory arrays) but restricts their use to formatted sequential I/O statements. This I/O system also permits internal files to be used in direct and unformatted reads and writes.

### Implicit Undefined Statement

Fortran has a rule that the type of a variable that does not appear in a type statement is `integer` if its first letter is *i, j, k, l, m* or *n*. Otherwise, it is `real`. Fortran 77 has an `implicit` statement for overriding this rule. An additional type statement, *undefined*, is permitted. The statement

```
implicit undefined(a-z)
```

turns off the automatic data typing mechanism, and the compiler will issue a diagnostic for each variable that is used but does not appear in a type statement. Specifying the `-u` compiler option is equivalent to beginning each procedure with this statement.

### Recursion

Procedures may call themselves directly or through a chain of other procedures.

### Automatic Storage

Two new keywords recognized are `static` and `automatic`. These keywords may appear as "types" in type statements and in `implicit` statements. Local variables are `static` by default; there is exactly one copy of the datum, and its value is retained between calls. There is one copy of each variable declared `automatic` for each invocation of the procedure. Automatic variables may not appear in `equivalence`, `data`, or `save` statements.

### Variable Length Input Lines

The Fortran 77 American National Standard expects input to the compiler to be in a 72-column format: except in comment lines, the first five characters are the statement number, the next is the continuation character, and the next 66 are the body of the line. (If there are fewer than 72 characters on a line, the compiler pads it with blanks; characters after the first 72 are ignored.) In order to make it easier to type Fortran programs, this compiler also accepts input in variable length lines. An ampersand (&) in the first position of a line indicates a continuation line; the remaining characters form the body of the line. A tab character in one of the first six positions of a line signals the end of the statement number and continuation part of the line; the remaining characters form the body of the line. A tab elsewhere on the line is treated as another kind of blank by the compiler.

In the Fortran 77 Standard, there are only 26 letters.

— Fortran is a one-case language. Consistent with ordinary system usage, the new compiler expects lowercase input. By default, the compiler converts all uppercase characters to lowercase except those inside character constants. However, if the `-U` compiler option is specified, uppercase letters are not transformed. In this mode, it is possible to specify external names with uppercase letters in them and to have distinct variables differing only in case. In this mode only lowercase keywords are recognized.

### Include Statement

The statement

```
include "stuff"
```

is replaced by the contents of the file *stuff*. Includes may be nested to a reasonable depth, currently ten.

### Binary Initialization Constants

A **logical**, **real**, or **integer** variable may be initialized in a `data` statement by a binary constant, denoted by a letter followed by a quoted string. If the letter is *b*, the string is binary, and only zeroes and ones are permitted. If the letter is *o*, the string is octal with digits *zero* through *seven*. If the letter is *z* or *x*, the string is hexadecimal with digits *zero* through *nine*, *a* through *f*. Thus, the statements

```
integer a(3)
data a/b'1010',o'12',z'a'/
```

initialize all three elements of *a* to ten.

### Character Strings

For compatibility with C language usage, the following backslash escapes are recognized:

<code>\n</code>	New-line
<code>\t</code>	Tab
<code>\b</code>	Backspace
<code>\f</code>	Form feed
<code>\0</code>	Null

## FORTRAN 77

- \'        Apostrophe (does not terminate a string)
- \''        Quotation mark (does not terminate a string)
- \\        \
- \x        Where x is any other character.

Fortran 77 only has one quoting character — the apostrophe ('). This compiler and I/O system recognize both the apostrophe and the double quote ("). If a string begins with one variety of quote mark, the other may be embedded within it without using the repeated quote or backslash escapes.

Every unequivallenced scalar local character variable and every character string constant is aligned on an integer word boundary. Each character string constant appearing outside a data statement is followed by a null character to ease communication with C language routines.

### Hollerith

Fortran 77 does not have the old Hollerith (nh) notation though the new Standard recommends implementing the old Hollerith feature in order to improve compatibility with old programs. In this compiler, Hollerith data may be used in place of character string constants and may also be used to initialize non-character variables in data statements.

### Equivalence Statements

This compiler permits single subscripts in **equivalence** statements under the interpretation that all missing subscripts are equal to 1. A warning message is printed for each such incomplete subscript.

### One-Trip DO Loops

The Fortran 77 American National Standard requires that the range of a **do** loop not be performed if the initial value is already past the limit value, as in

```
do 10 i = 2, 1
```

The 1966 Standard stated that the effect of such a statement was undefined, but it was common practice that the range of a **do** loop would be performed at least once. In order to accommodate old programs in violation of the 1966 Standard, the **-onetrip** compiler option causes nonstandard loops to be generated.

### Commas in Formatted Input

The I/O system attempts to be more lenient than the Fortran 77 American National Standard when it seems worthwhile. When doing a formatted read of non-character variables, commas may be used as value separators in the input record overriding the field lengths given in the format statement. Thus, the format

```
(i10, f20.10, i4)
```

will read the record

```
-345,.05e-3,12
```

correctly.

### Short Integers

On machines that support half word integers, the compiler accepts declarations of type **integer\*2**. (Ordinary integers follow the Fortran rules about occupying the same space as a REAL variable; they are assumed to be of C language type **long int**; half word integers are of C language type **short int**.) An expression involving only objects of type **integer\*2** is of that type. Generic functions return short or long integers depending on the actual types of their arguments. If a procedure is compiled using the **-I2** flag, all small integer constants will be of type **integer\*2**. If the precision of an integer-valued intrinsic function is not determined by the generic function rules, one will be chosen that returns the prevailing length (**integer\*2** when the **-I2** command flag is in effect). When the **-I2** option is in effect, all quantities of type **logical** will be short. Note that these short integer and logical quantities do not obey the standard rules for storage association.

### Additional Intrinsic Functions

This compiler supports all of the intrinsic functions specified in the Fortran 77 Standard. In addition, there are functions for performing bitwise Boolean operations (**or**, **and**, **xor**, and **not**) and for accessing the command arguments (**getarg** and **iargc**).

The following lists the Fortran intrinsic function library plus some additional functions. These functions are automatically available to the Fortran programmer and require no special invocation of the compiler. The asterisk (\*) beside some of the commands indicates they are not part of standard F77. In parenthesis beside each function description listed below is the location for the command in the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*.

The following is a revised list that includes the additional F77 1.1 functions:

**FORTRAN 77**

**abort\*** Terminate program [**abort**(3F)]  
**abs** Absolute value [**max**(3F)]  
**acos** Arccosine [**acos**(3F)]  
**aimag** Imaginary part of complex argument [**aimag**(3F)]  
**aint** Integer part [**aint**(3F)]  
**alog** Natural logarithm [**log**(3F)]  
**alog10** Common logarithm [**log10**(3F)]  
**amax0** Maximum value [**max**(3F)]  
**amax1** Maximum value [**max**(3F)]  
**amin0** Minimum value [**min**(3F)]  
**amin1** Minimum value [**min**(3F)]  
**amod** Remaindering [**mod**(3F)]  
**and\*** Bitwise Boolean [**bool**(3F)]  
**anint** Nearest integer [**round**(3F)]  
**asin** Arcsine [**asin**(3F)]  
**atan** Arctangent [**atan**(3F)]  
**atan2** Arctangent [**atan2**(3F)]  
**btest\*** Bit field manipulation function  
 [**mil**(3F)]  
**cabs** Complex absolute value [**abs**(3F)]  
**ccos** Complex cosine [**cos**(3F)]  
**cexp** Complex exponential [**exp**(3F)]  
**char** Explicit type conversion [**Ftype**(3F)]  
**clog** Complex natural logarithm [**log**(3F)]  
**cmplx** Explicit type conversion [**Ftype**(3F)]  
**conjg** Complex conjugate [**conjg**(3F)]  
**cos** Cosine [**cos**(3F)]  
**cosh** Hyperbolic cosine [**cosh**(3F)]  
**csin** Complex sine [**sin**(3F)]  
**csqrt** Complex square root [**sqrt**(3F)]  
**dabs** Absolute value [**abs**(3F)]  
**dacos** Arccosine [**acos**(3F)]  
**dasin** Arcsine [**asin**(3F)]  
**datan** Arctangent [**atan**(3F)]  
**datan2** Double precision arctangent [**atan2**(3F)]  
**dbl** Explicit type conversion [**ftype**(3F)]  
**dcmplx\*** Explicit type conversion [**ftype**(3F)]  
**dconjg\*** Complex conjugate [**conjg**(3F)]  
**dcos** Cosine [**cos**(3F)]  
**dcosh** Hyperbolic cosine [**cosh**(3F)]  
**ddim** Positive difference [**dim**(3F)]  
**dexp** Exponential [**exp**(3F)]  
**dim** Positive difference [**dim**(3F)]  
**dimag\*** Imaginary part of complex argument [**aimag**(3F)]  
**dint** Integer part [**aint**(3F)]  
**dlog** Natural logarithm [**log**(3F)]  
**dlog10** Common logarithm [**log10**(3F)]  
**dmax1** Maximum value [**max**(3F)]  
**dmin1** Minimum value [**min**(3F)]  
**dmod** Remaindering [**dmod**(3F)]  
**dnint** Nearest integer [**round**(3F)]  
**dprod** Double precision product [**dprod**(3F)]  
**dsign** Transfer of sign [**sign**(3F)]  
**dsin** Sine [**sin**(3F)]  
**dsinh** Hyperbolic sine [**sinh**(3F)]  
**dsqrt** Square root [**sqrt**(3F)]  
**dtan** Tangent [**tan**(3F)]  
**dtanh** Hyperbolic tangent [**tanh**(3F)]  
**exp** Exponential [**exp**(3F)]  
**float** Explicit type conversion [**ftype**(3F)]  
**getarg\*** Return command-line argument [**getarg**(3F)]

**getenv\*** Return environment variable [getenv(3F)]  
**iabs** Absolute value [abs(3F)]  
**iand\*** Bit field manipulation intrinsic functions  
     [mil(3F)]  
**iargc** Return number of arguments [iargc(3F)]  
**ibclr\*** Bit field manipulation intrinsic functions  
     [mil(3F)]  
**ibits\*** Bit field manipulation intrinsic functions  
     [mil(3F)]  
**ibset\*** Bit field manipulation intrinsic functions  
     [mil(3F)]  
**ichar** Explicit type conversion [ftype(3F)]  
**idim** Positive difference [dim(3F)]  
**idint** Explicit type conversion [ftype(3F)]  
**idnint** Nearest integer [round(3F)]  
**ieor\*** Bit field manipulation intrinsic functions  
     [mil(3F)]  
**ifix** Explicit type conversion [ftype(3F)]  
**index** Return location of substring [index(3F)]  
**int** Explicit type conversion [ftype(3F)]  
**ior\*** Bit field manipulation intrinsic function  
     [mil(3F)]  
**irand\*** Random number generator [rand(3F)]  
**ishft\*** Bit field manipulation intrinsic function  
     [mil(3F)]  
**ishftc\*** Bit field manipulation intrinsic function  
     [mil(3F)]  
**isign** Transfer of sign [sign(3F)]  
**len** Return location of string [len(3F)]  
**lge** String comparison [strcmp(3F)]  
**lgt** String comparison [strcmp(3F)]  
**lle** String comparison [strcmp(3F)]  
**llt** String comparison [strcmp(3F)]  
**log** Natural logarithm [log(3F)]  
**log10** Common logarithm [log10(3F)]  
**lshift\*** Bitwise Boolean [bool(3F)]  
**max** Maximum value [max(3F)]  
**max0** Maximum value [max(3F)]  
**max1** Maximum value [max(3F)]  
**mclock\*** Return Fortran time accounting [mclock(3F)]  
**min** Minimum value [min(3F)]  
**min0** Minimum value [min(3F)]  
**min1** Minimum value [min(3F)]  
**mod** Remaindering [mod(3F)]  
**nint** Nearest integer [bool(3F)]  
**not\*** Bitwise Boolean [bool(3F)]  
**or\*** Bitwise Boolean [bool(3F)]  
**rand\*** Random number generator [rand(3F)]  
**real** Explicit type conversion [ftype(3F)]  
**rshift\*** Bitwise Boolean [bool(3F)]  
**sign** Transfer of sign [sign(3F)]  
**signal\*** Specify action on receipt of system signal  
     [signal(3F)]  
**sin** Sine [sine(3F)]  
**sinh** Hyperbolic sine [sinh(3F)]  
**sngl** Explicit type conversion [ftype(3F)]  
**sqrt** Square root [sqrt(3F)]  
**srand\*** Random number generator [rand(3F)]  
**strcmp** String comparison [strcmp(3F)]  
**system\*** Issue a shell command [system(3F)]  
**tan** Tangent [tan(3F)]

## FORTRAN 77

**tanh** Hyperbolic tangent [**tanh**(3F)]  
**xor\*** Bitwise Boolean [**bool**(3F)]  
**zabs\*** Complex absolute value [**abs**(3F)].

For more information on the Fortran intrinsic function commands, see the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*.

## VIOLATIONS OF THE STANDARD

The following paragraphs describe only three known ways in which this implementation of Fortran 77 violates the new American National Standard.

### Double Precision Alignment

The Fortran 77 American National Standard permits **common** or **equivalence** statements to force a double precision quantity onto an odd word boundary, as in the following example:

```
real a(4)
double precision b,c
equivalence (a(1),b), (a(4),c)
```

Some machines require that double precision quantities be on double word boundaries; other machines run inefficiently if this alignment rule is not observed. It is possible to tell which equivalenced and common variables suffer from a forced odd alignment, but every double-precision argument would have to be assumed on a bad boundary. To load such a quantity on some machines, it would be necessary to use two separate operations. The first operation would be to move the upper and lower halves into the halves of an aligned temporary. The second would be to load that double-precision temporary. The reverse would be needed to store a result. All double-precision real and complex quantities are required to fall on even word boundaries on machines with corresponding hardware requirements and to issue a diagnostic if the source code demands a violation of the rule.

### Dummy Procedure Arguments

If any argument of a procedure is of type character, all dummy procedure arguments of that procedure must be declared in an **external** statement. This requirement arises as a subtle corollary of the way we represent character string arguments. A warning is printed if a dummy procedure is not declared **external**. Code is correct if there are no **character** arguments.

### T and TL Formats

The implementation of the **t** (absolute tab) and **tl** (leftward tab) format codes is defective. These codes allow rereading or rewriting part of the record which has already been processed. The implementation uses "seeks"; so if the unit is not one which allows seeks (such as a terminal) the program is in error. A benefit of the implementation chosen is that there is no upper limit on the length of a record nor is it necessary to predeclare any record lengths except where specifically required by Fortran or the operating system.

## INTERPROCEDURE INTERFACE

To be able to write C language procedures that call or are called by Fortran procedures, it is necessary to know the conventions for procedure names, data representation, return values, and argument lists that the compiled code obeys.

### Procedure Names

Under ICON/UXV operating systems, the name of a common block or a Fortran procedure has an underscore appended to it by the compiler to distinguish it from a C language procedure or external variable with the same user-assigned name. Fortran library procedure names have embedded underscores to avoid clashes with user-assigned subroutine names.

### Data Representations

The following is a table of corresponding Fortran and C language declarations:

Fortran	C Language
integer*2 x	short int x;
integer x	long int x;
logical x	long int x;
real x	float x;
double precision x	double x;
complex x	struct { float r, i; } x;
double complex x	struct { double dr, di; } x;
character*6 x	char x[6];

By the rules of Fortran, **integer**, **logical**, and **real** data occupy the same amount of memory.

### Return Values

A function of type **integer**, **logical**, **real**, or **double precision** declared as a C language function returns the corresponding type. A **complex** or **double complex** function is equivalent to a C language routine with an additional initial argument that points to the place where the return value is to be stored. Thus, the following:

```
complex function f( . . . )
```

is equivalent to

```
struct { float r, i; } temp;
f_(&temp, . . . )
. . .
```

A character-valued function is equivalent to a C language routine with two extra initial arguments — a data address and a length. Thus,

```
character*15 function g( . . . )
```

## **FORTRAN 77**

is equivalent to

```
char result[ ];  
long int length;  
g_(result, length, . . . )  
...
```

and could be invoked in C language by

```
char chars[15];  
...  
g_(chars, 15L, . . . );
```

Subroutines are invoked as if they were **integer**-valued functions whose value specifies which alternate return to use. Alternate return arguments (statement labels) are not passed to the function but are used to do an indexed branch in the calling procedure. (If the subroutine has no entry points with alternate return arguments, the returned value is undefined.) The statement

```
call nret(*1, *2, *3)
```

is treated exactly as if it were the computed **goto**

```
goto (1, 2, 3), nret( )
```

### **Argument Lists**

All Fortran arguments are passed by address. In addition, for every argument that is of type character or that is a dummy procedure, an argument giving the length of the value is passed. (The string lengths are **long int** quantities passed by value.) The order of arguments is then:

```
Extra arguments for complex and character functions  
Address for each datum or function  
A long int for each character or procedure argument.
```

Thus, the call in

```
external f  
character*7 s  
integer b(3)  
...  
call sam(f, b(2), s)
```

is equivalent to that in

```

int f();
char s[7];
long int b[3];
...
sam_(f, &b[1], s, 0L, 7L);

```

Note that the first element of a C language array always has subscript 0, but Fortran arrays begin at 1 by default. Fortran arrays are stored in column-major order; C language arrays are stored in row-major order.

## FILE FORMATS

### Structure of Fortran Files

Fortran requires four kinds of external files: *sequential formatted* and *unformatted*, and *direct formatted* and *unformatted*. Under ICON/UXV operating systems, these are all implemented as ordinary files which are assumed to have the proper internal structure.

Fortran I/O is based on "records." When a direct file is opened in a Fortran program, the record length of the records must be given; and this is used by the Fortran I/O system to make the file look as if it is made up of records of the given length. In the special case that the record length is given as 1, the files are not considered to be divided into records but are treated as byte-addressable byte strings; i.e., as ordinary files under the ICON/UXV operating system. (A read or write request on such a file keeps consuming bytes until satisfied rather than being restricted to a single record.)

The peculiar requirements on sequential unformatted files make it unlikely that they will ever be read or written by any means except Fortran I/O statements. Each record is preceded and followed by an integer containing the record's length in bytes.

The Fortran I/O system breaks sequential formatted files into records while reading by using each new-line as a record separator. The result of reading off the end of a record is undefined according to the Fortran 77 American National Standard. The I/O system is permissive and treats the record as being extended by blanks. On output, the I/O system will write a new-line at the end of each record. It is also possible for programs to write new-lines for themselves. This is an error, but the only effect will be that the single record the user thought was written will be treated as more than one record when being read or backspaced over.

### Preconnected Files and File Positions

Units 5, 6, and 0 are preconnected when the program starts. Unit 5 is connected to the standard input, unit 6 is connected to the standard output, and unit 0 is connected to the standard error unit. All are connected for sequential formatted I/O.

All the other units are also preconnected when execution begins. Unit *n* is connected to a file named *fort.n*. These files need not exist nor will they be created unless their units are used without first executing an *open*. The default connection is for sequential formatted I/O.

## **FORTRAN 77**

The Fortran 77 Standard does not specify where a file which has been explicitly **opened** for sequential I/O is initially positioned. In fact, the I/O system attempts to position the file at the end. A **write** will append to the file and a **read** will result in an "end of file" indication. To position a file to its beginning, use a **rewind** statement. The preconnected units 0, 5, and 6 are positioned as they come from the parent process.

## Chapter 10

### RATFOR

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	10-1
USAGE.....	10-1
STATEMENT GROUPING.....	10-1
THE "if-else" CONSTRUCTION .....	10-2
Nested "if" Statements.....	10-3
THE "switch" STATEMENT .....	10-4
THE "do" STATEMENT .....	10-5
THE "break" AND "next" STATEMENTS.....	10-5
THE "while" STATEMENT.....	10-6
THE "for" STATEMENT .....	10-7
THE "repeat-until" STATEMENT.....	10-8
THE "return" STATEMENT .....	10-8
THE "define" STATEMENT .....	10-9
THE "include" STATEMENT .....	10-9
FREE-FORM INPUT .....	10-10
TRANSLATIONS.....	10-10
WARNINGS .....	10-11
EXAMPLE OF RATFOR CONVERSION.....	10-12



## Chapter 10

### RATFOR

#### GENERAL

This chapter describes the Ratfor(1) preprocessor. It is assumed that the user is familiar with the current implementation of Fortran 77 in the ICON/UXV operating system.

The Ratfor language allows users to write Fortran programs in a fashion similar to C language. The Ratfor program is implemented as a preprocessor that translates this "simplified" language into Fortran. The facilities provided by Ratfor are:

- Statement grouping
- if-else and switch for decision making
- while, for, do, and repeat-until for looping
- break and next for controlling loop exits
- Free form input such as multiple statements/lines and automatic continuation
- Simple comment convention
- Translation of  $>$ ,  $\geq$ , etc., into .gt., .ge., etc.
- return statement for functions
- define statement for symbolic parameters
- include statement for including source files.

#### USAGE

The Ratfor program takes either a list of file names or the standard input and writes Fortran on the standard output. Options include **-bx**, which uses x as a continuation character in column 6 (the ICON/UXV system uses ¢ in column 1), **-h**, which causes quoted strings to be turned into nH constructs and **-C**, which causes Ratfor comments to be copied into the generated Fortran.

#### STATEMENT GROUPING

The Ratfor language provides a statement grouping facility. A group of statements can be treated as a unit by enclosing them in the braces { and }. For example, the Ratfor code

```
if (x > 100)
  { call error("x>100"); err = 1; return }
```

will be translated by the Ratfor preprocessor into **Fortran** equivalent to

## RATFOR

```
    if (x .le. 100) goto 10
        call error(5hx>100)
        err = 1
        return
10    ...
```

which should simplify programming effort. By using { and }, a group of statements can be used instead of a single statement.

Also note in the previous Ratfor example that the character > was used instead of .GT. in the if statement. The Ratfor preprocessor translates this C language type operator to the appropriate Fortran operator. More on relationship operators later.

In addition, many Fortran compilers permit character strings in quotes (like "x>100"). But others, like ANSI Fortran 66, do not. Ratfor converts it into the right number of Hz.

The Ratfor language is free form. Statements may appear anywhere on a line, and several may appear on one line if they are separated by semicolons. The previous example could also be written as

```
    if (x > 100) {
        call error("x>100")
        err = 1
        return
    }
```

which shows grouped statements spread over several lines. In this case, no semicolon is needed at the end of each line because Ratfor assumes there is one statement per line unless told otherwise.

Of course, if the statement that follows the if is a single statement, no braces are needed.

### THE "if-else" CONSTRUCTION

The Ratfor language provides an **else** statement. The syntax of the **if-else** construction is:

```
    if (legal Fortran condition)
        ratfor statement
    else
        ratfor statement
```

where the **else** part is optional. The legal Fortran condition is anything that can legally go into a Fortran Logical **IF** statement. The Ratfor preprocessor does not check this clause since it does not know enough Fortran to know what is permitted. The "ratfor" statement is any

Ratfor or Fortran statement or any collection of them in braces. For example:

```

if (a <= b)
  { sw = 0; write(6, 1) a, b }
else
  { sw = 1; write(6, 1) b, a }

```

is a valid Ratfor **if-else** construction. This writes out the smaller of a and b, then the larger, and sets sw appropriately.

As before, if the statement following an **if** or an **else** is a single statement, no braces are needed.

#### Nested "if" Statements

The statement that follows an **if** or an **else** can be any Ratfor statement including another **if** or **else** statement. In general, the structure

```

if (condition) action
else if (condition) action
else action

```

provides a way to write a multibranch in Ratfor. (The Ratfor language also provides a **switch** statement which could be used instead, under certain conditions.) The last **else** handles the "default" condition. If there is no default action, this final **else** can be omitted. Thus, only the actions associated with the valid condition are performed. For example:

```

if (x < 0)
  x = 0
else if (x > 100)
  x = 100

```

will ensure that  $x$  is not less than 0 and not greater than 100.

Nested **if** and **else** statements could result in ambiguous code. In Ratfor when there are more **if** statements than **else** statements, **else** statements are associated with the closest previous **if** statement that currently does not have an associated **else** statement. For example:

```

if (x > 0)
  if (y > 0)
    write(6,1) x, y
  else
    write(6,2) y

```

## RATFOR

is interpreted by the Ratfor preprocessor as

```
if (x > 0) {  
    if (y > 0)  
        write(6, 1) x, y  
    else  
        write(6, 2) y  
}
```

in which the braces are assumed. If the other association is desired it must be written as

```
if (x > 0) {  
    if (y > 0)  
        write(6, 1) x, y  
}  
else  
    write(6, 2) y
```

with the braces specified.

## THE "switch" STATEMENT

The **switch** statement provides a way to express multiway branches which branch on the value of some *integer*-valued expression. The syntax is

```
switch (expression) {  
    case expr1 :  
        statements  
    case expr2, expr3 :  
        statements  
    ...  
    default :  
        statements  
}
```

where each **case** is followed by an integer expression (or several integer expressions separated by commas). The **switch expression** is compared to each **case expr** until a match is found. Then the *statements* following that **case** are executed. If no **cases** match *expression*, then the *statements* following **default** are executed. The **default** section of a **switch** is optional.

When the *statements* associated with a **case** are executed, the entire **switch** is exited immediately. This is different from C language.

## THE "do" STATEMENT

The **do** statement in Ratfor is quite similar to the **DO** statement in Fortran except that it uses no statement number (braces are used to mark the end of the **do** instead of a statement number). The syntax of the **ratfor do** statement is

```
do legal-Fortran-DO-text {
  ratfor statements
}
```

The *legal-Fortran-DO-text* must be something that can legally be used in a Fortran **DO** statement. Thus if a local version of Fortran allows **DO** limits to be expressions (which is not currently permitted in ANSI Fortran 66), they can be used in a **ratfor do** statement. The *ratfor statements* are enclosed in braces; but as with the **if**, a single statement need not have braces around it. For example, the following code sets an array to zero:

```
do i = 1, n
  x(i) = 0.0
```

and the code

```
do i = 1, n
  do j = 1, n
    m(i, j) = 0
```

sets the entire array *m* to zero.

## THE "break" AND "next" STATEMENTS

The Ratfor **break** and **next** statements provide a means for leaving a loop early and one for beginning the next iteration. The **break** causes an immediate exit from the **do**; in effect, it is a branch to the statement *after* the **do**. The **next** is a branch to the bottom of the loop, so it causes the next iteration to be done. For example, this code skips over negative values in an array

```
do i = 1, n {
  if (x(i) < 0.0)
    next
  process positive element
}
```

The **break** and **next** statements will also work in the other Ratfor looping constructions and will be discussed with each looping construction.

## RATFOR

The **break** and **next** can be followed by an integer to indicate breaking or iterating that level of enclosing loop. For example:

```
break 2
```

exits from two levels of enclosing loops, and

```
break 1
```

is equivalent to **break**. The

```
next 2
```

iterates the second enclosing loop.

## THE "while" STATEMENT

The Ratfor language provides a **while** statement. The syntax of the **while** statement is

```
while (legal-Fortran-condition)  
  ratfor statement
```

As with the **if**, legal-Fortran-condition is something that can go into a Fortran Logical **IF**, and ratfor statement is a single statement which may be multiple statements enclosed in braces.

For example, suppose nextch is a function which returns the next input character both as a function value and in its argument. Then a **while** loop to find the first nonblank character could be

```
while (nextch(ich) == iblank)  
  ;
```

where a semicolon by itself is a null statement (which is necessary here to mark the end of the **while**). If the semicolon were not present, the **while** would control the next statement. When the loop is exited, ich contains the first nonblank.

## THE "for" STATEMENT

The **for** statement is another Ratfor loop. A **for** statement allows explicit initialization and increment steps as part of the statement.

The syntax of the **for** statement is

```
for ( init ; condition ; increment )
      ratfor statement
```

where *init* is any single Fortran statement which is executed once before the loop begins. The increment is any single Fortran statement that is executed at the end of each pass through the loop before the test. The *condition* is again anything that is legal in a Fortran Logical **IF**. Any of init, condition, and increment may be omitted although the semicolons must always be present. A nonexistent condition is treated as always true, so

```
for (;;)
```

is an infinite loop.

For example, a Fortran **DO** loop could be written as

```
for (i = 1; i <= n; i = i + 1) ...
```

which is equivalent to

```
i = 1
while (i <= n) {
    ...
    i = i + 1
}
```

The initialization and increment of *i* have been moved into the **for** statement.

The **for**, **do**, and **while** versions have the advantage that they will be done zero times if *n* is less than 1. In addition, the **break** and **next** statements work in a **for** loop.

The *increment* in a **for** need not be an arithmetic progression. The program

```
sum = 0.0
for (i = first; i > 0; i = ptr(i))
    sum = sum + value(i)
```

## RATFOR

steps through a list (stored in an integer array *ptr*) until a zero pointer is found while adding up elements from a parallel array of values. Notice that the code also works correctly if the list is empty.

### THE "repeat-until" STATEMENT

There are times when a test needs to be performed at the bottom of a loop after one pass through. This facility is provided by the **repeat-until** statement. The syntax for the **repeat-until** statement is

```
repeat  
  ratfor statement  
until (legal-Fortran-condition )
```

where ratfor-statement is done once, then the *condition* is evaluated. If it is true, the loop is exited; if it is false, another pass is made.

The **until** part is optional, so a **repeat** by itself is an infinite loop. A **repeat-until** loop can be exited by the use of a **stop**, **return**, or **break** statement or an implicit stop such as running out of input with a **READ** statement.

As stated before, a **break** statement causes an immediate exit from the enclosing **repeat-until** loop. A **next** statement will cause a skip to the bottom of a **repeat-until** loop (i.e., to the **until** part).

### THE "return" STATEMENT

The standard Fortran mechanism for returning a value from a routine uses the name of the routine as a variable. This variable can be assigned a value. The last value stored in it is the value returned by the function. For example, in a Fortran routine named *equal*, the statements

```
equal = 0  
return
```

cause *equal* to return zero.

The Ratfor language provides a **return** statement similar to the C language **return** statement. In order to return a value from any routine, the **return** statement has the syntax

```
return ( expression )
```

where *expression* is the value to be returned.

If there is no parenthesized expression after **return**, no value is returned.

### THE "define" STATEMENT

The Ratfor language provides a **define** statement similar to the C language version. Any string of alphanumeric characters can be defined as a name. Whenever that name occurs in the input (delimited by nonalphanumerics), it is replaced by the rest of the definition line. (Comments and trailing white spaces are stripped off.) A defined name can be arbitrarily long and must begin with a letter.

Usually the **define** statement is used for symbolic parameters. The syntax of the **define** statement is

```
define name value
```

where *name* is a symbolic name that represents the quantity of *value*. For example:

```
define ROWS 100
define CLOS 50
dimension a(ROWS), b(ROWS, COLS)
    if (i > ROWS | j > COLS) ...
```

causes the preprocessor to replace the name *ROWS* with the value *100* and the name *COLS* with the value *50*. Alternately, definitions may be written as

```
define(ROWS, 100)
```

in which case the defining text is everything after the comma up to the right parenthesis. This allows multiple-line definitions.

### THE "include" STATEMENT

The Ratfor language provides an **include** statement similar to the **#include** <...> statement in C language. The syntax for this statement is

```
include file
```

which inserts the contents of the named file into the Ratfor input file in place of the **include** statement. The standard usage is to place **COMMON** blocks on a file and use the **include** statement to include the common code whenever needed.

## RATFOR

### FREE-FORM INPUT

In Ratfor, statements can be placed anywhere on a line. Long statements are continued automatically as are long conditions in **if**, **for**, and **until** statements. Blank lines are ignored. Multiple statements may appear on one line if they are separated by semicolons. No semicolon is needed at the end of a line if Ratfor can make some reasonable guess about whether the statement ends there. Lines ending with any of the characters

= + - \* , | & ( \_

are assumed to be continued on the next line. Underscores are discarded wherever they occur. All other characters remain as part of the statement.

Any statement that begins with an all-numeric field is assumed to be a Fortran label and placed in columns 1 through 5 upon output. Thus:

```
write(6, 100); 100 format("hello")
```

is converted into

```
100      write(6, 100)
        format(5hello)
```

### TRANSLATIONS

When the **-h** option is chosen, text enclosed in matching single or double quotes is converted to *nH...* but is otherwise unaltered (except for formatting — it may get split across card boundaries during the reformatting process). Within quoted strings, the backslash (\) serves as an escape character; i.e., the next character is taken literally. This provides a way to get quotes and the backslash itself into quoted strings. For example:

```
"\"'
```

is a string containing a backslash and an apostrophe. (This is not the standard convention of doubled quotes, but it is easier to use and more general.)

Any line that begins with the character **%** is left absolutely unaltered except for stripping off the **%** and moving the line one position to the left. This is useful for inserting control cards and other things that should not be preprocessed (like an existing Fortran program). Use **%** only for ordinary statements not for the condition parts of **if**, **while**, etc., or the output may come out in an unexpected place.

The following character translations are made (except within single or double quotes or on a line beginning with a **%**):

```

== .eq.
!= .ne.
> .gt.
>= .ge.
< .lt.
<= .le.
& .and.
| .or.
! .not.

```

In addition, the following translations are provided for input devices with restricted character sets:

```

[ {
] }
$( {
$) }

```

## WARNINGS

The Ratfor preprocessor catches certain syntax errors (such as missing braces), **else** statements without **if** statements, and most errors involving missing parentheses in statements.

All other errors are reported by the Fortran compiler. Unfortunately, the Fortran compiler prints messages in terms of generated Fortran code and not in terms of the Ratfor code. This makes it difficult to locate Ratfor statements that contain errors.

The keywords are reserved. Using **if**, **else**, **while**, etc., as variable names will cause considerable problems. Likewise, spaces within keywords and use of the Arithmetic **IF** will cause problems.

The Fortran *nH* convention is not recognized by Ratfor. Use quotes instead.

## RATFOR

### EXAMPLE OF RATFOR CONVERSION

As an example of how to use the Ratfor program, the following program **prog.r** (where the **.r** indicates a Ratfor source program), is written in the Ratfor language:

```
      ICNT=0
10  WRITE(6,31)
31  FORMAT("INPUT FIRST NUMBER")
      READ(5,32) A
32  FORMAT(F10.2)
      WRITE(6,33)
33  FORMAT("INPUT SECOND NUMBER")
      READ(5,34) B
34  FORMAT(F10.2)
      IF(A<B)
          WRITE(6,36) A,B
      ELSE WRITE(6,37)A,B
36  FORMAT(F10.2," < ",F10.2)
37  FORMAT(F10.2," >= ",F10.2)
      ICNT=ICNT+1
      IF(ICNT.EQ.5)
          GOTO 100
      GOTO 10
100  END
```

The command

```
ratfor prog.r > prog.f
```

causes the Fortran translation program **prog.f** to be produced. (The Ratfor program **prog.r** remains intact.) The Fortran program **prog.f** follows:

```

        icnt=0
10      write(6,31)
31      format("INPUT FIRST NUMBER")
        read(5,32) a
32      format(f10.2)
        write(6,33)
33      format("INPUT SECOND NUMBER")
        read(5,34) b
34      format(f10.2)
        if(.not.(a.lt.b))goto 23000
        write(6,36) a,b
        goto 23001
23000   continue
        write(6,37)a,b
23001   continue
36      format(f10.2," < ",f10.2)
37      format(f10.2," >= ",f10.2)
        icnt=icnt+1
        if(.not.(icnt.eq.5))goto 23002
        goto 100
23002   continue
        goto 10
100     end

```

The Fortran program **prog.f** is compiled using the command

```
f77 prog.f
```

An object program file **prog.o** and a final output file **a.out** are produced. Since the output file **a.out** is an executable file, the command

```
a.out
```

causes the program to run.

The Ratfor program **prog.r** can also be translated and compiled with the single command

```
f77 prog.r
```

where the **.r** indicates a Ratfor source program. An object file **prog.o** and a final output file **a.out** are produced.

**RATFOR**

**NOTES**

## Chapter 11

### THE PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE EFL

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	11-1
LEXICAL FORM .....	11-2
PROGRAM FORM .....	11-6
DATA TYPES AND VARIABLES .....	11-8
EXPRESSIONS .....	11-10
DECLARATIONS .....	11-17
EXECUTABLE STATEMENTS .....	11-20
PROCEDURES .....	11-29
ATAVISMS .....	11-32
COMPILER OPTIONS .....	11-35
EXAMPLES .....	11-37
PORTABILITY .....	11-40
DIFFERENCES BETWEEN RATFOR AND EFL .....	11-41
COMPILER .....	11-42
CONSTRAINTS ON EFL .....	11-44



## Chapter 11

# THE PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE EFL

### INTRODUCTION

EFL is a clean, general purpose computer language intended to encourage portable programming. It has a uniform and readable syntax and good data and control flow structuring. EFL programs can be translated into efficient Fortran code, so the EFL programmer can take advantage of the ubiquity of Fortran, the valuable libraries of software written in that language, and the portability that comes with the use of a standardized language, without suffering from Fortran's many failings as a language. It is especially useful for numeric programs. Thus, the EFL language permits the programmer to express complicated ideas in a comprehensible way, while permitting access to the power of the Fortran environment.

The name EFL originally stood for "Extended Fortran Language." The current compiler is much more than a simple preprocessor: it attempts to diagnose all syntax errors, to provide readable Fortran output, and to avoid a number of niggling restrictions.

In examples and syntax specifications, **boldface** type is used to indicate literal words and punctuation, such as **while**. Words in *italic* type indicate an item in a category, such as an *expression*. A construct surrounded by double brackets represents a list of one or more of those items, separated by commas. Thus, the notation

[ *item* ]

could refer to any of the following:

*item*  
*item, item*  
*item, item, item*

The reader should have a fair degree of familiarity with some procedural language. There will be occasional references to Ratfor and to Fortran which may be ignored if the reader is unfamiliar with those languages.

## LEXICAL FORM

### Character Set

The following characters are legal in an EFL program:

<i>letters</i>	<b>a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z</b>
<i>digits</i>	<b>0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9</b>
<i>white space</i>	<i>blank tab</i>
<i>quotes</i>	' "
<i>sharp</i>	#
<i>continuation</i>	-
<i>braces</i>	{ }
<i>parentheses</i>	( )
<i>other</i>	, ; : . + - * / = < > & ~ ! \$

Letter case (upper or lower) is ignored except within strings, so "a" and "A" are treated as the same character. All of the examples below are printed in lower case. An exclamation mark ("!") may be used in place of a tilde ("~"). Square brackets ("[" and "]") may be used in place of braces ("{" and "}").

### Lines

EFL is a line-oriented language. Except in special cases (discussed below), the end of a line marks the end of a token and the end of a statement. The trailing portion of a line may be used for a comment. There is a mechanism for diverting input from one source file to another, so a single line in the program may be replaced by a number of lines from the other file. Diagnostic messages are labeled with the line number of the file on which they are detected.

### White Space

Outside of a character string or comment, any sequence of one or more spaces or tab characters acts as a single space. Such a space terminates a token.

### Comments

A comment may appear at the end of any line. It is introduced by a sharp (#) character, and continues to the end of the line. (A sharp inside of a quoted string does not mark a comment.) The sharp and succeeding characters on the line are discarded. A blank line is also a comment. Comments have no effect on execution.

***Include Files***

It is possible to insert the contents of a file at a point in the source text, by referencing it in a line like

```
include joe
```

No statement or comment may follow an **include** on a line. In effect, the **include** line is replaced by the lines in the named file, but diagnostics refer to the line number in the included file. **Includes** may be nested at least ten deep.

***Continuation***

Lines may be continued explicitly by using the underscore (`_`) character. If the last character of a line (after comments and trailing white space have been stripped) is an underscore, the end of a line and the initial blanks on the next line are ignored. Underscores are ignored in other contexts (except inside of quoted strings). Thus

```
1_000_000_  
000
```

equals @10 sup 9@.

There are also rules for continuing lines automatically: the end of line is ignored whenever it is obvious that the statement is not complete. To be specific, a statement is continued if the last token on a line is an operator, comma, left brace, or left parenthesis. (A statement is not continued just because of unbalanced braces or parentheses.) Some compound statements are also continued automatically; these points are noted in the sections on executable statements.

***Multiple Statements on a Line***

A semicolon terminates the current statement. Thus, it is possible to write more than one statement on a line. A line consisting only of a semicolon, or a semicolon following a semicolon, forms a null statement.

***Tokens***

A program is made up of a sequence of tokens. Each token is a sequence of characters. A blank terminates any token other than a quoted string. End of line also terminates a token unless explicit continuation (see above) is signaled by an underscore.

## EFL

### *Identifiers*

An identifier is a letter or a letter followed by letters or digits. The following is a list of the reserved words that have special meaning in EFL. They will be discussed later.

<b>array</b>	<b>exit</b>	<b>precision</b>
<b>automatic</b>	<b>external</b>	<b>procedure</b>
<b>break</b>	<b>false</b>	<b>read</b>
<b>call</b>	<b>field</b>	<b>readbin</b>
<b>case</b>	<b>for</b>	<b>real</b>
<b>character</b>	<b>function</b>	<b>repeat</b>
<b>common</b>	<b>go</b>	<b>return</b>
<b>complex</b>	<b>goto</b>	<b>select</b>
<b>continue</b>	<b>if</b>	<b>short</b>
<b>debug</b>	<b>implicit</b>	<b>sizeof</b>
<b>default</b>	<b>include</b>	<b>static</b>
<b>define</b>	<b>initial</b>	<b>struct</b>
<b>dimension</b>	<b>integer</b>	<b>subroutine</b>
<b>do</b>	<b>internal</b>	<b>true</b>
<b>double</b>	<b>lengthof</b>	<b>until</b>
<b>doubleprecision</b>	<b>logical</b>	<b>value</b>
<b>else</b>	<b>long</b>	<b>while</b>
<b>end</b>	<b>next</b>	<b>write</b>
<b>equivalence</b>	<b>option</b>	<b>writebin</b>

The use of these words is discussed below. These words may not be used for any other purpose.

### *Strings*

A character string is a sequence of characters surrounded by quotation marks. If the string is bounded by single-quote marks ( ' ), it may contain double quote marks ( " ), and vice versa. A quoted string may not be broken across a line boundary.

```
'hello there'  
"ain't misbehavin'"
```

### *Integer Constants*

An integer constant is a sequence of one or more digits.

```
0  
57  
123456
```

***Floating Point Constants***

A floating point constant contains a dot and/or an exponent field. An *exponent field* is a letter *d* or *e* followed by an optionally signed integer constant. If *I* and *J* are integer constants and *E* is an exponent field, then a floating constant has one of the following forms:

*.I*  
*I.*  
*I.J*  
*IE*  
*I.E*  
*.IE*  
*I.JE*

***Punctuation***

Certain characters are used to group or separate objects in the language. These are

parentheses	( )
braces	{ }
comma	,
semicolon	;
colon	:
end-of-line	

The end-of-line is a token (statement separator) when the line is neither blank nor continued.

***Operators***

The EFL operators are written as sequences of one or more non-alphanumeric characters.

+ - \* / \*\*  
 < <= > >= == ~=  
 && || & !  
 += -= /= \*\*=  
 &&= ||= &= |=  
 -> . \$

A dot (".") is an operator when it qualifies a structure element name, but not when it acts as a decimal point in a numeric constant. There is a special mode (see "ATAVISM") in which some of the operators may be represented by a string consisting of a dot, an identifier, and a dot (e.g., *.lt.*).

## EFL

### Macros

EFL has a simple macro substitution facility. An identifier may be defined to be equal to a string of tokens; whenever that name appears as a token in the program, the string replaces it. A macro name is given a value in a **define** statement like

```
define count    n += 1
```

Any time the name **count** appears in the program, it is replaced by the statement

```
n += 1
```

A **define** statement must appear alone on a line; the form is

```
define name rest-of-line
```

Trailing comments are part of the string.

## PROGRAM FORM

### Files

A *file* is a sequence of lines. A file is compiled as a single unit. It may contain one or more procedures. Declarations and options that appear outside of a procedure affect the succeeding procedures on that file.

### Procedures

Procedures are the largest grouping of statements in EFL. Each procedure has a name by which it is invoked. (The first procedure invoked during execution, known as the *main* procedure, has the null name.) Procedure calls and argument passing are discussed in "PROCEDURES."

### Blocks

Statements may be formed into groups inside of a procedure. To describe the scope of names, it is convenient to introduce the ideas of *block* and of *nesting level*. The beginning of a program file is at nesting level zero. Any options, macro definitions, or variable declarations are also at level zero. The text immediately following a **procedure** statement is at level 1. After the declarations, a left brace marks the beginning of a new block and increases the nesting level by 1; a right brace drops the level by 1. (Braces inside declarations do not mark blocks.) (See "Blocks" under "EXECUTABLE STATEMENTS.") An **end** statement marks the end of the procedure, level 1, and the return to level 0. A name (variable or macro) that is defined at level *K* is defined throughout that block and in all deeper nested levels in which that name is

not redefined or redeclared. Thus, a procedure might look like the following:

```

# block 0
procedure george
real x
x = 2
...
if(x > 2)
  {      # new block
  integer x # a different variable
  do x = 1,7
    write(,x)
  ...
  }      # end of block
end      # end of procedure, return to block 0

```

#### Statements

A statement is terminated by end of line or by a semicolon. Statements are of the following types:

**Option**  
**Include**  
**Define**  
**Procedure**  
**End**  
**Declarative**  
**Executable**

The **option** statement is described in "COMPILER OPTIONS". The **include**, **define**, and **end** statements have been described above; they may not be followed by another statement on a line. Each procedure begins with a **procedure** statement and finishes with an **end** statement; these are discussed in "PROCEDURES". Declarations describe types and values of variables and procedures. Executable statements cause specific actions to be taken. A block is an example of an executable statement; it is made up of declarative and executable statements.

#### Labels

An executable statement may have a *label* which may be used in a branch statement. A label is an identifier followed by a colon, as in

```

                                read(, x)
                                if(x < 3) goto error
                                ...
                                fatal("bad input")
error:

```

## DATA TYPES AND VARIABLES

EFL supports a small number of basic (scalar) types. The programmer may define objects made up of variables of basic type; other aggregates may then be defined in terms of previously defined aggregates.

### Basic Types

The basic types are

**logical**  
**integer**  
**field(*m:n*)**  
**real**  
**complex**  
**long real**  
**long complex**  
**character(*n*)**

A logical quantity may take on the two values *true* and *false*. An integer may take on any whole number value in some machine-dependent range. A field quantity is an integer restricted to a particular closed interval  $@(m:n)@$ . A "real" quantity is a floating point approximation to a real or rational number. A long real is a more precise approximation to a rational. (Real quantities are represented as single precision floating point numbers; long reals are double precision floating point numbers.) A complex quantity is an approximation to a complex number, and is represented as a pair of reals. A character quantity is a fixed-length string of *n* characters.

### Constants

There is a notation for a constant of each basic type.

A logical may take on the two values

**true**  
**false**

An integer or field constant is a fixed point constant, optionally preceded by a plus or minus sign, as in

**17**  
**-94**  
**+6**  
**0**

A long real ("double precision") constant is a floating point constant containing an exponent field that begins with the letter **d**. A real ("single precision") constant is any other floating

point constant. A real or long real constant may be preceded by a plus or minus sign. The following are valid **real** constants:

```

17.3
-.4
7.9e-6  @(-=7.9 times 10 sup -6 )@
14e9   @(-=1.4 times 10 sup 10 )@

```

The following are valid **long real** constants

```

7.9d-6  @(-=7.9 times 10 sup -6 )@
5d3

```

A character constant is a quoted string.

### Variables

A variable is a quantity with a name and a location. At any particular time the variable may also have a value. (A variable is said to be *undefined* before it is initialized or assigned its first value, and after certain indefinite operations are performed.) Each variable has certain attributes:

#### *Storage Class*

The association of a name and a location is either transitory or permanent. Transitory association is achieved when arguments are passed to procedures. Other associations are permanent (static). (A future extension of EFL may include dynamically allocated variables.)

#### *Scope of Names*

The names of common areas are global, as are procedure names: these names may be used anywhere in the program. All other names are local to the block in which they are declared.

#### *Precision*

Floating point variables are either of normal or **long** precision. This attribute may be stated independently of the basic type.

### Arrays

It is possible to declare rectangular arrays (of any dimension) of values of the same type. The index set is always a cross-product of intervals of integers. The lower and upper bounds of the intervals must be constants for arrays that are local or **common**. A formal argument array may have intervals that are of length equal to one of the other formal arguments. An element of an array is denoted by the array name followed by a parenthesized comma-separated list of integer values, each of which must lie within the corresponding interval. (The intervals may include negative numbers.) Entire arrays may be passed as procedure arguments or in

## EFL

input/output lists, or they may be initialized; all other array references must be to individual elements.

### Structures

It is possible to define new types which are made up of elements of other types. The compound object is known as a *structure*; its constituents are called *members* of the structure. The structure may be given a name, which acts as a type name in the remaining statements within the scope of its declaration. The elements of a structure may be of any type (including previously defined structures), or they may be arrays of such objects. Entire structures may be passed to procedures or be used in input/output lists; individual elements of structures may be referenced. The uses of structures will be detailed below. The following structure might represent a symbol table:

```
struct tableentry
{
  character(8) name
  integer hashvalue
  integer numberofelements
  field(0:1) initialized, used, set
  field(0:10) type
}
```

### EXPRESSIONS

Expressions are syntactic forms that yield a value. An expression may have any of the following forms, recursively applied:

```
primary
( expression ).
unary-operator expression
expression binary-operator expression
```

In the following table of operators, all operators on a line have equal precedence and have higher precedence than operators on later lines. The meanings of these operators are described in "Unary Operators" and "Binary Operators" under "EXPRESSIONS".

```
-> .
**
* / unary + - ++ --
+ -
< <= > >= == ~=
& &&
| |
$
= += -= *= /= **= &= |= &&= ||=
```

Examples of expressions are

$$a < b \ \&\& \ b < c$$

$$-(a + \sin(x)) / (5 + \cos(x))^{**2}$$

### Primitives

Primitives are the basic elements of expressions. They include constants, variables, array elements, structure members, procedure invocations, input/output expressions, coercions, and sizes.

#### *Constants*

Constants are described in "Constants" under "DATA TYPES AND VARIABLES".

#### *Variables*

Scalar variable names are primitives. They may appear on the left or the right side of an assignment. Unqualified names of aggregates (structures or arrays) may appear only as procedure arguments and in input/output lists.

#### *Array Elements*

An element of an array is denoted by the array name followed by a parenthesized list of subscripts, one integer value for each declared dimension:

$$a(5)$$

$$b(6, -3, 4)$$

#### *Structure Members*

A structure name followed by a dot followed by the name of a member of that structure constitutes a reference to that element. If that element is itself a structure, the reference may be further qualified.

$$a.b$$

$$x(3).y(4).z(5)$$

#### *Procedure Invocations*

A procedure is invoked by an expression of one of the forms

$$\text{procedurename } ( )$$

$$\text{procedurename } ( \text{expression} )$$

$$\text{procedurename } ( \text{expression-1}, \dots, \text{expression-n} )$$

## EFL

The *procedurename* is either the name of a variable declared **external** or it is the name of a function known to the EFL compiler (see "Known Functions" under "PROCEDURES"), or it is the actual name of a procedure, as it appears in a **procedure** statement. If a *procedurename* is declared **external** and is an argument of the current procedure, it is associated with the procedure name passed as actual argument; otherwise it is the actual name of a procedure. Each *expression* in the above is called an *actual argument*. Examples of procedure invocations are

```
f(x)
work()
g(x, y+3, 'xx')
```

When one of these procedure invocations is to be performed, each of the actual argument expressions is first evaluated. The types, precisions, and bounds of actual and formal arguments should agree. If an actual argument is a variable name, array element, or structure member, the called procedure is permitted to use the corresponding formal argument as the left side of an assignment or in an input list; otherwise it may only use the value. After the formal and actual arguments are associated, control is passed to the first executable statement of the procedure. When a **return** statement is executed in that procedure, or when control reaches the **end** statement of that procedure, the function value is made available as the value of the procedure invocation. The type of the value is determined by the attributes of the *procedurename* that are declared or implied in the calling procedure, which must agree with the attributes declared for the function in its procedure. In the special case of a generic function, the type of the result is also affected by the type of the argument. See "PROCEDURES".

### *Input/Output Expressions*

The EFL input/output syntactic forms may be used as integer primaries that have a non-zero value if an error occurs during the input or output. See "Input/Output Statements" under "EXECUTABLE STATEMENTS".

### *Coercions*

An expression of one precision or type may be converted to another by an expression of the form

*attributes ( expression )*

At present, the only *attributes* permitted are precision and basic types. Attributes are separated by white space. An arithmetic value of one type may be coerced to any other arithmetic type; a character expression of one length may be coerced to a character expression of another length; logical expressions may not be coerced to a nonlogical type. As a special case, a quantity of **complex** or **long complex** type may be constructed from two integer or real quantities by passing two expressions (separated by a comma) in the coercion. Examples and equivalent values are

```
integer(5.3) = 5
long real(5) = 5.0d0
complex(5,3) = 5+3i
```

Most conversions are done implicitly, since most binary operators permit operands of different arithmetic types. Explicit coercions are of most use when it is necessary to convert the type of an actual argument to match that of the corresponding formal parameter in a procedure call.

### *Sizes*

There is a notation which yields the amount of memory required to store a datum or an item of specified type:

```
sizeof ( leftside )
sizeof ( attributes )
```

In the first case, *leftside* can denote a variable, array, array element, or structure member. The value of **sizeof** is an integer, which gives the size in arbitrary units. If the size is needed in terms of the size of some specific unit, this can be computed by division:

```
sizeof(x) / sizeof(integer)
```

yields the size of the variable **x** in integer words.

The distance between consecutive elements of an array may not equal **sizeof** because certain data types require final padding on some machines. The **lengthof** operator gives this larger value, again in arbitrary units. The syntax is

```
lengthof ( leftside )
lengthof ( attributes )
```

### **Parentheses**

An expression surrounded by parentheses is itself an expression. A parenthesized expression must be evaluated before an expression of which it is a part is evaluated.

### **Unary Operators**

All of the unary operators in EFL are prefix operators. The result of a unary operator has the same type as its operand.

## EFL

### Arithmetic

Unary  $+$  has no effect. A unary  $-$  yields the negative of its operand.

The prefix operator  $++$  adds one to its operand. The prefix operator  $--$  subtracts one from its operand. The value of either expression is the result of the addition or subtraction. For these two operators, the operand must be a scalar, array element, or structure member of arithmetic type. (As a side effect, the operand value is changed.)

### Logical

The only logical unary operator is complement ( $\sim$ ). This operator is defined by the equations

$\sim \text{true} = \text{false}$   
 $\sim \text{false} = \text{true}$

### Binary Operators

Most EFL operators have two operands, separated by the operator. Because the character set must be limited, some of the operators are denoted by strings of two or three special characters. All binary operators except exponentiation are left associative.

### Arithmetic

The binary arithmetic operators are

$+$  addition  
 $@-@$  subtraction  
 $*$  multiplication  
 $/$  division  
 $**$  exponentiation

Exponentiation is right associative:  $a**b**c = a**(b**c) = @a \sup \{(b \sup c.)\}@$  The operations have the conventional meanings:  $@8+2^{\sim}=^{\sim}10@$ ,  $@8-2^{\sim}=^{\sim}6@$ ,  $@8*2^{\sim}=^{\sim}16@$ ,  $@8/2^{\sim}=^{\sim}4@$ ,  $@8**2^{\sim}=^{\sim}8 \sup 2^{\sim}=^{\sim}64@$ .

The type of the result of a binary operation  $@A^{\sim}op^{\sim}B@$  is determined by the types of its operands:

Type of A	Type of B				
	i	r	lr	c	lc
i	i	r	lr	c	lc
r	r	r	lr	c	lc
lr	lr	lr	lr	lc	lc
c	c	c	lc	c	lc
lc	lc	lc	lc	lc	lc

**i = integer**  
**r = real**  
**l r = long real**  
**c = complex**  
**l c = long complex**

If the type of an operand differs from the type of the result, the calculation is done as if the operand were first coerced to the type of the result. If both operands are integers, the result is of type integer, and is computed exactly. (Quotients are truncated toward zero, so  $@8/3 = 2@$ .)

### Logical

The two binary logical operations in EFL, **and** and **or**, are defined by the truth tables:

A	B	A and B	A or B
false	false	false	false
false	true	false	true
true	false	false	true
true	true	true	true

Each of these operators comes in two forms. In one form, the order of evaluation is specified. The expression

**a && b**

is evaluated by first evaluating **a**; if it is false then the expression is false and **b** is not evaluated; otherwise, the expression has the value of **b**. The expression

**a || b**

is evaluated by first evaluating **a**; if it is true then the expression is true and **b** is not evaluated; otherwise, the expression has the value of **b**. The other forms of the operators (**&** for **and** and **|** for **or**) do not imply an order of evaluation. With the latter operators, the compiler may speed up the code by evaluating the operands in any order.

### Relational Operators

There are six relations between arithmetic quantities. These operators are not associative.

EFL Operator		Meaning
<	<	less than
<=	@<=@	less than or equal to
==	@=@	equal to
~=	@!=@	not equal to
>	>	greater than
>=	@>=@	greater than or equal

## EFL

Since the complex numbers are not ordered, the only relational operators that may take complex operands are  $==$  and  $\sim=$ . The character collating sequence is not defined.

### *Assignment Operators*

All of the assignment operators are right associative. The simple form of assignment is

$$\text{basic-left-side} = \text{expression}$$

A *basic-left-side* is a scalar variable name, array element, or structure member of basic type. This statement computes the expression on the right side, and stores that value (possibly after coercing the value to the type of the left side) in the location named by the left side. The value of the assignment expression is the value assigned to the left side after coercion.

There is also an assignment operator corresponding to each binary arithmetic and logical operator. In each case,  $@a \sim\text{op} = \sim b@$  is equivalent to  $@a \sim = \sim a \sim\text{op} \sim b@$ . (The operator and equal sign must not be separated by blanks.) Thus,  $n+=2$  adds 2 to  $n$ . The location of the left side is evaluated only once.

### **Dynamic Structures**

EFL does not have an address (pointer, reference) type. However, there is a notation for dynamic structures,

$$\text{leftside} \rightarrow \text{structurename}$$

This expression is a structure with the shape implied by *structurename* but starting at the location of *leftside*. In effect, this overlays the structure template at the specified location. The *leftside* must be a variable, array, array element, or structure member. The type of the *leftside* must be one of the types in the structure declaration. An element of such a structure is denoted in the usual way using the dot operator. Thus,

$$\text{place}(i) \rightarrow \text{st.elt}$$

refers to the *elt* member of the *st* structure starting at the  $@i$  <sup>th</sup>  $@$  element of the array *place*.

### **Repetition Operator**

Inside of a list, an element of the form

$$\text{integer-constant-expression} \$ \text{constant-expression}$$

is equivalent to the appearance of the *expression* a number of times equal to the first expression. Thus,

(3, 3, 4, 5)

is equivalent to

(3, 4, 4, 4, 5)

### Constant Expressions

If an expression is built up out of operators (other than functions) and constants, the value of the expression is a constant, and may be used anywhere a constant is required.

## DECLARATIONS

Declaration statements describe the meaning, shape, and size of named objects in the EFL language.

### Syntax

A declaration statement is made up of attributes and variables. Declaration statements are of two forms:

```
attributes variable-list
attributes { declarations }
```

In the first case, each name in the *variable-list* has the specified attributes. In the second, each name in the declarations also has the specified attributes. A variable name may appear in more than one variable list, so long as the attributes are not contradictory. Each name of a nonargument variable may be accompanied by an initial value specification. The *declarations* inside the braces are one or more declaration statements. Examples of declarations are

```
integer k=2
long real b(7,3)
common(cname)
  {
    integer i
    long real array(5,0:3) x, y
    character(7) ch
  }
```

## Attributes

### *Basic Types*

The following are basic types in declarations

```

logical
integer
field(@m:n@)
character(@k@)
real
complex

```

In the above, the quantities @k@, @m@, and @n@ denote integer constant expressions with the properties @k>0@ and @n>m@.

### *Arrays*

The dimensionality may be declared by an **array** attribute

Each of the @b sub i@ may either be a single integer expression or a pair of integer expressions separated by a colon. The pair of expressions form a lower and an upper bound; the single expression is an upper bound with an implied lower bound of 1. The number of dimensions is equal to @n,@ the number of bounds. All of the integer expressions must be constants. An exception is permitted only if all of the variables associated with an array declarator are formal arguments of the procedure; in this case, each bound must have the property that @upper - lower + 1@ is equal to a formal argument of the procedure. (The compiler has limited ability to simplify expressions, but it will recognize important cases such as (0:n-1). The upper bound for the last dimension @(b sub n)@ may be marked by an asterisk ( \* ) if the size of the array is not known. The following are legal @bold array@ attributes:

```

array(5)
array(5, 1:5, -3:0)
array(5, *)
array(0:m-1, m)

```

### *Structures*

A structure declaration is of the form

```

struct structname { declaration statements }

```

The *structname* is optional; if it is present, it acts as if it were the name of a type in the rest of its scope. Each name that appears inside the *declarations* is a *member* of the structure, and has a special meaning when used to qualify any variable declared with the structure type. A

name may appear as a member of any number of structures, and may also be the name of an ordinary variable, since a structure member name is used only in contexts where the parent type is known. The following are valid structure attributes

```

struct xx
  {
    integer a, b
    real x(5)
  }

struct { xx z(3); character(5) y }

```

The last line defines a structure containing an array of three **xx**'s and a character string.

#### *Precision*

Variables of floating point (**real** or **complex**) type may be declared to be **long** to ensure they have higher precision than ordinary floating point variables. The default precision is **short**.

#### *Common*

Certain objects called *common areas* have external scope, and may be referenced by any procedure that has a declaration for the name using a

```
common ( commonareaname )
```

attribute. All of the variables declared with a particular **common** attribute are in the same block; the order in which they are declared is significant. Declarations for the same block in differing procedures must have the variables in the same order and with the same types, precision, and shapes, though not necessarily with the same names.

#### *External*

If a name is used as the procedure name in a procedure invocation, it is implicitly declared to have the **external** attribute. If a procedure name is to be passed as an argument, it is necessary to declare it in a statement of the form

```
external [ name ]
```

If a name has the external attribute and it is a formal argument of the procedure, then it is associated with a procedure identifier passed as an actual argument at each call. If the name is not a formal argument, then that name is the actual name of a procedure, as it appears in the corresponding **procedure** statement.

**Variable List**

The elements of a variable list in a declaration consist of a name, an optional dimension specification, and an optional initial value specification. The name follows the usual rules. The dimension specification is the same form and meaning as the parenthesized list in an **array** attribute. The initial value specification is an equal sign (=) followed by a constant expression. If the name is an array, the right side of the equal sign may be a parenthesized list of constant expressions, or repeated elements or lists; the total number of elements in the list must not exceed the number of elements of the array, which are filled in column-major order.

**The Initial Statement**

An initial value may also be specified for a simple variable, array, array element, or member of a structure using a statement of the form

**initial** [ *var = val* ]

The @var@ may be a variable name, array element specification, or member of structure. The right side follows the same rules as for an initial value specification in other declaration statements.

**EXECUTABLE STATEMENTS**

Every useful EFL program contains executable statements, otherwise it would not do anything and would not need to be run. Statements are frequently made up of other statements. Blocks are the most obvious case, but many other forms contain statements as constituents.

To increase the legibility of EFL programs, some of the statement forms can be broken without an explicit continuation. A square (□) in the syntax represents a point where the end of a line will be ignored.

**Expression Statements*****Subroutine Call***

A procedure invocation that returns no value is known as a subroutine call. Such an invocation is a statement. Examples are

**work(in, out)  
run()**

Input/output statements (see "Input/Output Statements" under "EXECUTABLE STATEMENTS") resemble procedure invocations but do not yield a value. If an error occurs the program stops.

**Assignment Statements**

An expression that is a simple assignment (=) or a compound assignment (+= etc.) is a statement:

```
a = b
a = sin(x)/6
x *= y
```

**Blocks**

A block is a compound statement that acts as a statement. A block begins with a left brace, optionally followed by declarations, optionally followed by executable statements, followed by a right brace. A block may be used anywhere a statement is permitted. A block is not an expression and does not have a value. An example of a block is

```
{
integer i # this variable is unknown
          # outside the braces
big = 0
do i = 1,n
  if(big < a(i))
    big = a(i)
}
```

**Test Statements**

Test statements permit execution of certain statements conditional on the truth of a predicate.

**If Statement**

The simplest of the test statements is the **if** statement, of form

```
if ( logical-expression ) □ statement
```

The logical expression is evaluated; if it is true, then the *statement* is executed.

**If-Else**

A more general statement is of the form

```
if ( logical-expression ) □ statement-1 □
else □ statement-2
```

If the expression is **true** then *statement-1* is executed, otherwise, *statement-2* is executed. Either of the consequent statements may itself be an **if-else** so a completely nested test

## EFL

sequence is possible:

```
if(x<y)
  if(a<b)
    k = 1
  else
    k = 2
else
  if(a<b)
    m = 1
  else
    m = 2
```

An **else** applies to the nearest preceding un-**else**d **if**. A more common use is as a sequential test:

```
if(x==1)
  k = 1
else if(x==3 | x==5)
  k = 2
else
  k = 3
```

### *Select Statement*

A multiway test on the value of a quantity is succinctly stated as a **select** statement, which has the general form

**select**( *expression* ) □ *block*

Inside the block two special types of labels are recognized. A prefix of the form

**case** [ *constant* ] :

marks the statement to which control is passed if the expression in the select has a value equal to one of the case constants. If the expression equals none of these constants, but there is a label **default** inside the select, a branch is taken to that point; otherwise the statement following the right brace is executed. Once execution begins at a **case** or **default** label, it continues until the next **case** or **default** is encountered. The **else-if** example above is better written as

```

select(x)
{
  case 1:
    k = 1
  case 3,5:
    k = 2
  default:
    k = 3
}

```

Note that control does not "fall through" to the next case.

### Loops

The loop forms provide the best way of repeating a statement or sequence of operations. The simplest (**while**) form is theoretically sufficient, but it is very convenient to have the more general loops available, since each expresses a mode of control that arises frequently in practice.

#### *While Statement*

This construct has the form

```

while ( logical-expression ) □ statement

```

The expression is evaluated; if it is true, the statement is executed, and then the test is performed again. If the expression is false, execution proceeds to the next statement.

#### **For Statement**

The **for** statement is a more elaborate looping construct. It has the form

```

for ( initial-statement , □ logical-expression ,
      □ iteration-statement ) □ body-statement

```

Except for the behavior of the **next** statement (see "Branch Statement" under "EXECUTABLE STATEMENTS"), this construct is equivalent to

```

initial-statement
while ( logical-expression )
{
  body-statement
  iteration-statement
}

```

This form is useful for general arithmetic iterations, and for various pointer-type operations.

## EFL

The sum of the integers from 1 to 100 can be computed by the fragment

```
n = 0
for(i = 1, i <= 100, i += 1)
  n += i
```

Alternatively, the computation could be done by the single statement

```
for( { n = 0 ; i = 1 } , i <= 100 , { n += i ; ++i } )
;
```

Note that the body of the **for** loop is a null statement in this case. An example of following a linked list will be given later.

### *Repeat Statement*

The statement

```
repeat □ statement
```

executes the *statement*, then does it again, without any termination test. Obviously, a test inside the *statement* is needed to stop the loop.

### *Repeat ... Until Statement*

The while loop performs a test before each iteration. The statement

```
repeat □ statement □ until ( logical-expression )
```

executes the *statement*, then evaluates the logical; if the logical is true the loop is complete; otherwise, control returns to the *statement*. Thus, the body is always executed at least once. The **until** refers to the nearest preceding **repeat** that has not been paired with an **until**. In practice, this appears to be the least frequently used looping construct.

### *Do Loop*

The simple arithmetic progression is a very common one in numerical applications. EFL has a special loop form for ranging over an ascending arithmetic sequence

```
do variable = expression-1, expression-2, expression-3
  statement
```

The variable is first given the value *expression-1*. The statement is executed, then *expression-3* is added to the variable. The loop is repeated until the variable exceeds *expression-2*. If

*expression-3* and the preceding comma are omitted, the increment is taken to be 1. The loop above is equivalent to

```
t2 = expression-2
t3 = expression-3
for(variable=expression-1, variable<=t2, variable+=t3)
    statement
```

(The compiler translates EFL **do** statements into Fortran **DO** statements, which are in turn usually compiled into excellent code.) The **do variable** may not be changed inside of the loop, and *expression-1* must not exceed *expression-2*. The sum of the first hundred positive integers could be computed by

```
n = 0
do i = 1, 100
    n += i
```

### Branch Statements

Most of the need for branch statements in programs can be averted by using the loop and test constructs, but there are programs where they are very useful.

#### *Goto Statement*

The most general, and most dangerous, branching statement is the simple unconditional

```
goto label
```

After executing this statement, the next statement performed is the one following the given label. Inside of a **select** the case labels of that block may be used as labels, as in the following example:

```
select(k)
{
case 1:
    error(7)

case 2:
    k = 2
    goto case 4

case 3:
    k = 5
    goto case 4

case 4:
    fixup(k)
```

```

                                goto default
                                default:
                                prmsg("ouch")
                                }

```

(If two **select** statements are nested, the case labels of the outer **select** are not accessible from the inner one.)

### *Break Statement*

A safer statement is one which transfers control to the statement following the current **select** or loop form. A statement of this sort is almost always needed in a **repeat** loop:

```

repeat
{
do a computation
if( finished )
break
}

```

More general forms permit controlling a branch out of more than one construct.

**break 3**

transfers control to the statement following the third loop and/or **select** surrounding the statement. It is possible to specify which type of construct (**for**, **while**, **repeat**, **do**, or **select**) is to be counted. The statement

**break while**

breaks out of the first surrounding **while** statement. Either of the statements

**break 3 for**  
**break for 3**

will transfer to the statement after the third enclosing **for** loop.

### *Next Statement*

The **next** statement causes the first surrounding loop statement to go on to the next iteration: the next operation performed is the test of a **while**, the *iteration-statement* of a **for**, the body of a **repeat**, the test of a **repeat...until**, or the increment of a **do**. Elaborations similar to those for **break** are available:

```

next
next 3
next 3 for
next for 3

```

A **next** statement ignores **select** statements.

### *Return*

The last statement of a procedure is followed by a return of control to the caller. If it is desired to effect such a return from any other point in the procedure, a

```
return
```

statement may be executed. Inside a function procedure, the function value is specified as an argument of the statement:

```
return ( expression )
```

### **Input/Output Statements**

EFL has two input statements (**read** and **readbin**), two output statements (**write** and **writebin**), and three control statements (**endfile**, **rewind**, and **backspace**). These forms may be used either as a primary with a **integer** value or as a statement. If an exception occurs when one of these forms is used as a statement, the result is undefined but will probably be treated as a fatal error. If they are used in a context where they return a value, they return zero if no exception occurs. For the input forms, a negative value indicates end-of-file and a positive value an error. The input/output part of EFL very strongly reflects the facilities of Fortran.

### *Input/Output Units*

Each I/O statement refers to a "unit," identified by a small positive integer. Two special units are defined by EFL, the *standard input unit* and the *standard output unit*. These particular units are assumed if no unit is specified in an I/O transmission statement.

The data on the unit are organized into *records*. These records may be read or written in a fixed sequence, and each transmission moves an integral number of records. Transmission proceeds from the first record until the *end of file*.

### *Binary Input/Output*

The **readbin** and **writebin** statements transmit data in a machine-dependent but swift manner. The statements are of the form

## EFL

```
writebin( unit , binary-output-list )
readbin( unit , binary-input-list )
```

Each statement moves one unformatted record between storage and the device. The *unit* is an integer expression. A *binary-output-list* is an *iolist* (see below) without any format specifiers. A *binary-input-list* is an *iolist* without format specifiers in which each of the expressions is a variable name, array element, or structure member.

### *Formatted Input/Output*

The **read** and **write** statements transmit data in the form of lines of characters. Each statement moves one or more records (lines). Numbers are translated into decimal notation. The exact form of the lines is determined by format specifications, whether provided explicitly in the statement or implicitly. The syntax of the statements is

```
write( unit , formatted-output-list )
read( unit , formatted-input-list )
```

The lists are of the same form as for binary I/O, except that the lists may include format specifications. If the *unit* is omitted, the standard input or output unit is used.

### *Iolists*

An *iolist* specifies a set of values to be written or a set of variables into which values are to be read. An *iolist* is a list of one or more *ioexpressions* of the form

```
expression
{ iolist }
do-specification { iolist }
```

For formatted I/O, an *ioexpression* may also have the forms

```
ioexpression : format-specifier
: format-specifier
```

A *do-specification* looks just like a **do** statement, and has a similar effect: the values in the braces are transmitted repeatedly until the **do** execution is complete.

### *Formats*

The following are permissible *format-specifiers*. The quantities @w@, @d@, and @k@ must be integer constant expressions.

```
i(w)    integer with w digits
f(w,d)  floating point number of w characters,
         d of them to the right of the decimal point.
```

<b>e(w,d)</b>	floating point number of <i>w</i> characters, <i>d</i> of them to the right of the decimal point, with the exponent field marked with the letter <b>e</b>
<b>l(w)</b>	logical field of width <i>w</i> characters, the first of which is <b>t</b> or <b>f</b> (the rest are blank on output, ignored on input) standing for <b>true</b> and <b>false</b> respectively
<b>c</b>	character string of width equal to the length of the datum
<b>c(w)</b>	character string of width <i>w</i>
<b>s(k)</b>	skip <i>k</i> lines
<b>x(k)</b>	skip <i>k</i> spaces
<b>" ... "</b>	use the characters inside the string as a Fortran format

If no format is specified for an item in a formatted input/output statement, a default form is chosen.

If an item in a list is an array name, then the entire array is transmitted as a sequence of elements, each with its own format. The elements are transmitted in column-major order, the same order used for array initializations.

### *Manipulation Statements*

The three input/output statements

```

backspace(@unit@)
rewind(@unit@)
endfile(@unit@)

```

look like ordinary procedure calls, but may be used either as statements or as integer expressions which yield non-zero if an error is detected. **backspace** causes the specified unit to back up, so that the next read will re-read the previous record, and the next write will overwrite it. **rewind** moves the device to its beginning, so that the next input statement will read the first record. **endfile** causes the file to be marked so that the record most recently written will be the last record on the file, and any attempt to read past is an error.

## PROCEDURES

Procedures are the basic unit of an EFL program, and provide the means of segmenting a program into separately compilable and named parts.

### Procedures Statement

Each procedure begins with a statement of one of the forms

```
procedure
  attributes procedure procedurename
  attributes procedure procedurename ( )
  attributes procedure procedurename ( [ name ] )
```

The first case specifies the main procedure, where execution begins. In the two other cases, the *attributes* may specify precision and type, or they may be omitted entirely. The precision and type of the procedure may be declared in an ordinary declaration statement. If no type is declared, then the procedure is called a *subroutine* and no value may be returned for it. Otherwise, the procedure is a function and a value of the declared type is returned for each call. Each *name* inside the parentheses in the last form above is called a *formal argument* of the procedure.

### End Statement

Each procedure terminates with a statement

```
end
```

### Argument Association

When a procedure is invoked, the actual arguments are evaluated. If an actual argument is the name of a variable, an array element, or a structure member, that entity becomes associated with the formal argument, and the procedure may reference the values in the object, and assign to it. Otherwise, the value of the actual is associated with the formal argument, but the procedure may not attempt to change the value of that formal argument.

If the value of one of the arguments is changed in the procedure, it is not permitted that the corresponding actual argument be associated with another formal argument or with a **common** element that is referenced in the procedure.

### Execution and Return Values

After actual and formal arguments have been associated, control passes to the first executable statement of the procedure. Control returns to the invoker either when the **end** statement of the procedure is reached or when a **return** statement is executed. If the procedure is a function (has a declared type), and a **@return( value )@** is executed, the value is coerced to the correct type and precision and returned.

### Known Functions

A number of functions are known to EFL, and need not be declared. The compiler knows the types of these functions. Some of them are *generic*; i.e., they name a family of functions that differ in the types of their arguments and return values. The compiler chooses which element of the set to invoke based upon the attributes of the actual arguments.

#### *Minimum and Maximum Functions*

The generic functions are **min** and **max**. The **min** calls return the value of their smallest argument; the **max** calls return the value of their largest argument. These are the only functions that may take different numbers of arguments in different calls. If any of the arguments are **long real** then the result is **long real**. Otherwise, if any of the arguments are **real** then the result is **real**; otherwise all the arguments and the result must be **integer**. Examples are

```
min(5, x, -3.20)
max(i, z)
```

#### *Absolute Value*

The **abs** function is a generic function that returns the magnitude of its argument. For integer and real arguments the type of the result is identical to the type of the argument; for complex arguments the type of the result is the real of the same precision.

#### *Elementary Functions*

The following generic functions take arguments of **real**, **long real**, or **complex** type and return a result of the same type:

<b>sin</b>	<b>sine function</b>
<b>cos</b>	<b>cosine function</b>
<b>exp</b>	<b>exponential function (@e sup x@).</b>
<b>log</b>	<b>natural (base e) logarithm</b>
<b>log10</b>	<b>common (base 10) logarithm</b>
<b>sqrt</b>	<b>square root function (@sqrt x@).</b>

In addition, the following functions accept only **real** or **long real** arguments:

<b>atan</b>	<b>@atan(x) = tan sup -1 x@</b>
<b>atan2</b>	<b>@atan2(x,y) = tan sup -1 x over y@</b>

## EFL

### *Other Generic Functions*

The **sign** function takes two arguments of identical type; **sign**(x,y) = sgn(y) |x|. The **mod** function yields the remainder of its first argument when divided by its second. These functions accept integer and real arguments.

## ATAVISMS

Certain facilities are included in the EFL language to ease the conversion of old Fortran or Ratfor programs to EFL.

### Escape Lines

In order to make use of nonstandard features of the local Fortran compiler, it is occasionally necessary to pass a particular line through to the EFL compiler output. A line that begins with a percent sign ("%") is copied through to the output, with the percent sign removed but no other change. Inside of a procedure, each escape line is treated as an executable statement. If a sequence of lines constitute a continued Fortran statement, they should be enclosed in braces.

### Call Statement

A subroutine call may be preceded by the keyword **call**.

```
call joe
call work(17)
```

### Obsolete Keywords

The following keywords are recognized as synonyms of EFL keywords:

Fortran	EFL
<b>double precision</b>	<b>long real</b>
<b>function</b>	<b>procedure</b>
<b>subroutine</b>	<b>procedure</b> ( <i>untyped</i> )

### Numeric Labels

Standard statement labels are identifiers. A numeric (positive integer constant) label is also permitted; the colon is optional following a numeric label.

### Implicit Declarations

If a name is used but does not appear in a declaration, the EFL compiler gives a warning and assumes a declaration for it. If it is used in the context of a procedure invocation, it is assumed to be a procedure name; otherwise it is assumed to be a local variable defined at nesting level 1 in the current procedure. The assumed type is determined by the first letter of the name. The association of letters and types may be given in an **implicit** statement, with

syntax

**implicit ( *letter-list* ) *type***

where a *letter-list* is a list of individual letters or ranges (pair of letters separated by a minus sign). If no **implicit** statement appears, the following rules are assumed:

**implicit (a-h, o-z) real**  
**implicit (i-n) integer**

#### Computed Goto

Fortran contains an indexed multi-way branch; this facility may be used in EFL by the computed GOTO:

**goto ( [ *label* ] ), *expression***

The expression must be of type integer and be positive but be no larger than the number of labels in the list. Control is passed to the statement marked by the label whose position in the list is equal to the expression.

#### Goto Statement

In unconditional and computed **goto** statements, it is permissible to separate the **go** and **to** words, as in

**go to xyz**

#### Dot Names

Fortran uses a restricted character set, and represents certain operators by multi-character

## EFL

sequences. There is an option (**dots=on**; see "COMPILER OPTIONS") which forces the compiler to recognize the forms in the second column below:

<b>&lt;</b>	<b>.lt.</b>
<b>&lt;=</b>	<b>.le.</b>
<b>&gt;</b>	<b>.gt.</b>
<b>&gt;=</b>	<b>.ge.</b>
<b>==</b>	<b>.eq.</b>
<b>~=</b>	<b>.ne.</b>
<b>&amp;</b>	<b>.and.</b>
<b> </b>	<b>.or.</b>
<b>&amp;&amp;</b>	<b>.andand.</b>
<b>  </b>	<b>.oror.</b>
<b>~</b>	<b>.not.</b>
<b>true</b>	<b>.true.</b>
<b>false</b>	<b>.false.</b>

In this mode, no structure element may be named **lt**, **le**, etc. The readable forms in the left column are always recognized.

### Complex Constants

A complex constant may be written as a parenthesized list of real quantities, such as

**(1.5, 3.0)**

The preferred notation is by a type coercion,

**complex(1.5, 3.0)**

### Function Values

The preferred way to return a value from a function in EFL is the **@bold return ( value )@** construct. However, the name of the function acts as a variable to which values may be assigned; an ordinary **@bold return@** statement returns the last value assigned to that name as the function value.

### Equivalence

A statement of the form

declares that each of the **@v sub i@** starts at the same memory location. Each of the **@v sub i@** may be a variable name, array element name, or structure member.

### Minimum and Maximum Functions

There are a number of non-generic functions in this category, which differ in the required types of the arguments and the type of the return value. They may also have variable numbers of arguments, but all the arguments must have the same type.

<i>Function</i>	<i>Argument Type</i>	<i>Result Type</i>
<b>amin0</b>	<b>integer</b>	<b>real</b>
<b>amin1</b>	<b>real</b>	<b>real</b>
<b>min0</b>	<b>integer</b>	<b>integer</b>
<b>min1</b>	<b>real</b>	<b>integer</b>
<b>dmin1</b>	<b>long real</b>	<b>long real</b>
<b>amax0</b>	<b>integer</b>	<b>real</b>
<b>amax1</b>	<b>real</b>	<b>real</b>
<b>max0</b>	<b>integer</b>	<b>integer</b>
<b>max1</b>	<b>real</b>	<b>integer</b>
<b>dmax1</b>	<b>long real</b>	<b>long real</b>

### COMPILER OPTIONS

A number of options can be used to control the output and to tailor it for various compilers and systems. The defaults chosen are conservative, but it is sometimes necessary to change the output to match peculiarities of the target environment.

Options are set with statements of the form

**option** [ *opt* ]

where each *opt* is of one of the forms

*optionname*  
*optionname* = *optionvalue*

The *optionvalue* is either a constant (numeric or string) or a name associated with that option. The two names **yes** and **no** apply to a number of options.

#### Default Options

Each option has a default setting. It is possible to change the whole set of defaults to those appropriate for a particular environment by using the **system** option. At present, the only valid values are **system=unix** and **system=gcos**.

### Input Language Options

The **dots** option determines whether the compiler recognizes **.lt.** and similar forms. The default setting is **no**.

### Input/Output Error Handling

The **ioerror** option can be given three values: **none** means that none of the I/O statements may be used in expressions, since there is no way to detect errors. The implementation of the **ibm** form uses **ERR=** and **END=** clauses. The implementation of the **fortran77** form uses **IOSTAT=** clauses.

### Continuation Conventions

By default, continued Fortran statements are indicated by a character in column 6 (Standard Fortran). The option **continue=column1** puts an ampersand (&) in the first column of the continued lines instead.

### Default Formats

If no format is specified for a datum in an iolist for a **read** or **write** statement, a default is provided. The default formats can be changed by setting certain options

<i>Option</i>	<i>Type</i>
<b>iformat</b>	integer
<b>rformat</b>	real
<b>dformat</b>	long real
<b>zformat</b>	complex
<b>zdformat</b>	long complex
<b>hformat</b>	logical

The associated value must be a Fortran format, such as

**option rformat=f22.6**

### Alignments and Sizes

In order to implement **character** variables, structures, and the **sizeof** and **lengthof** operators, it is necessary to know how much space various Fortran data types require, and what boundary alignment properties they demand. The relevant options are

<i>Fortran Type</i>	<i>Size Option</i>	<i>Alignment Option</i>
integer	<b>isize</b>	<b>ialign</b>
real	<b>rsize</b>	<b>ralign</b>
long real	<b>dsize</b>	<b>dalign</b>
complex	<b>zsize</b>	<b>zalign</b>
logical	<b>lsize</b>	<b>lalign</b>

The sizes are given in terms of an arbitrary unit; the alignment is given in the same units. The option **charperint** gives the number of characters per **integer** variable.

#### Default Input/Output Units

The options **ftnin** and **ftnout** are the numbers of the standard input and output units. The default values are **ftnin=5** and **ftnout=8**.

#### Miscellaneous Output Control Options

Each Fortran procedure generated by the compiler will be preceded by the value of the **procheader** option.

No Hollerith strings will be passed as subroutine arguments if **hollincall=no** is specified.

The Fortran statement numbers normally start at 1 and increase by 1. It is possible to change the increment value by using the **deltastno** option.

## EXAMPLES

In order to show the flavor or programming in EFL, we present a few examples. They are short, but show some of the convenience of the language.

#### File Copying

The following short program copies the standard input to the standard output, provided that the input is a formatted file containing lines no longer than a hundred characters.

```

procedure # main program
character(100) line

while( read( , line) == 0 )
           write( , line)
end

```

Since **read** returns zero until the end of file (or a read error), this program keeps reading and writing until the input is exhausted.

#### Matrix Multiplication

The following procedure multiplies the  $m \times n$  matrix **a** by the  $n \times p$  matrix **b** to give the  $m \times p$  matrix **c**. The calculation obeys the formula  $c_{ij} = \sum_k a_{ik} b_{kj}$ .

EFL

```
procedure matmul(a,b,c, m,n,p)
integer i, j, k, m, n, p
long real a(m,n), b(n,p), c(m,p)
do i = 1,m
do j = 1,p
  {
    c(i,j) = 0
    do k = 1,n
      c(i,j) += a(i,k) * b(k,j)
    }
end
```

### Searching a Linked List

Assume we have a list of pairs of numbers  $@(x,y)@$ . The list is stored as a linked list sorted in ascending order of  $@x@$  values. The following procedure searches this list for a particular value of  $@x@$  and returns the corresponding  $@y@$  value.

```
define LAST      0
define NOTFOUND  -1

integer procedure val(list, first, x)

# list is an array of structures.
# Each structure contains a thread index value,
# an x, and a y value.
struct
  {
    integer nextindex
    integer x, y
  } list(*)

integer first, p, arg

for(p = first , p~=LAST && list(p).x<=x ,
  p = list(p).nextindex)
  if(list(p).x == x)
    return( list(p).y )

return(NOTFOUND)
end
```

The search is a single for loop that begins with the head of the list and examines items until either the list is exhausted ( $p==LAST$ ) or until it is known that the specified value is not on the list ( $list(p).x > x$ ). The two tests in the conjunction must be performed in the specified order to avoid using an invalid subscript in the  $list(p)$  reference. Therefore, the  $\&\&$  operator is used. The next element in the chain is found by the iteration statement  $p=list(p).nextindex$ .

### Walking a Tree

As an example of a more complicated problem, let us imagine we have an expression tree stored in a common area, and that we want to print out an infix form of the tree. Each node is either a leaf (containing a numeric value) or it is a binary operator, pointing to a left and a right descendant. In a recursive language, such a tree walk would be implemented by the following simple pseudocode:

```

if this node is a leaf
    print its value
otherwise
    print a left parenthesis
    print the left node
    print the operator
    print the right node
    print a right parenthesis

```

In a nonrecursive language like EFL, it is necessary to maintain an explicit stack to keep track of the current state of the computation. The following procedure calls a procedure **outch** to print a single character and a procedure **outval** to print a value.

```

procedure walk(first)      # print an expression tree
integer first           # index of root node
integer currentnode
integer stackdepth
common(nodes) struct
    {
        character(1) op
        integer leftp, rightp
        real val
    } tree(100)  # array of structures

struct
    {
        integer nextstate
        integer nodep
    } stackframe(100)

define NODE           tree(currentnode)
define STACK         stackframe(stackdepth)

# nextstate values
define DOWN          1
define LEFT          2
define RIGHT         3

```

## EFL

```
# initialize stack with root node
stackdepth = 1
STACK.nextstate = DOWN
STACK.nodep = first

while( stackdepth > 0 )
{
  currentnode = STACK.nodep
  select(STACK.nextstate)
  {
    case DOWN:
      if(NODE.op == " ") # a leaf
      {
        outval( NODE.val )
        stackdepth -= 1
      }
      else { # a binary operator node
        outch( "(" )
        STACK.nextstate = LEFT
        stackdepth += 1
        STACK.nextstate = DOWN
        STACK.nodep = NODE.leftp
      }

    case LEFT:
      outch( NODE.op )
      STACK.nextstate = RIGHT
      stackdepth += 1
      STACK.nextstate = DOWN
      STACK.nodep = NODE.rightp

    case RIGHT:
      outch( ")" )
      stackdepth -= 1
  }
}
end
```

## PORTABILITY

One of the major goals of the EFL language is to make it easy to write portable programs. The output of the EFL compiler is intended to be acceptable to any Standard Fortran compiler (unless the **fortran77** option is specified).

### Primitives

Certain EFL operations cannot be implemented in portable Fortran, so a few machine-dependent procedures must be provided in each environment.

#### *Character String Copying*

The subroutine **eflasc** is called to copy one character string to another. If the target string is shorter than the source, the final characters are not copied. If the target string is longer, its end is padded with blanks. The calling sequence is

```
subroutine eflasc(a, la, b, lb)
integer a(*), la, b(*), lb
```

and it must copy the first **lb** characters from **b** to the first **la** characters of **a**.

#### *Character String Comparisons*

The function **eflcmc** is invoked to determine the order of two character strings. The declaration is

```
integer function eflcmc(a, la, b, lb)
integer a(*), la, b(*), lb
```

The function returns a negative value if the string **a** of length **la** precedes the string **b** of length **lb**. It returns zero if the strings are equal, and a positive value otherwise. If the strings are of differing length, the comparison is carried out as if the end of the shorter string were padded with blanks.

## DIFFERENCES BETWEEN RATFOR AND EFL

There are a number of differences between Ratfor and EFL, since EFL is a defined language while Ratfor is the union of the special control structures and the language accepted by the underlying Fortran compiler. Ratfor running over Standard Fortran is almost a subset of EFL. Most of the features described in the "ATAVISMMS" are present to ease the conversion of Ratfor programs to EFL.

There are a few incompatibilities: The syntax of the **for** statement is slightly different in the two languages: the three clauses are separated by semicolons in Ratfor, but by commas in EFL. (The initial and iteration statements may be compound statements in EFL because of this change). The input/output syntax is quite different in the two languages, and there is no **FORMAT** statement in EFL. There are no **ASSIGN** or assigned **GOTO** statements in EFL.

The major linguistic additions are character data, factored declaration syntax, block structure, assignment and sequential test operators, generic functions, and data structures. EFL permits

## EFL

more general forms for expressions, and provides a more uniform syntax. (One need not worry about the Fortran/Ratfor restrictions on subscript or DO expression forms, for example.)

## COMPILER

### Current Version

The current version of the EFL compiler is a two-pass translator written in portable C. It implements all of the features of the language described above except for **long complex** numbers.

### Diagnostics

The EFL compiler diagnoses all syntax errors. It gives the line and file name (if known) on which the error was detected. Warnings are given for variables that are used but not explicitly declared.

### Quality of Fortran Produced

The Fortran produced by EFL is quite clean and readable. To the extent possible, the variable names that appear in the EFL program are used in the Fortran code. The bodies of loops and test constructs are indented. Statement numbers are consecutive. Few unneeded GOTO and CONTINUE statements are used. It is considered a compiler bug if incorrect Fortran is produced (except for escaped lines). The following is the Fortran procedure produced by the EFL compiler for the matrix multiplication example (See "EXAMPLES").

```
subroutine matmul(a, b, c, m, n, p)
integer m, n, p
double precision a(m, n), b(n, p), c(m, p)
integer i, j, k
do 3 i = 1, m
  do 2 j = 1, p
    c(i, j) = 0
    do 1 k = 1, n
      c(i, j) = c(i, j)+a(i, k)*b(k, j)
1      continue
2      continue
3      continue
end
```

The following is the procedure for the tree walk:

```

subroutine walk(first)
  integer first
  common /nodes/ tree
  integer tree(4, 100)
  real tree1(4, 100)
  integer staame(2, 100), staph, curode
  integer const1(1)
  equivalence (tree(1,1), tree1(1,1))
  data const1(1)/4h /
c print out an expression tree
c index of root node
c array of structures
c nextstate values
c initialize stack with root node
  staph = 1
  staame(1, staph) = 1
  staame(2, staph) = first
  1 if (staph .le. 0) goto 9
    curode = staame(2, staph)
    goto 7
  2 if (tree(1, curode) .ne. const1(1)) goto 3
    call outval(tree1(4, curode))
c a leaf
  staph = staph-1
  goto 4
  3 call outch(1h)
c a binary operator node
  staame(1, staph) = 2
  staph = staph+1
  staame(1, staph) = 1
  staame(2, staph) = tree(2, curode)
  4 goto 8
  5 call outch(tree(1, curode))
  staame(1, staph) = 3
  staph = staph+1
  staame(1, staph) = 1
  staame(2, staph) = tree(3, curode)
  goto 8
  6 call outch(1h)
  staph = staph-1
  goto 8
  7 if (staame(1, staph) .eq. 3) goto 6
  if (staame(1, staph) .eq. 2) goto 5
  if (staame(1, staph) .eq. 1) goto 2
  8 continue
  goto 1
  9 continue
end

```

## **CONSTRAINTS ON EFL**

Although Fortran can be used to simulate any finite computation, there are realistic limits on the generality of a language that can be translated into Fortran. The design of EFL was constrained by the implementation strategy. Certain of the restrictions are petty (six character external names), but others are sweeping (lack of pointer variables). The following paragraphs describe the major limitations imposed by Fortran.

### **External Names**

External names (procedure and COMMON block names) must be no longer than six characters in Fortran. Further, an external name is global to the entire program. Therefore, EFL can support block structure within a procedure, but it can have only one level of external name if the EFL procedures are to be compilable separately, as are Fortran procedures.

### **Procedure Interface**

The Fortran standards, in effect, permit arguments to be passed between Fortran procedures either by reference or by copy-in/copy-out. This indeterminacy of specification shows through into EFL. A program that depends on the method of argument transmission is illegal in either language.

There are no procedure-valued variables in Fortran: a procedure name may only be passed as an argument or be invoked; it cannot be stored. Fortran (and EFL) would be noticeably simpler if a procedure variable mechanism were available.

### **Pointers**

The most grievous problem with Fortran is its lack of a pointer-like data type. The implementation of the compiler would have been far easier if certain hard cases could have been handled by pointers. Further, the language could have been simplified considerably if pointers were accessible in Fortran. (There are several ways of simulating pointers by using subscripts, but they founder on the problems of external variables and initialization.)

### **Recursion**

Fortran procedures are not recursive, so it was not practical to permit EFL procedures to be recursive. (Recursive procedures with arguments can be simulated only with great pain.)

### **Storage Allocation**

The definition of Fortran does not specify the lifetime of variables. It would be possible but cumbersome to implement stack or heap storage disciplines by using COMMON blocks.

## Chapter 12

# THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>12-1</b>
<b>Output</b> .....	<b>12-1</b>
<b>Input</b> .....	<b>12-3</b>
<b>Highlighting</b> .....	<b>12-4</b>
<b>Multiple Windows</b> .....	<b>12-5</b>
<b>Multiple Terminals</b> .....	<b>12-6</b>
<b>Low Level Terminfo Usage</b> .....	<b>12-8</b>
<b>A Larger Example</b> .....	<b>12-9</b>
<b>LIST OF ROUTINES</b> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>Structure</b> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>Initialization</b> .....	<b>12-12</b>
<b>Option Setting</b> .....	<b>12-12</b>
<b>Terminal Mode Setting</b> .....	<b>12-14</b>
<b>Window Manipulation</b> .....	<b>12-15</b>
<b>Causing Output to the Terminal</b> .....	<b>12-16</b>
<b>Writing on Window Structures</b> .....	<b>12-17</b>
<b>Input from a Window</b> .....	<b>12-19</b>
<b>Input from the Terminal</b> .....	<b>12-19</b>
<b>Video Attributes</b> .....	<b>12-20</b>
<b>Bells and Flashing Lights</b> .....	<b>12-21</b>
<b>Portability Functions</b> .....	<b>12-21</b>
<b>Delays</b> .....	<b>12-21</b>
<b>Lower Level Functions</b> .....	<b>12-22</b>
<b>OPERATION DETAILS</b> .....	<b>12-25</b>
<b>Insert and Delete Line and Character</b> .....	<b>12-25</b>
<b>Additional Terminals</b> .....	<b>12-25</b>
<b>Multiple Terminals</b> .....	<b>12-26</b>
<b>Video Attributes</b> .....	<b>12-26</b>
<b>Special Keys</b> .....	<b>12-27</b>
<b>Scrolling Region</b> .....	<b>12-28</b>
<b>Mini-Curses</b> .....	<b>12-28</b>
<b>TTY Mode Functions</b> .....	<b>12-29</b>
<b>Typeahead Check</b> .....	<b>12-30</b>
<b>getstr</b> .....	<b>12-30</b>
<b>longname</b> .....	<b>12-30</b>
<b>Nodelay Mode</b> .....	<b>12-30</b>
<b>Portability</b> .....	<b>12-30</b>



## Chapter 12

# THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

### INTRODUCTION

This chapter is an introduction to **curses(3X)** and **terminfo(4)**. It is intended for the programmer who must write a screen-oriented program using the **curses** package. Several example programs are discussed. The example programs can be found in Chapter 13. This chapter also documents each **curses** function. It is intended as a reference.

For **curses** to be able to produce terminal dependent output, it has to know what kind of terminal you have. The UNIX system convention for this is to put the name of the terminal in the variable **TERM** in the environment. Thus, a user on a VT100 would set **TERM=vt100** when logging in. Curses uses this convention.

### Output

A program using **curses** always starts by calling **initscr()**. (See Figure 12-1.) Other modes can then be set as needed by the program. Possible modes include **cbreak()**, and **idlok(stdscr, TRUE)**. These modes will be explained later. During the execution of the program, output to the screen is done with routines such as **addch(ch)** and **printw(fmt,args)**. (These routines behave just like **putchar** and **printf** except that they go through **curses**.) The cursor can be moved with the call **move(row,col)**. These routines only output to a data structure called a *window*, not to the actual screen. A window is a representation of a CRT screen, containing such things as an array of characters to be displayed on the screen, a cursor, a current set of video attributes, and various modes and options. You don't need to worry about windows unless you use more than one of them, except to realize that a window is buffering your requests to output to the screen.

To send all accumulated output, it is necessary to call **refresh()**. (This can be thought of as a *flush*.) Finally, before the program exits, it should call **endwin()**, which restores all terminal settings and positions the cursor at the bottom of the screen.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

---

```
#include < curses.h>
...
initscr(); /* Initialization */

cbreak(); /* Various optional mode settings */
nonl();
noecho();
...
while (!done) { /* Main body of program */
    ...
    /* Sample calls to draw on screen */
    move(row, col);
    addch(ch);
   printw("Formatted print with value %d\n", value);
    ...
    /* Flush output */
    refresh();
    ...
}

endwin(); /* Clean up */
exit(0);
```

Figure 12-1 – Framework of a Curses Program

---

See the program **scatter** in Chapter 13 for an example program. This program reads a file, and displays the file in a random order on the screen. Some programs assume all screens are 24 lines by 80 columns. It is important to understand that many are not. The variables **LINES** and **COLS** are defined by **initscr** with the current screen size. Programs should use them instead of assuming a 24x80 screen.

No output to the terminal actually happens until **refresh** is called. Instead, routines such as **move** and **addch** draw on a window data structure called **stdscr** (standard screen). **Curses** always keeps track of what is on the physical screen, as well as what is in **stdscr**.

When **refresh** is called, **curses** compares the two screen images and sends a stream of characters to the terminal that will turn the current screen into what is desired. **Curses** considers many different ways to do this, taking into account the various capabilities of the terminal, and similarities between what is on the screen and what is desired. It usually outputs as few characters as is possible. This function is called *cursor optimization* and is the source of the name of the **curses** package.

**NOTE:** Due to the hardware scrolling of terminals, writing to the lower righthand character position is impossible.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

### Input

Curses can do more than just draw on the screen. Functions are also provided for input from the keyboard. The primary function is **getch()** which waits for the user to type a character on the keyboard, and then returns that character. This function is like **getchar** except that it goes through **curses**. Its use is recommended for programs using the **cbreak()** or **noecho()** options, since several terminal or system dependent options become available that are not possible with **getchar**.

Options available with **getch** include **keypad** which allows extra keys such as arrow keys, function keys, and other special keys that transmit escape sequences, to be treated as just another key. (The values returned for these keys are listed below.) **KEY\_LEFT** in **curses.h**. The values for these keys are over octal 400, so they should be stored in a variable larger than a **char**.) *nodelay* mode causes the value **-1** to be returned if there is no input waiting. Normally, **getch** will wait until a character is typed. Finally, the routine **getstr(str)** can be called, allowing input of an entire line, up to a newline. This routine handles echoing and the erase and kill characters of the user. Examples of the use of these options are in later example programs.

The following function keys might be returned by **getch** if **keypad** has been enabled. Note that not all of these are currently supported, due to lack of definitions in **terminfo** or the terminal not transmitting a unique code when the key is pressed.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Key name</i>
KEY_BREAK	0401	Break key (unreliable)
KEY_DOWN	0402	The four arrow keys ...
KEY_UP	0403	
KEY_LEFT	0404	
KEY_RIGHT	0405	...
KEY_HOME	0406	Home key (upward+left arrow)
KEY_BACKSPACE	0407	Backspace (unreliable)
KEY_F0	0410	Function keys. Space for 64 keys is reserved.
KEY_F(n)	(KEY_F0+(n))	Formula for fn.
KEY_DL	0510	Delete line
KEY_IL	0511	Insert line
KEY_DC	0512	Delete character
KEY_IC	0513	Insert char or enter insert mode
KEY_EIC	0514	Exit insert char mode
KEY_CLEAR	0515	Clear screen
KEY_EOS	0516	Clear to end of screen
KEY_EOL	0517	Clear to end of line
KEY_SF	0520	Scroll 1 line forward
KEY_SR	0521	Scroll 1 line backwards (reverse)
KEY_NPAGE	0522	Next page
KEY_PPAGE	0523	Previous page
KEY_STAB	0524	Set tab
KEY_CTAB	0525	Clear tab
KEY_CATAB	0526	Clear all tabs
KEY_ENTER	0527	Enter or send (unreliable)
KEY_SRESET	0530	Soft (partial) reset (unreliable)

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

KEY_RESET	0531	Reset or hard reset (unreliable)
KEY_PRINT	0532	Print or copy
KEY_LL	0533	Home down or bottom (lower left)

See the program `show` in Chapter 13 for an example use of `getch`. `Show` pages through a file, showing one screen full each time the user presses the space bar. By creating an input file for `show` made up of 24 line pages, each segment varying slightly from the previous page, nearly any exercise for `curses` can be created. Such input files are called *show scripts*.

In the `show` program, `cbreak` is called so that the user can press the space bar without having to hit return. The `noecho` function is called to prevent the space from echoing in the middle of a `refresh`, messing up the screen. The `nonl` function is called to enable more screen optimization. The `idlok` function is called to allow insert and delete line, since many `show` scripts are constructed to duplicate bugs caused by that feature. The `clrtoeol` and `clrrobot` functions clear from the cursor to the end of the line and screen, respectively.

### Highlighting

The function `addch` always draws two things on a window. In addition to the character itself, a set of *attributes* is associated with the character. These attributes cover various forms of highlighting of the character. For example, the character can be put in reverse video, bold, or be underlined. You can think of the attributes as the color of the ink used to draw the character.

A window always has a set of *current attributes* associated with it. The current attributes are associated with each character as it is written to the window. The current attributes can be changed with a call to `attrset(attrs)`. (Think of this as dipping the window's pen in a particular color ink.) The names of the attributes are `A_STANDOUT`, `A_REVERSE`, `A_BOLD`, `A_DIM`, `A_INVIS`, and `A_UNDERLINE`. For example, to put a word in bold, the code in Figure 12-2 might be used. The word "boldface" will be shown in bold.

---

```
printw("A word in ");
attrset(A_BOLD);
printw("boldface");
attrset(0);
printw(" really stands out.\n");
...
refresh();
```

Figure 12-2 — Use of attributes.

---

Not all terminals are capable of displaying all attributes. If a particular terminal cannot display a requested attribute, `curses` will attempt to find a substitute attribute. If none is

## THE CURSES AND TERINFO PACKAGE

possible, the attribute is ignored.

One particular attribute is called *standout*. This attribute is used to make text attract the attention of the user. The particular hardware attribute used for standout varies from terminal to terminal, and is chosen to be the most visually pleasing attribute the terminal has. Standout is typically implemented as reverse video or bold. Many programs don't really need a specific attribute, such as bold or inverse video, but instead just need to highlight some text. For such applications, the `A_STANDOUT` attribute is recommended. Two convenient functions, `standout()` and `standend()` turn on and off this attribute.

Attributes can be turned on in combination. Thus, to turn on blinking bold text, use `attrset(A_BLINK|A_BOLD)`. Individual attributes can be turned on and off with `attron` and `attroff` without affecting other attributes.

For an example program using attributes, see `highlight`. The program takes a text file as input and allows embedded escape sequences to control attributes. In this example program, `\U` turns on underlining, `\B` turns on bold, and `\N` restores normal text. Note the initial call to `scrollok`. This allows the terminal to scroll if the file is longer than one screen. When an attempt is made to draw past the bottom of the screen, `curses` will automatically scroll the terminal up a line and call `refresh`.

`Highlight` comes about as close to being a filter as is possible with `curses`. It is not a true filter, because `curses` must "take over" the CRT screen. In order to determine how to update the screen, it must know what is on the screen at all times. This requires `curses` to clear the screen in the first call to `refresh`, and to know the cursor position and screen contents at all times.

### Multiple Windows

A window is a data structure representing all or part of the CRT screen. It has room for a two dimensional array of characters, attributes for each character (a total of 16 bits per character: 7 for text and 9 for attributes) a cursor, a set of current attributes, and a number of flags. `Curses` provides a full screen window, called `stdscr`, and a set of functions that use `stdscr`. Another window is provided called `curscr`, representing the physical screen.

It is important to understand that a window is only a data structure. Use of more than one window does not imply use of more than one terminal, nor does it involve more than one process. A window is merely an object which can be copied to all or part of the terminal screen. The current implementation of `curses` does not allow windows which are bigger than the screen.

The programmer can create additional windows with the function `newwin(lines, cols, begin_row, begin_col)` will return a pointer to a newly created window. The window will be `lines` by `cols`, and the upper left corner of the window will be at screen position (`begin_row, begin_col`). All operations that affect `stdscr` have corresponding functions that affect an arbitrary named window. Generally, these functions have names formed by putting a "w" on the front of the `stdscr` function, and the window name is added as the first parameter. Thus,

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

**waddch(mywin, c)** would write the character **c** to window **mywin**. The **wrefresh(win)** function is used to flush the contents of a window to the screen.

Windows are useful for maintaining several different screen images, and alternating the user among them. Also, it is possible to subdivide the screen into several windows, refreshing each of them as desired. When windows overlap, the contents of the screen will be the more recently refreshed window.

In all cases, the non-w version of the function calls the w version of the function, using **stdscr** as the additional argument. Thus, a call to **addch(c)** results in a call to **waddch(stdscr, c)**.

The program **window** is an example of the use of multiple windows. The main display is kept in **stdscr**. When the user temporarily wants to put something else on the screen, a new window is created covering part of the screen. A call to **wrefresh** on that window causes the window to be written over **stdscr** on the screen. Calling **refresh** on **stdscr** results in the original window being redrawn on the screen. Note the calls to **touchwin** before writing out an overlapping window. These are necessary to defeat an optimization in **curses**. If you have trouble refreshing a new window which overlaps an old window, it may be necessary to call **touchwin** on the new window to get it completely written out.

For convenience, a set of "move" functions are also provided for most of the common functions. These result in a call to **move** before the other function. For example, **mvaddch(row, col, c)** is the same as **move(row, col); addch(c)**. Combinations, e.g. **mvwaddch(row, col, win, c)** also exist.

### Multiple Terminals

Curses can produce output on more than one terminal at once. This is useful for single process programs that access a common database, such as multi-player games. Output to multiple terminals is a difficult business, and **curses** does not solve all the problems for the programmer. It is the responsibility of the program to determine the file name of each terminal line, and what kind of terminal is on each of those lines. The standard method, checking **\$TERM** in the environment, does not work, since each process can only examine its own environment. Another problem that must be solved is that of multiple programs reading from one line. This situation produces a race condition and should be avoided. Nonetheless, a program wishing to take over another terminal cannot just shut off whatever program is currently running on that line. (Usually, security reasons would also make this inappropriate. However, for some applications, such as an inter-terminal communication program, or a program that takes over unused tty lines, it would be appropriate.) A typical solution requires the user logged in on each line to run a program that notifies the master program that the user is interested in joining the master program, telling it the notification program's process id, the name of the tty line and the type of terminal being used. Then the program goes to sleep until the master program finishes. When done, the master program wakes up the notification program, and all programs exit.

Curses handles multiple terminals by always having a *current terminal*. All function calls always affect the current terminal. The master program should set up each terminal, saving a reference to the terminals in its own variables. When it wishes to affect a terminal, it should

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

set the current terminal as desired, and then call ordinary **curses** routines.

References to terminals have type **struct screen \***. A new terminal is initialized by calling **newterm(type, fd)**. **newterm** returns a screen reference to the terminal being set up. **type** is a character string, naming the kind of terminal being used. **fd** is a stdio file descriptor to be used for input and output to the terminal. (If only output is needed, the file can be open for output only.) This call replaces the normal call to **initscr**, which calls **newterm(getenv("TERM"), stdout)**.

To change the current terminal, call "**set\_term(sp)**" where **sp** is the screen reference to be made current. **set\_term** returns a reference to the previous terminal.

It is important to realize that each terminal has its own set of windows and options. Each terminal must be initialized separately with **newterm**. Options such as **cbreak** and **noecho** must be set separately for each terminal. The functions **endwin** and **refresh** must be called separately for each terminal. See Figure 12-3 for a typical scenario to output a message to each terminal.

---

```
for (i=0; i<nterm; i++) {
    set_term(terms[i]);
    mvaddstr(0, 0, "Important message");
    refresh();
}
```

Figure 12-3 — Sending a message to several terminals

---

See the sample program **two** for a full example. This program pages through a file, showing one page to the first terminal and the next page to the second terminal. It then waits for a space to be typed on either terminal, and shows the next page to the terminal typing the space. Each terminal has to be separately put into nodelay mode. Since no standard multiplexor is available in current versions of the ICON/UXV operating system, it is necessary to either busy wait, or call **sleep(1)**, between each check for keyboard input. This program sleeps for a second between checks.

The **two** program is just a simple example of two terminal **curses**. It does not handle notification, as described above, instead it requires the name and type of the second terminal on the command line. As written, the command **sleep 100000** must be typed on the second terminal to put it to sleep while the program runs, and the first user must have both read and write permission on the second terminal.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

### Low Level Terminfo Usage

Some programs need to use lower level primitives than those offered by **curses**. For such programs, the *terminfo level* interface is offered. This interface does not manage your CRT screen, but rather gives you access to strings and capabilities which you can use yourself to manipulate the terminal.

Programmers are discouraged from using this level. Whenever possible, the higher level **curses** routines should be used. This will make your program more portable to other UNIX systems and to a wider class of terminals. **Curses** takes care of all the glitches and misfeatures present in physical terminals, but at the *terminfo level* you must deal with them yourself. Also, it cannot be guaranteed that this part of the interface will not change or be upward compatible with previous releases.

There are two circumstances when it is proper to use *terminfo*. The first is when you are writing a special purpose tool that sends a special purpose string to the terminal, such as programming a function key, setting tab stops, sending output to a printer port, or dealing with the status line. The second situation is when writing a filter. A typical filter does one transformation on the input stream without clearing the screen or addressing the cursor. If this transformation is terminal dependent and clearing the screen is inappropriate, use of *terminfo* is indicated.

A program writing at the *terminfo level* uses the framework shown in Figure 12-4.

---

```
#include <curses.h>
#include <term.h>
...
    setupterm(0, 1, 0);
    ...
    putp(clear_screen);
    ...
    reset_shell_mode();
    exit(0);
```

Figure 12-4 — Terminfo level framework

---

Initialization is done by calling **setupterm**. Passing the values 0, 1, and 0 invoke reasonable defaults. If **setupterm** can't figure out what kind of terminal you are on, it will print an error message and exit. The program should call **reset\_shell\_mode** before it exits.

Global variables with names like **clear\_screen** and **cursor\_address** are defined by the call to **setupterm**. They can be output using **putp**, or also using **tputs**, which allows the programmer more control. These strings *should not* be directly output to the terminal using **printf** since they contain padding information. A program that directly outputs strings will

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

fail on terminals that require padding, or that use the xon/xoff flow control protocol.

In the terminfo level, the higher level routines described previously are not available. It is up to the programmer to output whatever is needed. For a list of capabilities and a description of what they do, see `terminfo(4)`.

The example program `termhl` shows simple use of terminfo. It is a version of `highlight` that uses terminfo instead of `curses`. This version can be used as a filter. The strings to enter bold and underline mode, and to turn off all attributes, are used.

This program is more complex than it need be in order to illustrate some properties of terminfo. The routine `vidattr` could have been used instead of directly outputting `enter_bold_mode`, `enter_underline_mode`, and `exit_attribute_mode`. In fact, the program would be more robust if it did since there are several ways to change video attribute modes. This program was written to illustrate typical use of terminfo.

The function `tputs(cap, affcnt, outc)` applies padding information. Some capabilities contain strings like `$(20)`, which means to pad for 20 milliseconds. `tputs` generates enough pad characters to delay for the appropriate time. The first parameter is the string capability to be output. The second is the number of lines affected by the capability. (Some capabilities may require padding that depends on the number of lines affected. For example, `insert_line` may have to copy all lines below the current line, and may require time proportional to the number of lines copied. By convention `affcnt` is 1 if no lines are affected. The value 1 is used, rather than 0, for safety, since `affcnt` is multiplied by the amount of time per item, and anything multiplied by 0 is 0.) The third parameter is a routine to be called with each character.

For many simple programs, `affcnt` is always 1 and `outc` always just calls `putchar`. For these programs, the routine `putp(cap)` is a convenient abbreviation. `termhl` could be simplified by using `putp`.

Note also the special check for the `underline_char` capability. Some terminals, rather than having a code to start underlining and a code to stop underlining, have a code to underline the current character. `termhl` keeps track of the current mode, and if the current character is supposed to be underlined, will output `underline_char` if necessary. Low level details such as this are precisely why the `curses` level is recommended over the terminfo level. `Curses` takes care of terminals with different methods of underlining and other CRT functions. Programs at the terminfo level must handle such details themselves.

### A Larger Example

For a final example, see the program `editor`. This program is a very simple screen editor, patterned after the `vi` editor. The program illustrates how to use `curses` to write a screen editor. This editor keeps the buffer in `stdscr` to keep the program simple — obviously a real screen editor would keep a separate data structure. Many simplifications have been made here — no provision is made for files of any length other than the size of the screen, for lines longer than the width of the screen, or for control characters in the file.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

Several points about this program are worth making. The routine to write out the file illustrates the use of the `mvinch` function, which returns the character in a window at a given position. The data structure used here does not have a provision for keeping track of the number of characters in a line, or the number of lines in the file, so trailing blanks are eliminated when the file is written out.

The program uses built-in `curses` functions `insch`, `delch`, `insertln`, and `deleteln`. These functions behave much as the similar functions on intelligent terminals behave, inserting and deleting a character or line.

The command interpreter accepts not only ASCII characters, but also special keys. This is important — a good program will accept both. (Some editors are *modeless*, using nonprinting characters for commands. This is largely a matter of taste — the point being made here is that both arrow keys and ordinary ASCII characters should be handled.) It is important to handle special keys because this makes it easier for a new user to learn to use your program if he can use the arrow keys, instead of having to memorize that “h” means left, “j” means down, “k” means up, and “l” means right. On the other hand, not all terminals have arrow keys, so your program will be usable on a larger class of terminals if there is an ASCII character which is a synonym for each special key. Also, experienced users dislike having to move their hands from the “home row” position to use special keys, since they can work faster with alphabetic keys.

Note the call to `mvaddstr` in the input routine. `addstr` is roughly like the C `fputs` function, which writes out a string of characters. Like `fputs`, `addstr` does not add a trailing newline. It is the same as a series of calls to `addch` using the characters in the string. `mvaddstr` is the mv version of `addstr`, which moves to the given location in the window before writing.

The control-L command illustrates a feature most programs using `curses` should add. Often some program beyond the control of `curses` has written something to the screen, or some line noise has messed up the screen beyond what `curses` can keep track of. In this case, the user usually types control-L, causing the screen to be cleared and redrawn. This is done with the call to `clearok(curscr)`, which sets a flag causing the next `refresh` to first clear the screen. Then `refresh` is called to force the redraw.

Note also the call to `flash()`, which flashes the screen if possible, and otherwise rings the bell. Flashing the screen is intended as a bell replacement, and is particularly useful if the bell bothers someone within earshot of the user. The routine `beep()` can be called when a real beep is desired. (If for some reason the terminal is unable to beep, but able to flash, a call to `beep` will flash the screen.)

Another important point is that the input command is terminated by control-D, not escape. It is very tempting to use escape as a command, since escape is one of the few special keys which is available on every keyboard. (Return and break are the only others.) However, using escape as a separate key introduces an ambiguity. Most terminals use sequences of characters beginning with escape (“escape sequences”) to control the terminal, and have special keys that send escape sequences to the computer. If the computer sees an escape coming from the terminal, it cannot tell for sure whether the user pushed the escape key, or whether a special key was pressed. `Curses` handles the ambiguity by waiting for up to one second. If another

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

character is received during this second, and if that character might be the beginning of a special key, more input is read (waiting for up to one second for each character) until either a full special key is read, one second passes, or a character is received that could not have been generated by a special key. While this strategy works most of the time, it is not foolproof. It is possible for the user to press escape, then to type another key quickly, which causes **curses** to think a special key has been pressed. Also, there is a one second pause until the escape can be passed to the user program, resulting in slower response to the escape key. Many existing programs use escape as a fundamental command, which cannot be changed without infuriating a large class of users. Such programs cannot make use of special keys without dealing with this ambiguity, and at best must resort to a timeout solution. The moral is clear: when designing your program, avoid the escape key.

### LIST OF ROUTINES

This section describes all the routines available to the programmer in the **curses** package. The routines are organized by function. For an alphabetical list, see **curses(3X)**.

#### Structure

All programs using **curses** should include the file **<curses.h>**. This file defines several **curses** functions as macros, and defines several global variables and the datatype **WINDOW**. References to windows are always of type **WINDOW \***. **Curses** also defines **WINDOW \*** constants **stdscr** (the standard screen, used as a default to routines expecting a window), and **curscr** (the current screen, used only for certain low level operations like clearing and redrawing a garbaged screen). Integer constants **LINES** and **COLS** are defined, containing the size of the screen. Constants **TRUE** and **FALSE** are defined, with values 1 and 0, respectively. Additional constants which are values returned from most **curses** functions are **ERR** and **OK**. **OK** is returned if the function could be properly completed, and **ERR** is returned if there was some error, such as moving the cursor outside of a window.

The include file **<curses.h>** automatically includes **<stdio.h>** and an appropriate tty driver interface file, currently either **<sgtty.h\*>** or **<termio.h>**. Including **<stdio.h>** again is harmless but wasteful, including **<sgtty.h>** again will usually result in a fatal error.

A program using **curses** should include the loader option **-lcurses** in the makefile. This is true for both the **terminfo** level and the **curses** level. The compilation flag **-DMINICURSES** can be included if you restrict your program to a small subset of **curses** concerned primarily with screen output and optimization. The routines possible with mini-curses are listed in "Mini-Curses" under "OPERATION DETAILS."

---

\* The driver interface **<sgtty.h>** is a tty driver interface used in other versions of UNIX systems.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

### Initialization

These functions are called when initializing a program.

#### **initscr()**

The first function called should always be **initscr**. This will determine the terminal type and initialize **curses** data structures. **initscr** also arranges that the first call to **refresh** will clear the screen.

#### **endwin()**

A program should always call **endwin** before exiting. This function will restore tty modes, move the cursor to the lower left corner of the screen, reset the terminal into the proper non-visual mode, and tear down all appropriate data structures.

#### **newterm(type, fd)**

A program which outputs to more than one terminal should use **newterm** instead of **initscr**. **newterm** should be called once for each terminal. It returns a variable of type **SCREEN \*** which should be saved as a reference to that terminal. The arguments are the type of the terminal (a string) and a stdio file descriptor (**FILE\***) for output to the terminal. The file descriptor should be open for both reading and writing if input from the terminal is desired. The program should also call **endwin** for each terminal being used (see **set\_term** below). If an error occurs, the value **NULL** is returned.

#### **set\_term(new)**

This function is used to switch to a different terminal. The screen reference **new** becomes the new current terminal. The previous terminal is returned by the function. All other calls affect only the current terminal.

#### **longname()**

This function returns a pointer to a static area containing a verbose description of the current terminal. It is defined only after a call to **initscr**, **newterm**, or **setupterm**.

### Option Setting

These functions set options within **curses**. In each case, **win** is the window affected, and **bf** is a boolean flag with value **TRUE** or **FALSE** indicating whether to enable or disable the option. All options are initially **FALSE**. It is not necessary to turn these options off before calling **endwin**.

#### **clearok(win, bf)**

If set, the next call to **wrefresh** with this window will clear the screen and redraw the entire screen. If **win** is **curscr**, the next call to **wrefresh** with any window will cause the screen to be cleared. This is useful when the contents of the screen are uncertain, or in some cases for a more pleasing visual effect.

#### **idlok(win, bf)**

If enabled, **curses** will consider using the hardware insert/delete line feature of terminals so equipped. If disabled, **curses** will never use this feature. The insert/delete character feature is

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

always considered. Enable this option only if your application needs insert/delete line, for example, for a screen editor. It is disabled by default because insert/delete line tends to be visually annoying when used in applications where it isn't really needed. If insert/delete line cannot be used, **curses** will redraw the changed portions of all lines that do not match the desired line.

### **keypad(win,bf)**

This option enables the keypad of the users terminal. If enabled, the user can press a function key (such as an arrow key) and **getch** will return a single value representing the function key. If disabled, **curses** will not treat function keys specially. If the keypad in the terminal can be turned on (made to transmit) and off (made to work locally), turning on this option will turn on the terminal keypad.

### **leaveok(win,bf)**

Normally, the hardware cursor is left at the location of the window cursor being refreshed. This option allows the cursor to be left wherever the update happens to leave it. It is useful for applications where the cursor is not used, since it reduces the need for cursor motions. If possible, the cursor is made invisible when this option is enabled.

### **meta(win,bf)**

If enabled, characters returned by **getch** are transmitted with all 8 bits, instead of stripping the highest bit. The value **OK** is returned if the request succeeded, the value **ERR** is returned if the terminal or system is not capable of 8-bit input.

Meta mode is useful for extending the non-text command set in applications where the terminal has a meta shift key. Curses takes whatever measures are necessary to arrange for 8-bit input. On other versions of UNIX systems, raw mode will be used. On our systems, the character size will be set to 8, parity checking disabled, and stripping of the 8th bit turned off.

Note that 8-bit input is a fragile mode. Many programs and networks only pass 7 bits. If any link in the chain from the terminal to the application program strips the 8th bit, 8-bit input is impossible.

### **nodelay(win,bf)**

This option causes **getch** to be a non-blocking call. If no input is ready, **getch** will return **-1**. If disabled, **getch** will hang until a key is pressed.

### **intrflush(win,bf)**

If this option is enabled when an interrupt key is pressed on the keyboard (interrupt, quit, suspend), all output in the tty driver queue will be flushed, giving the effect of faster response to the interrupt but causing **curses** to have the wrong idea of what is on the screen. Disabling the option prevents the flush. The default is for the option to be enabled. This option depends on support in the underlying teletype driver.

### **typeahead(fd)**

Sets the file descriptor for typeahead check. **fd** should be an integer returned from **open** or **fileno**. Setting typeahead to **-1** will disable typeahead check. By default, file descriptor 0

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

(`stdin`) is used. `Typeahead` is checked independently for each screen, and for multiple interactive terminals it should probably be set to the appropriate input for each screen. A call to `typeahead` always affects only the current screen.

### `scrollok(win,bf)`

This option controls what happens when the cursor of a window is moved off the edge of the window, either from a newline on the bottom line, or typing the last character of the last line. If disabled, the cursor is left on the bottom line. If enabled, `wrefresh` is called on the window, and then the physical terminal and window are scrolled up one line. Note that in order to get the physical scrolling effect on the terminal, it is also necessary to call `idlok`.

### `setscrreg(t,b)`

#### `wsetscrreg(win,t,b)`

These functions allow the user to set a software scrolling region in a window `win` or `stdscr`. `t` and `b` are the line numbers of the top and bottom margin of the scrolling region. (Line 0 is the top line of the window.) If this option and `scrollok` are enabled, an attempt to move off the bottom margin line will cause all lines in the scrolling region to scroll up one line. Note that this has nothing to do with use of a physical scrolling region capability in the terminal, like that in the VT100. Only the text of the window is scrolled. If `idlok` is enabled and the terminal has either a scrolling region or insert/delete line capability, they will probably be used by the output routines.

## Terminal Mode Setting

These functions are used to set modes in the tty driver. The initial mode usually depends on the setting when the program was called: the initial modes documented here represent the normal situation.

### `cbreak()`

#### `nocbreak()`

These two functions put the terminal into and out of **CBREAK** mode. In this mode, characters typed by the user are immediately available to the program. When out of this mode, the teletype driver will buffer characters typed until newline is typed. Interrupt and flow control characters are unaffected by this mode. Initially the terminal is not in **CBREAK** mode. Most interactive programs using **curses** will set this mode.

### `echo()`

#### `noecho()`

These functions control whether characters typed by the user are echoed as typed. Initially, characters typed are echoed by the teletype driver. Authors of many interactive programs prefer to do their own echoing in a controlled area of the screen, or not to echo at all, so they disable echoing.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

**nl()**  
**nonl()**

These functions control whether newline is translated into carriage return and linefeed on output, and whether return is translated into newline on input. Initially, the translations do occur. By disabling these translations, **curses** is able to make better use of the linefeed capability, resulting in faster cursor motion.

**raw()**  
**noraw()**

The terminal is placed into or out of raw mode. Raw mode is similar to cbreak mode in that characters typed are immediately passed through to the user program. The differences are that in RAW mode, the interrupt, quit, and suspend characters are passed through uninterpreted instead of generating a signal. RAW mode also causes 8 bit input and output. The behavior of the BREAK key may be different on different systems.

**resetty()**  
**savetty()**

These functions save and restore the state of the tty modes. **savetty** saves the current state in a buffer, **resetty** restores the state to what it was at the last call to **savetty**.

### Window Manipulation

**newwin(num\_lines, num\_cols, beg\_row, beg\_col)**

Create a new window with the given number of lines and columns. The upper left corner of the window is at line **beg\_row** column **beg\_col**. If either **num\_lines** or **num\_cols** is zero, they will be defaulted to **LINES-beg\_row** and **COLS-beg\_col**. A new full-screen window is created by calling **newwin(0,0,0,0)**.

**newpad(num\_lines, num\_cols)**

Creates a new *pad* data structure. A pad is like a window, except that it is not restricted by the screen size, and is not associated with a particular part of the screen. Pads can be used when a large window is needed, and only a part of the window will be on the screen at one time. Automatic refreshes of pads (e.g. from scrolling or echoing of input) do not occur. It is not legal to call **refresh** with a pad as an argument, the routines **prefresh** or **pnoutrefresh** should be called instead. Note that these routines require additional parameters to specify the part of the pad to be displayed and the location on the screen to be used for display.

**subwin(orig, num\_lines, num\_cols, begy, begx)**

Create a new window with the given number of lines and columns. The window is at position (**begy**, **begx**) on the screen. (It is relative to the screen, not **orig**.) The window is made in the middle of the window **orig**, so that changes made to one window will affect both windows. When using this function, often it will be necessary to call **touchwin** before calling **wrefresh**.

**delwin(win)**

Deletes the named window, freeing up all memory associated with it. In the case of overlapping windows, subwindows should be deleted before the main window.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

### **mvwin(win, br, bc)**

Move the window so that the upper left corner will be at position (**br, bc**). If the move would cause the window to be off the screen, it is an error and the window is not moved.

### **touchwin(win)**

Throw away all optimization information about which parts of the window have been touched, by pretending the entire window has been drawn on. This is sometimes necessary when using overlapping windows, since a change to one window will affect the other window, but the records of which lines have been changed in the other window will not reflect the change.

### **overlay(win1, win2)**

### **overwrite(win1, win2)**

These functions overlay **win1** on top of **win2**; that is, all text in **win1** is copied into **win2**. The difference is that **overlay** is nondestructive (blanks are not copied) while **overwrite** is destructive.

## Causing Output to the Terminal

### **refresh()**

### **wrefresh(win)**

These functions must be called to get any output on the terminal, as other routines merely manipulate data structures. **wrefresh** copies the named window to the physical terminal screen, taking into account what is already there in order to do optimizations. **refresh** is the same, using **stdscr** as a default screen. Unless **leaveok** has been enabled, the physical cursor of the terminal is left at the location of the window's cursor.

### **douupdate()**

### **wnoutrefresh(win)**

These two functions allow multiple updates with more efficiency than **wrefresh**. To use them, it is important to understand how **curses** works. In addition to all the window structures, **curses** keeps two data structures representing the terminal screen: a *physical* screen, describing what is actually on the screen, and a *virtual* screen, describing what the programmer *wants* to have on the screen. **wrefresh** works by first copying the named window to the virtual screen (**wnoutrefresh**), and then calling the routine to update the screen (**douupdate**). If the programmer wishes to output several windows at once, a series of calls to **wrefresh** will result in alternating calls to **wnoutrefresh** and **douupdate**, causing several bursts of output to the screen. By calling **wnoutrefresh** for each window, it is then possible to call **douupdate** once, resulting in only one burst of output, with probably fewer total characters transmitted.

### **prefresh(pad,pminrow,pmincol,sminrow,smincol,smaxrow,smaxcol)**

### **pnoutrefresh(pad,pminrow,pmincol,sminrow,smincol,smaxrow,smaxcol)**

These routines are analogous to **wrefresh** and **wnoutrefresh** except that pads, instead of windows, are involved. The additional parameters are needed to indicate what part of the pad and screen are involved. **pminrow** and **pmincol** specify the upper left corner, in the pad, of the rectangle to be displayed. **sminrow**, **smincol**, **smaxrow**, and **smaxcol** specify the edges, on the screen, of the rectangle to be displayed in. The lower right corner in the pad of the rectangle to be displayed is calculated from the screen coordinates, since the rectangles must

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

be the same size. Both rectangles must be entirely contained within their respective structures.

### Writing on Window Structures

These routines are used to “draw” text on windows. In all cases, a missing **win** is taken to be **stdscr**. **y** and **x** are the row and column, respectively. The upper left corner is always (0,0), not (1,1). The **mv** functions imply a call to **move** before the call to the other function.

#### *Moving the Cursor*

**move(y, x)**  
**wmove(win, y, x)**

The cursor associated with the window is moved to the given location. This does not move the physical cursor of the terminal until **refresh** is called. The position specified is relative to the upper left corner of the window.

#### *Writing One Character*

**addch(ch)**  
**waddch(win, ch)**  
**mvaddch(y, x, ch)**  
**mvwaddch(win, y, x, ch)**

The character **ch** is put in the window at the current cursor position of the window. If **ch** is a tab, newline, or backspace, the cursor will be moved appropriately in the window. If **ch** is a different control character, it will be drawn in the **^X** notation. The position of the window cursor is advanced. At the right margin, an automatic newline is performed. At the bottom of the scrolling region, if **scrollok** is enabled, the scrolling region will be scrolled up one line.

The **ch** parameter is actually an integer, not a character. Video attributes can be combined with a character by or-ing them into the parameter. This will result in these attributes also being set. (The intent here is that text, including attributes, can be copied from one place to another with **inch** and **addch**.)

#### *Writing a String*

**addstr(str)**  
**waddstr(win, str)**  
**mvaddstr(y, x, str)**  
**mvwaddstr(win, y, x, str)**

These functions write all the characters of the null terminated character string **str** on the given window. They are identical to a series of calls to **addch**.

## THE CURSES AND TERINFO PACKAGE

### *Clearing Areas of the Screen*

**erase()**

**werase(win)**

These functions copy blanks to every position in the window.

**clear()**

**wclear(win)**

These functions are like **erase** and **werase** but they also call **clearok**, arranging that the screen will be cleared on the next call to **refresh** for that window.

**clrtobot()**

**wclrtobot(win)**

All lines below the cursor in this window are erased. Also, the current line to the right of the cursor is erased.

**clrtoeol()**

**wclrtoeol(win)**

The current line to the right of the cursor is erased.

### *Inserting and Deleting Text*

**delch()**

**wdelch(win)**

**mvdclh(y,x)**

**mvwdelch(win,y,x)**

The character under the cursor in the window is deleted. All characters to the right on the same line are moved to the left one position. This does not imply use of the hardware delete character feature.

**deleteln()**

**wdeleteln(win)**

The line under the cursor in the window is deleted. All lines below the current line are moved up one line. The bottom line of the window is cleared. This does not imply use of the hardware delete line feature.

**insch(c)**

**winsch(win, c)**

**mvinsch(y,x,c)**

**mvwinsch(win,y,x,c)**

The character **c** is inserted before the character under the cursor. All characters to the right are moved one space to the right, possibly losing the rightmost character on the line. This does not imply use of the hardware insert character feature.

**insertln()**

**winsertln(win)**

A blank line is inserted above the current line. The bottom line is lost. This does not imply use of the hardware insert line feature.

*Formatted Output*

**printw(fmt, args)**  
**wprintw(win, fmt, args)**  
**mvprintw(y, x, fmt, args)**  
**mvwprintw(win, y, x, fmt, args)**

These functions correspond to **printf**. The characters which would be output by **printf** are instead output using **waddch** on the given window.

*Miscellaneous*

**box(win, vert, hor)**

A box is drawn around the edge of the window. **vert** and **hor** are the characters the box is to be drawn with.

**scroll(win)**

The window is scrolled up one line. This involves moving the lines in the window data structure. As an optimization, if the window is **stdscr** and the scrolling region is the entire window, the physical screen will be scrolled at the same time.

**Input from a Window**

**getyx(win,y,x)**

The cursor position of the window is placed in the two integer variables **y** and **x**. Since this is a macro, no **&** is necessary.

**inch()**

**winch(win)**  
**mvinch(y,x)**  
**mvwinch(win,y,x)**

The character at the current position in the named window is returned. If any attributes are set for that position, their values will be or-ed into the value returned. The predefined constants **A\_ATTRIBUTES** and **A\_CHARTEXT** can be used with the **&** operator to extract the character or attributes alone.

**Input from the Terminal**

**getch()**  
**wgetch(win)**  
**mvgetch(y,x)**  
**mvwgetch(win,y,x)**

A character is read from the terminal associated with the window. In **nodelay** mode, if there is no input waiting, the value **-1** is returned. In **delay** mode, the program will hang until the system passes text through to the program. Depending on the setting of **cbreak**, this will be after one character, or after the first newline.

If **keypad** mode is enabled, and a function key is pressed, the code for that function key will be returned instead of the raw characters. Possible function keys are defined with integers beginning with **0401**, whose names begin with **KEY\_**. These are listed in "Input" under

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

"INTRODUCTION." If a character is received that could be the beginning of a function key (such as escape), **curses** will set a 1-second timer. If the remainder of the sequence does not come in within 1 second, the character will be passed through, otherwise the function key value will be returned. For this reason, on many terminals, there will be a one second delay after a user presses the escape key. (Use by a programmer of the escape key for a single character function is discouraged.)

**getstr(str)**  
**wgetstr(win,str)**  
**mvgetstr(y,x,str)**  
**mvwgetstr(win,y,x,str)**

A series of calls to **getch** is made, until a newline is received. The resulting value is placed in the area pointed at by the character pointer **str**. The users' erase and kill characters are interpreted.

**scanw(fmt, args)**  
**wscanw(win, fmt, args)**  
**mvscanw(y, x, fmt, args)**  
**mvwscanw(win, y, x, fmt, args)**

This function corresponds to **scanf**. **wgetstr** is called on the window, and the resulting line is used as input for the scan.

### Video Attributes

**attroff(at)**  
**wattroff(win, attrs)**  
**attron(at)**  
**wattron(win, attrs)**  
**attrset(at)**  
**wattrset(win, attrs)**  
**standout()**  
**standend()**  
**wstandout(win)**  
**wstandend(win)**

These functions set the *current attributes* of the named window. These attributes can be any combination of **A\_STANDOUT**, **A\_REVERSE**, **A\_BOLD**, **A\_DIM**, **A\_BLINK**, and **A\_UNDERLINE**. These constants are defined in `<curses.h>` and can be combined with the `C |` (or) operator.

The current attributes of a window are applied to all characters that are written into the window with **waddch**. Attributes are a property of the character, and move with the character through any scrolling and insert/delete line/character operations. To the extent possible on the particular terminal, they will be displayed as the graphic rendition of characters put on the screen.

**attrset(at)** sets the current attributes of the given window to **at**. **attroff(at)** turns off the named attributes without affecting any other attributes. **attron(at)** turns on the named

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

attributes without affecting any others. **standout** is the same as **attron(A\_STANDOUT)** **standend** is the same as **attrset(0)**, that is, it turns off all attributes.

### Bells and Flashing Lights

**beep()**

**flash()**

These functions are used to signal the programmer. **beep** will sound the audible alarm on the terminal, if possible, and if not, will flash the screen (visible bell), if that is possible. **flash** will flash the screen, and if that is not possible, will sound the audible signal. If neither signal is possible nothing will happen. Nearly all terminals have an audible signal (bell or beep) but only some can flash the screen.

### Portability Functions

These functions do not directly involve terminal dependent character output but tend to be needed by programs that use **curses**. Unfortunately, their implementation varies from one version of the UNIX system to another. They have been included here to enhance the portability of programs using **curses**.

**baudrate()**

**baudrate** returns the output speed of the terminal. The number returned is the integer baud rate, for example, 9600, rather than a table index such as **B9600**.

**erasechar()**

The erase character chosen by the user is returned. This is the character typed by the user to erase the character just typed.

**killchar()**

The line kill character chosen by the user is returned. This is the character typed by the user to forget the entire line being typed.

**flushinp()**

**flushinp** throws away any typeahead that has been typed by the user and has not yet been read by the program.

### Delays

These functions are highly unportable, but are often needed by programs that use **curses**, especially real time response programs. Some of these functions require a particular operating system or a modification to the operating system to work. In all cases, the routine will compile and return an error status if the requested action is not possible. It is recommended that programmers avoid use of these functions if possible.

**draino(ms)** The program is suspended until the output queue has drained enough to complete in **ms** additional milliseconds. Thus, **draino(50)** at 1200 baud would pause until there are no more than 6 characters in the output queue, because it would take 50 milliseconds to output the additional 6 characters. The purpose of this routine is to keep the program (and thus the

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

keyboard) from getting ahead of the screen. If the operating system does not support the `ioctl`s needed to implement `drain`, the value `ERR` is returned; otherwise, `OK` is returned.

`napms(ms)` This function suspends the program for `ms` milliseconds. It is similar to `sleep` except with higher resolution. The resolution actually provided will vary with the facilities available in the operating system, and often a change to the operating system will be necessary to produce good results. If resolution of at least .1 second is not possible, the routine will round to the next higher second, call `sleep`, and return `ERR`. Otherwise, the value `OK` is returned. Often the resolution provided is 1/60th second.

### Lower Level Functions

These functions are provided for programs not needing the screen optimization capabilities of `curses`. Programs are discouraged from working at this level, since they must handle various glitches in certain terminals. However, a program can be smaller if it only brings in the low level routines.

#### *Cursor Motion*

`mvcur(oldrow, oldcol, newrow, newcol)`

This routine optimally moves the cursor from `(oldrow, oldcol)` to `(newrow, newcol)`. The user program is expected to keep track of the current cursor position. Note that unless a full screen image is kept, `curses` will have to make pessimistic assumptions, sometimes resulting in less than optimal cursor motion. For example, moving the cursor a few spaces to the right can be done by transmitting the characters being moved over, but if `curses` does not have access to the screen image, it doesn't know what these characters are.

#### *Terminfo Level*

These routines are called by low level programs that need access to specific capabilities of `terminfo`. A program working at this level should include both `<curses.h>` and `<term.h>` in that order. After a call to `setupterm`, the capabilities will be available with macro names defined in `<term.h>`. See `terminfo(4)` for a detailed description of the capabilities.

Boolean valued capabilities will have the value 1 if the capability is present, 0 if it is not. Numeric capabilities have the value -1 if the capability is missing, and have a value at least 0 if it is present. String capabilities (both those with and without parameters) have the value `NULL` if the capability is missing, and otherwise have type `char *` and point to a character string containing the capability. The special character codes involving the `\` and `^` characters (such as `\r` for return, or `^A` for control A) are translated into the appropriate ASCII characters. Padding information (of the form `$<time>`) and parameter information (beginning with `%`) are left uninterpreted at this stage. The routine `tputs` interprets padding information, and `tparm` interprets parameter information.

If the program only needs to handle one terminal, the definition `-DSINGLE` can be passed to the C compiler, resulting in static references to capabilities instead of dynamic references. This can result in smaller code, but prevents use of more than one terminal at a time. Very few programs use more than one terminal, so almost all programs can use this flag.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

### **setupterm(term, filenum, errret)**

This routine is called to initialize a terminal. **term** is the character string representing the name of the terminal being used. **filenum** is the ICON/UXV operating system file descriptor of the terminal being used for output. **errret** is a pointer to an integer, in which a success or failure indication is returned. The values returned can be 1 (all is well), 0 (no such terminal), or -1 (some problem locating the **terminfo** database).

The value of **term** can be given as 0, which will cause the value of **TERM** in the environment to be used. The **errret** pointer can also be given as 0, meaning no error code is wanted. If **errret** is defaulted, and something goes wrong, **setupterm** will print an appropriate error message and exit, rather than returning. Thus, a simple program can call **setupterm(0, 1, 0)** and not worry about initialization errors.

If the variable **TERMINFO** is set in the environment to a path name, **setupterm** will check for a compiled **terminfo** description of the terminal under that path, before checking **/etc/term**. Otherwise, only **/etc/term** is checked.

**setupterm** will check the tty driver mode bits, using **filenum**, and change any that might prevent the correct operation of other low level routines. Currently, the mode that expands tabs into spaces is disabled, because the tab character is sometimes used for different functions by different terminals. (Some terminals use it to move right one space. Others use it to address the cursor to row or column 9.) If the system is expanding tabs, **setupterm** will remove the definition of the **tab** and **backtab** functions, making the assumption that since the user is not using hardware tabs, they may not be properly set in the terminal. Other system dependent changes, such as disabling a virtual terminal driver, may be made here.

As a side effect, **setupterm** initializes the global variable **ttytype**, which is an array of characters, to the value of the list of names for the terminal. This list comes from the beginning of the **terminfo** description.

After the call to **setupterm**, the global variable **cur\_term** is set to point to the current structure of terminal capabilities. By calling **setupterm** for each terminal, and saving and restoring **cur\_term**, it is possible for a program to use two or more terminals at once.

The mode that turns newlines into CRLF on output is not disabled. Programs that use **cursor\_down** or **scroll\_forward** should avoid these capabilities if their value is linefeed unless they disable this mode. **setupterm** calls **reset\_prog\_mode** after any changes it makes.

```
reset_prog_mode()  
reset_shell_mode()  
def_prog_mode()  
def_shell_mode()
```

These routines can be used to change the tty modes between the two states: *shell* (the mode they were in before the program was started) and *program* (the mode needed by the program). **def\_prog\_mode** saves the current terminal mode as program mode. **setupterm** and **initscr** call **def\_shell\_mode** automatically. **reset\_prog\_mode** puts the terminal into program mode, and **reset\_shell\_mode** puts the terminal into normal mode.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

A typical calling sequence is for a program to call `initscr` (or `setupterm` if a terminfo level program), then to set the desired program mode by calling routines such as `cbreak` and `noecho`, then to call `def_prog_mode` to save the current state. Before a shell escape or control-Z suspension, the program should call `reset_shell_mode`, to restore normal mode for the shell. Then, when the program resumes, it should call `reset_prog_mode`. Also, all programs must call `reset_shell_mode` before they exit. (The higher level routine `endwin` automatically calls `reset_shell_mode`.)

Normal mode is stored in `cur_term->Ottyb`, and program mode is in `cur_term->Nttyb`. These structures are both of type `SGTTYB` (which varies depending on the system). Currently the possible types are `struct sgtyb` (on some other systems) and `struct termio` (on this version of the ICON/UXV system). `def_prog_mode` should be called to save the current state in `Nttyb`.

### `vidputs(newmode, putc)`

`newmode` is any combination of attributes, defined in `<curses.h>`. `putc` is a `putc`-like function. The proper string to put the terminal in the given video mode is output. The previous mode is remembered by this routine. The result characters are passed through `putc`.

### `vidattr(newmode)`

The proper string to put the terminal in the given video mode is output to `stdout`.

### `tparm(instring, p1, p2, p3, p4, p5, p6, p7, p8, p9)`

`tparm` is used to instantiate a parameterized string. The character string returned has the given parameters applied, and is suitable for `tputs`. Up to 9 parameters can be passed, in addition to the parameterized string.

### `tputs(cp, affcnt, outc)`

A string capability, possibly containing padding information, is processed. Enough padding characters to delay for the specified time replace the padding specification, and the resulting string is passed, one character at a time, to the routine `outc`, which should expect one character parameter. (This routine often just calls `putchar`.) `cp` is the capability string. `affcnt` is the number of units affected by the capability, which varies with the particular capability. (For example, the `affcnt` for `insert_line` is the number of lines below the inserted line on the screen, that is, the number of lines that will have to be moved by the terminal.) `affcnt` is used by the padding information of some terminals as a multiplication factor. If the capability does not have a factor, the value 1 should be passed.

### `putp(str)`

This is a convenient function to output a capability with no `affcnt`. The string is output to `putchar` with an `affcnt` of 1. It can be used in simple applications that do not need to process the output of `tputs`.

### `delay_output(ms)`

A delay is inserted into the output stream for the given number of milliseconds. The current implementation inserts sufficient pad characters for the delay. This should not be used in place of a high resolution sleep, but rather for delay effects in the output. Due to buffering in the

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

system, it is unlikely that this call will result in the process actually sleeping. Since large numbers of pad characters can be output, it is recommended that `ms` not exceed 500.

### OPERATION DETAILS

These paragraphs describe many of the details of how the `curses` and terminfo package operates.

#### Insert and Delete Line and Character

The algorithm used by `curses` takes into account insert and delete line and character functions, if available, in the terminal. Calling the routine

```
idlok(stdscr, TRUE);
```

will enable insert/delete line. By default, `curses` will not use insert/delete line. This was not done for performance reasons, since there is no speed penalty involved. Rather, experience has shown that some programs do not need this facility, and that if `curses` uses insert/delete line, the result on the screen can be visually annoying. Since many simple programs using `curses` do not need this, the default is to avoid insert/delete line. Insert/delete character is always considered.

#### Additional Terminals

Curses will work even if absolute cursor addressing is not possible, as long as the cursor can be moved from any location to any other location. It considers local motions, parameterized motions, home, and carriage return.

Curses is aimed at full duplex, alphanumeric, video terminals. No attempt is made to handle half-duplex, synchronous, hard copy, or bitmapped terminals. Bitmapped terminals can be handled by programming the bitmapped terminal to emulate an ordinary alphanumeric terminal. This does not take advantage of the bitmap capabilities, but it is the fundamental nature of `curses` to deal with alphanumeric terminals.

The `curses` handles terminals with the "magic cookie glitch" in their video attributes. The term "magic cookie" means that a change in video attributes is implemented by storing a "magic cookie" in a location on the screen. This "cookie" takes up a space, preventing an exact implementation of what the programmer wanted. Curses takes the extra space into account, and moves part of the line to the right, as necessary. In some cases, this will unavoidably result in losing text from the right hand edge of the screen. Advantage is taken of existing spaces.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

### Multiple Terminals

Some applications need to display text on more than one terminal, controlled by the same process. Even if the terminals are of different types, **curses** can handle this.

All information about the current terminal is kept in a global variable

```
struct screen *SP;
```

Although the screen structure is hidden from the user, the C compiler will accept declarations of variables which are pointers. The user program should declare one screen pointer variable for each terminal it wishes to handle. The routine

```
struct screen *  
newterm(type, fd)
```

will set up a new terminal of the given terminal type which does output on file descriptor *fd*. A call to **initscr** is essentially **newterm(getenv("TERM"),stdout)**. A program wishing to use more than one terminal should use **newterm** for each terminal and save the value returned as a reference to that terminal.

To switch to a different terminal, call

```
set_term(term)
```

The old value of *SP* will be returned. The programmer should not assign directly to *SP* because certain other global variables must also be changed.

All **curses** routines always affect the current terminal. To handle several terminals, switch to each one in turn with **set\_term**, and then access it. Each terminal must be set up with **newterm**, and closed down with **endwin**.

### Video Attributes

Video attributes can be displayed in any combination on terminals with this capability. They are treated as an extension of the standout capability, which is still present.

Each character position on the screen has 16 bits of information associated with it. Seven of these bits are the character to be displayed, leaving separate bits for nine video attributes. These bits are used for standout, underline, reverse video, blink, dim, bold, blank, protect, and alternate character set. Standout is taken to be whatever highlighting works best on the terminal, and should be used by any program that does not need specific or combined attributes. Underlining, reverse video, blink, dim, and bold are the usual video attributes. Blank means that the character is displayed as a space, for security reasons. Protected and alternate character set depend on the particular terminal. The use of these last three bits is subject to change and not recommended. Note also that not all terminals implement all

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

attributes — in particular, no current terminal implements both dim and bold.

The routines to use these attributes include

<code>attrset(attrs)</code>	<code>wattrset(win, attrs)</code>
<code>attron(attrs)</code>	<code>wattron(win, attrs)</code>
<code>attroff(attrs)</code>	<code>wattroff(win, attrs)</code>
<code>standout()</code>	<code>wstandout(win)</code>
<code>standend()</code>	<code>wstandend(win)</code>

Attributes, if given, can be any combination of `A_STANDOUT`, `A_UNDERLINE`, `A_REVERSE`, `A_BLINK`, `A_DIM`, `A_BOLD`, `A_INVIS`, `A_PROTECT`, and `A_ALTCHARSET`. These constants, defined in `curses.h`, can be combined with the `C |` (or) operator to get multiple attributes. `attrset` sets the current attributes to the given `attrs`; `attron` turns on the given `attrs` in addition to any attributes that are already on; `attroff` turns off the given attributes, without affecting any others. `standout` and `standend` are equivalent to `attron(A_STANDOUT)` and `attrset(A_NORMAL)`.

If the particular terminal does not have the particular attribute or combination requested, `curses` will attempt to use some other attribute in its place. If the terminal has no highlighting at all, all attributes will be ignored.

### Special Keys

Many terminals have special keys, such as arrow keys, keys to erase the screen, insert or delete text, and keys intended for user functions. The particular sequences these terminals send differs from terminal to terminal. `Curses` allows the programmer to handle these keys.

A program using special keys should turn on the keypad by calling

```
keypad(stdscr, TRUE)
```

at initialization. This will cause special characters to be passed through to the program by the function `getch`. These keys have constants which are listed in "Input" under "INTRODUCTION." They have values starting at 0401, so they should not be stored in a `char` variable, as significant bits will be lost.

A program using special keys should avoid using the `escape` key, since most sequences start with escape, creating an ambiguity. `Curses` will set a one second alarm to deal with this ambiguity, which will cause delayed response to the escape key. It is a good idea to avoid escape in any case, since there is eventually pressure for nearly *any* screen oriented program to

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

accept arrow key input.

### Scrolling Region

There is a programmer accessible scrolling region. Normally, the scrolling region is set to the entire window, but the calls

```
setscrreg(top, bot)
wsetscrreg(win, top, bot)
```

set the scrolling region for `stdscr` or the given window to any combination of top and bottom margins. When scrolling past the bottom margin of the scrolling region, the lines in the region will move up one line, destroying the top line of the region. If scrolling has been enabled with `scrollok`, scrolling will take place only within that window. Note that the scrolling region is a software feature, and only causes a window data structure to scroll. This may or may not translate to use of the hardware scrolling region feature of a terminal, or insert/delete line.

### Mini-Curses

Curses copies from the current window to an internal screen image for every call to `refresh`. If the programmer is only interested in screen output optimization, and does not want the windowing or input functions, an interface to the lower level routines is available. This will make the program somewhat smaller and faster. The interface is a subset of full `curses`, so that conversion between the levels is not necessary to switch from mini-curses to full `curses`.

The following functions of `curses` and `terminfo` are available to the user of minicurses:

<code>addch(ch)</code>	<code>addstr(str)</code>	<code>attroff(at)</code>	<code>attron(at)</code>
<code>attrset(at)</code>	<code>clear()</code>	<code>erase()</code>	<code>initscr</code>
<code>move(y, x)</code>	<code>mvaddch(y,x,ch)</code>	<code>mvaddstr(y,x,str)</code>	<code>newterm</code>
<code>refresh()</code>	<code>standend()</code>	<code>standout()</code>	

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

The following functions of **curses** and **terminfo** are *not* available to the user of **minicurses**:

box	clrtoobot	clrtoeol	delch
deleteln	delwin	getch	getstr
inch	insch	insertln	longname
makenew	mvdelch	mvgetch	mvgetstr
mvinch	mvinsch	mvprintw	mvscanw
mvwaddch	mvwaddstr	mvwdelch	mvwgetch
mvwgetstr	mvwin	mvwinch	mvwinsch
mvwprintw	mvwscanw	newwin	overlay
overwrite	printw	putp	scanw
scroll	setscreg	subwin	touchwin
vidattr	waddch	waddstr	wclear
wclrtoobot	wclrtoeol	wdelch	wdeleteln
werase	wgetch	wgetstr	winsch
winsertln	wmove	wprintw	wrefresh
wscanw	wsetscreg		

The subset mainly requires the programmer to avoid use of more than the one window **stdscr**. Thus, all functions beginning with "w" are generally undefined. Certain high level functions that are convenient but not essential are also not available, including **printw** and **scanw**. Also, the input routine **getch** cannot be used with mini-curses. Features implemented at a low level, such as use of hardware insert/delete line and video attributes, are available in both versions. Also, mode setting routines such as **crmode** and **noecho** are allowed.

To access mini-curses, add **-DMINICURSES** to the **CFLAGS** in the makefile. If routines are requested that are not in the subset, the loader will print error messages such as

```
Undefined:
m_getch
m_waddch
```

to tell you that the routines **getch** and **waddch** were used but are not available in the subset. Since the preprocessor is involved in the implementation of mini-curses, the entire program must be recompiled when changing from one version to the other.

### TTY Mode Functions

In addition to the save/restore routines **savetty()** and **resetty()**, standard routines are available for going into and out of normal tty mode. These routines are **resetterm()**, which puts the terminal back in the mode it was in when **curses** was started; **fixterm()**, which undoes the effects of **resetterm**, that is, restores the "current **curses** mode"; and **saveterm()**, which saves the current state to be used by **fixterm()**. **endwin** automatically calls **resetterm**, and the routine to handle control-Z (on other systems that have process control) also uses **resetterm** and **fixterm**. Programmers should use these routines before and after shell escapes, and also if they write their own routine to handle control-Z. These routines are

## THE CURSES AND TERINFO PACKAGE

also available at the *terminfo* level.

### Typeahead Check

If the user types something during an update, the update will stop, pending a future update. This is useful when the user hits several keys, each of which causes a good deal of output. For example, in a screen editor, if the user presses the "forward screen" key, which draws the next screen full of text, several times rapidly, rather than drawing several screens of text, the updates will be cut short, and only the last screen full will actually be displayed. This feature is automatic and cannot be disabled. The feature only works on versions of the ICON/UXV operating system with the necessary support in the operating system.

### getstr

No matter what the setting of *echo* is, strings typed in here are echoed at the current cursor location. The users erase and kill characters are understood and handled. This makes it unnecessary for an interactive program to deal with erase, kill, and echoing when the user is typing a line of text.

### longname

The **longname** function does not need any arguments. It returns a pointer to a static area containing the actual long name of the terminal.

### Nodelay Mode

The call

```
nodelay(stdscr, TRUE)
```

will put the terminal in "nodelay mode". While in this mode, any call to **getch** will return -1 if there is nothing waiting to be read immediately. This is useful for writing programs requiring "real time" behavior where the users watch action on the screen and press a key when they want something to happen. For example, the cursor can be moving across the screen, in real time. When it reaches a certain point, the user can press an arrow key to change direction at that point.

### Portability

Several useful routines are provided to improve portability. The implementation of these routines is different from system to system, and the differences can be isolated from the user program by including them in **curses**.

## THE CURSES AND TERMINFO PACKAGE

Functions **erasechar()** and **killchar()** return the characters which erase one character, and kill the entire input line, respectively. The function **baudrate()** will return the current baud rate, as an integer. (For example, at 9600 baud, the integer 9600 will be returned, not the value **B9600** from `<sgtty.h>`.) The routine **flushinp()** will cause all typeahead to be thrown away.

o



## Chapter 13

### CURSES EXAMPLES

	PAGE
EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'editor'.....	13-1
EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'highlight' .....	13-5
EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'scatter' .....	13-6
EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'show' .....	13-8
EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'termhl'.....	13-10
EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'two' .....	13-12
EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'window' .....	13-15



## Chapter 13

### CURSES EXAMPLES

The following examples are provided to demonstrate uses of **curses**. They are for illustration purposes only. A good programmer would expand the programs presented here before using them.

#### EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'editor'

```
/*
 * editor: A screen-oriented editor. The user
 * interface is similar to a subset of vi.
 * The buffer is kept in stdscr itself to simplify
 * the program.
 */

#include <curses.h>

#define CTRL(c) ('c' & 037)

main(argc, argv)
char **argv;
{
    int i, n, l;
    int c;
    FILE *fd;

    if (argc != 2) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: edit file0);
        exit(1);
    }

    fd = fopen(argv[1], "r");
    if (fd == NULL) {
        perror(argv[1]);
        exit(2);
    }

    initscr();
    cbreak();
    nonl();
    noecho();
    idlok(stdscr, TRUE);
    keypad(stdscr, TRUE);

    /* Read in the file */
    while ((c = getc(fd)) != EOF)
        addch(c);
}
```

## CURSES EXAMPLES

```
fclose(fd);

move(0,0);
refresh();
edit();

/* Write out the file */
fd = fopen(argv[1], "w");
for (l=0; l<23; l++) {
    n = len(l);
    for (i=0; i<n; i++)
        putc(mvinch(l, i), fd);
    putc('\0', fd);
}
fclose(fd);

endwin();
exit(0);
}

len(lineno)
int lineno;
{
    int linelen = COLS-1;

    while (linelen >=0 && mvinch(lineno, linelen) == ' ')
        linelen--;
    return linelen + 1;
}

/* Global value of current cursor position */
int row, col;

edit()
{
    int c;

    for (;;) {
        move(row, col);
        refresh();
        c = getch();
        switch (c) { /* Editor commands */

            /* hjkl and arrow keys: move cursor */
            /* in direction indicated */
            case 'h':
            case KEY_LEFT:
                if (col > 0)
                    col--;
                break;

```

```

case 'j':
    case KEY_DOWN:
        if (row < LINES-1)
            row++;
        break;

    case 'k':
    case KEY_UP:
        if (row > 0)
            row--;
        break;

    case 'l':
    case KEY_RIGHT:
        if (col < COLS-1)
            col++;
        break;

    /* i: enter input mode */
    case KEY_IC:
    case 'i':
        input();
        break;

    /* x: delete current character */
    case KEY_DC:
    case 'x':
        delch();
        break;

    /* o: open up a new line and enter input mode */
    case KEY_IL:
    case 'o':
        move(++row, col=0);
        insertln();
        input();
        break;

    /* d: delete current line */
    case KEY_DL:
    case 'd':
        deleteln();
        break;

    /* ^L: redraw screen */
    case KEY_CLEAR:
    case CTRL(L):
        clearok(curscr);
        refresh();
        break;

```

## CURSES EXAMPLES

```
    /* w: write and quit */
    case 'w':
        return;

    /* q: quit without writing */
    case 'q':
        endwin();
        exit(1);
    default:
        flash();
        break;
}
}

/*
 * Insert mode: accept characters and insert them.
 * End with ^D or EIC
 */
input()
{
    int c;

    standout();
    mvaddstr(LINES-1, COLS-20, "INPUT MODE");
    standend();
    move(row, col);
    refresh();
    for (;;) {
        c = getch();
        if (c == CTRL(D) || c == KEY_EIC)
            break;
        insch(c);
        move(row, ++col);
        refresh();
    }
    move(LINES-1, COLS-20);
    clrtoeol();
    move(row, col);
    refresh();
}
```

## EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'highlight'

```

/*
 * highlight: a program to turn U, B, and
 * equences into highlighted
 * output, allowing words to be
 * displayed underlined or in bold.
 */
#include <curses.h>

main(argc, argv)
char **argv;
{
    FILE *fd;
    int c, c2;

    if (argc != 2) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: highlight file0);
        exit(1);
    }

    fd = fopen(argv[1], "r");
    if (fd == NULL) {
        perror(argv[1]);
        exit(2);
    }

    initscr();
    scrollok(stdscr, TRUE);

    for (;;) {
        c = getc(fd);
        if (c == EOF)
            break;
        if (c == '\\') {
            c2 = getc(fd);
            switch (c2) {
                case 'B':
                    attrset(A_BOLD);
                    continue;
                case 'U':
                    attrset(A_UNDERLINE);
                    continue;
                case 'N':
                    attrset(0);
                    continue;
            }
            addch(c);
            addch(c2);
        }
    }
}

```

## CURSES EXAMPLES

```
        else
            addch(c);
    }
    fclose(fd);
    refresh();
    endwin();
    exit(0);
}
```

### EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'scatter'

```
/*
 * SCATTER. This program takes the first
 * 23 lines from the standard
 * input and displays them on the
 * VDU screen, in a random manner.
 */

#include <curses.h>

#define MAXLINES 120
#define MAXCOLS 160
char s[MAXLINES][MAXCOLS]; /* Screen Array */

main()
{
    register int row=0,col=0;
    register char c;
    int char_count=0;
    long t;
    char buf[BUFSIZ];

    initscr();
    for(row=0;row<MAXLINES;row++)
        for(col=0;col<MAXCOLS;col++)
            s[row][col]=' ';

    row = 0;
    /* Read screen in */
    while( (c=getchar()) != EOF && row < LINES ) {
        if(c != '\0') {
            /* Place char in screen array */
            s[row][col++] = c;
            if(c != ' ')
                char_count++;
        } else {
            col=0;
            row++;
        }
    }
}
```

```
    }  
    }  
  
    time(&t); /* Seed the random number generator */  
    srand((int)(t&0177777L));  
  
    while(char_count) {  
        row=rand() % LINES;  
        col=(rand()>>2) % COLS;  
        if(s[row][col] != ' ')  
        {  
            move(row, col);  
            addch(s[row][col]);  
            s[row][col]=EOF;  
            char_count--;  
            refresh();  
        }  
    }  
    endwin();  
    exit(0);  
}
```

## CURSES EXAMPLES

### EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'show'

```
#include <curses.h>
#include <signal.h>

main(argc, argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
    FILE *fd;
    char linebuf[BUFSIZ];
    int line;
    void done(), perror(), exit();

    if(argc != 2)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "usage: %s file0, argv[0]);
        exit(1);
    }
    if((fd=fopen(argv[1], "r")) == NULL)
    {
        perror(argv[1]);
        exit(2);
    }
    signal(SIGINT, done);

    initscr();
    noecho();
    cbreak();
    nonl();
    idlok(stdscr, TRUE);

    while(1)
    {
        move(0,0);
        for(line=0; line<LINES; line++)
        {
            if(fgets(linebuf, sizeof linebuf, fd) == NULL)
            {
                clrtoobot();
                done();
            }
            move(line, 0);
            printw("%s", linebuf);
        }
        refresh();
        if(getch() == 'q')
            done();
    }
}
```

```
void  
done()  
{  
    move(LINES-1, 0);  
    clrtoeol();  
    refresh();  
    endwin();  
    exit(0);  
}
```

## CURSES EXAMPLES

### EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'termhl'

```
/*
 * A terminfo level version of highlight.
 */
#include <curses.h>
#include <term.h>

int ulmode = 0;      /* Currently underlining */

main(argc, argv)
char **argv;
{
    FILE *fd;
    int c, c2;
    int outch();

    if (argc > 2) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: termhl [file]0);
        exit(1);
    }

    if (argc == 2) {
        fd = fopen(argv[1], "r");
        if (fd == NULL) {
            perror(argv[1]);
            exit(2);
        }
    } else {
        fd = stdin;
    }

    setupterm(0, 1, 0);

    for (;;) {
        c = getc(fd);
        if (c == EOF)
            break;
        if (c == '\\') {
            c2 = getc(fd);
            switch (c2) {
                case 'B':
                    tputs(enter_bold_mode, 1, outch);
                    continue;
                case 'U':
                    tputs(enter_underline_mode, 1, outch);
                    ulmode = 1;
                    continue;
                case 'N':
                    tputs(exit_attribute_mode, 1, outch);
                    ulmode = 0;
                    continue;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
    }
    putch(c);
    putch(c2);
  }
  else
    putch(c);
}
fclose(fd);
fflush(stdout);
resetterm();
exit(0);
}

/*
 * This function is like putchar, but it checks for underlining.
 */
putch(c)
int c;
{
    outch(c);
    if (ulmode && underline_char) {
        outch('
');
        tputs(underline_char, 1, outch);
    }
}

/*
 * Outchar is a function version of putchar that can be passed to
 * tputs as a routine to call.
 */
outch(c)
int c;
{
    putchar(c);
}
```

## CURSES EXAMPLES

### EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'two'

```
#include <curses.h>
#include <signal.h>

struct screen *me, *you;
struct screen *set_term();

FILE *fd, *fdyou;
char linebuf[512];

main(argc, argv)
char **argv;
{
    int done();
    int c;

    if (argc != 4) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: two othertty otherttytype inputfile0);
        exit(1);
    }

    fd = fopen(argv[3], "r");
    fdyou = fopen(argv[1], "w+");
    signal(SIGINT, done); /* die gracefully */

    me = newterm(getenv("TERM"), stdout); /* initialize my tty */
    you = newterm(argv[2], fdyou); /* Initialize his terminal */

    set_term(me);          /* Set modes for my terminal */
    noecho();              /* turn off tty echo */
    cbreak();              /* enter cbreak mode */
    nonl();                /* Allow linefeed */
    nodelay(stdscr, TRUE); /* No hang on input */

    set_term(you);        /* Set modes for other terminal */
    noecho();
    cbreak();
    nonl();
    nodelay(stdscr, TRUE);

    /* Dump first screen full on my terminal */
    dump_page(me);

    /* Dump second screen full on his terminal */
    dump_page(you);

    for (;;) {            /* for each screen full */
        set_term(me);
        c = getch();
        if (c == 'q')     /* wait for user to read it */
            done();
    }
}
```

```

    if (c == ' ')
        dump_page(me);

    set_term(you);
    c = getch();
    if (c == 'q') /* wait for user to read it */
        done();
    if (c == ' ')
        dump_page(you);
    sleep(1);
}

dump_page(term)
struct screen *term;
{
    int line;

    set_term(term);
    move(0, 0);
    for (line=0; line<LINES-1; line++) {
        if (fgets(linebuf, sizeof linebuf, fd) == NULL) {
            clrtoeol();
            done();
        }
        mvprintw(line, 0, "%s", linebuf);
    }
    standout();
    mvprintw(LINES-1, 0, "--More--");
    standend();
    refresh(); /* sync screen */
}

/*
 * Clean up and exit.
 */
done()
{
    /* Clean up first terminal */
    set_term(you);
    move(LINES-1,0); /* to lower left corner */
    clrtoeol(); /* clear bottom line */
    refresh(); /* flush out everything */
    endwin(); /* curses cleanup */
}

```

## CURSES EXAMPLES

```
/* Clean up second terminal */
set_term(me);
move(LINES-1,0); /* to lower left corner */
clrtoeol();      /* clear bottom line */
refresh();       /* flush out everything */
endwin();        /* curses cleanup */

exit(0);
}
```

## EXAMPLE PROGRAM 'window'

```

#include < curses.h>

WINDOW *cmdwin;

main()
{
    int i, c;
    char buf[120];

    initscr();
    nonl();
    noecho();
    cbreak();

    cmdwin = newwin(3, COLS, 0, 0); /* top 3 lines */
    for (i=0; i<LINES; i++)
        mvprintw(i, 0, "This is line %d of stdscr", i);

    for (;;) {
        refresh();
        c = getch();
        switch (c) {
            case 'c': /* Enter command from keyboard */
                werase(cmdwin);
                wprintw(cmdwin, "Enter command:");
                wmove(cmdwin, 2, 0);
                for (i=0; i<COLS; i++)
                    waddch(cmdwin, '-');
                wmove(cmdwin, 1, 0);
                touchwin(cmdwin);
                wrefresh(cmdwin);
                wgetstr(cmdwin, buf);
                touchwin(stdscr);
                /*
                 * The command is now in buf.
                 * It should be processed here.
                 */
                break;
            case 'q':
                endwin();
                exit(0);
        }
    }
}

```



## Chapter 14

### (make) FOR MAINTAINING COMPUTER PROGRAMS

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	14-1
BASIC FEATURES .....	14-2
DESCRIPTION FILES AND SUBSTITUTIONS .....	14-7
OUTPUT TRANSLATIONS.....	14-9
COMMAND USAGE .....	14-9
THE ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES .....	14-11
RECURSIVE MAKEFILES.....	14-16
SUFFIXES AND TRANSFORMATION RULES .....	14-16
IMPLICIT RULES.....	14-18
FORMAT OF SHELL COMMANDS WITHIN <code>make</code> .....	14-19
ARCHIVE LIBRARIES.....	14-19
SOURCE CODE CONTROL SYSTEM FILE NAMES: THE TILDE .....	14-24
THE NULL SUFFIX .....	14-25
INCLUDE FILES.....	14-26
INVISIBLE SCCS MAKEFILES.....	14-26
DYNAMIC DEPENDENCY PARAMETERS.....	14-26



## Chapter 14

# (make) FOR MAINTAINING COMPUTER PROGRAMS

### GENERAL

In a programming project, a common practice is to divide large programs into smaller pieces that are more manageable. The pieces may require several different treatments such as being processed by a macro processor or sophisticated program generators (e.g., **Yacc** or **Lex**). The project continues to become more complex as the output of these generators are compiled with special options and with certain definitions and declarations. A sequence of code transformations develops which is difficult to remember. The resulting code may need further transformation by loading the code with certain libraries under control of special options. Related maintenance activities also complicate the process further by running test scripts and installing validated modules. Another activity that complicates program development is a long editing session. A programmer may lose track of the files changed and the object modules still valid especially when a change to a declaration can make a dozen other files obsolete. The programmer must also remember to compile a routine that has been changed or that uses changed declarations.

The "make" command is a software tool that maintains, updates, and regenerates groups of computer programs.

A programmer can easily forget

- Files that are dependent upon other files.
- Files that were modified recently.
- Files that need to be reprocessed or recompiled after a change in the source.
- The exact sequence of operations needed to make and exercise a new version of the program.

The many activities of program development and maintenance are made simpler by the **make** program.

The **make** program provides a method for maintaining up-to-date versions of programs that result from many operations on a number of files. The **make** program keeps track of the sequence of commands that create certain files and the list of files that require other files to be current before the operations can be done. Whenever a change is made in any part of a program, the **make** command creates the proper files simply, correctly, and with a minimum amount of effort. The **make** program also provides a simple macro substitution facility and the ability to encapsulate commands in a single file for convenient administration.

## MAKE

The basic operation of **make** is to

- Find the name of the needed target file in the description.
- Ensure that all of the files, on which it depends, exist and are up to date.
- Create the target file if it has not been modified since its generators were modified.

The descriptor file really defines the graph of dependencies. The **make** program determines the necessary work by performing a depth-first search of the graph of dependencies.

If the information on interfile dependencies and command sequences is stored in a file (makefile or Makefile), the simple command

```
make
```

is frequently sufficient to update the interesting files regardless of the number edited since the last **make**. In most cases, the description file is easy to write and changes infrequently. It is usually easier to type the **make** command than to issue even one of the needed operations, so the typical cycle of program development operations becomes

```
think — edit — make — test . . .
```

The **make** program is most useful for medium-sized programming projects. The **make** program does not solve the problems of maintaining multiple source versions or of describing huge programs.

## BASIC FEATURES

The basic operation of **make** is to update a target file by ensuring that all of the files on which the target file depends exist and are up to date. The target file is created if it has not been modified since the dependents were modified. The **make** program does a depth-first search of the graph of dependencies. The operation of the command depends on the ability to find the date and time that a file was last modified.

To illustrate, consider a simple example in which a program named *prog* is made by compiling and loading three C language files *x.c*, *y.c*, and *z.c* with the **ld** library. By convention, the output of the C language compilations will be found in files named *x.o*, *y.o*, and *z.o*. Assume that the files *x.c* and *y.c* share some declarations in a file named *defs*, but that *z.c* does not. That is, *x.c* and *y.c* have the line

```
#include "defs"
```

The following text describes the relationships and operations:

```

prog : x.o y.o z.o
      cc x.o y.o z.o -lld -o prog

x.o y.o : defs

```

If this information were stored in a file named *makefile*, the command

```
make
```

would perform the operations needed to recreate *prog* after any changes had been made to any of the four source files *x.c*, *y.c*, *z.c*, or *defs*.

The **make** program operates using the following three sources of information:

- A user-supplied description file
- File names and “last-modified” times from the file system
- Built-in rules to bridge some of the gaps.

In the example, the first line states that *prog* depends on three “.o” files. Once these object files are current, the second line describes how to load them to create *prog*. The third line states that *x.o* and *y.o* depend on the file *defs*. From the file system, **make** discovers that there are three “.c” files corresponding to the needed “.o” files and uses built-in information on how to generate an object from a source file (i.e., issue a “cc -c” command).

By not taking advantage of **make**’s innate knowledge, the following longer descriptive file results.

```

prog : x.o y.o z.o
      cc x.o y.o z.o -lld -o prog
x.o : x.c defs
      cc -c x.c
y.o : y.c defs
      cc -c y.c
z.o : z.c
      cc -c z.c

```

If none of the source or object files have changed since the last time *prog* was made, all of the files are current, and the command

```
make
```

announces this fact and stops. If, however, the *defs* file has been edited, *x.c* and *y.c* (but not *z.c*) are recompiled; and then *prog* is created from the new “.o” files. If only the file *y.c* had

## MAKE

changed, only it is recompiled; but it is still necessary to reload *prog*. If no target name is given on the **make** command line, the first target mentioned in the description is created; otherwise, the specified targets are made. The command

```
make x.o
```

would recompile *x.o* if *x.c* or *defs* had changed.

A method, often useful to programmers, is to include rules with mnemonic names and commands that do not actually produce a file with that name. These entries can take advantage of **make**'s ability to generate files and substitute macros. Thus, an entry "save" might be included to copy a certain set of files, or an entry "cleanup" might be used to throw away unneeded intermediate files.

If the file exists after the commands are executed, the file's time of last modification is used in further decisions. If the file does not exist after the commands are executed, the current time is used in making further decisions.

You may maintain a zero-length file purely to keep track of the time at which certain actions were performed. This technique is useful for maintaining remote archives and listings.

A simple macro mechanism for substituting in dependency lines and command strings is used by the **make** program. Macros are defined by command arguments or description file lines with embedded equal signs. A macro is invoked by preceding the name by a dollar sign. Macro names longer than one character must be parenthesized. The name of the macro is either the single character after the dollar sign or a name inside parentheses. The following are valid macro invocations:

```
$(CFLAGS)
$2
$(xy)
$Z
$(Z)
```

The last two invocations are identical. A \$\$ is a dollar sign.

The \$\*, \$@, \$?, and \$< are four special macros which change values during the execution of the command. (These four macros are described in the part "DESCRIPTION FILES AND SUBSTITUTIONS".) The following fragment shows assignment and use of some macros:

```

OBJECTS = x.o y.o z.o
LIBES = -lld
prog: $(OBJECTS)
      cc $(OBJECTS) $(LIBES) -o prog
...

```

The command

```
make "LIBES= -ll -lld"
```

loads the three objects with the Lex (-ll) library since macro definitions on the command line override definitions in the description. Arguments must be quoted with embedded blanks in ICON/UXV software commands.

As an example of the use of **make**, the description file used to maintain the **make** command is given. The code for **make** is spread over a number of C language source files and a Yacc grammar. The description file contains:

```

# Description file for the Make command

p = lp
FILES = Makefile version.c defs main.c doname.c misc.c
      files.c dosys.c gram.y lex.c gcos.c
OBJECTS = version.o main.o doname.o misc.o files.o
      dosys.o gram.o
LIBES= -lld
LINT = lint -p
CFLAGS = -O

make: $(OBJECTS)
      cc $(CFLAGS) $(OBJECTS) $(LIBES) -o make
      @size make

$(OBJECTS): defs
gram.o: lex.c

cleanup:
      -rm *.o gram.c
      -du

install:
      @size make /usr/bin/make
      cp make /usr/bin/make ; rm make

print: $(FILES)      # print recently changed files
      pr $? | $P
      touch print

```

## MAKE

```
test:
    make -dp | grep -v TIME >1zap
    /usr/bin/make -dp | grep -v TIME >2zap
    diff 1zap 2zap
    rm 1zap 2zap

lint : dosys.c doname.c files.c main.c misc.c version.c \
    gram.c
    $(LINT) dosys.c doname.c files.c main.c misc.c \
    version.c gram.c

arch:
    ar uv /sys/source/s2/make.a $(FILES)
```

The **make** program usually prints out each command before issuing it.

The following output results from typing the simple command **make** in a directory containing only the source and description files:

```
cc -O -c version.c
cc -O -c main.c
cc -O -c doname.c
cc -O -c misc.c
cc -O -c files.c
cc -O -c dosys.c
yacc gram.y
mv y.tab.c gram.c
cc -O -c gram.c
cc version.o main.o doname.o misc.o files.o dosys.o
    gram.o -lld -o make
13188+3348+3044 = 19580b = 046174b
```

Although none of the source files or grammars were mentioned by name in the description file, **make** found them using its suffix rules and issued the needed commands. The string of digits results from the **size make** command. The printing of the command line itself was suppressed by an @ sign. The @ sign on the **size** command in the description file suppressed the printing of the command, so only the sizes are written.

The last few entries in the description file are useful maintenance sequences. The "print" entry prints only the files changed since the last **make print** command. A zero-length file *print* is maintained to keep track of the time of the printing. The \$? macro in the command line then picks up only the names of the files changed since *print* was touched. The printed output can be sent to a different printer or to a file by changing the definition of the **P** macro as follows:

```
make print "P= cat >zap"
```

## DESCRIPTION FILES AND SUBSTITUTIONS

A description file contains the following information:

- Comments

The comment convention is that a sharp (#) and all characters on the same line after a sharp are ignored. Blank lines and lines beginning with a sharp (#) are totally ignored. If a noncomment line is too long, the line can be continued by using a backslash. If the last character of a line is a backslash, then the backslash, the new line, and all following blanks and tabs are replaced by a single blank.

- Macro definitions

A macro definition is a line containing an equal sign not preceded by a colon or a tab. The name (string of letters and digits) to the left of the equal sign (trailing blanks and tabs are stripped) is assigned the string of characters following the equal sign (leading blanks and tabs are stripped). The following are valid macro definitions:

```
2 = xyz
abc = -ll -ly -lld
LIBES =
```

The last definition assigns LIBES the null string. A macro that is never explicitly defined has the null string as the macro's value.

Macro definitions may also appear on the **make** command line while other lines give information about target files. The general form of an entry is

```
target1 [target2 . .] [:] [dependent1 . .] [; commands]
[# . .] [(tab) commands] [# . .]
. . .
```

Items inside brackets may be omitted and targets and dependents are strings of letters, digits, periods, and slashes. Shell metacharacters such as "\*" and "?" are expanded. Commands may appear either after a semicolon on a dependency line or on lines beginning with a tab immediately following a dependency line. A command is any string of characters not including a sharp (#) except when the sharp is in quotes or not including a new line.

- Dependency information

A dependency line may have either a single or a double colon. A target name may appear on more than one dependency line, but all of those lines must be of the same (single or double colon) type. For the usual single-colon case, a command sequence may be associated with at most one dependency line. If the target is out of date with any of the dependents on any of the lines and a command sequence is specified (even a null one following a semicolon or tab), it is executed; otherwise, a default creation rule may be invoked. In the double-colon case, a command sequence may be associated with each dependency line; if the target is out of date with any of the files on a particular line, the associated commands are executed. A built-in rule may also be executed. This detailed

## MAKE

form is of particular value in updating archive-type files.

- Executable commands

If a target must be created, the sequence of commands is executed. Normally, each command line is printed and then passed to a separate invocation of the shell after substituting for macros. The printing is suppressed in the silent mode or if the command line begins with an @ sign. **Make** normally stops if any command signals an error by returning a nonzero error code. Errors are ignored if the `-i` flags have been specified on the **make** command line, if the fake target name ".IGNORE" appears in the description file, or if the command string in the description file begins with a hyphen. Some ICON/UXV software commands return meaningless status. Because each command line is passed to a separate invocation of the shell, care must be taken with certain commands (e.g., `cd` and shell control commands) that have meaning only within a single shell process. These results are forgotten before the next line is executed.

Before issuing any command, certain internally maintained macros are set. The `$$` macro is set to the full target name of the current target. The `$(@)` macro is evaluated only for explicitly named dependencies. The `$(?)` macro is set to the string of names that were found to be younger than the target. The `$(?)` macro is evaluated when explicit rules from the *makefile* are evaluated. If the command was generated by an implicit rule, the `$(<)` macro is the name of the related file that caused the action; and the `$(*)` macro is the prefix shared by the current and the dependent file names. If a file must be made but there are no explicit commands or relevant built-in rules, the commands associated with the name ".DEFAULT" are used. If there is no such name, **make** prints a message and stops.

In addition, a description file also contains the following related macros: `$(@D)`, `$(@F)`, `$(*D)`, `$(*F)`, `$(<D)`, and `$(<F)`. The "D" refers to the directory part of the single letter macro. The "F" refers to the file name part of the single letter macro. These additions are useful when building hierarchical makefiles. They allow access to directory names for purposes of using the `cd` command of the shell. Thus, a shell command can be

```
cd $(<D); $(MAKE) $(<F)
```

The following command forces a complete rebuild of the operating system:

```
FRC=FRC make -f 70.mk
```

where the current directory is *ucb*. The FRC is a convention for *ForCing make* to completely rebuild a target starting from scratch.

## OUTPUT TRANSLATIONS

Macros in shell commands can now be translated when evaluated. The form is as follows:

```
$(macro:string1=string2)
```

The meaning of `$(macro)` is evaluated. For each appearance of `string1` in the evaluated macro, `string2` is substituted. The meaning of finding `string1` in `$(macro)` is that the evaluated `$(macro)` is considered as a bunch of string each delimited by white space (blanks or tabs). Thus, the occurrence of `string1` in `$(macro)` means that a regular expression of the following form has been found:

```
.*<string1>[TAB|BLANK]
```

This particular form was chosen because `make` usually concerns itself with suffixes. A more general regular expression match could be implemented if the need arises. The usefulness of this type of translation occurs when maintaining archive libraries. Now, all that is necessary is to accumulate the out-of-date members and write a shell script which can handle all the C language programs (i.e., those files ending in ".c"). Thus, the following fragment optimizes the executions of `make` for maintaining an archive library:

```
$(LIB): $(LIB)(a.o) $(LIB)(b.o) $(LIB)(c.o)
$(CC) -c $(CFLAGS) $(?:.o=.c)
ar rv $(LIB) $?
rm $?
```

A dependency of the preceding form is necessary for each of the different types of source files (suffixes) which define the archive library. These translations are added in an effort to make more general use of the wealth of information which `make` generates.

## COMMAND USAGE

The `make` command takes macro definitions, flags, description file names, and target file names as arguments in the form:

```
make [ flags ] [ macro definitions ] [ targets ]
```

The following summary of command operations explains how these arguments are interpreted.

First, all macro definition arguments (arguments with embedded equal signs) are analyzed and the assignments made. Command-line macros override corresponding definitions found in the description files. Next, the flag arguments are examined. The permissible flags are as follows:

## MAKE

- i** Ignore error codes returned by invoked commands. This mode is entered if the fake target name "IGNORE" appears in the description file.
- s** Silent mode. Do not print command lines before executing. This mode is also entered if the fake target name "SILENT" appears in the description file.
- r** Do not use the built-in rules.
- n** No execute mode. Print commands, but do not execute them. Even lines beginning with an "@" sign are printed.
- t** Touch the target files (causing them to be up to date) rather than issue the usual commands.
- q** Question. The **make** command returns a zero or nonzero status code depending on whether the target file is or is not up to date.
- p** Print out the complete set of macro definitions and target descriptions.
- m** Print a memory map showing **text**, **data**, and **stack**. This option is a no-operation on systems without the *getu* system call.
- b** Compatibility mode for old makefiles.
- k** Abandon work on the current entry but continue on other branches that do not depend on the current entry.
- .DEFAULT** If a file must be made but there are no explicit commands or relevant built-in rules, the commands associated with the name **DEFAULT** are used if it exists.
- e** Environment variables override assignments within makefiles.
- .PRECIOUS** Dependents on this target are not removed when quit or interrupt is pressed.
- d** Debug mode. Print out detailed information on files and times examined.
- f** Description file name. The next argument is assumed to be the name of a description file. A file name of "-" denotes the standard input. If there are no "-f" arguments, the file named *makefile* or *Makefile* in the current directory is read. The contents of the description files override the built-in rules if they are present.

Finally, the remaining arguments are assumed to be the names of targets to be made and the arguments are done in left-to-right order. If there are no such arguments, the first name in the description files that does not begin with a period is "made".

## THE ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES

Environment variables are read and added to the macro definitions each time **make** executes. Precedence is a prime consideration in doing this properly. The following describes **make**'s interaction with the environment. A new macro, **MAKEFLAGS**, is maintained by **make**. The new macro is defined as the collection of all input flag arguments into a string (without minus signs). The new macro is exported and thus accessible to further invocations of **make**. Command line flags and assignments in the *makefile* update **MAKEFLAGS**. Thus, to describe how the environment interacts with **make**, the **MAKEFLAGS** macro (environment variable) must be considered.

When executed, **make** assigns macro definitions in the following order:

1. Read the **MAKEFLAGS** environment variable. If it is not present or null, the internal **make** variable **MAKEFLAGS** is set to the null string. Otherwise, each letter in **MAKEFLAGS** is assumed to be an input flag argument and is processed as such. (The only exceptions are the **-f**, **-p**, and **-r** flags.)
2. Read and set the input flags from the command line. The command line adds to the previous settings from the **MAKEFLAGS** environment variable.
3. Read macro definitions from the command line. These are made *not resettable*. Thus, any further assignments to these names are ignored.
4. Read the internal list of macro definitions. These are found in the file *rules.c* of the source for **make**. Figure 14-1 contains the complete *makefile* that represents the internally defined macros and rules of the current version of **make**. Thus, if **make -r ...** is typed and a *makefile* includes the *makefile* in Figure 14-1, the results would be identical to excluding the **-r** option and the *include* line in the *makefile*. The Figure 14-1 output can be reproduced by the following:

```
make -fp - < /dev/null 2>/dev/null
```

The output appears on the standard output.  
They give default definitions for the C language compiler (CC=cc), the assembler (AS=as), etc.

5. Read the environment. The environment variables are treated as macro definitions and marked as *exported* (in the shell sense). However, since **MAKEFLAGS\*** is not an internally defined variable (in *rules.c*), this has the effect of doing the same assignment twice. The exception to this is when **MAKEFLAGS** is assigned on the command line. (The reason it was read previously was to turn the debug flag on before anything else was done.)

---

\* **MAKEFLAGS** are read and set again.

## MAKE

6. Read the *makefile(s)*. The assignments in the *makefile(s)* overrides the environment. This order is chosen so that when a *makefile* is read and executed, you know what to expect. That is, you get what is seen unless the `-e` flag is used. The `-e` is an additional command line flag which tells **make** to have the environment override the *makefile* assignments. Thus, if `make -e ...` is typed, the variables in the environment override the definitions in the *makefile*\*. Also **MAKEFLAGS** override the environment if assigned. This is useful for further invocations of **make** from the current *makefile*.

#	LIST OF SUFFIXES
	<code>.SUFFIXES: .o .c .c~ .y .y~ .l .l~ .s .s~</code>
	<code>.sh .sh~ .h .h~</code>
#	PRESET VARIABLES
	<code>MAKE=make</code>
	<code>YACC=yacc</code>
	<code>YFLAGS=</code>
	<code>LEX=lex</code>
	<code>LFLAGS=</code>
	<code>LD=ld</code>
	<code>LDFLAGS=</code>
	<code>CC=cc</code>
	<code>CFLAGS=-o</code>
	<code>AS=as</code>
	<code>ASFLAGS=</code>
	<code>GET=get</code>
	<code>GFLAGS=</code>

Figure 14-1. Example of Internal Definitions (Sheet 1 of 4)

---

\* There is no way to override the command line assignments.

#	SINGLE SUFFIX RULES
.c:	\$(CC) -n -o \$< -o \$@
.c~:	\$(GET) \$(GFLAGS) -p \$< > \$*.c \$(CC) -n -o \$* .c -o \$* -rm -f \$*.c
.sh:	cp \$< @
.sh~:	\$(GET) &(GFLAGS) -p \$< > .sh cp \$* .sh \$* -rm -f \$* .sh
#	DOUBLE SUFFIX RULES
.c.o:	\$(CC) \$(CFLAGS) -c \$<
.c~.o:	

Figure 14-1. Example of Internal Definitions (Sheet 2 of 4)

	<pre>\$(GET) \$(CFLAGS) -p \$&lt; &gt; \$*.c \$(CC) \$(CFLAGS) -c \$*.c -rm -f \$*.c</pre>
.c~.c:	
	<pre>\$(GET) \$(GFLAGS) -p \$&lt; &gt; \$*.c</pre>
.s.o:	
	<pre>\$(AS) \$(ASFLAGS) -o \$@\$&lt;</pre>
.s~.o:	
	<pre>\$(GET) \$(GFLAGS) -p \$&lt; &gt; \$*.s \$(AS) \$(ASFLAGS) -o \$*.o \$*.s -rm -f \$*.s</pre>
.y.o:	
	<pre>\$(YACC) \$(YFLAGS) \$&lt; \$(CC) \$(CFLAGS) -c y.tab.c rm y.tab.o\$@</pre>
.y~.o:	
	<pre>\$(GET) \$(GFLAG) -p \$&lt; &gt; \$*.y \$(YACC) \$(YFLAGS) \$*.y \$(CC) \$(CFLAG) -c y.tab.c rm -f y.tab \$*.y mv y.tab.o \$*.o</pre>
.l.o:	
	<pre>\$(LEX) \$(LFLAGS) \$&lt; \$(CC) \$(CFLAGS) -c lex.yy.c rm lex.yy.c mv lex.yy.o \$@</pre>

Figure 14-1. Example of Internal Definitions (Sheet 3 of 4)

.l~.o:	\$(GET) \$(GFLAGS) -p \$< > \$*.l \$(LEX) \$(GFLAG) \$*.l \$(CC) \$(CFLAGS) -c lex.yy.c rm -f lex.yy.c \$*.l mv lex.yy.o \$*.o \$(YACC) \$(YFLAGS) \$< mv y.tab.c \$@
.y~.c:	\$(GET) \$(GFLAGS) -p \$< > \$*.y \$(YACC) \$(YFLAGS) \$*.y mv -f \$*.c -rm -f \$*.y
.l.c:	\$(LEX) \$< mv lex.yy.c \$@
.c.a:	\$(CC) -c \$(FLAGS) \$< ar rv \$@ \$*.o rm -f \$*.o
.c~.a:	\$(GET) \$(GFLAGS) -p \$< > \$*.c \$(CC) -c \$(CFLAGS) \$*.c ar rv \$@ \$*.o
.s~.a:	\$(GET) \$(GFLAGS) -p \$< > \$*.s \$(AS) \$(ASFLAGS) -o \$*.o \$*.s ar rv \$@ \$*.o -rm -f \$*.[so]
.h~.h	\$(GET) \$(GFLAGS) -p \$< > \$*.h

Figure 14-1. Example of Internal Definitions (Sheet 4 of 4)

## MAKE

It may be clearer to list the precedence of assignments. Thus, in order from least binding to most binding, the precedence of assignments is as follows:

1. internal definitions (from *rules.c*)
2. environment
3. *makefile(s)*
4. command line.

The **-e** flag has the effect of changing the order to:

1. internal definitions (from *rules.c*)
2. *makefile(s)*
3. environment
4. command line.

This order is general enough to allow a programmer to define a *makefile* or set of *makefiles* whose parameters are dynamically definable.

## RECURSIVE MAKEFILES

Another feature was added to **make** concerning the environment and recursive invocations. If the sequence “\$(MAKE)” appears anywhere in a shell command line, the line is executed even if the **-n** flag is set. Since the **-n** flag is exported across invocations of **make** (through the **MAKEFLAGS** variable), the only thing that actually gets executed is the **make** command itself. This feature is useful when a hierarchy of *makefile(s)* describes a set of software subsystems. For testing purposes, **make -n ...** can be executed and everything that would have been done will get printed out including output from lower level invocations of **make**.

## SUFFIXES AND TRANSFORMATION RULES

The **make** program does not know what file name suffixes are interesting or how to transform a file with one suffix into a file with another suffix. This information is stored in an internal table that has the form of a description file. If the **-r** flag is used, the internal table is not used.

The list of suffixes is actually the dependency list for the name “.SUFFIXES”. The **make** program searches for a file with any of the suffixes on the list. If such a file exists and if there is a transformation rule for that combination, **make** transforms a file with one suffix into a file with another suffix. The transformation rule names are the concatenation of the two suffixes. The name of the rule to transform a *.r* file to a *.o* file is thus *.r.o*. If the rule is present and no explicit command sequence has been given in the user’s description files, the command sequence for the rule *.r.o* is used. If a command is generated by using one of these suffixing rules, the macro  $\$*$  is given the value of the stem (everything but the suffix) of the name of the file to be made; and the macro  $\$<$  is the name of the dependent that caused the action.

The order of the suffix list is significant since the list is scanned from left to right. The first name formed that has both a file and a rule associated with it is used. If new names are to be appended, the user can add an entry for “.SUFFIXES” in his own description file. The dependents are added to the usual list. A “.SUFFIXES” line without any dependents deletes the current list. It is necessary to clear the current list if the order of names is to be changed. The following is an excerpt from the default rules file:

```
.SUFFIXES : .o .c .e .r .f .y .yr .ye .l .s
YACC = yacc
YACCR = yacc -r
YACCE = yacc -e
YFLAGS =
LEX = lex
LFLAGS =
CC = cc
AS = as -
CFLAGS =
RC = ec
RFLAGS =
EC = ec
EFLAGS =
FFlags =
.c.o :
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c $<
.e.o .r.o .f.o :
    $(EC) $(RFLAGS) $(EFLAGS) $(FFLAGS) -c $<
.s.o :
    $(AS) -o $@ $<
.y.o :
    $(YACC) $(YFLAGS) $<
    $(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c y.tab.c
    rm y.tab.c
    mv y.tab.o $@
.y.c :
    $(YACC) $(YFLAGS) $<
    mv y.tab.c $@
```

## MAKE

### IMPLICIT RULES

The **make** program uses a table of interesting suffixes and a set of transformation rules to supply default dependency information and implied commands. The default suffix list is as follows:

<i>.o</i>	Object file
<i>.o~</i>	SCCS Object file
<i>.c</i>	C source file
<i>.c~</i>	SCCS C source file
<i>.s</i>	Assembler source file
<i>.s~</i>	SCCS Assembler source file
<i>.y</i>	Yacc-C source grammar
<i>.y~</i>	SCCS Yacc C source grammar
<i>.h</i>	Header file
<i>.h~</i>	SCCS Header file
<i>.sh</i>	Shell file
<i>.sh~</i>	SCCS Shell file
<i>.l</i>	Lex source grammar.
<i>.l~</i>	SCCS Lex source grammar.

Figure 14-2 summarizes the default transformation paths. If there are two paths connecting a pair of suffixes, the longer one is used only if the intermediate file exists or is named in the description.

If the file *x.o* were needed and there were an *x.c* in the description or directory, the *x.o* file would be compiled. If there were also an *x.l*, that grammar would be run through Lex before compiling the result. However, if there were no *x.c* but there were an *x.l*, **make** would discard the intermediate C language file and use the direct link as shown in Figure 14-3.

It is possible to change the names of some of the compilers used in the default or the flag arguments with which they are invoked by knowing the macro names used. The compiler names are the macros **AS**, **CC**, **RC**, **EC**, **YACC**, **YACCR**, **YACCE**, and **LEX**. The command

TPA-695889-1  
24W X 16H

### Figure 14-2. Summary of Default Transformation Path

```
make CC=newcc
```

will cause the **newcc** command to be used instead of the usual C language compiler. The macros **CFLAGS**, **RFLAGS**, **EFLAGS**, **YFLAGS**, and **LFLAGS** may be set to cause these commands to be issued with optional flags. Thus

```
make "CFLAGS=-O"
```

causes the optimizing C language compiler to be used.

### FORMAT OF SHELL COMMANDS WITHIN **make**

The **make** program remembers embedded newlines and tabs in shell command sequences. Thus, if the programmer puts a *for* loop in the makefile with indentation, when **make** prints it out, it retains the indentation and backslashes. The output can still be piped to the shell and is readable. This is obviously a cosmetic change; no new function is gained.

### ARCHIVE LIBRARIES

The **make** program has an improved interface to archive libraries. Due to a lack of documentation, most people are probably not aware of the current syntax of addressing members of archive libraries. The previous version of **make** allows a user to name a member of a library in the following manner:

## MAKE

```
lib(object.o)
  or
lib((_localtime))
```

where the second method actually refers to an entry point of an object file within the library. (**Make** looks through the library, locates the entry point, and translates it to the correct object file name.)

To use this procedure to maintain an archive library, the following type of *makefile* is required:

```
lib:: lib(ctime.o)
      $(CC) -c -O ctime.c
      ar rv lib ctime.o
      rm ctime.o
lib:: lib(fopen.o)
      $(CC) -c -O fopen.c
      ar rv lib fopen.o
      rm fopen.o
...and so on for each object ...
```

This is tedious and error prone. Obviously, the command sequences for adding a C language file to a library are the same for each invocation; the file name being the only difference each time. (This is true in most cases.)

The current version gives the user access to a rule for building libraries. The handle for the rule is the ".a" suffix. Thus, a ".c.a" rule is the rule for compiling a C language source file, adding it to the library, and removing the ".o" cadaver. Similarly, the ".y.a", the ".s.a", and the ".l.a" rules rebuild YACC, assembler, and LEX files, respectively. The current archive rules defined internally are ".c.a", ".c~.a", and ".s~.a". [The tilde (~) syntax will be described shortly.] The user may define in makefile other rules needed.

The above 2-member library is then maintained with the following shorter makefile:

```
lib:    lib(ctime.o) lib(fopen.o)
        echo lib up-to-date.
```

The internal rules are already defined to complete the preceding library maintenance. The actual ".c.a" rules are as follows:

```
.c.a:
      $(CC) -c $(CFLAGS) $<
      ar rv $@ $*.o
      rm -f $*.o
```

Thus, the `$$` macro is the “.a” target (`lib`); the `$$<` and `$$*` macros are set to the out-of-date C language file; and the file name scans the suffix, respectively (`ctime.c` and `ctime`). The `$$<` macro (in the preceding rule) could have been changed to `$$*.c`.

It might be useful to go into some detail about exactly what **make** does when it sees the construction

```
lib: lib(ctime.o)
    @echo lib up-to-date
```

Assume the object in the library is out of date with respect to `ctime.c`. Also, there is no `ctime.o` file.

1. Do `lib`.
2. To do `lib`, do each dependent of `lib`.
3. Do `lib(ctime.o)`.
4. To do `lib(ctime.o)`, do each dependent of `lib(ctime.o)`. (There are none.)
5. Use internal rules to try to build `lib(ctime.o)`. (There is no explicit rule.) Note that `lib(ctime.o)` has a parenthesis in the name to identify the target suffix as “.a”. This is the key. There is no explicit “.a” at the end of the `lib` library name. The parenthesis forces the “.a” suffix. In this sense, the “.a” is hard wired into **make**.
6. Break the name `lib(ctime.o)` up into `lib` and `ctime.o`. Define two macros, `$$` (`=lib`) and `$$*` (`=ctime`).
7. Look for a rule “.X.a” and a file `$$*.X`. The first “.X” (in the `.SUFFIXES` list) which fulfills these conditions is “.c” so the rule is “.c.a”, and the file is `ctime.c`. Set `$$<` to be `ctime.c` and execute the rule. In fact, **make** must then do `ctime.c`. However, the search of the current directory yields no other candidates, and the search ends.
8. The library has been updated. Do the rule associated with the “lib:” dependency; namely

```
echo lib up-to-date
```

It should be noted that to let `ctime.o` have dependencies, the following syntax is required:

```
lib(ctime.o): $(INCDIR)/stdio.h
```

Thus, explicit references to `.o` files are unnecessary. There is also a new macro for referencing the archive member name when this form is used. The `$$%` macro is evaluated each time `$$`

## MAKE

is evaluated. If there is no current archive member,  $\$%$  is null. If an archive member exists, then  $\$%$  evaluates to the expression between the parenthesis.

An example *makefile* for a larger library is given in Figure 14-3.

#	@(#)/usr/src/cmd/make/make.tm 3.2
LIB	=lsxlib
PR	=lp
INSDIR	= /rl/flopO/
INS	= eval
lsx:	\$(LIB) low.o mch.o ld -x low.o mch.o \$(LIB) mv a.out lsx @size lsx
#	Here, \$(INS) as either "." or "eval".
lsx:	\$(INS)'cp lsx \$(INSDIR)lsx . . strip \$(INSDIR)lsx . . ls -l \$(INSDIR)lsx'
print:	
	\$(PR) header.slow.smch.s*.h*.c Makefile

Figure 14-3. Example of Library Makefile (Sheet 1 of 3)

<code>\$(LIB):</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(CLOCK.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(main.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(tty.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(trap.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(sysent.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(sys2.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(syn3.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(syn4.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(sys1.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(sig.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(flo.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(kl.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(alloc.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(nami.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(iget.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(rdwri.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(subr.o)</code>

Figure 14-3. Example of Library Makefile (Sheet 2 of 3)

## MAKE

<code>\$(LIB)(bio.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(decfd.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(sip.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(space.o)</code>
<code>\$(LIB)(puts.o)</code>
<code>@echo \$(LIB) now up to date.</code>
<code>.s.o:</code>
<code>as -o \$*.o header.s \$*.s</code>
<code>.o.a:</code>
<code>ar rv \$@ \$&lt;</code>
<code>rm -f \$&lt;</code>
<code>.s.a:</code>
<code>as -o \$*.o header.s \$*.s</code>
<code>ar rv \$@ \$*.o</code>
<code>rm -f \$*.o</code>
<code>.PRECIOUS:\$(LIB)</code>

Figure 14-3. Example of Library Makefile (Sheet 3 of 3)

The reader will note also that there are no lingering “\*.o” files left around. The result is a library maintained directly from the source files (or more generally from the SCCS files).

### SOURCE CODE CONTROL SYSTEM FILE NAMES: THE TILDE

The syntax of **make** does not directly permit referencing of prefixes. For most types of files on ICON/UXV machines, this is acceptable since nearly everyone uses a suffix to distinguish different types of files. The SCCS files are the exception. Here, “s.” precedes the file name part of the complete pathname.

To allow **make** easy access to the prefix “s.” requires either a redefinition of the rule naming syntax of **make** or a trick. The trick is to use the tilde (~) as an identifier of SCCS files. Hence, “.c~.o” refers to the rule which transforms an SCCS C language source file into an object. Specifically, the internal rule is

```
.c~.o:
$(GET) $(GFLAGS) -p $< > $*.c
$(CC) $(CFLAGS) -c $*.c
-rm -f $*.c
```

Thus, the tilde appended to any suffix transforms the file search into an SCCS file name search with the actual suffix named by the dot and all characters up to (but not including) the tilde.

The following SCCS suffixes are internally defined:

```
.c~
.y~
.s~
.sh~
.h~
```

The following rules involving SCCS transformations are internally defined:

```
.c~:
.sh~:
.c~.o:
.s~.o:
.y~.o:
.l~.o:
.y~.c:
.c~.a:
.s~.a:
.h~.h:
```

Obviously, the user can define other rules and suffixes which may prove useful. The tilde gives him a handle on the SCCS file name format so that this is possible.

### THE NULL SUFFIX

In the ICON/UXV operating system source code, there are many commands which consist of a single source file. It was wasteful to maintain an object of such files for **make**. The current implementation supports single suffix rules (a null suffix). Thus, to maintain the program *cat*, a rule in the *makefile* of the following form is needed:

```
.c:
    $(CC) -n -O $< -o $@
```

In fact, this ".c:" rule is internally defined so no *makefile* is necessary at all. The user only needs to type

```
make cat dd echo date
```

## MAKE

(these are notable single file programs) and all four C language source files are passed through the above shell command line associated with the ".c:" rule. The internally defined single suffix rules are

```
.c:  
.c~:  
.sh:  
.sh~:
```

Others may be added in the *makefile* by the user.

## INCLUDE FILES

The **make** program has an include file capability. If the string *include* appears as the first seven letters of a line in a *makefile* and is followed by a blank or a tab, the string is assumed to be a file name which the current invocation of **make** will read. The file descriptors are stacked for reading *include* files so that no more than about 16 levels of nested *includes* are supported.

## INVISIBLE SCCS MAKEFILES

The SCCS *makefiles* are invisible to **make**. That is, if **make** is typed and only a file named *s.makefile* exists, **make** will do a **get** on the file, then read and remove the file. Using the **-f**, **make** will get, read, and remove arguments and *include* files.

## DYNAMIC DEPENDENCY PARAMETERS

A new dependency parameter has been defined. The parameter has meaning only on the dependency line in a *makefile*. The **\$\$@** refers to the current "thing" to the left of the colon (which is **\$@**). Also the form **\$\$(@F)** exists which allows access to the file part of **\$@**. Thus, in the following:

```
cat: $$@.c
```

the dependency is translated at execution time to the string "cat.c". This is useful for building a large number of executable files, each of which has only one source file. For instance, the ICON/UXV software command directory could have a *makefile* like:

```
CMDS = cat dd echo date cc cmp comm ar ld chown
```

```
$(CMDS):    $$@.c
            $(CC) -O $? -o $@
```

Obviously, this is a subset of all the single file programs. For multiple file programs, a directory is usually allocated and a separate *makefile* is made. For any particular file that has a peculiar compilation procedure, a specific entry must be made in the *makefile*.

The second useful form of the dependency parameter is `$$(@F)`. It represents the file name part of `$$@`. Again, it is evaluated at execution time. Its usefulness becomes evident when trying to maintain the `/usr/include` directory from a *makefile* in the `/usr/src/head` directory. Thus, the `/usr/src/head/makefile` would look like

```
INCDIR = /usr/include

INCLUDES = \
    $(INCDIR)/stdio.h \
    $(INCDIR)/pwd.h \
    $(INCDIR)/dir.h \
    $(INCDIR)/a.out.h

$(INCLUDES): $$(@F)
    cp $? $@
    chmod 0444 $@
```

This would completely maintain the `/usr/include` directory whenever one of the above files in `/usr/src/head` was updated. H 2 "SUGGESTIONS AND WARNINGS"

The most common difficulties arise from **make's** specific meaning of dependency. If file `x.c` has a `"#include "defs"` line, then the object file `x.o` depends on **defs**; the source file `x.c` does not. If **defs** is changed, nothing is done to the file `x.c` while file `x.o` must be recreated.

To discover what **make** would do, the `-n` option is very useful. The command

```
make -n
```

orders **make** to print out the commands which **make** would issue without actually taking the time to execute them. If a change to a file is absolutely certain to be mild in character (e.g., adding a new definition to an include file), the `-t` (touch) option can save a lot of time. Instead of issuing a large number of superfluous recompilations, **make** updates the modification times on the affected file. Thus, the command

```
make -ts
```

## **MAKE**

("touch silently") causes the relevant files to appear up to date. Obvious care is necessary since this mode of operation subverts the intention of **make** and destroys all memory of the previous relationships.

The debugging flag (**-d**) causes **make** to print out a very detailed description of what it is doing including the file times. The output is verbose and recommended only as a last resort.

## Chapter 15

### SOURCE CODE CONTROL SYSTEM USER GUIDE

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	15-1
SCCS FOR BEGINNERS.....	15-2
DELTA NUMBERING .....	15-7
SCCS COMMAND CONVENTIONS .....	15-9
SCCS COMMANDS.....	15-11
SCCS FILES .....	15-34
AN SCCS INTERFACE PROGRAM.....	15-37



## Chapter 15

# SOURCE CODE CONTROL SYSTEM USER GUIDE

### GENERAL

The Source Code Control System (SCCS) is a collection of ICON/UXV software commands that help individuals or projects control and account for changes to files of text. The source code and documentation of software systems are typical examples of files of text to be changed. The SCCS is a collection of programs that run under ICON/UXV. It is convenient to conceive of SCCS as a custodian of files. The SCCS provides facilities for

- Storing files of text
- Retrieving particular versions of the files
- Controlling updating privileges to files
- Identifying the version of a retrieved file
- Recording when, where, and why the change was made and who made each change to a file.

These types of facilities are important when programs and documentation undergo frequent changes because of maintenance and/or enhancement work. It is often desirable to regenerate the version of a program or document as it existed before changes were applied to it. This can be done by keeping copies (on paper or other media), but this method quickly becomes unmanageable and wasteful as the number of programs and documents increases. The SCCS provides an attractive solution because the original file is stored on disk. Whenever changes are made to the file, the SCCS stores only the changes. Each set of changes is called a "delta".

This chapter, together with relevant portions of the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual* is a complete user's guide to SCCS. The following topics are covered:

- **SCCS for Beginners:** How to make an SCCS file, how to update it, and how to retrieve a version thereof.
- **How Deltas Are Numbered:** How versions of SCCS files are numbered and named.
- **SCCS Command Conventions:** Conventions and rules generally applicable to all SCCS commands.
- **SCCS Commands:** Explanation of all SCCS commands with discussions of the more useful arguments.

## SCCS

- **SCCS Files:** Protection, format, and auditing of SCCS files including a discussion of the differences between using SCCS as an individual and using it as a member of a group or project. The role of a "project SCCS administrator" is introduced.

Neither the implementation of SCCS nor the installation procedure for SCCS is described in this section.

Throughout this section, each reference of the form **name(1M)**, **name(7)**, or **name(8)** refers to entries in the *ICON/UXV Administrator Reference Manual*. All other references to entries of the form **name(N)**, where "N" is a number (1 through 6) possibly followed by a letter, refer to entry **name** in section N of the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*.

### SCCS FOR BEGINNERS

It is assumed that the reader knows how to log onto a Icon computer system, create files, and use the text editor. A number of terminal-session fragments are presented. All of them should be tried since the best way to learn SCCS is to use it.

To supplement the material in this section, the detailed SCCS command descriptions in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual* should be consulted.

#### A. Terminology

Each SCCS file is composed of one or more sets of changes applied to the null (empty) version of the file, with each set of changes usually depending on all previous sets. Each set of changes is called a "delta" and is assigned a name, called the *SCCS IDentification string* (SID). The SID is composed of at most four components. The first two components are the "release" and "level" numbers which are separated by a period. Hence, the first delta (for the original file) is called "1.1", the second "1.2", the third "1.3", etc. The release number can also be changed allowing, for example, deltas "2.1", "3.1", etc. The change in the release number usually indicates a major change to the file.

Each delta of an SCCS file defines a particular version of the file. For example, delta 1.5 defines version 1.5 of the SCCS file, obtained by applying to the null (empty) version of the file the changes that constitute deltas 1.1, 1.2, etc., up to and including delta 1.5 itself, in that order.

#### B. Creating an SCCS File via "admin"

Consider, for example, a file called *lang* that contains a list of programming languages.

```
c
pl/i
fortran
cobol
algol
```

Custody of the *lang* file can be given to SCCS. The following **admin** command (used to “administer” SCCS files) creates an SCCS file and initializes delta 1.1 from the file *lang*:

```
admin -ilang s.lang
```

All SCCS files *must* have names that begin with “s.”, hence, *s.lang*. The **-i** keyletter, together with its value *lang*, indicates that **admin** is to create a new SCCS file and “initialize” the new SCCS file with the contents of the file *lang*. This initial version is a set of changes (delta 1.1) applied to the null SCCS file.

The **admin** command replies

```
No id keywords (cm7)
```

This is a warning message (which may also be issued by other SCCS commands) that is to be ignored for the purposes of this section. Its significance is described under the **get** command in the part “SCCS COMMANDS.” In the following examples, this warning message is not shown although it may actually be issued by the various commands. The file *lang* should now be removed (because it can be easily reconstructed using the **get** command) as follows:

```
rm lang
```

### C. Retrieving a File via “get”

The *lang* file can be reconstructed by using the following **get** command:

```
get s.lang
```

The command causes the creation (retrieval) of the latest version of file *s.lang* and prints the following messages:

```
1.1
5 lines
```

This means that **get** retrieved version 1.1 of the file, which is made up of five lines of text. The retrieved text is placed in a file whose name is formed by deleting the “s.” prefix from the name of the SCCS file. Hence, the file *lang* is created.

## SCCS

The "get s.lang" command simply creates the file *lang* (read-only) and keeps no information regarding its creation. On the other hand, in order to be able to subsequently apply changes to an SCCS file with the **delta** command, the **get** command must be informed of your intention to do so. This is done as follows:

```
get -e s.lang
```

The **-e** keyletter causes **get** to create a file *lang* for both reading and writing (so it may be edited) and places certain information about the SCCS file in another new file. The new file, called the *p-file*, will be read by the **delta** command. The **get** command prints the same messages as before except that the SID of the version to be created through the use of **delta** is also issued. For example,

```
get -e s.lang
1.1
new delta 1.2
5 lines
```

The file *lang* may now be changed, for example, by

```
ed lang
27
$a
snobol
ratfor
.
w
41
q
```

### D. Recording Changes via "delta"

In order to record within the SCCS file the changes that have been applied to *lang*, execute the following command:

```
delta s.lang
```

**Delta** prompts with

```
comments?
```

The response should be a description of why the changes were made. For example,

comments? added more languages

The **delta** command then reads the *p-file* and determines what changes were made to the file *lang*. The **delta** command does this by doing its own **get** to retrieve the original version and by applying the **diff(1)** command to the original version and the edited version.

When this process is complete, at which point the changes to *lang* have been stored in *s.lang*, **delta** outputs

```
1.2
2 inserted
0 deleted
5 unchanged
```

The number "1.2" is the name of the delta just created, and the next three lines of output refer to the number of lines in the file *s.lang*.

#### E. Additional Information About "get"

As shown in the previous example, the command

```
get s.lang
```

retrieves the latest version (now 1.2) of the file *s.lang*. This is done by starting with the original version of the file and successively applying deltas (the changes) in order until all have been applied.

In the example chosen, the following commands are all equivalent:

```
get s.lang
get -r1 s.lang
get -r1.2 s.lang
```

The numbers following the **-r** keyletter are SIDs. Note that omitting the level number of the SID (as in "get -r1 s.lang") is equivalent to specifying the highest level number that exists within the specified release. Thus, the second command requests the retrieval of the latest version in release 1, namely 1.2. The third command specifically requests the retrieval of a particular version, in this case, also 1.2.

Whenever a truly major change is made to a file, the significance of that change is usually indicated by changing the release number (first component of the SID) of the delta being made. Since normal automatic numbering of deltas proceeds by incrementing the level number (second component of the SID), the user must indicate to SCCS the need to change the release number. This is done with the **get** command.

## SCCS

```
get -e -r2 s.lang
```

Because release 2 does not exist, **get** retrieves the latest version *before* release 2. The **get** command also interprets this as a request to change the release number of the delta which the user desires to create to 2, thereby causing it to be named 2.1, rather than 1.3. This information is conveyed to **delta** via the *p-file*. The **get** command then outputs

```
1.2
new delta 2.1
7 lines
```

which indicates that version 1.2 has been retrieved and that 2.1 is the version **delta** will create. If the file is now edited, for example, by

```
ed lang
41
/cobol/d
w
35
q
```

and **delta** executed

```
delta s.lang
comments? deleted cobol from list of languages
```

the user will see by **delta**'s output that version 2.1 is indeed created.

```
2.1
0 inserted
1 deleted
6 unchanged
```

Deltas may now be created in release 2 (deltas 2.2, 2.3, etc.), or another new release may be created in a similar manner. This process may be continued as desired.

### F. The "help" Command

If the command

```
get abc
```

is executed, the following message will be output:

```
ERROR [abc]: not an SCCS file (co1)
```

The string "co1" is a code for the diagnostic message and may be used to obtain a fuller explanation of that message by use of the **help** command.

```
help co1
```

This produces the following output:

```
co1:  
"not an SCCS file"  
A file that you think is an SCCS file  
does not begin with the characters "s."
```

Thus, **help** is a useful command to use whenever there is any doubt about the meaning of an SCCS message. Detailed explanations of almost all SCCS messages may be found in this manner.

## DELTA NUMBERING

It is convenient to conceive of the deltas applied to an SCCS file as the nodes of a tree in which the root is the initial version of the file. The root delta (node) is normally named "1.1" and successor deltas (nodes) are named "1.2", "1.3", etc. The components of the names of the deltas are called the "release" and the "level" numbers, respectively. Thus, normal naming of successor deltas proceeds by incrementing the level number, which is performed automatically by SCCS whenever a delta is made. In addition, the user may wish to change the release number when making a delta to indicate that a major change is being made. When this is done, the release number also applies to all successor deltas unless specifically changed again. Thus, the evolution of a particular file may be represented as in Figure 15-1.

TPA-695890-1  
22W X 5H

Figure 15-1. Evolution of an SCCS File

## SCCS

Such a structure may be termed the "trunk" of the SCCS tree. Figure 15-1 represents the normal sequential development of an SCCS file in which changes that are part of any given delta are dependent upon *all* the preceding deltas.

However, there are situations in which it is necessary to cause a branching in the tree in that changes applied as part of a given delta are *not* dependent upon all previous deltas. As an example, consider a program which is in production use at version 1.3 and for which development work on release 2 is already in progress. Thus, release 2 may already have some deltas precisely as shown in Figure 4-1. Assume that a production user reports a problem in version 1.3 and that the nature of the problem is such that it cannot wait to be repaired in release 2. The changes necessary to repair the trouble will be applied as a delta to version 1.3 (the version in production use). This creates a new version that will then be released to the user but will not affect the changes being applied for release 2 (i.e., deltas 1.4, 2.1, 2.2, etc.).

The new delta is a node on a branch of the tree. Its name consists of four components; the release number and the level number (as with trunk deltas) plus the "branch" number and the "sequence" number. The delta name appears as follows:

release.level.branch.sequence

The branch number is assigned to each branch that is a descendant of a particular trunk delta with the first such branch being 1, the next one 2, etc. The sequence number is assigned, in order, to each delta on a particular branch. Thus, 1.3.1.2 identifies the second delta of the first branch that derives from delta 1.3. This is shown in Figure 15-2.

TPA-695891-1  
22W X 8H

### Figure 15-2. Tree Structure With Branch Deltas

The concept of branching may be extended to any delta in the tree. The naming of the resulting deltas proceeds in the manner just illustrated.

Two observations are of importance with regard to naming deltas. First, the names of trunk deltas contain exactly two components, and the names of branch deltas contain exactly four components. Second, the first two components of the name of branch deltas are always those of the ancestral trunk delta, and the branch component is assigned in the order of creation of the branch independently of its location relative to the trunk delta. Thus, a branch delta may always be identified as such from its name. Although the ancestral trunk delta may be identified from the branch delta's name, it is not possible to determine the entire path leading

from the trunk delta to the branch delta. For example, if delta 1.3 has one branch emanating from it, all deltas on that branch will be named 1.3.1.n. If a delta on this branch then has another branch emanating from it, all deltas on the new branch will be named 1.3.2.n (see Figure 15-3). The only information that may be derived from the name of delta 1.3.2.2 is that it is the chronologically second delta on the chronologically second branch whose trunk ancestor is delta 1.3. In particular, it is *not* possible to determine from the name of delta 1.3.2.2 all the deltas between it and trunk ancestor 1.3.

TPA-695892-1  
27W X 8H

### Figure 15-3. Extending the Branching Concept

It is obvious that the concept of branch deltas allows the generation of arbitrarily complex tree structures. Although this capability has been provided for certain specialized uses, it is strongly recommended that the SCCS tree be kept as simple as possible because comprehension of its structure becomes extremely difficult as the tree becomes more complex.

## SCCS COMMAND CONVENTIONS

This part discusses the conventions and rules that apply to SCCS commands. These rules and conventions are generally applicable to all SCCS commands with exceptions indicated. The SCCS commands accept two types of arguments:

- Keyletter arguments
- File arguments.

Keyletter arguments (hereafter called simply "keyletters") begin with a minus sign (-), followed by a lowercase alphabetic character, and in some cases, followed by a value. These keyletters control the execution of the command to which they are supplied.

File arguments (names of files and/or directories) specify the file(s) that the given SCCS command is to process. Naming a directory is equivalent to naming *all* the SCCS files within the directory. Non-SCCS files and unreadable files [because of permission modes via `chmod(1)`] in the named directories are silently ignored.

## SCCS

In general, file arguments may not begin with a minus sign. However, if the name “-” (a lone minus sign) is specified as an argument to a command, the command reads the standard input for lines and takes each line as the name of an SCCS file to be processed. The standard input is read until end-of-file. This feature is often used in pipelines with, for example, the **find(1)** or **ls(1)** commands. Again, names of non-SCCS files and of unreadable files are silently ignored.

All keyletters specified for a given command apply to all file arguments of that command. All keyletters are processed before any file arguments with the result that the placement of keyletters is arbitrary (i.e., keyletters may be interspersed with file arguments). File arguments, however, are processed left to right. Somewhat different argument conventions apply to the **help**, **what**, **sccsdiff**, and **val** commands.

Certain actions of various SCCS commands are controlled by flags appearing in SCCS files. Some of these flags are discussed in this part. For a complete description of all such flags, see **admin(1)** section in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*.

The distinction between the real user [see **passwd(1)**] and the effective user of a Icon computer system is of concern in discussing various actions of SCCS commands. For the present, it is assumed that both the real user and the effective user are one and the same (i.e., the user who is logged into ICON/UXV). This subject is discussed further in “SCCS FILES.”

All SCCS commands that modify an SCCS file do so by writing a temporary copy, called the *x-file*. This file ensures that the SCCS file is not damaged if processing should terminate abnormally. The name of the *x-file* is formed by replacing the “s.” of the SCCS file name with “x.” When processing is complete, the old SCCS file is removed and the *x-file* is renamed to be the SCCS file. The *x-file* is created in the directory containing the SCCS file, given the same mode [see **chmod(1)**] as the SCCS file, and owned by the effective user.

To prevent simultaneous updates to an SCCS file, commands that modify SCCS files create a *lock-file*, called the *z-file*, whose name is formed by replacing the “s.” of the SCCS file name with “z.” The *z-file* contains the process number of the command that creates it, and its existence is an indication to other commands that the SCCS file is being updated. Thus, other commands that modify SCCS files do not process an SCCS file if the corresponding *z-file* exists. The *z-file* is created with mode 444 (read-only) in the directory containing the SCCS file and is owned by the effective user. This file exists only for the duration of the execution of the command that creates it. In general, users can ignore *x-files* and *z-files*. The files may be useful in the event of system crashes or similar situations.

The SCCS commands produce diagnostics (on the diagnostic output) of the form:

ERROR [name-of-file-being-processed]: message text (code)

The code in parentheses may be used as an argument to the **help** command to obtain a further explanation of the diagnostic message. Detection of a fatal error during the processing of a file causes the SCCS command to terminate processing of that file and to proceed with the next file, in order, if more than one file has been named.

## SCCS COMMANDS

This part describes the major features of all the SCCS commands. Detailed descriptions of the commands and of all their arguments are given in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual* and should be consulted for further information. The discussion below covers only the more common arguments of the various SCCS commands.

The commands follow in approximate order of importance. The following is a summary of all the SCCS commands and of their major functions:

<b>get</b>	Retrieves versions of SCCS files.
<b>delta</b>	Applies changes (deltas) to the text of SCCS files, i.e., creates new versions.
<b>admin</b>	Creates SCCS files and applies changes to parameters of SCCS files.
<b>prs</b>	Prints portions of an SCCS file in user specified format.
<b>help</b>	Gives explanations of diagnostic messages.
<b>rmdel</b>	Removes a delta from an SCCS file; allows the removal of deltas that were created by mistake.
<b>cdc</b>	Changes the commentary associated with a delta.
<b>what</b>	Searches any ICON/UXV system file(s) for all occurrences of a special pattern and prints out what follows it; is useful in finding identifying information inserted by the <b>get</b> command.
<b>sccsdiff</b>	Shows the differences between any two versions of an SCCS file.
<b>comb</b>	Combines two or more consecutive deltas of an SCCS file into a single delta; often reduces the size of the SCCS file.
<b>val</b>	Validates an SCCS file.

### A. The "get" Command

The **get** command creates a text file that contains a particular version of an SCCS file. The particular version is retrieved by beginning with the initial version and then applying deltas, in order, until the desired version is obtained. The created file is called the *g-file*. The *g-file* name is formed by removing the "s." from the SCCS file name. The *g-file* is created in the current directory and is owned by the real user. The mode assigned to the *g-file* depends on how the **get** command is invoked.

The most common invocation of **get** is

## SCCS

```
get s.abc
```

which normally retrieves the latest version on the trunk of the SCCS file tree and produces (for example) on the standard output

```
1.3
67 lines
No id keywords (cm7)
```

which indicates that

1. Version 1.3 of file "s.abc" was retrieved (1.3 is the latest trunk delta).
2. This version has 67 lines of text.
3. No ID keywords were substituted in the file.

The generated *g-file* (file "abc") is given mode 444 (read-only). This particular way of invoking `get` is intended to produce *g-files* only for inspection, compilation, etc. It is not intended for editing (i.e., not for making deltas).

In the case of several file arguments (or directory-name arguments), similar information is given for each file processed, but the SCCS file name precedes it. For example,

```
get s.abc s.def
```

produces

```
s.abc:
1.3
67 lines
No id keywords (cm7)

s.def:
1.7
85 lines
No id keywords (cm7)
```

### ***ID Keywords***

In generating a *g-file* to be used for compilation, it is useful and informative to record the date and time of creation, the version retrieved, the module's name, etc. within the *g-file*. This information appears in a load module when one is eventually created. The SCCS provides a convenient mechanism for doing this automatically. Identification (ID) keywords appearing anywhere in the generated file are replaced by appropriate values according to the definitions

of these ID keywords. The format of an ID keyword is an uppercase letter enclosed by percent signs (%). For example,

```
%I%
```

is defined as the ID keyword that is replaced by the SID of the retrieved version of a file. Similarly, %H% is defined as the ID keyword for the current date (in the form "mm/dd/yy"), and %M% is defined as the name of the *g-file*. Thus, executing **get** on an SCCS file that contains the PL/I declaration,

```
DCL ID CHAR(100) VAR INIT('%M% %I% %H%');
```

gives (for example) the following:

```
DCL ID CHAR(100) VAR INIT('MODNAME 2.3 07/07/77');
```

When no ID keywords are substituted by **get**, the following message is issued:

```
No id keywords (cm7)
```

This message is normally treated as a warning by **get**, although the presence of the **i** flag in the SCCS file causes it to be treated as an error. For a complete list of the approximately 20 ID keywords provided, see **get(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*.

### *Retrieval of Different Versions*

Various keyletters are provided to allow the retrieval of other than the default version of an SCCS file. Normally, the default version is the most recent delta of the highest-numbered release on the trunk of the SCCS file tree. However, if the SCCS file being processed has a **d** (default SID) flag, the SID specified as the value of this flag is used as a default. The default SID is interpreted in exactly the same way as the value supplied with the **-r** keyletter of **get**.

The **-r** keyletter is used to specify an SID to be retrieved, in which case the **d** (default SID) flag (if any) is ignored. For example,

```
get -r1.3 s.abc
```

retrieves version 1.3 of file *s.abc* and produces (for example) on the standard output

```
1.3
64 lines
```

A branch delta may be retrieved similarly,

## SCCS

```
get -r1.5.2.3 s.abc
```

which produces (for example) on the standard output

```
1.5.2.3  
234 lines
```

When a 2- or 4-component SID is specified as a value for the `-r` keyletter (as above) and the particular version does not exist in the SCCS file, an error message results. Omission of the level number, as in

```
get -r3 s.abc
```

causes retrieval of the trunk delta with the highest level number within the given release if the given release exists. Thus, the above command might output,

```
3.7  
213 lines
```

If the given release does not exist, `get` retrieves the trunk delta with the highest level number within the highest-numbered existing release that is lower than the given release. For example, assuming release 9 does not exist in file *s.abc* and that release 7 is actually the highest-numbered release below 9, execution of

```
get -r9 s.abc
```

might produce

```
7.6  
420 lines
```

which indicates that trunk delta 7.6 is the latest version of file *s.abc* below release 9. Similarly, omission of the sequence number, as in

```
get -r4.3.2 s.abc
```

results in the retrieval of the branch delta with the highest sequence number on the given branch if it exists. (If the given branch does not exist, an error message results.) This might result in the following output:

```
4.3.2.8  
89 lines
```

The `-t` keyletter is used to retrieve the latest (top) version in a particular release (i.e., when no `-r` keyletter is supplied or when its value is simply a release number). The latest version is defined as that delta which was produced most recently, independent of its location on the SCCS file tree. Thus, if the most recent delta in release 3 is 3.5,

```
get -r3 -t s.abc
```

might produce

```
3.5
59 lines
```

However, if branch delta 3.2.1.5 were the latest delta (created after delta 3.5), the same command might produce

```
3.2.1.5
46 lines
```

#### *Retrieval With Intent to Make a Delta*

Specification of the `-e` keyletter to the `get` command is an indication of the intent to make a delta, and as such, its use is restricted. The presence of this keyletter causes `get` to check

1. The user list (a list of login names and/or group IDs of users allowed to make deltas) to determine if the login name or group ID of the user executing `get` is on that list. Note that a null (empty) user list behaves as if it contained all possible login names.
2. The release (R) of the version being retrieved satisfies the relation:

```
floor is < or = to R which is
< or = to ceiling
```

to determine if the release being accessed is a protected release. The "floor" and "ceiling" are specified as flags in the SCCS file.

3. The R is not locked against editing. The "lock" is specified as a flag in the SCCS file.
4. Whether or not multiple concurrent edits are allowed for the SCCS file as specified by the `j` flag in the SCCS file.

A failure of any of the first three conditions causes the processing of the corresponding SCCS file to terminate.

If the above checks succeed, the `-e` keyletter causes the creation of a *g-file* in the current directory with mode 644 (readable by everyone, writable only by the owner) owned by the real PROGRAMMER GUIDE

## SCCS

user. If a writable *g-file* already exists, **get** terminates with an error. This is to prevent inadvertent destruction of a *g-file* that already exists and is being edited for the purpose of making a delta.

Any ID keywords appearing in the *g-file* are not substituted by **get** (when the **-e** keyletter is specified) because the generated *g-file* is subsequently used to create another delta. Replacement of ID keywords cause them to be permanently changed within the SCCS file. In view of this, **get** does not need to check for the presence of ID keywords within the *g-file*, so the message

No id keywords (cm7)

is never output when **get** is invoked with the **-e** keyletter.

In addition, the **-e** keyletter causes the creation (or updating) of a *p-file* which is used to pass information to the **delta** command.

The following is an example of the use of the **-e** keyletter:

```
get -e s.abc
```

which produces (for example) on the standard output

```
1.3
new delta 1.4
67 lines
```

If the **-r** and/or **-t** keyletters are used together with the **-e** keyletter, the version retrieved for editing is as specified by the **-r** and/or **-t** keyletters.

The keyletters **-i** and **-x** may be used to specify a list [see **get(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual* for the syntax of such a list] of deltas to be included and excluded, respectively, by **get**. Including a delta means forcing the changes that constitute the particular delta to be included in the retrieved version. This is useful if one wants to apply the same changes to more than one version of the SCCS file. Excluding a delta means forcing it not to be applied. This may be used to undo (in the version of the SCCS file to be created) the effects of a previous delta. Whenever deltas are included or excluded, **get** checks for possible interference between such deltas and those deltas that are normally used in retrieving the particular version of the SCCS file. Two deltas can interfere, for example, when each one changes the same line of the retrieved *g-file*. Any interference is indicated by a warning that shows the range of lines within the retrieved *g-file* in which the problem may exist. The user is expected to examine the *g-file* to determine whether a problem actually exists and to take whatever corrective measures (if any) are deemed necessary (e.g., edit the file).

**Warning:** The **-i** and **-x** keyletters should be used with extreme care.

The **-k** keyletter is provided to facilitate regeneration of a *g-file* that may have been accidentally removed or ruined subsequent to the execution of **get** with the **-e** keyletter or to simply generate a *g-file* in which the replacement of ID keywords has been suppressed. Thus, a *g-file* generated by the **-k** keyletter is identical to one produced by **get** and executed with the **-e** keyletter. However, no processing related to the *p-file* takes place.

#### *Concurrent Edits of Different SID*

The ability to retrieve different versions of an SCCS file allows a number of deltas to be “in progress” at any given time. This means that a number of **get** commands with the **-e** keyletter may be executed on the same file provided that no two executions retrieve the same version (unless multiple concurrent edits are allowed).

The *p-file* (created by the **get** command invoked with the **-e** keyletter) is named by replacing the “s.” in the SCCS file name with “p.”. It is created in the directory containing the SCCS file, given mode 644 (readable by everyone, writable only by the owner), and owned by the effective user. The *p-file* contains the following information for each delta that is still “in progress”:

- The SID of the retrieved version.
- The SID that is given to the new delta when it is created.
- The login name of the real user executing **get**.

The first execution of **get -e** causes the creation of the *p-file* for the corresponding SCCS file. Subsequent executions only update the *p-file* with a line containing the above information. Before updating, however, **get** checks to assure that no entry (already in the *p-file*) specifies that the SID (of the version to be retrieved) is already retrieved (unless multiple concurrent edits are allowed).

If both checks succeed, the user is informed that other deltas are in progress and processing continues. If either check fails, an error message results. It is important to note that the various executions of **get** should be carried out from different directories. Otherwise, only the first execution succeeds since subsequent executions would attempt to overwrite a writable *g-file*, which is an SCCS error condition. In practice, such multiple executions are performed by different users so that this problem does not arise since each user normally has a different working directory. See “Protection” under the part “SCCS FILES” for a discussion of how different users are permitted to use SCCS commands on the same files.

Figure 15-4 shows, for the most useful cases, the version of an SCCS file retrieved by **get**, as well as the SID of the version to be eventually created by **delta**, as a function of the SID specified to **get**.

SID SPECIFIED*	-b KEY-LETTER USED†	OTHER CONDITIONS	SID RETRIEVED	SID OF DATA TO BE CREATED
none‡	no	R default to mR	mRmL	mR(mL+1)
none‡	yes	R default to mR	mRmL	mRmL.(mB+1)
R	no	R > mR	mRmL	R.1§
R	no	R == mR	mRmL	mR.(mL+1)
R	yes	R > mR	mRmL	mR.mL.(mB+1).1
R	yes	R == mR	mR.mL	mR.mL.(mB+1).1
R	-	R < mR		
R	-	R < mR and does not exist	hR.mL**	hR.mL.(mB+1).1
R	-	Trunk successor in release > R and R exists	R.mL	R.mL.(mB+1).1

See footnotes on sheet 3 of 3.

Figure 15-4. Determination of New SID (Sheet 1 of 3)

SID SPECIFIED*	-b KEY-LETTER USED†	OTHER CONDITIONS	SID RETRIEVED	SID OF DATA TO BE CREATED
R.L.	no	No trunk successor	R.L	R.(L+1)
R.L.	yes	No trunks successor	R.L	R.L.(mB+1).1
R.L	—	Trunk in release >= R	R.L	R.L.(mS+1).1
R.L.b	no	No branch successor	R.L.B.mS	R.L.B.(mS+1)
R.L.B	yes	No branch successor	R.L.B.mS	R.L.(mB+1).1
R.L.B.S	no	No branch successor	R.L.B.S	R.L.B.(S+1)
R.L.B.S	no	No branch successor	R.L.B.S	R.L.(mB+1).1
R.L.B.S	—	Branch successor	R.L.B.S	R.L.(mB+1).1

See footnotes on sheet 3 of 3.

**Figure 15-4. Determination of New SID (Sheet 2 of 3)**

## SCCS

### Footnotes:

\* "R", "L", "B", and "S" are "release", "level", "branch", and "sequence" components of the SID, respectively; "m" means "maximum". Thus, for example, "R.mL" means "the maximum level number within release R"; "R.L.(mB+1).1" means "the first sequence number on the (i.e., maximum branch number plus 1) of level L within release R". Also note that if the SID specified is of the form "R.L", "R.L.B", or "R.L.B.S", each of the specified components must exist.

† The `-b` keyletter is effective only if the `b` flag [see `admin(1)`] is present in the file. In this state, an entry of "-" means "irrelevant".

‡ This case applies if the `d` (default SID) flag is not present in the file. If the `d` flag is present in the file, the SID obtained from the `d` flag is interrupted as if it had been specified on the command line. Thus, one of the other cases in this figure applies.

§ This case is used to force the creation of the first delta in the new release.

\*\* "hR" is the highest existing release that is lower than the specified, nonexisting, release R.

### Figure 15-4. Determination of New SID (Sheet 3 of 3)

#### *Concurrent Edits of Same SID*

Under normal conditions, `gets` for editing (`-e` keyletter is specified) based on the same SID are not permitted to occur concurrently. That is, `delta` must be executed before a subsequent `get` for editing is executed at the same SID as the previous `get`. However, multiple concurrent edits (defined to be two or more successive executions of `get` for editing based on the same retrieved SID) are allowed if the `j` flag is set in the SCCS file. Thus:

```
get -e s.abc
1.1
new delta 1.2
5 lines
```

may be immediately followed by

```
get -e s.abc
1.1
new delta 1.1.1.1
5 lines
```

without an intervening execution of `delta`. In this case, a `delta` command corresponding to the first `get` produces delta 1.2 [assuming 1.1 is the latest (most recent) trunk delta], and the `delta` command corresponding to the second `get` produces delta 1.1.1.1.

**Keyletters That Affect Output**

Specification of the **-p** keyletter causes **get** to write the retrieved text to the standard output rather than to a *g-file*. In addition, all output normally directed to the standard output (such as the SID of the version retrieved and the number of lines retrieved) is directed instead to the diagnostic output. This may be used, for example, to create *g-files* with arbitrary names.

```
get -p s.abc > arbitrary-file-name
```

The **-p** keyletter is particularly useful when used with the “!” or “\$” arguments of the **send(1C)** command. For example,

```
send MOD=s.abc REL=3 compile
```

given that file *compile* contains

```
//plicomp job job-card-information
//step1 exec plicc
//pli.sysin dd *
-s
!get -p -rREL MOD
/*
//
```

will **send** the highest level of release 3 of file *s.abc*. Note that the line “-s” (that causes **send** to make ID keyword substitutions before detecting and interpreting control lines) is necessary if **send** is to substitute “s.abc” for MOD and “3” for REL in the line “!get -p -rREL MOD”.

The **-s** keyletter suppresses all output that is normally directed to the standard output. Thus, the SID of the retrieved version, the number of lines retrieved, etc., are not output. This does not, however, affect messages to the diagnostic output. This keyletter is used to prevent nondiagnostic messages from appearing on the user’s terminal and is often used in conjunction with the **-p** keyletter to “pipe” the output of **get**, as in

```
get -p -s s.abc | nroff
```

The **-g** keyletter is supplied to suppress the actual retrieval of the text of a version of the SCCS file. This may be useful in a number of ways. For example, to verify the existence of a particular SID in an SCCS file, one may execute

```
get -g -r4.3 s.abc
```

This outputs the given SID if it exists in the SCCS file or it generates an error message if it does not. Another use of the **-g** keyletter is in regenerating a *p-file* that may have been

## SCCS

accidentally destroyed.

```
get -e -g s.abc
```

The **-l** keyletter causes the creation of an *l-file*, which is named by replacing the "s." of the SCCS file name with "l.". This file is created in the current directory with mode 444 (read-only) and is owned by the real user. It contains a table [whose format is described in **get(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*] showing the deltas used in constructing a particular version of the SCCS file. For example,

```
get -r2.3 -l s.abc
```

generates an *l-file* showing the deltas applied to retrieve version 2.3 of the SCCS file. Specifying a value of "p" with the **-l** keyletter, as in

```
get -lp -r2.3 s.abc
```

causes the generated output to be written to the standard output rather than to the *l-file*. The **-g** keyletter may be used with the **-l** keyletter to suppress the actual retrieval of the text.

The **-m** keyletter is of use in identifying, line by line, the changes applied to an SCCS file. Specification of this keyletter causes each line of the generated *g-file* to be preceded by the SID of the delta that caused that line to be inserted. The SID is separated from the text of the line by a tab character.

The **-n** keyletter causes each line of the generated *g-file* to be preceded by the value of the **scs1** ID keyword and a tab character. The **-n** keyletter is most often used in a pipeline with **grep(1)**. For example, to find all lines that match a given pattern in the latest version of each SCCS file in a directory, the following may be executed:

```
get -p -n -s directory | grep pattern
```

If both the **-m** and **-n** keyletters are specified, each line of the generated *g-file* is preceded by the value of the **%M%** ID keyword and a tab (this is the effect of the **-n** keyletter) and followed by the line in the format produced by the **-m** keyletter. Because use of the **-m** keyletter and/or the **-n** keyletter causes the contents of the *g-file* to be modified, such a *g-file* must *not* be used for creating a delta. Therefore, neither the **-m** keyletter nor the **-n** keyletter may be specified together with the **-e** keyletter.

See **get(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual* for a full description of additional **get** keyletters.

### B. The "delta" Command

The **delta** command is used to incorporate the changes made to a *g-file* into the corresponding SCCS file, i.e., to create a delta, and therefore, a new version of the file.

Invocation of the **delta** command requires the existence of a *p-file*. The **delta** command examines the *p-file* to verify the presence of an entry containing the user's login name. If none is found, an error message results. The **delta** command performs the same permission checks that **get** performs when invoked by the **-e** keyletter. If all checks are successful, **delta** determines what has been changed in the *g-file* by comparing it via **diff(1)** with its own temporary copy of the *g-file* as it was before editing. This temporary copy of the *g-file* is called the *d-file* (its name is formed by replacing the "s." of the SCCS file name with "d.") and is obtained by performing an internal **get** at the SID specified in the *p-file* entry.

The required *p-file* entry is the one containing the login name of the user executing **delta** because the user who retrieved the *g-file* must be the one who creates the delta. However, if the login name of the user appears in more than one entry, the same user has executed **get** with the **-e** keyletter more than once on the same SCCS file. The **-r** keyletter must then be used with **delta** to specify the SID that uniquely identifies the *p-file* entry. This entry is the one used to obtain the SID of the delta to be created.

In practice, the most common invocation of **delta** is

```
delta s.abc
```

which prompts on the standard output (but only if it is a terminal)

```
comments?
```

to which the user replies with a description of why the delta is being made, terminating the reply with a newline character. The user's response may be up to 512 characters long with newlines (not intended to terminate the response) escaped by backslashes "\".

If the SCCS file has a **v** flag, **delta** first prompts with

```
MRs? (Modification Requests)
```

on the standard output. (Again, this prompt is printed only if the standard output is a terminal.) The standard input is then read for MR numbers, separated by blanks and/or tabs, terminated in the same manner as the response to the prompt "comments?". In a tightly controlled environment, it is expected that deltas are created only as a result of some trouble report, change request, trouble ticket, etc., collectively called [MRs]. It is desirable (or necessary) to record such MR number(s) within each delta.

The **-y** and/or **-m** keyletters may be used to supply the commentary (comments and MR numbers, respectively) on the command line rather than through the standard input.

## SCCS

```
delta -y"descriptive comment" -m"mnum1 mnum2" s.abc
```

In this case, the corresponding prompts are not printed, and the standard input is not read. The **-m** keyletter is allowed only if the SCCS file has a **v** flag. These keyletters are useful when **delta** is executed from within a shell procedure [see **sh(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*].

The commentary (comments and/or MR numbers), whether solicited by **delta** or supplied via keyletters, is recorded as part of the entry for the delta being created and applies to all SCCS files processed by the same invocation of **delta**. This implies that (if **delta** is invoked with more than one file argument and the first file named has a **v** flag) all files named must have this flag. Similarly, if the first file named does not have this flag, then none of the files named may have it. Any file that does not conform to these rules is not processed.

When processing is complete, **delta** outputs (on the standard output) the SID of the created delta (obtained from the *p-file* entry) and the counts of lines inserted, deleted, and left unchanged by the delta. Thus, a typical output might be

```
1.4
14 inserted
7 deleted
345 unchanged
```

It is possible that the counts of lines reported as inserted, deleted, or unchanged by **delta** do not agree with the user's perception of the changes applied to the *g-file*. The reason for this is that there usually are a number of ways to describe a set of such changes, especially if lines are moved around in the *g-file*, and **delta** is likely to find a description that differs from the user's perception. However, the total number of lines of the new delta (the number inserted plus the number left unchanged) should agree with the number of lines in the edited *g-file*.

If (in the process of making a delta) **delta** finds no ID keywords in the edited *g-file*, the message

```
No id keywords (cm7)
```

is issued after the prompts for commentary but before any other output. This indicates that any ID keywords that may have existed in the SCCS file have been replaced by their values or deleted during the editing process. This could be caused by creating a delta from a *g-file* that was created by a **get** without the **-e** keyletter (recall that ID keywords are replaced by **get** in that case). This could also be caused by accidentally deleting or changing the ID keywords during the editing of the *g-file*. Another possibility is that the file had no ID keywords. In any case, it is left up to the user to determine what remedial action is necessary. However, the delta is made unless there is an **i** flag in the SCCS file indicating that this should be treated as a fatal error. In this last case, the delta is not created.

After the processing of an SCCS file is complete, the corresponding *p-file* entry is removed from the *p-file*. All updates to the *p-file* are made to a temporary copy, the *q-file*, whose use is similar to the use of the *x-file* which is described in the part "SCCS COMMAND CONVENTIONS". If there is only one entry in the *p-file*, then the *p-file* itself is removed.

In addition, **delta** removes the edited *g-file* unless the **-n** keyletter is specified. Thus:

```
delta -n s.abc
```

will keep the *g-file* upon completion of processing.

The **-s** (silent) keyletter suppresses all output that is normally directed to the standard output, other than the prompts "comments?" and "MRs?". Thus, use of the **-s** keyletter together with the **-y** keyletter (and possibly, the **-m** keyletter) causes **delta** neither to read the standard input nor to write the standard output.

The differences between the *g-file* and the *d-file* (see above), constitute the delta and may be printed on the standard output by using the **-p** keyletter. The format of this output is similar to that produced by **diff(1)**.

### C. The "admin" Command

The **admin** command is used to administer SCCS files, that is, to create new SCCS files and to change parameters of existing ones. When an SCCS file is created, its parameters are initialized by use of keyletters or are assigned default values if no keyletters are supplied. The same keyletters are used to change the parameters of existing files.

Two keyletters are supplied for use in conjunction with detecting and correcting "corrupted" SCCS files (see "Auditing" in part "SCCS FILES"). Newly created SCCS files are given mode 444 (read-only) and are owned by the effective user. Only a user with write permission in the directory containing the SCCS file may use the **admin** command upon that file.

#### *Creation of SCCS Files*

An SCCS file may be created by executing the command

```
admin -ifirst s.abc
```

in which the value "first" of the **-i** keyletter specifies the name of a file from which the text of the initial delta of the SCCS file *s.abc* is to be taken. Omission of the value of the **-i** keyletter indicates that **admin** is to read the standard input for the text of the initial delta. Thus, the command

```
admin -i s.abc < first
```

## SCCS

is equivalent to the previous example. If the text of the initial delta does not contain ID keywords, the message

```
No id keywords (cm7)
```

is issued by **admin** as a warning. However, if the same invocation of the command also sets the **i** flag (not to be confused with the **-i** keyletter), the message is treated as an error and the SCCS file is not created. Only one SCCS file may be created at a time using the **-i** keyletter.

When an SCCS file is created, the release number assigned to its first delta is normally "1", and its level number is always "1". Thus, the first delta of an SCCS file is normally "1.1". The **-r** keyletter is used to specify the release number to be assigned to the first delta. Thus:

```
admin -ifirst -r3 s.abc
```

indicates that the first delta should be named "3.1" rather than "1.1". Because this keyletter is only meaningful in creating the first delta, its use is only permitted with the **-i** keyletter.

### *Inserting Commentary for the Initial Delta*

When an SCCS file is created, the user may choose to supply commentary stating the reason for creation of the file. This is done by supplying comments (**-y** keyletter) and/or MR numbers (**-m** keyletter) in exactly the same manner as for **delta**. The creation of an SCCS file may sometimes be the direct result of an MR. If comments (**-y** keyletter) are omitted, a comment line of the form

```
date and time created YY/MM/DD HH:MM:SS by logname
```

is automatically generated.

If it is desired to supply MR numbers (**-m** keyletter), the **v** flag must also be set (using the **-f** keyletter described below). The **v** flag simply determines whether or not MR numbers must be supplied when using any SCCS command that modifies a "delta commentary" [see **sccsfile(4)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*] in the SCCS file. Thus:

```
admin -ifirst -mmrnum1 -fv s.abc
```

Note that the **-y** and **-m** keyletters are only effective if a new SCCS file is being created.

*Initialization and Modification of SCCS File Parameters*

The portion of the SCCS file reserved for descriptive text may be initialized or changed through the use of the `-t` keyletter. The descriptive text is intended as a summary of the contents and purpose of the SCCS file.

When an SCCS file is being created and the `-t` keyletter is supplied, it must be followed by the name of a file from which the descriptive text is to be taken. For example, the command

```
admin -ifirst -tdesc s.abc
```

specifies that the descriptive text is to be taken from file *desc*;

When processing an *existing* SCCS file, the `-t` keyletter specifies that the descriptive text (if any) currently in the file is to be replaced with the text in the named file. Thus:

```
admin -tdesc s.abc
```

specifies that the descriptive text of the SCCS file is to be replaced by the contents of *desc*; omission of the file name after the `-t` keyletter as in

```
admin -t s.abc
```

causes the removal of the descriptive text from the SCCS file.

The flags of an SCCS file may be initialized, changed, or deleted through the use of the `-f` and `-d` keyletters, respectively. The flags of an SCCS file are used to direct certain actions of the various commands. See `admin(1)` in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual* for a description of all the flags. For example, the `i` flag specifies that the warning message (stating that there are no ID keywords contained in the SCCS file) should be treated as an error. Also the `d` (default SID) flag specifies the default version of the SCCS file to be retrieved by the `get` command. The `-f` keyletter is used to set a flag and, possibly, to set its value. For example,

```
admin -ifirst -fi -fmmodname s.abc
```

sets the `i` flag and the `m` (module name) flag. The value "modname" specified for the `m` flag is the value that the `get` command will use to replace the `%M%` ID keyword. (In the absence of the `m` flag, the name of the *g-file* is used as the replacement for the `%M%` ID keyword.) Note that several `-f` keyletters may be supplied on a single invocation of `admin` and that `-f` keyletters may be supplied whether the command is creating a new SCCS file or processing an existing one.

The `-d` keyletter is used to delete a flag from an SCCS file and may only be specified when processing an existing file. As an example, the command

## SCCS

```
admin -dm s.abc
```

removes the **m** flag from the SCCS file. Several **-d** keyletters may be supplied on a single invocation of **admin** and may be intermixed with **-f** keyletters.

The SCCS files contain a list (user list) of login names and/or group IDs of users who are allowed to create deltas. This list is empty by default which implies that anyone may create deltas. To add login names and/or group IDs to the list, the **-a** keyletter is used. For example,

```
admin -axyz -awql -a1234 s.abc
```

adds the login names "xyz" and "wql" and the group ID "1234" to the list. The **-a** keyletter may be used whether **admin** is creating a new SCCS file or processing an existing one and may appear several times. The **-e** keyletter is used in an analogous manner if one wishes to remove (erase) login names or group IDs from the list.

### D. The "prs" Command

The **prs** command is used to print on the standard output all or parts of an SCCS file in a format, called the output "data specification," supplied by the user via the **-d** keyletter. The data specification is a string consisting of SCCS file data keywords (not to be confused with **get ID** keywords) interspersed with optional user text.

Data keywords are replaced by appropriate values according to their definitions. For example,

```
:I:
```

is defined as the data keyword that is replaced by the SID of a specified delta. Similarly, **:F:** is defined as the data keyword for the SCCS file name currently being processed, and **:C:** is defined as the comment line associated with a specified delta. All parts of an SCCS file have an associated data keyword. For a complete list of the data keywords, see **prs(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*.

There is no limit to the number of times a data keyword may appear in a data specification. Thus, for example,

```
prs -d":I: this is the top delta for :F: :I:" s.abc
```

may produce on the standard output

```
2.1 this is the top delta for s.abc 2.1
```

Information may be obtained from a single delta by specifying the SID of that delta using the `-r` keyletter. For example,

```
prs -d":F:::I: comment line is: :C:" -r1.4 s.abc
```

may produce the following output:

```
s.abc: 1.4 comment line is: THIS IS A COMMENT
```

If the `-r` keyletter is not specified, the value of the SID defaults to the most recently created delta.

In addition, information from a range of deltas may be obtained by specifying the `-l` or `-e` keyletters. The `-e` keyletter substitutes data keywords for the SID designated via the `-r` keyletter and all deltas created earlier. The `-l` keyletter substitutes data keywords for the SID designated via the `-r` keyletter and all deltas created later. Thus, the command

```
prs -d:l: -r1.4 -e s.abc
```

may output

```
1.4
1.3
1.2.1.1
1.2
1.1
```

and the command

```
prs -d:l: -r1.4 -l s.abc
```

may produce

```
3.3
3.2
3.1
2.2.1.1
2.2
2.1
1.4
```

Substitution of data keywords for all deltas of the SCCS file may be obtained by specifying both the `-e` and `-l` keyletters.

## SCCS

### E. The "help" Command

The **help** command prints explanations of SCCS commands and of messages that these commands may print. Arguments to **help**, zero or more of which may be supplied, are simply the names of SCCS commands or the code numbers that appear in parentheses after SCCS messages. If no argument is given, **help** prompts for one. The **help** command has no concept of keyletter arguments or file arguments. Explanatory information related to an argument, if it exists, is printed on the standard output. If no information is found, an error message is printed. Note that each argument is processed independently, and an error resulting from one argument will not terminate the processing of the other arguments.

Explanatory information related to a command is a synopsis of the command. For example,

```
help ge5 rmdel
```

produces

```
ge5:  
"nonexistent sid"  
The specified sid does not exist in the  
given file.  
Check for typos.
```

```
rmdel:  
rmdel -rSID name ...
```

### F. The "rmdel" Command

The **rmdel** command is provided to allow removal of a delta from an SCCS file. Its use should be reserved for those cases in which incorrect global changes were made a part of the delta to be removed.

The delta to be removed must be a "leaf" delta. That is, it must be the latest (most recently created) delta on its branch or on the trunk of the SCCS file tree. In Figure 15-3, only deltas 1.3.1.2, 1.3.2.2, and 2.2 can be removed; once they are removed, then deltas 1.3.2.1 and 2.1 can be removed, etc.

To be allowed to remove a delta, the effective user must have write permission in the directory containing the SCCS file. In addition, the real user must either be the one who created the delta being removed or be the owner of the SCCS file and its directory.

The **-r** keyletter, which is mandatory, is used to specify the complete SID of the delta to be removed (i.e., it must have two components for a trunk delta and four components for a branch delta). Thus:

```
rmdel -r2.3 s.abc
```

specifies the removal of (trunk) delta "2.3" of the SCCS file. Before removal of the delta, **rmidel** checks that the release number (R) of the given SID satisfies the relation.

$$\text{floor} \leq R \leq \text{ceiling}$$

The **rmidel** command also checks that the SID specified is not that of a version for which a **get** for editing has been executed and whose associated **delta** has not yet been made. In addition, the login name or group ID of the user must appear in the file's "user list", or the "user list" must be empty. Also, the release specified cannot be locked against editing. That is, if the **l** flag is set [see **admin(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*], the release specified *must* not be contained in the list. If these conditions are not satisfied, processing is terminated, and the delta is not removed. After the specified delta has been removed, its type indicator in the "delta table" of the SCCS file is changed from "D" ("delta") to "R" ("removed").

### G. The "cdc" Command

The **cdc** command is used to change a delta's commentary that was supplied when that delta was created. Its invocation is analogous to that of the **rmidel** command, except that the delta to be processed is not required to be a leaf delta. For example,

```
cdc -r3.4 s.abc
```

specifies that the commentary of delta "3.4" of the SCCS file is to be changed.

The new commentary is solicited by **cdc** in the same manner as that of **delta**. The old commentary associated with the specified delta is kept, but it is preceded by a comment line indicating that it has been changed (i.e., superseded), and the new commentary is entered ahead of this comment line. The "inserted" comment line records the login name of the user executing **cdc** and the time of its execution.

The **cdc** command also allows for the deletion of selected MR numbers associated with the specified delta. This is specified by preceding the selected MR numbers by the character "!". Thus:

```
cdc -r1.4 s.abc
MRs? mrnum3 !mrnum1
comments? deleted wrong MR number and inserted
correct MR number
```

inserts "mrnum3" and deletes "mrnum1" for delta 1.4.

## SCCS

### H. The "what" Command

The **what** command is used to find identifying information within any ICON/UXV system file whose name is given as an argument to **what**. Directory names and a name of "-" (a lone minus sign) are not treated specially as they are by other SCCS commands and no keyletters are accepted by the command.

The **what** command searches the given file(s) for all occurrences of the string "@(#)", which is the replacement for the @(#) ID keyword [see **get(1)**], and prints (on the standard output) the balance following that string until the first double quote ("), greater than (>), backslash (\), newline, or (nonprinting) NUL character. For example, if the SCCS file *s.prog.c* (a C language program) contains the following line:

```
char id[] "@(#)scs2:5.1";
```

and then the command

```
get -r3.4 s.prog.c
```

is executed, the resulting *g-file* is compiled to produce "prog.o" and "a.out". Then the command

```
what prog.c prog.o a.out
```

produces

```
prog.c:
  prog.c:3.4
prog.o:
  prog.c:3.4
a.out:
  prog.c:3.4
```

The string searched for by **what** need not be inserted via an ID keyword of **get**; it may be inserted in any convenient manner.

### I. The "sccsdiff" Command

The **sccsdiff** command determines (and prints on the standard output) the differences between two specified versions of one or more SCCS files. The versions to be compared are specified by using the **-r** keyletter, whose format is the same as for the **get** command. The two versions must be specified as the first two arguments to this command in the order they were created, i.e., the older version is specified first. Any following keyletters are interpreted as arguments to the **pr(1)** command (which actually prints the differences) and must appear before any file names. The SCCS files to be processed are named last. Directory names and a name of "-" (a lone minus sign) are not acceptable to **sccsdiff**.

The differences are printed in the form generated by `diff(1)`. The following is an example of the invocation of `sccsdiff`:

```
sccsdiff -r3.4 -r5.6 s.abc
```

### J. The "comb" Command

The `comb` command generates a "shell procedure" [see `sh(1)` in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*] which attempts to reconstruct the named SCCS files so that the reconstructed files are smaller than the originals. The generated shell procedure is written on the standard output. Named SCCS files are reconstructed by discarding unwanted deltas and combining other specified deltas. The SCCS files that contain deltas no longer useful should be discarded. It is not recommended that `comb` be used as a matter of routine; its use should be restricted to a very small number of times in the life of an SCCS file.

In the absence of any keyletters, `comb` preserves only leaf deltas and the minimum number of ancestor deltas necessary to preserve the "shape" of the SCCS file tree. The effect of this is to eliminate middle deltas on the trunk and on all branches of the tree. Thus, in Figure 15-3, deltas 1.2, 1.3.2.1, 1.4, and 2.1 would be eliminated. Some of the keyletters are summarized as follows:

The `-p` keyletter specifies the oldest delta that is to be preserved in the reconstruction. All older deltas are discarded.

The `-c` keyletter specifies a list [see `get(1)` in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual* for the syntax of such a list] of deltas to be preserved. All other deltas are discarded.

The `-s` keyletter causes the generation of a shell procedure, which when run, produces only a report summarizing the percentage space (if any) to be saved by reconstructing each named SCCS file. It is recommended that `comb` be run with this keyletter (in addition to any others desired) before any actual reconstructions.

It should be noted that the shell procedure generated by `comb` is not guaranteed to save space. In fact, it is possible for the reconstructed file to be larger than the original. Note, too, that the shape of the SCCS file tree may be altered by the reconstruction process.

### K. The "val" Command

The `val` command is used to determine if a file is an SCCS file meeting the characteristics specified by an optional list of keyletter arguments. Any characteristics not met are considered errors.

The `val` command checks for the existence of a particular delta when the SID for that delta is explicitly specified via the `-r` keyletter. The string following the `-y` or `-m` keyletter is used to check the value set by the `t` or `m` flag, respectively [see `admin(1)` in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual* for a description of the flags].

## SCCS

The **val** command treats the special argument “-” differently from other SCCS commands. This argument allows **val** to read the argument list from the standard input as opposed to obtaining it from the command line. The standard input is read until end of file. This capability allows for one invocation of **val** with different values for the keyletter and file arguments. For example,

```
val -  
-yc -mabc s.abc  
-mxyz -ypl1 s.xyz
```

first checks if file *s.abc* has a value “c” for its “type” flag and value “abc” for the “module name” flag. Once processing of the first file is completed, **val** then processes the remaining files, in this case, *s.xyz*, to determine if they meet the characteristics specified by the keyletter arguments associated with them.

The **val** command returns an 8-bit code; each bit set indicates the occurrence of a specific error [see **val**(1) for a description of possible errors and the codes]. In addition, an appropriate diagnostic is printed unless suppressed by the **-s** keyletter. A return code of “0” indicates all named files met the characteristics specified.

## SCCS FILES

This part discusses several topics that must be considered before extensive use is made of SCCS. These topics deal with the protection mechanisms relied upon by SCCS, the format of SCCS files, and the recommended procedures for auditing SCCS files.

### A. Protection

The SCCS relies on the capabilities of the ICON/UXV software for most of the protection mechanisms required to prevent unauthorized changes to SCCS files (i.e., changes made by non-SCCS commands). The only protection features provided directly by SCCS are the “release lock” flag, the “release floor” and “ceiling” flags, and the “user list”.

New SCCS files created by the **admin** command are given mode 444 (read-only). It is recommended that this mode *remain unchanged* as it prevents any direct modification of the files by non-SCCS commands. It is further recommended that the directories containing SCCS files be given mode 755 which allows only the owner of the directory to modify its contents.

The SCCS files should be kept in directories that contain only SCCS files and any temporary files created by SCCS commands. This simplifies protection and auditing of SCCS files. The contents of directories should correspond to convenient logical groupings, e.g., subsystems of a large project.

The SCCS files must have only one link (name) because the commands that modify SCCS files do so by creating a copy of the file (the *x-file*, see “SCCS COMMAND CONVENTIONS”). Upon completion of processing, remove the old file and rename the *x-file*. If the old file has

more than one link, this would break such additional links. Rather than process such files, SCCS commands produce an error message. All SCCS files *must* have names that begin with "s."

When only one user uses SCCS, the real and effective user IDs are the same; and the user ID owns the directories containing SCCS files. Therefore, SCCS may be used directly without any preliminary preparation.

However, in those situations in which several users with unique user IDs are assigned responsibility for one SCCS file (e.g., in large software development projects), one user (equivalently, one user ID) must be chosen as the "owner" of the SCCS files and be the one who will "administer" them (e.g., by using the **admin** command). This user is termed the "SCCS administrator" for that project. Because other users of SCCS do not have the same privileges and permissions as the SCCS administrator, they are not able to execute directly those commands that require write permission in the directory containing the SCCS files. Therefore, a project-dependent program is required to provide an interface to the **get**, **delta**, and if desired, **rmdel** and **cdc** commands.

The interface program must be owned by the SCCS administrator and must have the "set user ID on execution" bit "on" [see **chmod(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*]. This assures that the effective user ID is the user ID of the administrator. This program invokes the desired SCCS command and causes it to inherit the privileges of the interface program for the duration of that command's execution. Thus, the owner of an SCCS file can modify it at will. Other users whose login names or group IDs are in the "user list" for that file (but are not the owner) are given the necessary permissions only for the duration of the execution of the interface program. Other users are thus able to modify the SCCS files only through the use of **delta** and, possibly, **rmdel** and **cdc**. The project-dependent interface program, as its name implies, must be custom-built for each project.

### B. Formatting

The SCCS files are composed of lines of ASCII text arranged in six parts as follows:

Checksum	A line containing the "logical" sum of all the characters of the file ( <i>not</i> including this checksum itself).
Delta Table	Information about each delta, such as type, SID, date and time of creation, and commentary.
User Names	List of login names and/or group IDs of users who are allowed to modify the file by adding or removing deltas.
Flags	Indicators that control certain actions of various SCCS commands.
Descriptive Text	Arbitrary text provided by the user; usually a summary of the contents and purpose of the file.
Body	Actual text that is being administered by SCCS, intermixed with internal SCCS control lines.

## SCCS

Detailed information about the contents of the various sections of the file may be found in `scsfile(5)`. The checksum is the only portion of the file that is of interest below.

It is important to note that because SCCS files are ASCII files they may be processed by various ICON/UXV software commands, such as `ed(1)`, `grep(1)`, and `cat(1)`. This is very convenient in those instances in which an SCCS file must be modified manually (e.g., when the time and date of a delta was recorded incorrectly because the system clock was set incorrectly) or when it is desired to simply look at the file.

**Caution: Extreme care should be exercised when modifying SCCS files with non-SCCS commands.**

### C. Auditing

On rare occasions, perhaps due to an operating system or hardware malfunction, an SCCS file or portions of it (i.e., one or more "blocks") can be destroyed. The SCCS commands (like most ICON/UXV software commands) issue an error message when a file does not exist. In addition, SCCS commands use the checksum stored in the SCCS file to determine whether a file has been corrupted since it was last accessed [possibly by having lost one or more blocks or by having been modified with `ed(1)`]. No SCCS command will process a corrupted SCCS file except the `admin` command with the `-h` or `-z` keyletters, as described below.

It is recommended that SCCS files be audited for possible corruptions on a regular basis. The simplest and fastest way to perform an audit is to execute the `admin` command with the `-h` keyletter on all SCCS files.

```
admin -h s.file1 s.file2 ...  
      or  
admin -h directory1 directory2 ...
```

If the new checksum of any file is not equal to the checksum in the first line of that file, the message

```
corrupted file (co6)
```

is produced for that file. This process continues until all the files have been examined. When examining directories (as in the second example above), the process just described will not detect missing files. A simple way to detect whether any files are missing from a directory is to periodically execute the `ls(1)` command on that directory and compare the outputs of the most current and the previous executions. Any file whose name appears in the previous output but not in the current one has been removed by some means.

Whenever a file has been corrupted, the manner in which the file is restored depends upon the extent of the corruption. If damage is extensive, the best solution is to contact the local ICON/UXV system operations group and request that the file be restored from a backup copy. In the case of minor damage, repair through use of the editor `ed(1)` may be possible. In the latter case after such repair, the following command must be executed:

```
admin -z s.file
```

The purpose of this is to recompute the checksum to bring it into agreement with the actual contents of the file. After this command is executed on a file, any corruption that existed in the file will no longer be detectable.

## AN SCCS INTERFACE PROGRAM

### A. General

In order to permit ICON/UXV users [with different user identification numbers (user IDs)] to use SCCS commands upon the same files, an SCCS interface program is provided. It temporarily grants the necessary file access permissions to these users. This part discusses the creation and use of such an interface program. The SCCS interface program may also be used as a preprocessor to SCCS commands since it can perform operations upon its arguments.

### B. Function

When only one user uses SCCS, the real and effective user IDs are the same; and that user's ID owns the directories containing SCCS files. However, there are situations (e.g., in large software development projects) in which it is practical to allow more than one user to make changes to the same set of SCCS files. In these cases, one user must be chosen as the "owner" of the SCCS files and be the one who will "administer" them (e.g., by using the **admin** command). This user is termed the "SCCS administrator" for that project. Since other users of SCCS do not have the same privileges and permissions as the SCCS administrator, the other users are not able to execute directly those commands that require write permission in the directory containing the SCCS files. Therefore, a project-dependent program is required to provide an interface to the **get**, **delta**, and if desired, **rmdel**, **cdc**, and **unget** commands. Other SCCS commands either do not require write permission in the directory containing SCCS files or are (generally) reserved for use only by the administrator.

The interface program

- Must be owned by the SCCS administrator
- Must be executable by the new owner
- Must have the "set user on execution" bit "on" [see **chmod(1)** in the *ICON/UXV Users Manual*].

Then when executed, the effective user ID is the user ID of the administrator. This program's function is to invoke the desired SCCS command and to cause it to inherit the privileges of the SCCS administrator for the duration of that command's execution. In this manner, the owner of an SCCS file (the administrator) can modify it at will. Other users whose login names are in the user list for that file (but who are not its owners) are given the necessary permissions only for the duration of the execution of the interface program. They are thus able to modify the

## SCCS

SCCS files only through the use of **delta** and, possibly, **rmDEL** and **cdc**.

### C. Basic Program

When a **ICON/UXV** system program is executed, the program is passed as argument 0, which is the name that invoked the program, and followed by any additional user-supplied arguments. Thus, if a program is given a number of links (names), the program may alter its processing depending upon which link invokes the program. This mechanism is used by an SCCS interface program to determine the SCCS command it should subsequently invoke [see **exec(2)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*].

A generic interface program (*inter.c*, written in C language) is shown in Figure 15-5. Note the reference to the (unsupplied) function "filearg". This is intended to demonstrate that the interface program may also be used as a preprocessor to SCCS commands. For example, function "filearg" could be used to modify file arguments to be passed to the SCCS command by supplying the full pathname of a file, thus avoiding extraneous typing by the user. Also, the program could supply any additional (default) keyletter arguments desired.

### D. Linking and Use

In general, the following demonstrates the steps to be performed by the SCCS administrator to create the SCCS interface program. It is assumed, for the purposes of the discussion, that the interface program **inter.c** resides in directory **/x1/xyz/sccs**. Thus, the command sequence

```
cd /x1/xyz/sccs
cc ... inter.c -o inter ...
```

compiles **inter.c** to produce the executable module **inter** (the "..." represents other arguments that may be required). The proper mode and the "set user ID on execution" bit are set by executing

```
chmod 4755 inter
```

For example, new links are created by

```
ln inter get
ln inter delta
ln inter rmdel
```

The names of the links may be arbitrary if the interface program is able to determine from them the names of SCCS commands to be invoked. Subsequently, any user whose shell parameter **PATH** [see **sh(1)** in the *ICON/UXV User Reference Manual*] specifies directory **/x1/xyz/sccs** as the one to be searched first for executable commands may execute

```
get -e /x1/xyz/sccs/s.abc
```

from any directory to invoke the interface program (via its link "get"). The interface program then executes "/usr/bin/get" (the actual SCCS **get** command) upon the named file. As previously mentioned, the interface program could be used to supply the pathname "/x1/xyz/sccs" so that the user would only have to specify

```
get -e s.abc
```

to achieve the same results.

**SCCS**

***NOTES***

## Chapter 16

# THE M4 MACRO PROCESSOR

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	16-1
DEFINING MACROS .....	16-6
ARGUMENTS .....	16-9
ARITHMETIC BUILT-INS .....	16-10
FILE MANIPULATION .....	16-11
SYSTEM COMMAND .....	16-12
CONDITIONALS .....	16-12
STRING MANIPULATION .....	16-13
PRINTING .....	16-14



## Chapter 16

# THE M4 MACRO PROCESSOR

### GENERAL

The M4 macro processor is a front end for rational Fortran (Ratfor) and the C programming languages. The “#define” statement in C language and the analogous “define” in Ratfor are examples of the basic facility provided by any macro processor.

At the beginning of a program, a symbolic name or symbolic constant can be defined as a particular string of characters. The compiler will then replace later unquoted occurrences of the symbolic name with the corresponding string. Besides the straightforward replacement of one string of text by another, the M4 macro processor provides the following features:

- arguments
- arithmetic capabilities
- file manipulation
- conditional macro expansion
- string and substring functions.

The basic operation of M4 is to read every alphanumeric token (string of letters and digits) input and determine if the token is the name of a macro. The name of the macro is replaced by its defining text, and the resulting string is pushed back onto the input to be rescanned. Macros may be called with arguments. The arguments are collected and substituted into the right places in the defining text before the defining text is rescanned.

The user also has the capability to define new macros. Built-ins and user-defined macros work exactly the same way except that some of the built-in macros have side effects on the state of the process. A list of 21 built-in macros provided by the M4 macro processor can be found in Figure 16-1.

## M4 MACROS

Macro Name	Function
changequote	Restores original characters or makes new quote characters the left and right brackets.
changescom	Changes left and right comment markers from the default # and new line.
deer	Returns the value of its argument decremented by 1.
define	Defines new macros.
defn	Returns the quoted definition of its argument(s).
divert	Diverts output to 1-out-of-10 diversions.

Figure 16-1. Built-in Macros (Sheet 1 of 4)

<b>Macro Name</b>	<b>Function</b>
divnum	Returns the number of the currently active diversion.
dnl	Reads and discards characters up to and including the next new line.
dumpdef	Dumps the current names and definitions of items named as arguments.
errprint	Prints its arguments on the standard error file.
eval	Prints arbitrary arithmetic on integers.
ifdef	Determines if a macro is currently defined.
ifndef	Performs arbitrary conditional testing.
include	Returns the contents of the file named in the argument. A fatal error occurs if the file name cannot be accessed.

Figure 16-1. Built-in Macros (Sheet 2 of 4)

## M4 MACROS

<b>Macro Name</b>	<b>Function</b>
incr	Returns the value of its argument incremented by 1.
index	Returns the position where the second argument begins in the first argument pf index.
len	Returns the number of characters that makes its argument.
m4exit	Causes immediate exit from M4.
m4wrap	Pushes the exit code back at final EOF.
maketemp	Facilitates making unique file names.
popdef	Removes current definition of its argument(s) exposing any previous definitions.
pushdef	Defines new macros but saves any previous definition.

Figure 16-1. Built-in Macros (Sheet 3 of 4)

Macro Name	Function
shift	Returns all arguments of shift except the first argument.
sinclude	Returns the contents of the file named in the arguments. The macro remains silent and continues if the file is inaccessible.
substr	Produces substrings of strings.
syscmd	Executes the ICON/UXV System command given in the first argument.
traceoff	Turns macro trace off.
traceon	Turns the macro trace on.
translit	Performs character transliteration.
undefine	Removes user-defined or built-in macro definitions.
undivert	Discards the diverted text.

Figure 16-1. Built-in Macros (Sheet 4 of 4)

To use the M4 macro processor, input the following command:

```
m4 [optional files]
```

Each argument file is processed in order. If there are no arguments or if an argument is “—”, the standard input is read at that point. The processed text is written on the standard output which may be captured for subsequent processing with the following input:

```
m4 [files] >outputfile
```

## M4 MACROS

### DEFINING MACROS

The primary built-in function of M4 is **define**. **Define** is used to define new macros. The following input:

```
define(name, stuff)
```

causes the string *name* to be defined as *stuff*. All subsequent occurrences of *name* will be replaced by *stuff*. *Name* must be alphanumeric and must begin with a letter (the underscore counts as a letter). *Stuff* is any text that contains balanced parentheses. Use of a slash may stretch *stuff* over multiple lines. Thus, as a typical example,

```
define(N, 100)
...
if (i > N)
```

defines *N* to be 100 and uses the symbolic constant *N* in a later **if** statement.

The left parenthesis must immediately follow the word **define** to signal that **define** has arguments. If a user-defined macro or built-in name is not followed immediately by “(”, it is assumed to have no arguments. Macro calls have the following general form:

```
name(arg1,arg2,...argn)
```

A macro name is only recognized as such if it appears surrounded by nonalphanumerics. Using the following example:

```
define(N, 100)
...
if (NNN > 100)
```

the variable *NNN* is absolutely unrelated to the defined macro *N* even though the variable contains a lot of *N*s.

Macros may be defined in terms of other names. For example,

```
define(N, 100)
define(M, N)
```

defines both *M* and *N* to be 100. If *N* is redefined and subsequently changes, *M* retains the value of 100 not *N*.

The M4 macro processor expands macro names into their defining text as soon as possible. The string *N* is immediately replaced by 100. Then the string *M* is also immediately replaced by 100. The overall result is the same as using the following input in the first place:

```
define(M, 100)
```

The order of the definitions can be interchanged as follows:

```
define(M, N)
define(N, 100)
```

Now *M* is defined to be the string *N*, so when the value of *M* is requested later, the result is the value of *N* at that time (because the *M* will be replaced by *N* which will be replaced by 100).

The more general solution is to delay the expansion of the arguments of **define** by quoting them. Any text surrounded by left and right single quotes is not expanded immediately but has the quotes stripped off. The value of a quoted string is the string stripped of the quotes. If the input is

```
define(N, 100)
define(M, 'N')
```

the quotes around the *N* are stripped off as the argument is being collected. The results of using quotes is to define *M* as the string *N*, not 100. The general rule is that M4 always strips off one level of single quotes whenever it evaluates something. This is true even outside of macros. If the word **define** is to appear in the output, the word must be quoted in the input as follows:

```
'define' = 1;
```

Another example of using quotes is redefining *N*. To redefine *N*, the evaluation must be delayed by quoting

```
define(N, 100)
...
define('N', 200)
```

In M4, it is often wise to quote the first argument of a macro. The following example will not redefine *N*:

## M4 MACROS

```
define(N, 100)
...
define(N, 200)
```

The *N* in the second definition is replaced by 100. The result is equivalent to the following statement:

```
define(100, 200)
```

This statement is ignored by M4 since only things that look like names can be defined.

If left and right single quotes are not convenient for some reason, the quote characters can be changed with the following built-in macro:

```
changequote([, ])
```

The built-in **changequote** makes the new quote characters the left and right brackets. The original characters can be restored by using **changequote** without arguments as follows:

```
changequote
```

There are two additional built-ins related to **define**. The **undefine** macro removes the definition of some macro or built-in as follows:

```
undefine('N')
```

The macro removes the definition of *N*. Built-ins can be removed with **undefine**, as follows:

```
undefine('define')
```

But once removed, the definition cannot be reused.

The built-in **ifdef** provides a way to determine if a macro is currently defined. Depending on the system, a definition appropriate for the particular machine can be made as follows:

```
ifdef('pdp11', 'define(wordsize,16)')
ifdef('u3b', 'define(wordsize,32)')
```

Remember to use the quotes.

The **ifdef** macro actually permits three arguments. If the first argument is defined, the value of **ifdef** is the second argument. If the first argument is not defined, the value of **ifdef** is the third argument. If there is no third argument, the value of **ifdef** is null. If the name is undefined, the value of **ifdef** is then the third argument, as in

```
ifdef('unix', on ICON/UXV, not on ICON/UXV)
```

## ARGUMENTS

So far the simplest form of macro processing has been discussed which is replacing one string by another (fixed) string. User-defined macros may also have arguments, so different invocations can have different results. Within the replacement text for a macro (the second argument of its **define**), any occurrence of **\$n** is replaced by the **n**th argument when the macro is actually used. Thus, the macro **bump** defined as

```
define(bump, $1 = $1 + 1)
```

generates code to increment its argument by 1. The 'bump(x)' statement is equivalent to 'x = x + 1.'

A macro can have as many arguments as needed, but only the first nine are accessible (**\$1** through **\$9**). The macro name is **\$0** although that is less commonly used. Arguments that are not supplied are replaced by null strings, so a macro can be defined which simply concatenates its arguments like this:

```
define(cat, $1$2$3$4$5$6$7$8$9)
```

Thus, 'cat(x, y, z)' is equivalent to 'xyz'. Arguments **\$4** through **\$9** are null since no corresponding arguments were provided. Leading unquoted blanks, tabs, or newlines that occur during argument collection are discarded. All other white space is retained. Thus:

```
define(a, b c)
```

defines 'a' to be 'b c'.

Arguments are separated by commas; however, when commas are within parentheses, the argument is not terminated nor separated. For example,

## M4 MACROS

```
define(a, (b,c))
```

has only two arguments. The first argument is **a**. The second is literally **(b,c)**. A bare comma or parenthesis can be inserted by quoting it.

## ARITHMETIC BUILT-INS

The M4 provides three built-in functions for doing arithmetic on integers (only). The simplest is **incr** which increments its numeric argument by 1. The built-in **decr** decrements by 1. Thus to handle the common programming situation where a variable is to be defined as "one more than *N*", use the following:

```
define(N, 100)
define(N1, 'incr(N)')
```

Then *N1* is defined as one more than the current value of *N*.

The more general mechanism for arithmetic is a built-in called **eval** which is capable of arbitrary arithmetic on integers. The operators in decreasing order of precedence are

```
unary + and -
** or ^ (exponentiation)
* / % (modulus)
+ -
== != < <= > >=
! (not)
& or && (logical and)
| or || (logical or).
```

Parentheses may be used to group operations where needed. All the operands of an expression given to **eval** must ultimately be numeric. The numeric value of a true relation (like  $1 > 0$ ) is 1 and false is 0. The precision in **eval** is 32 bits under the ICON/UXV operating system.

As a simple example, define *M* to be " $2 == N + 1$ " using **eval** as follows:

```
define(N, 3)
define(M, 'eval(2==N+1)')
```

The defining text for a macro should be quoted unless the text is very simple. Quoting the defining text usually gives the desired result and is a good habit to get into.

## FILE MANIPULATION

A new file can be included in the input at any time by the built-in function **include**. For example,

```
include(filename)
```

inserts the contents of *filename* in place of the **include** command. The contents of the file is often a set of definitions. The value of **include** (**include**'s replacement text) is the contents of the file. If needed, the contents can be captured in definitions, etc.

A fatal error occurs if the file named in **include** cannot be accessed. To get some control over this situation, the alternate form **sinclude** can be used. The built-in **sinclude** (silent include) says nothing and continues if the file named cannot be accessed.

The output of M4 can be diverted to temporary files during processing, and the collected material can be output upon command. The M4 maintains nine of these diversions, numbered 1 through 9. If the built-in macro

```
divert(n)
```

is used, all subsequent output is put onto the end of a temporary file referred to as *n*. Diverting to this file is stopped by the **divert** or **divert(0)** command which resumes the normal output process.

Diverted text is normally output all at once at the end of processing with the diversions output in numerical order. Diversions can be brought back at any time by appending the new diversion to the current diversion. Output diverted to a stream other than 0 through 9 is discarded. The built-in **undivert** brings back all diversions in numerical order. The built-in **undivert** with arguments brings back the selected diversions in the order given. The act of undiverting discards the diverted text (as does diverting) into a diversion whose number is not between 0 and 9, inclusive.

The value of **undivert** is *not* the diverted text. Furthermore, the diverted material is *not* rescanned for macros. The built-in **divnum** returns the number of the currently active diversion. The current output stream is zero during normal processing.

## M4 MACROS

### SYSTEM COMMAND

Any program in the local operating system can be run by using the **syscmd** built-in. For example,

```
syscmd(date)
```

on the ICON/UXV operating system runs the **date** command. Normally, **syscmd** would be used to create a file for a subsequent **include**. To facilitate making unique file names, the built-in **maketemp** is provided with specifications identical to the system function *mktemp*. The **maketemp** macro fills in a string of **XXXXXX** in the argument with the process id of the current process.

### CONDITIONALS

Arbitrary conditional testing is performed via built-in **ifelse**. In the simplest form

```
ifelse(a, b, c, d)
```

compares the two strings *a* and *b*. If *a* and *b* are identical, **ifelse** returns the string *c*. Otherwise, string *d* is returned. Thus, a macro called **compare** can be defined as one which compares two strings and returns "yes" or "no" if they are the same or different as follows:

```
define(compare, 'ifelse($1, $2, yes, no)')
```

Note the quotes which prevents evaluation of **ifelse** occurring too early. If the fourth argument is missing, it is treated as empty.

The built-in **ifelse** can actually have any number of arguments and provides a limited form of multiway decision capability. In the input

```
ifelse(a, b, c, d, e, f, g)
```

if the string *a* matches the string *b*, the result is *c*. Otherwise, if *d* is the same as *e*, the result is *f*. Otherwise, the result is *g*. If the final argument is omitted, the result is null, so

```
ifelse(a, b, c)
```

is *c* if *a* matches *b*, and null otherwise.

## STRING MANIPULATION

The built-in **len** returns the length of the string (number of characters) that makes up its argument. Thus:

```
len(abcdef)
```

is 6, and **len((a,b))** is 5.

The built-in **substr** can be used to produce substrings of strings. Using input, **substr(s, i, n)** returns the substring of *s* that starts at the *i*th position (origin zero) and is *n* characters long. If *n* is omitted, the rest of the string is returned. Inputting

```
substr('now is the time',1)
```

returns the following string:

```
ow is the time.
```

If *i* or *n* are out of range, various actions occur.

The built-in **index(s1, s2)** returns the index (position) in *s1* where the string *s2* occurs or  $-1$  if it does not occur. As with **substr**, the origin for strings is 0.

The built-in **translit** performs character transliteration and has the general form

```
translit(s, f, t)
```

which modifies *s* by replacing any character found in *f* by the corresponding character of *t*. Using input

```
translit(s, aeiou, 12345)
```

replaces the vowels by the corresponding digits. If *t* is shorter than *f*, characters that do not have an entry in *t* are deleted. As a limiting case, if *t* is not present at all, characters from *f* are deleted from *s*. So

## M4 MACROS

```
translit(s, aeiou)
```

would delete vowels from *s*.

There is also a built-in called **dnl** that deletes all characters that follow it up to and including the next new line. The **dnl** macro is useful mainly for throwing away empty lines that otherwise tend to clutter up M4 output. Using input

```
define(N, 100)
define(M, 200)
define(L, 300)
```

results in a new line at the end of each line that is not part of the definition. So the new line is copied into the output where it may not be wanted. If the built-in **dnl** is added to each of these lines, the newlines will disappear. Another method of achieving the same results is to input

```
divert(-1)
define(...)
...
divert.
```

## PRINTING

The built-in **errprint** writes its arguments out on the standard error file. An example would be

```
errprint('fatal error')
```

The built-in **dumpdef** is a debugging aid that dumps the current names and definitions of items named as arguments. If no arguments are given, then all current names and definitions are printed. Do not forget to quote the names.

## Chapter 17

### THE `awk` PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	17-1
PROGRAM STRUCTURE .....	17-1
LEXICAL CONVENTION.....	17-2
PRIMARY EXPRESSIONS .....	17-8
TERMS .....	17-12
EXPRESSIONS .....	17-13
USING <code>awk</code> .....	17-14
INPUT: RECORDS AND FIELDS .....	17-16
INPUT: FROM THE COMMAND LINE.....	17-17
OUTPUT: PRINTING.....	17-19
OUTPUT: TO DIFFERENT FILES.....	17-23
OUTPUT: TO PIPES .....	17-24
COMMENTS.....	17-25
PATTERNS .....	17-25
ACTIONS.....	17-33
BUILT IN FUNCTIONS.....	17-40
FLOW OF CONTROL.....	17-43
REPORT GENERATION .....	17-46
COOPERATION WITH THE SHELL.....	17-48
MISCELLANEOUS HINTS.....	17-49



## Chapter 17

# THE *awk* PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE

### GENERAL

The *awk* is a file-processing programming language designed to make many common information and retrieval text manipulation tasks easy to state and perform. The *awk*:

- Generates reports
- Matches patterns
- Validates data
- Filters data for transmission.

### PROGRAM STRUCTURE

The *awk* program is a sequence of statements of the form

```
pattern {action}  
pattern {action}  
...
```

The *awk* program is run on a set of input files. The basic operation of *awk* is to scan a set of input lines, in order, one at a time. In each line, *awk* searches for the pattern described in the *awk* program, then if that pattern is found in the input line, a corresponding action is performed. In this way, each statement of the *awk* program is executed for a given input line. When all the patterns are tested, the next input line is fetched; and the *awk* program is once again executed from the beginning.

In the *awk* command, either the pattern or the action is omitted, but not both. If there is no action for a pattern, the matching line is simply printed. If there is no pattern for an action, then the action is performed for every input line. The null *awk* program does nothing. Since patterns and actions are both optional, actions are enclosed in braces to distinguish them from patterns.

For example, this *awk* program

**awk**

```
/x/ {print}
```

prints every input line that has an "x" in it.

An *awk* program has the following structure:

- a <BEGIN> section
- a <record> or main section
- an <END> section.

The <BEGIN> section is run before any input lines are read, and the <END> section is run after all the data files are processed. The <record> section is data driven. That is, it is the section that is run over and over for each separate line of input.

Values are assigned to variables from the *awk* command line. The <BEGIN> section is run before these assignments are made.

The words "BEGIN" and "END" are actually patterns recognized by *awk*. These are discussed further in the pattern section of this guide.

## LEXICAL CONVENTION

All *awk* programs are made up of lexical units called tokens. In *awk* there are eight token types:

1. *numeric constants*
2. *string constants*
3. *keywords*
4. *identifiers*
5. *operators*
6. *record and file tokens*
7. *comments*
8. *separators.*

### Numeric Constants

A *numeric constant* is either a decimal constant or a floating constant. A decimal constant is a nonnull sequence of digits containing at most one decimal point as in **12**, **12.**, **1.2**, and **.12**. A floating constant is a decimal constant followed by **e** or **E** followed by an optional **+** or **-** sign followed by a nonnull sequence of digits as in **12e3**, **1.2e3**, **1.2e-3**, and **1.2E+3**. The maximum size and precision of a numeric constant are machine dependent.

### String Constants

A *string constant* is a sequence of zero or more characters surrounded by double quotes as in **"**, **"a"**, **"ab"**, and **"12"**. A double quote is put in a string by proceeding it with **\** as in **"He said, \** **Sit! \"**. A newline is put in a string by using **\n** in its place. No other characters need to be escaped. Strings can be (almost) any length.

### Keywords

Strings used as keywords are shown in Figure 17-1.

Keywords		
begin	break	length
end	close	log
FILENAME	continue	next
FS	close	number
NF	exit	print
NR	exp	printf
OFS	for	split
ORS	getline	sprintf
OFMT	if	sqrt
RS	in	string
	index	substr
	int	while

Figure 17-1. Strings Used as Keywords

### Identifiers

*Identifiers* in *awk* serve to denote variables and arrays. An identifier is a sequence of letters, digits, and underscores, beginning with a letter or an underscore. Uppercase and lowercase letters are different.

## Operators

The *awk* has assignment, arithmetic, relational, and logical operators similar to those in the C programming language and regular expression pattern matching operators similar to those in the ICON/UXV program *egrep* and *lex*.

Assignment operators are shown in Figure 17-2.

Assignment Operators		
Symbol	Usage	Description
=	assignment	
+=	plus-equals	$X += Y$ is similar to $X = X + Y$
-=	minus-equals	$X -= Y$ is similar to $X = X - Y$
*=	times-equals	$X *= Y$ is similar to $X = X * Y$
/=	divide-equals	$X = Y$ is similar to $X = X / Y$
%=	mod-equals	$X %= Y$ is similar to $X = X \% Y$
++	prefix and postfix increments	$++X$ and $FX++$ are similar to $X = X + 1$
-	prefix and postfix decrements	$--$ and $X$ similar to $X = X - 1$

Figure 17-2. Symbols and Descriptions for Assignment Operators

Arithmetic operators are shown in Figure 17-3.

Arithmetic Operators	
Symbol .R	Description
+ - * / % (...)	unary binary plus unary and binary minus multiplication division modulus grouping

Figure 17-3. Symbols and Descriptions for Arithmetic Operators

Relational operators are shown in Figure 17-4.

Relational Operators	
Symbol	Description
<	less than
<=	less than or equal to
==	equal to
!=	not equal to
>=	greater than or equal to
>	greater than

Figure 17-4. Symbols and Descriptions for Relational Operators

**awk**

Logical operators are shown in Figure 17-5.

<b>Logical Operators</b>	
<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>&amp;&amp;</b> <b>!!</b> <b>!</b>	and or not

**Figure 17-5. Symbols and Descriptions for Logical Operators**

Regular expression matching operators are shown in the Figure 17-6.

<b>Regular Expression Pattern Matching Operators</b>	
<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>-</b> <b>!-</b>	matches does not match

**Figure 17-6. Symbols and Descriptions for Regular Expression Pattern**

#### **Record and Field Tokens**

The **\$0** is a special variable whose value is that of the current input record. The **\$1**, **\$2...** are special variables whose values are those of the first field, the second field, . . . , respectively, of the current input record. The keyword **NF** (Number of Fields) is a special variable whose value is the number of fields in the current input records. Thus **\$NF** has, as its value, the value of the last field of the current input records. Notice that the field of each record is numbered 1 and that the number of fields can vary from record to record. None of these variables is defined in the action associated with a **BEGIN** or **END** pattern, where there is no current input record.

The keyword **NR** (Number of Records) is a variable whose value is the number of input records read so far. The first input record read is 1.

### Record Separators

The keyword **RS** (Record Separators) is a variable whose value is the current record separator. The value of **RS** is initially set to newline, indicating that adjacent input records are separated by a newline. Keyword **RS** is changed to any character **c** by including the assignment statement **RS = "c"** in an action.

### Field Separator

The keyword **FS** (Field Separator) is a variable indicating the current field separator. Initially, the value of **FS** is a blank, indicating that fields are separated by white space, i.e., any nonnull sequence of blanks and tabs. Keyword **FS** is changed to any single character **c** by including the assignment statement **F = "c"** in an action or by using the optional command line argument **-Fc**. Two values of **c** have special meaning, **space** and **t**. The assignment statement **FS = " "** makes white space in field separator; and on the command line, **-Ft** makes tab the field separator.

If the field operator is not a blank, then there is a field in the record on each side of the separator. For instance, if the field separator is 1, the record **1XXX1** has three fields. The first and last are null. If the field separator is blank, then fields are separated by white space, and none of the **NF** fields are null.

### Multiline Records

The assignment **RS = " "** makes an empty line the record separator and makes a nonnull sequence (consisting of blanks, tabs, and possibly a newline) the field separator. With this setting, none of the first **NF** fields of any record are null.

### Output Record and Field Separators

The value of **OFS** (Output Field Separator) is the output field separator. It is put between fields by print. The value of **ORS** (Output Record Separators) is put after each record by print. Initially, **ORS** is set to a newline and **OFS** to a space. These values may change to any string by assignments such as **ORS = "abc"** and **OFS = "xyz"**.

### Comments

A comment is introduced by a **#** and terminated by a newline. For example:

```
# part of the line is a comment
```

A comment can be appended to the end of any line of an *awk* program.

### Separators and Brackets

Tokens in *awk* are usually separated by nonnull sequences of blank, tabs, and newlines, or by other punctuation symbols such as commas and semicolons. Braces **{...}** surround actions, slashes **/.../** surround regular expression patterns, and double quotes **"..."** surround strings.

## PRIMARY EXPRESSIONS

In *awk*, patterns and actions are made up of expressions. The basic building blocks of expressions are the *primary expressions*:

*numeric constants*  
*string constant*  
*var*  
*function*

Each expression has both a numeric and a string value, one of which is usually preferred. The rules for determining the preferred value of an expression are explained below.

### Numeric Constants

The format of a numeric constant was defined previously in **LEXICAL CONVENTIONS**. Numeric values are stored as floating point numbers. Both the numeric and string value of a numeric constant is the decimal number represented by the constant. The preferred value is the numeric value.

Numeric values for string constants are in Figure 17-7.

Numeric Constants		
Numeric Constant	Numeric Value	String Value
0	0	0
1	1	1
.5	0.5	.5
.5e2	50	50

Figure 17-7. Numeric Values for String Constants

### String Constants

The format of a string constant was defined previously in **LEXICAL CONVENTIONS**. The numeric value of a string constant is **0** unless the string is a numeric constant enclosed in double quotes. In this case, the numeric value is the number represented. The preferred value of a string constant is its string value. The string value of a string constant is always the string itself.

String values for string constants are in Figure 17-8.

String Constants		
String Constant	Numeric Value	String Value
""	0	empty space
"a"	0	a
"XYZ"	0	xyz
"0"	0	0
"1"	1	1
".5"	0.5	.5
".5e2"	0.5	.5e2a

Figure 17-8. String Values for String Constants

### Vars

A *var* is one of the following:

```

identifier
identifier{expression}
$term

```

The numeric value of any uninitialized *var* is **0**, and the string value is the empty string.

An *identifier* by itself is a simple variable. A *var* of the form *identifier* {*expression*} represents an element of an associative array named by *identifier*. The string value of *expression* is used as the index into the array. The preferred value of *identifier* or *identifier* {*expression*} is determined by context.

The *var* **\$0** refers to the current input record. Its string and numeric values are those of the current input record. If the current input record represents a number, then the numeric value of **\$0** is the number and the string value is the literal string. The preferred value of **\$0** is string unless the current input record is a number. The **\$0** cannot be changed by assignment.

The *var* **\$1**, **\$2**, . . . refer to fields 1, 2, . . . of the current input record. The string and numeric value of **\$i** for  $1 \leq i \leq \text{NF}$  are those of the *i*th field of the current input record. As with **\$0**, if the *i*th field represents a number, then the numeric value of **\$i** is the number and the string value is the literal string. The preferred value of **\$i** is string unless the *i*th field is a number. The **\$i** is changed by assignment. The **\$0** is then changed accordingly.

## awk

In general,  $\$term$  refers to the input record if  $term$  has the numeric value 0 and to field  $i$  if the greatest integer in the numeric value of  $term$  is  $i$ . If  $i < 0$  or if  $i \geq 100$ , then accessing  $\$i$  causes *awk* to produce an error diagnostic. If  $NF < i \leq 100$ , then  $\$i$  behaves like an uninitialized *var*. Accessing  $\$i$  for  $i > NF$  does not change the value of  $NF$ .

### Function

The *awk* has a number of built-in functions that perform common arithmetic and string operations.

The arithmetic functions are in Figure 17-9.

Functions	
exp	( <i>expression</i> )
int	( <i>expression</i> )
log	( <i>expression</i> )
sqrt	( <i>expression</i> )

Figure 17-9. Built-in Functions for Arithmetic and String Operations

These functions (exp, int, log, and sqrt) compute the exponential, integer part, natural logarithm, and square root, respectively, of the numeric value of *expression*. The (*expression*) may be omitted; then the function is applied to  $\$0$ . The preferred value of an arithmetic function is numeric.

String functions are shown in Figure 17-10.

String Functions	
getline	
index	(expression1, expression2)
length	(expression)
split	(expression, identifier, expression2)
split	(expression, identifier)
sprintf	(format, expression1, expression2...)
substr	(expression1, expression2)
substr	(expression1, expression2, expression3)

Figure 17-10. Expressions for String Functions

The function `getline` causes the next input record to replace the current record. It returns 1 if there is a next input record or a 0 if there is no next input record. The value of `NR` is updated.

The function `index (e1,e2)` takes the string value of expressions `e1` and `e2` and returns the first position of where `e2` occurs as a substring in `e1`. If `e2` does not occur in `e1`, `index` returns 0. For example, `index ("abc", "bc")=2` and `index ("abc", "ac")=0`.

The function `length` without an argument returns the number of characters in the current input record. With an expression argument, `length (e)` returns the number of characters in the string value of `e`. For example, `length ("abc")=3` and `length (17)=2`.

The function `split (e array, sep)` splits the string value of expression `e` into fields that are then stored in `array [1]`, `array [2]`, ..., `array [n]` using the string value of `sep` as the field separator. `Split` returns the number of fields found in `e`. The function `split (e, array)` uses the current value of `FS` to indicate the field separator. For example, after invoking `n = split ($0, a[1], a[2], ..., a[n])` is the same sequence of values as `$1, $2 . . . , $NF`.

The function `splitf (f, e1, e2 . . .)` produces the value of expressions `e1, e2 . . .` in the format specified by the string value of the expression `f`. The format control conventions are those of the `printf` statement in the C programming language [KR].

The function `substr (string, pos)` returns the suffix of `string` starting at position `pos`. The function `substr (string, pos, length)` returns the substring of `string` that begins at position `pos` and is `length` characters long. If `pos + length` is greater than the length of `string` then `substr (string, pos, length)` is equivalent to `substr (string, pos)`. For example, `substr ("abc", 2, 1) = "b"`, `substr ("abc", 2, 2) = "bc"`, and `substr ("abc", 2, 3) = "bc"`. Positions less than 1 are taken

**awk**

as 1. A negative or zero length produces a null result.

The preferred value of `sprintf` and `substr` is string. The preferred value of the remaining string functions is numeric.

## TERMS

Various arithmetic operators are applied to primary expressions to produce larger syntactic units called *terms*. All arithmetic is done in floating point. A term has one of the following forms:

*primary expression*  
*term binop term*  
*unop term*  
*incremented var*  
*(term)*

### Binary Terms

In a *term* of the form

*term1*  
*binop*  
*term2*

*binop* can be one of the five binary arithmetic operators `+`, `-`, `*` (multiplication), `/` (division), `%` (modulus). The binary operator is applied to the numeric value of the operand *term1* and *term2*, and the result is the usual numeric value. This numeric value is the preferred value, but it can be interpreted as a string value (see **Numeric Constants**). The operators `*`, `/`, and `%` have higher precedence than `+` and `-`. All operators are left associative.

### Unary Term

In a *term* of the form

*unop term*

*unop* can be unary `+` or `-`. The unary operator is applied to the numeric value of *term*, and the result is the usual numeric value which is preferred. However, it can be interpreted as a string value. Unary `+` and `-` have higher precedence than `*`, `/`, and `%`.

### Incremented Vars

An *incremented var* has one of the forms

```
++ var
-- var
var ++
var --
```

The `++ var` has the value `var + 1` and has the effect of `var = var + 1`. Similarly, `-- var` has the value `var - 1` and has the effect of `var = var - 1`. Therefore, `var ++` has the same value as `var` and has the effect of `var = var + 1`. Similarly, `var --` has the same value as `var` and has the effect of `var = var - 1`. The preferred value of an *incremented var* is numeric.

### Parenthesized Terms

Parentheses are used to group terms in the usual manner.

## EXPRESSIONS

An *awk* expression is one of the following:

```
term
term term ...
var asgnop expression
```

### Concatenation of Terms

In an expression of the form `term1 term2 ...`, the string value of the terms are concatenated. The preferred value of the resulting expression is a string value that can be interpreted as a numeric value. Concatenation of terms has lower precedence than binary `+` and `-`. For example, `1+2 3=4` has the string (and numeric) value 37.

### Assignment Expressions

An *assignment expression* is one of the forms

```
var asgnop expression
```

where *asgnop* is one of the six assignment operators:

## awk

=  
+=  
-=  
\*=  
/=

%=

The preferred value of *var* is the same as that of *expression*.

In an expression of the form

$$var = expression$$

the numeric and string value of *var* becomes those of *expression*.

$$var\ op = expression$$

is equivalent to

$$var = var\ op\ expression$$

where *op* is one of; +, -, \*, /, %. The *asgnops* are right associative and have the lowest precedence of any operator. Thus,  $a += b * c - 2$  is equivalent to the sequence of assignments

$$b = b * (c - 2)$$
$$a = a + b$$

## USING awk

There are two ways in which to present your *awk* program of pattern-action statements to *awk* for processing:

1. If the program is short (a line or two), it is often easiest to make the program the first argument on the command line:

$$awk\ 'program'\ files$$

where "files" is an optional list of input files and "program" is your *awk* program. Note that there are single quotes around the program in order for the shell to accept the entire string (program) as the first argument to *awk*. For example, write to the shell

```
awk ' /x/ {print } ' files
```

to run the *awk* script `/x/ {print}` on the input file "files". If no input files are specified, *awk* takes input from the standard input `stdin`. You can also specify that input comes from `stdin` by using "-" (the hyphen) as one of the files. The pattern-action statement

```
awk 'program' files -
```

looks for input from "files" and from `stdin` and processes first from "files" and then from `stdin`.

2. Alternately, if your *awk* program is long, it is more convenient to put the program in a separate file, `awkprog`, and tell *awk* to fetch it from there. This is done by using the "-f" option after the *awk* command as follows:

```
awk -f awkprog files
```

where "files" is an optional list of input files that may include `stdin` as is indicated by a hyphen (-).

For example:

```
awk ' BEGIN {
                                print "hello, world"
                                exit
                                }
```

prints

```
hello, world
```

on the standard output when given to the shell. Recall that the word "BEGIN" is a special pattern indicating that the action following in braces is run before any data is read. Words "print" and "exit" are both discussed in later sections.

This *awk* program could be run by putting

```
BEGIN {
    print "hello, world"
    exit
}
```

in a file named `awkprog`, and then the command

**awk**

*awk -f awkprog*

given to the shell. This would have the same effect as the first procedure.

## INPUT: RECORDS AND FIELDS

The *awk* reads its input one record at a time unless changed by you. A record is a sequence of characters from the input ending with a newline character or with an end of file. Thus, a record is a line of input. The *awk* program reads in characters until it encounters a newline or end of file. The string of characters, thus read, is assigned to the variable **\$0**. You can change the character that indicates the end of a record by assigning a new character to the special variable **RS** (the record separator). Assignment of values to variables and these special variables such as **RS** are discussed later.

Once *awk* has read in a record, it then splits the record into "fields". A field is a string of characters separated by blanks or tabs, unless you specify otherwise. You may change field separators from blanks or tabs to whatever characters you choose in the same way that record separators are changed. That is, the special variable **FS** is assigned a different value.

As an example, let us suppose that the file "countries" contains the area in thousands of square miles, the population in millions, and the continent for the ten largest countries in the world. (Figures are from 1978; Russia is placed in Asia.)

Sample Input File "countries":

Russia	8650	262	Asia
Canada	3852	24	North America
China	3692	866	Asia
USA	3615	219	North America
Brazil	3286	116	South America
Australia	68	14	Australia
India	1269	637	Asia
Argentina	72	26	South America
Sudan	968	19	Africa
Algeria	920	18	Africa

The wide spaces are tabs in the original input and a single blank separates North and South from America. We use this data as the input for many of the *awk* programs in this guide since it is typical of the type of material that *awk* is best at processing (a mixture of words and numbers separated into fields or columns separated by blanks and tabs).

Each of these lines has either four or five fields if blanks and/or tabs separate the fields. This is what *awk* assumes unless told otherwise. In the above example, the first record is

```
Russia 8650 262 Asia
```

When this record is read by *awk*, it is assigned to the variable **\$0**. If you want to refer to this entire record, it is done through the variable, **\$0**.

For example, the following input:

```
{print $0}
```

prints the entire record. Fields within a record are assigned to the variables **\$1**, **\$2**, **\$3**, and so forth; that is, the first field of the present record is referred to as **\$1** by the *awk* program. The second field of the present record is referred to as **\$2** by the *awk* program. The *i*th field of the present record is referred to as **\$i** by the *awk* program. Thus, in the above example of the file countries, in the first record;

```
$1 is equal to the string "Russia"
$2 is equal to the integer 8650
$3 is equal to the integer 262
$4 is equal to the string "Asia"
$5 is equal to the null string
... and so forth.
```

To print the continent, followed by the name of the country, followed by its population, use the following *awk* script:

```
{print $4, $1, $3}
```

Note that *awk* does not require type declarations.

### INPUT: FROM THE COMMAND LINE

It is possible to assign values to variables from within an *awk* program. Because you do not declare types of variables, a variable is created simply by referring to it. An example of assigning a value to a variable is:

```
x=5
```

This statement in an *awk* program assigns the value 5 to the variable *x*. It is also possible to assign values to variables from the command line. This provides another way to supply input

## awk

values to *awk* programs.

For example

```
awk ' {print x } x=5 -
```

will print the value 5 on the standard output. The minus sign at the end of this command is necessary to indicate that input is coming from *stdin* instead of a file called "x=5". Similarly if the input comes from a file named "file", the command is

```
awk '{print x}' file
```

It is *not* possible to assign values to variables used in the BEGIN section in this way.

If it is necessary to change the record separator and the field separator, it is useful to do so from the command line as in the following example:

```
awk -f awk.program RS=":" file
```

Here, the record separator is changed to the character ":". This causes your program in the file "awk.program" to run with records separated by the colon instead of the newline character and with input coming from the file, "file". It is similarly useful to change the field separator from the command line.

This operation is so common that there is yet another way to change the field separator from the command line. There is a separate option "-Fx" that is placed directly after the command *awk*. This changes the field separator from blank or tab to the character "x".

For example

```
awk -F: -f awk.program file
```

changes the field separator FS to the character ":". Note that if the field separator is specifically set to a tab, (that is, with the -F option or by making a direct assignment to FS) then blanks are recognized by *awk* as separating fields. However, even if the field separator is specifically set to a blank, tabs are STILL recognized by *awk* as separating fields.

An exercise:

Using the input file ("countries" described earlier) write an *awk* script that prints the name of a country followed by the continent that it is on. Do this in such a way that continents composed of two words (e. g., North America) are processed as only one field and not two.

## OUTPUT: PRINTING

An action may have no pattern; in this case, the action is executed for all lines as in the simple printing program

```
{print}
```

This is one of the simplest actions performed by *awk*. It prints each line of the input to the output. More useful is to print one or more fields from each line. For instance, using the file "countries", that was used earlier,

```
awk '{ print $1, $3 }' countries
```

prints the name of the country and the population:

```
Russia 262
Canada 24
China 866
USA 219
Brazil 116
Australia 14
India 637
Argentina 14
Sudan 19
Algeria 18
```

Note that the use of a semicolon at the end of statements in *awk* programs is optional. *Awk* accepts

```
{print $1 }
```

and

```
{print $1; }
```

equally and takes them to mean the same thing. If you want to put two *awk* statements on the same line of an *awk* script, the semicolon is necessary. For example, the following semicolon is necessary if you want the number 5 printed:

```
{x=5; print x }
```

Parentheses are also optional with the print statement.

```
print $3, $2
```

is the same as

```
print ($3, $2 )
```

## awk

Items separated by a comma in a print statement are separated by the current output field separators (normally spaces, even though the input is separated by tabs) when printed. The **OFS** is another special variable that can be changed by you. These special variables are summarized in a later section.

An exercise:

Using the input file, "countries", print the continent followed by the country followed by the population for each input record. Then pipe the output to the ICON/UXV operating system command "sort" so that all countries from a given continent are printed together.

*Print* also prints strings directly from your programs with the *awk* script

```
{print "hello, world" }
```

from an earlier section.

An exercise:

Print a header to the output of the previous exercise that says "Population of Largest Countries" followed by headers to the columns that follow describing what is in that column, for example, Country or Population.

As we have already seen, *awk* makes available a number of special variables with useful values, for example, **FS** and **RS**. We now introduce another special variable in the next example. **NR** and **NF** are both integers that contain the number of the present record and the number of fields in the present record, respectively. Thus,

```
{print NR, NF, $0}
```

prints each record number and the number of fields in each record followed by the record itself. Using this program on the file, "countries" yields:

1	4	Russia	8650	262	Asia
2	5	Canada	3852	24	North America
3	4	China	3692	866	Asia
4	5	USA	3615	219	North America
5	5	Brazil	3286	116	South America
6	4	Australia	2968	14	Australia
7	4	India	1269	637	Asia
8	5	Argentina	1072	26	South America
9	4	Sudan	968	19	Africa
10	4	Algeria	920	18	Africa

and the program

```
{print NR, $1 }
```

prints

```
1 Russia
2 Canada
3 China
4 USA
5 Brazil
6 Australia
7 India
8 Argentina
9 Sudan
10 Algeria
```

This is an easy way to supply sequence numbers to a list. `Print`, by itself, prints the input record. Use

```
print ""
```

to print the empty line.

*Awk* also provides the statement `printf` so that you can format output as desired. `Print` uses the default format `"%.6g"` for each variable printed.

```
printf format, expr, expr, ...
```

formats the expressions in the list according to the specification in the string, `format`, and prints them. The format statement is exactly that of the `printf` in the C library. For example,

```
{ printf "%10s %6d0, $1, $2, $3 }
```

prints `$1` as a string of 10 characters (right justified). The second and third fields (6-digit numbers) make a neatly columned table.

## awk

Russia	8650	262
Canada	3852	244
China	3692	866
USA	3615	219
Brazil	3286	116
Australia	2968	14
India	1269	637
Argentina	1072	26
Sudan	968	19
Algeria	920	18

With `printf`, no output separators or newlines are produced automatically. You must add them as in this example. In the C library version of `printf`, the various escape characters `"\n"`, `"\t"`, `"\b"` (backspace) and `"\r"` (carriage return) are valid with the `awk printf`.

There is a third way that printing can occur on standard output when a pattern is specified but there is no action to go with it. In this case, the entire record `$0` is printed. For example, the program

```
/x/
```

prints any record that contains the character `"x"`.

There are two special variables that go with printing, `OFS` and `ORS`. These are by default set to blank and the newline character, respectively. The variable `OFS` is printed on the standard output when a comma occurs in a print statement such as

```
{ x="hello"; y="world"  
  print x,y  
}
```

which prints

```
hello world
```

However, without the comma in the print statement as

```
{ x="hello"; y="world"  
  print x y  
}
```

you get

```
helloworld
```

To get a comma on the output, you can either insert it in the print statement as in this case

```
{ x="hello"; y="world"
  print x"," y
}
```

or you can change **OFS** in a **BEGIN** section as in

```
BEGIN {OFS=","}
{ x="hello"; y="world"
  print x, y
}
```

both of these last two scripts yields

```
hello, world
```

Note that the output field separator is not used when **\$0** is printed.

## OUTPUT: TO DIFFERENT FILES

The ICON/UXV shell allows you to redirect standard output to a file. The *awk* program also lets you direct output to many different files from within your *awk* program. For example, with our input file "countries", we want to print all the data from countries of Asia in a file called "ASIA", all the data from countries in Africa in a file called "AFRICA", and so forth. This is done with the following *awk* program:

```
{ if ($4 == "Asia") print > "ASIA"
  if ($4 == "Europe") print > "EUROPE"
  if ($4 == "North") print > "NORTH_AMERICA"
  if ($4 == "South") print > "SOUTH_AMERICA"
  if ($4 == "Australia") print > "AUSTRALIA"
  if ($4 == "Africa") print > "AFRICA"
}
```

The flow of control statements (for example, "if") are discussed later.

## awk

In general, you may direct output into a file after a print or a printf statement by using a statement of the form

```
print > "FILE"
```

where FILE is the name of the file receiving the data, and the print statement may have any legal arguments to it.

Notice that the file names are quoted. Without quotes, the file names are treated as uninitialized variables and all output then goes to the same file.

If > is replaced by >>, output is appended to the file rather than overwriting it.

Users should also note that there is an upper limit to the number of files that are written in this way. At present it is ten.

## OUTPUT: TO PIPES

It is also possible to direct printing into a pipe instead of a file. For example,

```
{
  if ($2 == "XX") print | "mail mary"
}
```

where "mary" is someone's login name, any record is sent (with the second field equal to "XX") to the user, mary, as mail. Awk waits until the entire program is run before it executes the command that was piped to, in this case the "mail" command.

For example:

```
{
  print $1 | "sort"
}
```

takes the first field of each input record, sorts these fields, and then prints them. The command in parentheses is any ICON/UXV operating system command.

An exercise:

Write an *awk* script that uses the input file to

- List countries that were used previously
- Print the name of the countries
- Print the population of each country
- Sort the data so that countries with the largest population appear first
- Mail the resulting list to yourself.

Another example of using a pipe for output is the following idiom which guarantees that its output always goes to your terminal:

```
print ... | "cat -u > /dev/tty"
```

Only one output statement to a pipe is permitted in an *awk* program. In all output statements involving redirection of output, the files or pipes are identified by their names but they are created and opened only once in the entire run.

## COMMENTS

Comments are placed in *awk* programs; they begin with the character `#` and end with the end of the line as in

```
print x, Y      # this is a comment
```

## PATTERNS

A pattern in front of an action acts as a selector that determines if the action is to be executed. A variety of expressions are used as patterns:

- Regular expressions
- Arithmetic relational expressions
- String valued expressions
- Combinations of these.

awk

## BEGIN and END

The special pattern, BEGIN, matches the beginning of the input before the first record is read. The pattern, END, matches the end of the input after the last line is processed. BEGIN and END thus provide a way to gain control before and after processing for initialization and wrapping up.

An example:

As you have seen, you can use BEGIN to put column headings on the output

```
BEGIN {print "Country", "Area", "Population", "Continent"}
      {print}
```

which produces

```
Country Area Population Continent
Russia  8650   262   Asia
Canada  3852    24  North America
China   3692   866   Asia
USA     3615   219  North America
Brazil  3286   116  South America
Australia 2968   14   Australia
India   1269   637   Asia
Argentina 1072  26South America
Sudan   968    19   Africa
Algeria 920    18   Africa
```

Formatting is not very good here; printf would do a better job and is usually mandatory if you really care about appearance.

Recall also, that the BEGIN section is a good place to change special variables such as FS or RS.

Example:

```
BEGIN { FS= " "
      print "Countries", "Area", "Population", "Continent"
      }
      {print}
END   {print "The number of records is", NR}
```

In this program, **FS** is set to a tab in the **BEGIN** section and as a result all records (in the file countries) have exactly four fields.

Note that if **BEGIN** is present it is the first pattern; **END** is the last if it is used.

### Relational Expressions

An *awk* pattern is any expression involving comparisons between strings of characters or numbers. For example, if you want to print only countries with more than 100 million population, use

```
$3 >100
```

This tiny *awk* program is a pattern without an action so it prints each line whose third field is greater than 100 as follows:

```
Russia  8650  262  Asia
China   3692  866  Asia
USA     3615  219  North America
Brazil  3286  116  South America
India   1269  637  Asia
```

To print the names of the countries that are in Asia, type

```
$4 == "Asia" {print $1}
```

which produces

```
Russia
China
India
```

The conditions tested are **<**, **<=**, **==**, **!=**, **>=**, and **>**. In such relational tests if both operands are numeric, a numerical comparison is made. Otherwise, the operands are compared as strings. Thus,

**awk**

```
$1 >= "S"
```

selects lines that begin with S, T, U, and so forth which in this case is

```
USA 3615 219 North America
Sudan 968 19 Africa
```

In the absence of other information, fields are treated as strings, so the program

```
$1 == $4
```

compares the first and fourth fields as strings of characters and prints the single line

```
Australia 2968 14 Australia
```

If fields appear as numbers, the comparisons are done numerically.

### Regular Expressions

Awk provides more powerful capabilities for searching for strings of characters than were illustrated in the previous section. These are regular expressions. The simplest regular expression is a literal string of characters enclosed in slashes.

```
/Asia/
```

This is a complete *awk* program that prints all lines which contain any occurrence of the name "Asia". If a line contains "Asia" as part of a larger word like "Asiatic", it is also printed (but there are no such words in the countries file.)

Awk regular expressions include

- Regular expression forms found in the text editor
- `ed` and the pattern finder

- *grep* in which certain characters have special meanings.

For example, we could print all lines that begin with **A** with

```
/^A/
```

or all lines that begin with **A**, **B**, or **C** with

```
/^[ABC]/
```

or all lines that end with "ia" with

```
/ia$/
```

In general, the circumflex (^) indicates the beginning of a line. The dollar sign (\$) indicates the end of the line and characters enclosed in brackets {}, match any one of the characters enclosed. In addition, *awk* allows parentheses for grouping, the pipe (|) for alternatives, + for "one or more" occurrences, and ? for "zero or one" occurrences. For example,

```
/x|y/ {print}
```

prints all records that contain either an "x" or a "y".

```
/ax+b/ {print}
```

prints all records that contain an "a" followed by one or more "x's" followed by a "b". For example, axb, Pxxxxxxb, QaxbR.

```
/ax?b/ {print}
```

prints all records that contain an "a" followed by zero or one "x" followed by a "b". For example: ab, axb, yaxbPPP, CabD.

## awk

The two characters "." and "\*" have the same meaning as they have in *ed*: namely, "." can stand for any character and "\*" means zero or more occurrences of the character preceding it. For example,

```
/a.b/
```

matches any record that contains an "a" followed by any character followed by a "b". That is, the record must contain an "a" and a "b" separated by exactly one character. For example, `/a.b/` matches `axb`, `aPb` and `xxxxaXbxx`, but NOT `ab`, `axxb`.

```
/ab*c/
```

matches a record that contains an "a" followed by zero or more "b"s followed by a "c". For example, it matches

```
ac
abc
pqrabbbbbbbbbc901
```

Just as in *ed*, it is possible to turn off the special meaning of these metacharacters such as "^" and "\*" by preceding these characters with a backslash. An example of this is the pattern

```
//.*//
```

which matches any string of characters enclosed in slashes.

One can also specify that any field or variable matches a regular expression (or does not match it) by using the operators `~` or `!`. For example, with the input file `countries` as before, the program

```
$1 ~ /ia$/ {print $1}
```

prints all countries whose name ends in "ia":

Russia  
 Australia  
 India  
 Algeria

that is indeed different from *lines* which end in "ia".

### Combinations of Patterns

A pattern is made up of similar patterns combined with the operators `||` (OR), `&&` (AND), `!` (NOT), and parentheses. For example,

```
$2 >= 3000 && $3 >=100
```

selects lines where both area AND population are large. For example,

Russia	8650	262	Asia
China	3692	866	Asia
USA	3615	219	North America
Brazil	3286	116	South America

while

```
$4 == "Asia" || $4 == "Africa"
```

selects lines with Asia or Africa as the fourth field. An alternate way to write this last expression is with a regular expression:

```
$1 ~ /^(Asia|Africa)$/
```

`&&` and `||` guarantee that their operands are evaluated from left to right; evaluation stops as soon as truth or falsehood is determined.

**awk**

### Pattern Ranges

The "pattern" that selects an action may also consist of two patterns separated by a comma as in

```
pattern1, pattern2    { ... }
```

In this case, the action is performed for each line between an occurrence of pattern1 and the next occurrence of pattern2 (inclusive). As an example with no action

```
/Canada/,/Brazil/
```

prints all lines between the one containing "Canada" and the line containing "Brazil". For example,

Canada	3852	24	North America
China	3692	866	Asia
USA	3615	219	North America
Brazil	3286	116	South America

while

```
NR == 2, NR == 5 { ... }
```

does the action for lines 2 through 5 of the input. Different types of patterns are mixed as in

```
/Canada/, $4 == "Africa"
```

and prints all lines from the first line containing "Canada" up to and including the next record whose fourth field is "Africa".

Users should note that patterns in this form occur OUTSIDE of the action parts of the *awk* programs (outside of the braces that define *awk* actions). If you need to check patterns inside an *awk* action (inside the braces), use a flow of control statement such as an "if" statement or

a "while" statement. Flow of control statements are discussed in the part "BUILT-IN FUNCTIONS".

## ACTIONS

An *awk* action is a sequence of action statements separated by newlines or semicolons. These action statements do a variety of bookkeeping and string manipulating tasks.

### Variables, Expressions, and Assignments

The *awk* provides the ability to do arithmetic and to store the results in variables for later use in the program. However, variables can also store strings of characters. You cannot do arithmetic on character strings, but you can stick them together and pull them apart as shown. As an example, consider printing the population density for each country in the file *countries*.

```
{print $1, (1000000 * $3)/($2 * 1000) }
```

(Recall that in this file the population is in millions and the area in thousands.) The result is population density in people per square mile.

```
Russia 30.289
Canada 6.23053
China 234.561
USA 60.5809
Brazil 35.3013
Australia 4.71698
India 501.97
Argentina 24.2537
Sudan 19.6281
Algeria 19.5652
```

The formatting is bad; so using `printf` instead gives the program

```
{printf "%10s %6.1f0, $1, (1000000 * $3)/($2 * 1000) }
```

and the output

## awk

Russia	30.3
Canada	6.2
China	234.6
USA	60.6
Brazil	35.3
Australia	4.7
India	502.0
Argentina	24.3
Sudan	19.6
Algeria	19.6

Arithmetic is done internally in floating point. The arithmetic operators are +, -, \*, / and % (mod or remainder).

To compute the total population and number of countries from Asia, we could write

```
/Asia/ { pop = pop + $3; n = n + 1 }  
END    {print "total population of", n, "Asian countries is", pop }
```

which produces total population of three Asian countries is 1765.

Actually, no experienced programmer would write

```
{pop = pop + $3; n = n + 1 }
```

since both assignments are written more clearly and concisely. The better way is

```
{pop += $3; ++n }
```

Indeed, these operators, ++, --, +=, -=, /=, \*=, and %= are available in *awk* as they are in C. Operator  $x += y$  has the same effect as  $x = x + y$  but += is shorter and runs faster. The same is true of the ++ operator; it adds one to the value of a variable. The increment operators ++ and -- (as in C) is used as prefix or as postfix operators. These operators are also used in expressions.

### Initialization of Variables

In the previous example, we did not initialize `pop` nor `n`; yet, everything worked properly. This is because (by default) variables are initialized to the null string which has a numerical value of 0. This eliminates the need for most initialization of variables in `BEGIN` sections. We can use default initialization to advantage in this program which finds the country with the largest population.

```
maxpop < $3 {
    maxpop = $3
    country = $1
}
END {print country, maxpop}
```

which produces

```
China 866
```

### Field Variables

Fields in *awk* share essentially all of the properties of variables. They are used in arithmetic and string operations and may be assigned to and initialized to the null string. Thus, divide the second field by 1000 to convert the area to millions of square miles by

```
{ $2 /= 1000; print }
```

or process two fields into a third with

```
BEGIN { FS = " " }
{ $4 = 1000 * $3 / $2; print }
```

or assign strings to a field as in

```
/USA/ { $1 = "United States"; print }
```

**awk**

which replaces USA by United States and prints the effected line

United States 3615 219 North America

Fields are accessed by expressions; thus,  $\$NF$  is the last field and  $\$(NF-1)$  is the second to the last. Note that the parentheses are needed since  $\$NF-1$  is 1 less than the values in the last field.

### String Concatenation

Strings are concatenated by writing them one after the other as in the following example:

```
{ x = "hello"
  x = x ", world"
  print x
}
```

prints the usual

hello, world

With input from the file "countries", the following program:

```
/A/    { s = s " " $1 }
END    { print s }
```

prints

Australia Argentina Algeria

Variables, string expressions, and numeric expressions may appear in concatenations; the numeric expressions are treated as strings in this case.

### Special Variables

Some variables in *awk* have special meanings. These are detailed here and the complete list given.

NR	Number of the current record.
NF	Number of fields in the current record.
FS	Input field separator, by default it is set to a blank or tab.
RS	Input record separator, by default it is set to the newline character.
\$i	The <i>i</i> th input field of the current record.
\$0	The entire current input record.
OFS	Output field separator, by default it is set to a blank.
ORS	Output record separator, by default it is set to the newline character.
OFMT	The format for printing numbers, with the print statement, by default is "% <i>g</i> ".
FILENAME	The name of the input file currently being read. This is useful because <i>awk</i> commands are typically of the form

*awk* -f program file1 file2 file3 ...

### Type

Variables (and fields) take on numeric or string values according to context. For example, in

```
pop += $3
```

*pop* is presumably a number, while in

```
country = $1
```

*country* is a string. In

**awk**

```
maxpop < $3
```

the type of maxpop depends on the data found in \$3. It is determined when the program is run.

In general, each variable and field is potentially a string or a number or both at any time. When a variable is set by the assignment

```
v = expr
```

its type is set to that of expr. (Assignment also includes +=, ++, -=, and so forth.) An arithmetic expression is of the type, "number"; a concatenation of strings is of type "string". If the assignment is a simple copy as in

```
v1 = v2
```

then the type of v1 becomes that of v2.

In comparisons, if both operands are numeric, the comparison is made numerically. Otherwise, operands are coerced to strings if necessary and the comparison is made on strings.

The type of any expression is coerced to numeric by subterfuges such as

```
expr + 0
```

and to string by

```
expr ""
```

This last expression is string concatenated with the null string.

### Arrays

As well as ordinary variables, *awk* provides 1-dimensional arrays. Array elements are not declared; they spring into existence by being mentioned. Subscripts may have *any* non-null value including non-numeric strings.

As an example of a conventional numeric subscript, the statement

```
x[NR] = $0
```

assigns the current input line to the NRth element of the array x. In fact, it is possible in principle (though perhaps slow) to process the entire input in a random order with the following *awk* program:

```
{ x[NR] = $0 }
END { ... program ... }
```

The first line of this program records each input line into the array x. In particular, the following program

```
{ x[NR] = $1 }
```

(when run on the file countries) produces an array of elements with

```
x[1] = "Russia"
x[2] = "Canada"
x[3] = "China"
... and so forth.
```

Arrays are also indexed by non-numeric values that give *awk* a capability rather like the associative memory of Snobol tables. For example, we can write

```
/Asia/ {pop["Asia"] += $3 }
/Africa/ {pop["Africa"] += $3 }
END print "Asia=" pop["Asia"], "Africa="pop["Africa"] }
```

**awk**

which produces

```
Asia=1765 Africa=37
```

Notice the concatenation. Also, any expression can be used as a subscript in an array reference. Thus,

```
area[$1] = $2
```

uses the first field of a line (as a string) to index the array `area`.

## BUILT IN FUNCTIONS

The function

`length`

is provided by *awk* to compute the length of a string of characters. The following program prints each record preceded by its length:

```
{print length, $0 }
```

In this case (the variable) `length` means `length($0)`, the length of the present record. In general, `length(x)` will return the length of `x` as a string.

Example:

With input from the file `countries`, the following *awk* program will print the longest country name:

```
length($1) > max {max = length($1); name = $1 }  
END           {print name}
```

The function

`split`

`split(s, array)` assigns the fields of the string "s" to successive elements of the array, "array".

For example;

```
split("Now is the time", w)
```

assigns the value "Now" to `w[1]`, "is" to `w[2]`, "the" to `w[3]` and "time" to `w[4]`. All other elements of the array `w[]`, if any, are set to the null string. It is possible to have a character other than a blank as the separator for the elements of `w`. For this, use `split` with three elements.

```
n = split(s, array, sep)
```

This splits the string `s` into `array[1]`, ..., `array[n]`. The number of elements found is returned as the value of `split`. If the `sep` argument is present, its first character is used as the field separator; otherwise, FS is used. This is useful if in the middle of an *awk* script, it is necessary to change the record separator for one record.

Also provided by the *awk* are the

#### Math Functions

```
sqrt,  
log,  
exp  
int,
```

They provide the square root function, the base e logarithm function, exponential and integral part functions. This last function returns the greatest integer less than or equal to its argument. These functions are the same as those of the C library (*int* corresponds to the libc *floor* function) and so they have the same return on error as those in libc. (See ICON/UXV Users Reference Manual.)

The subtract function

```
substr
```

## awk

substr(s,m,n) produces the substring of s that begins at position m and is at most n characters long. If the third argument (n in this case) is omitted, the substring goes to the end of s. For example, we could abbreviate the country names in the file countries by

```
{ $1 = substr($1, 1, 3); print }
```

which produces

Rus	8650	262	Asia
Can	3852	24	North America
Chi	3692	866	Asia
USA	3615	219	North America
Bra	3286	116	South America
Aus	2968	14	Australia
Ind	1269	637	Asia
Arg	1072	26	South America
Sud	968	19	Africa
Alg	920	18	Africa

If s is a number, substr uses its printed image; substr(123456789,3,4)=3456.

The function

index:

index (s1,s2) returns the leftmost position where the string s2 occurs in s1 or zero if s2 does not occur in s1.

The function

sprintf

formats expressions as the printf statement does but will assign the resulting expression to a variable instead of sending the results to stdout. For example,

```
x = sprintf( "%10s %6d ", $1, $2 )
```

sets *x* to the string produced by formatting the values of *\$1* and *\$2*. The *x* is then used in subsequent computations.

The function

`getline`

immediately reads the next input record. Fields *NR* and *\$0* are all set but control is left at exactly the same spot in the *awk* program. `getline` returns 0 for the end of file and a 1 for a normal record.

## FLOW OF CONTROL

The *awk* provides the basic flow of control statements

- `if-else`
- `while/fR`
- `for`

with statement grouping as in C language.

The `if` statement is used as follows:

```
if ( condition ) statement1 else statement2
```

The condition is evaluated; and if it is true, *statement1* is executed; otherwise, *statement2* is executed. The `else` part is optional. Several statements enclosed in braces (`{,}`) are treated as a single statement. Rewriting the maximum population computation from the pattern section with an `if` statement results in

```
{   if (maxpop < $3) {
      maxpop= $3
      country= $1
    }   }
END   { print country, maxpop }
```

There is also a `while` statement in *awk*.

## awk

```
while ( condition ) statement
```

The condition is evaluated; if it is true, the statement is executed. The condition is evaluated again, and if true, the statement is executed. The cycle repeats as long as the condition is true. For example, the following prints all input fields one per line:

```
{ i = 1
  while (i <= NF) {
    print $i
    ++i
  }
}
```

Another example is the Euclidean algorithm for finding the greatest common divisor of \$1 and \$2:

```
{printf "the greatest common divisor of " $1 "and ", $2, "is"
while ($1 != $2) {
    if ($1 > $2) $1 = $1 - $2
    else $2 = $2 - $1
}
printf $1 "0"
}
```

The **for** statement is like that of C.

```
for ( expression1 ; condition ; expression2 ) statement
```

has the same effect as

```
expression1
while (condition) {
    statement
    expression2
}
```

so

```
{   for (i=1 ; i <= NF; i++)
      print $i
}
```

is another *awk* program that prints all input fields one per line.

This is an alternate form of the **or** statement that is suited for accessing the elements of an associative array as is in *awk*.

**for** (i in array) statement

executes statement with the variable *i* set in turn to each subscript of array. The subscripts are each accessed once but in random order. Chaos will ensue if the variable *i* is altered or if any new elements are created within the loop. For example, you could use the "for" statement to print the record number followed by the record of all input records after the main program is executed.

```
      { x[NR] = $0 }
END    { for(i in x) { print i, x[i] }
```

A more practical example is the following use of strings to index arrays to add the populations of countries by continents:

```
BEGIN {FS=""}
      {population[$4] += $3}
END    {for(i in population)
        print i, population[i]
      }
```

In this program, the body of the **for** loop is executed for *i* equal to the string "Asia", then for *i* equal to the string "North America", and so forth until all the possible values of *i* are exhausted; that is, until all the strings of names of countries are used. Note, however, the order the loops are executed is not specified. If the loop associated with "Canada" is executed before the loop associated with the string "Russia", such a program produces

## awk

South America 26  
Africa 16  
Asia 637  
Australia 14  
North America 219

Note that the expression in the condition part of an **if**, **while**, or, **for** statement can include relational operators like **<**, **<=**, **>**, **>=**, **==**, and **!=**; it can include regular expressions that are used with the "matching" operators **~** and **!~**; it can include the logical operators **||**, **&&**, and **!**; and it also include parentheses for grouping.

The **break** statement (when it occurs within a **while** or **for** loop) causes an immediate exit from the **while** or **for** loop.

The **continue** statement (when it occurs within a **while** or **for** loop) causes the next iteration of the loop to begin.

The **next** statement in an *awk* program causes *awk* to skip immediately to the next record and begin scanning patterns from the top of the program. (Note the difference between *getline* and *next*. *Getline* does not skip to the top of the *awk* program.)

If an **exit** statement occurs in the **BEGIN** section of an *awk* program, the program stops executing and the **END** section is not executed (if there is one).

An **exit** that occurs in the main body of the *awk* program causes execution of the main body of the *awk* program to stop. No more records are read, and the **END** section is executed.

An **exit** in the **END** section causes execution to terminate at that point.

## REPORT GENERATION

The flow of control statements in the last section are especially useful when *awk* is used as a report generator. *Awk* is useful for tabulating, summarizing, and formatting information. We have seen an example of *awk* tabulating in the last section with the tabulation of populations. Here is another example of this. Suppose you have a file "prog.usage" that contains lines of three fields; name, program, and usage:

```
Smith draw 3
Brown eqn 1
Jones nroff 4
Smith nroff 1
Jones spell 5
Brown spell 9
Smith draw 6
```

The first line indicates that Smith used the draw program three times. If you want to create a program that has the total usage of each program along with the names in alphabetical order and the total usage, use the following program, called *list.a*:

```
    { use[$1 "" $2] += $3 }
END  { for (np in use)
      print np " " " use[np] | "sort +0 +2nr" }
```

This program produces the following output when used on the input file, *prog.usage*.

```
Brown eqn 1
Brown spell 9
Jones nroff 4
Jones spell 5
Smith draw 9
Smith nroff 1
```

If you would like to format the previous output so that each name is printed only once, pipe the output of the previous *awk* program into the following program, called "format.a":

```
{   if ($1 != prev) {
      print $1 ":"
      rev = $1
    }
    print " " $2 " " $3
}
```

The variable *prev* prints the unique values of the first field. The command

## **awk**

```
awk -f list.a prog.usage | awk -f format.a
```

gives the output

```
Brown:
    eqn  1
    spell 9
Jones:
    nroff 4
    spell 5
Smith:
    draw  9
    nroff 1
```

It is often useful to combine different *awk* scripts and other shell commands such as *sort* as was done in the last script.

## **COOPERATION WITH THE SHELL**

Normally, an *awk* program is either contained in a file or enclosed within single quotes as in

```
awk '{print $1}' ...
```

*Awk* uses many of the same characters that the shell does, such as \$ and the double quote. Surrounding the program by '...' ensures that the shell passes the *awk* program to *awk* intact.

Consider writing an *awk* program to print the *n*th field, where *n* is a parameter determined when the program is run. That is, we want a program called *field* such that

```
field n
```

runs the *awk* program

```
awk '{print $n}'
```

How does the value of `n` get into the `awk` program?

There are several ways to do this. One is to define field as follows:

```
awk '{print $' $1}'
```

Spaces are critical here: as written there is only one argument, even though there are two sets of quotes. The `$1` is outside the quotes, visible to the shell, and therefore substituted properly when field is invoked.

Another way to do this job relies on the fact that the shell substitutes for `$` parameters within double quotes.

```
awk "{print $1}"
```

Here the trick is to protect the first `$` with a `\\`; the `$1` is again replaced by the number when field is invoked.

This kind of trickery is extended in remarkable ways, but it is hard to understand quickly.

### MISCELLANEOUS HINTS

You can simulate the effect of multidimensional arrays by creating your own subscripts. For example,

```
for ( i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
  for ( j = 1; j <= 10; j++)
    mult[i ", " j] = ...
```

creates an array whose subscripts have the form `i,j`; that is, `1,1`; `1,2`; and so forth and thus simulate a 2-dimensional array.



## Chapter 18

### THE LINK EDITOR

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	18-1
USING THE LINK EDITOR.....	18-3
LINK EDITOR COMMAND LANGUAGE.....	18-6
NOTES AND SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS.....	18-19
ERROR MESSAGES .....	18-26
SYNTAX DIAGRAM FOR INPUT DIRECTIVES .....	18-34



## Chapter 18

# THE LINK EDITOR

### GENERAL

The link editor [*ld(1)\**] is an ICON/UXV support tool used on Icon computer systems. The *ld* creates executable object files by combining object files, performing relocation, and resolving external references. The *ld* also processes symbolic debugging information. The inputs to *ld* are relocatable object files produced either by the compiler [*cc(1)*], the assembler [*as(1)*], or by a previous *ld* run. The *ld* combines these object files to form either a relocatable or an absolute (i.e., executable) object file.

The *ld* also supports a command language that allows users to control the *ld* process with great flexibility and precision. The ICON/UXV operating system *ld* shares most of its source with other *lds* in-use on other processors and operating systems. Therefore, the ICON/UXV operating system *ld* provides many powerful features that may or may not be useful on an ICON/UXV system.

Although the link edit process is controlled in detail through use of the *ld* command language described later, most users do *not* require this degree of flexibility, and the manual page obtained by typing

```
man ld
```

is sufficient instruction in the use of *ld*.

The command language (described later) supports the ability to

- Specify the memory configuration of the machine
- Combine object file sections in particular fashions
- Cause the files to be bound to specific addresses or within specific portions of memory
- Define or redefine global symbols at link edit time.

There are several concepts and definitions with which you should familiarize yourself before proceeding further.

---

\* Part 1 of the ICON/UXV User Manual

## LINK EDITOR

### Memory Configuration

The virtual memory of the target machine is, for purposes of allocation, partitioned into *configured* and *unconfigured* memory. The default condition is to treat all memory as configured. It is common with microprocessor applications, however, to have different types of memory at different addresses. For example, an application might have 3K of PROM (Programmable Read-Only Memory) beginning at address 0, and 8K of RAM (Read-Only Memory) starting at 20K. Addresses in the range 3K to 20K-1 are then not configured. Unconfigured memory is treated as "reserved" or "unusable" by the ld. *Nothing can ever be linked into unconfigured memory.* Thus, specifying a certain memory range to be unconfigured is one way of marking the addresses (in that range) "illegal" or "nonexistent" with respect to the linking process. Memory configurations other than the default must be explicitly specified by you (the user).

Unless otherwise specified, all discussion in this document of memory, addresses, etc. are with respect to the *configured* sections of the address space.

### Section

A section of an object file is the smallest unit of relocation and must be a contiguous block of memory. A section is identified by a starting address and a size. Information describing all the sections in a file is stored in "section headers" at the start of the file. Sections from input files are combined to form output sections that contain executable text, data, or a mixture of both. Although there may be "holes" or gaps between input sections and between output sections, storage is allocated contiguously *within* each output section and may not overlap a hole in memory.

### Addresses

The *physical address* of a section or symbol is the relative offset from address zero of the address space. The *physical address* of an object is not necessarily the location at which it is placed when the process is executed. For example, on a system with paging, the address is with respect to address zero of the virtual space, and the system performs another address translation.

### Binding

It is often necessary to have a section begin at a specific, predefined address in the address space. The process of specifying this starting address is called "binding", and the section in question is said to be "bound to" or "bound at" the required address. While binding is most commonly relevant to output sections, it is also possible to bind global symbols with an assignment statement in the ld command language.

### Object File

Object files are produced both by the assembler (typically as a result of calling the compiler) and by the *ld*. The *ld* accepts relocatable object files as input and produces an output object file that may or may not be relocatable. Under certain special circumstances, the input object files given to the *ld* can also be absolute files.

Files produced from the compiler/assembler always contain three sections, called *.text*, *.data*, and *.bss*. The *.text* section contains the instruction text (for example, executable instructions), *.data* contains initialized data variables, and *.bss* contains uninitialized data variables. For example, if a C program contained the global (i.e., not inside a function) declarations

```
int i = 100;
char abc[200];
```

and the assignment

```
abc[i] = 0;
```

then compiled code from the C assignment is stored in *.text*. The variable *i* is located in *.data*, and *abc* is located in *.bss*. There is an exception to the rule however; both initialized and uninitialized statics are allocated into the *.data* section. The value of an uninitialized static in a *.data* section is zero.

## USING THE LINK EDITOR

The *ld* is called by the command

```
ld [options] filename1 filename2 . . .
```

Files passed to the *ld* must be object files, archive libraries containing object files, or text source files containing *ld* directives. The *ld* uses the “magic number” (in the first two bytes of the file) to determine which type of file is encountered. If the *ld* does not recognize the magic number, it assumes the file is a text file containing *ld* directives and attempts to parse it.

Input object files and archive libraries of object files are linked together to form an output object file. If there are no unresolved references, this file is executable *on the target machine*. An input file containing directives is referred to as an *ifile* in this document. Object files have the form “name.o” throughout the examples in this chapter. The names of actual input object files need not follow this convention.

If you merely want to link the object files *file1.o* and *file2.o*, the following command is sufficient:

```
ld file1.o file2.o
```

## LINK EDITOR

No directives to the *ld* are needed. If no errors are encountered during the link edit, the output is left on the default file *a.out*. The sections of the input files are combined in order. That is, if *file1.o* and *file2.o* each contain the standard sections *.text*, *.data*, and *.bss*, the output object file also contains these three sections. The output *.text* section is a concatenation of *.text* from *file1.o* and *.text* from *file2.o*. The *.data* and *.bss* sections are formed similarly. The output *.text* section is then bound at address *0X000000*. The output *.data* and *.bss* sections are link edited together into contiguous addresses (the particular address depending on the particular processor).

Instead of entering the names of files to be link edited (as well as *ld* options on the *ld* command line), this information can be placed into an ifile, and just the ifile passed to *ld*. For example, if you are going to frequently link the object files *file1.o*, *file2.o*, and *file3.o* with the same options *f1* and *f2*, then enter the command

```
ld -f1 -f2 file1.o file2.o file3.o
```

each time it is necessary to invoke *ld*. Alternatively, an ifile containing the statements

```
-f1  
-f2  
file1.o  
file2.o  
file3.o
```

could be created, and then the following *ICON/UXV* command would serve:

```
ld ifilename
```

Note that it is perfectly permissible to specify some of the object files to be link edited in the ifile and others on the command line—as well as some *options* in the ifile and others on the command line. Input object files are link edited in the order they are encountered, whether this occurs on the command line or in an ifile. As an example, if a command line were

```
ld file1.o ifile file2.o
```

and the ifile contained

```
file3.o  
file4.o
```

then the order of link editing would be: *file1.o*, *file3.o*, *file4.o*, and *file2.o*. Note from this example that an ifile is read *and processed* immediately upon being encountered in the command line.

Options may be interspersed with file names both on the command line and in an ifile. The ordering of options is not significant, except for the “l” and “L” options for specifying libraries. The “l” option is a shorthand notation for specifying an archive library, and an archive library is just a collection of object files. Thus, as is the case with any object file, libraries are searched as they are encountered. The “L” specifies an alternative directory for searching for libraries. Therefore, to be effective, a “-L” option must appear before any “-l” options.

All options for *ld* must be preceded by a hyphen (-) whether in the ifile or on the *ld* command line. Options that have an argument (except for the “-l” and “-L” options) are separated from the argument by white space (blanks or tabs). The following options (in alphabetical order) are supported, though not all options are available on each processor.

- a        Produces an absolute, executable file. Messages are issued when undefined symbols are found, and several special symbols (such as “\_end”) are defined. Unless overridden by the “-r” option, relocation information is stripped from the output file. If neither “-r” nor “-a” is specified, “-a” is assumed.
- e ss     Defines the primary entry point of the output file to be the symbol given by the argument “ss”. See “Changing the Entry Point” in “NOTES AND SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS” for a discussion of how the option is used.
- f bb     Sets the default fill value. This value is used to fill “holes” formed within output sections. Also, it is used to initialize input *.bss* sections when they are combined with other non-*.bss* input sections. The argument “bb” is a 2-byte constant. If the “-f” option is not used, the default fill value is zero.
- lx       Specifies an ICON/UXV archive library file as *ld* input. The argument is a character string (less than 10 characters) immediately following the “-l” without any intervening white space. As an example, *-lc* refers to *libc.a*, *-lC* to *libC.a*, etc. The given archive library must contain valid object files as its members.
- m        Produces a map or listing of the input/output sections (including “holes”) on the standard output.
- o name   Names the output object file. The argument “name” is the name of the ICON/UXV file to be used as the output file. The default output object file name is “a.out”. The “name” can be a full or partial ICON/UXV pathname.
- r        Retains relocation entries in the output object file. Relocation entries must be saved if the output file is to be used as an input file in a subsequent *ld* call. If the *-r* option is used, unresolved references do not prevent the creation of an output object file.
- s        Strips line number entries and symbol table information from the output object file. Relocation entries (“-r” option) are meaningless without the symbol table, hence use of “-s” precludes the use of “-r”. All symbols are stripped, including global and undefined symbols.

## LINK EDITOR

- t Disables checking that all instances of a multiply defined symbol are the same size.
- u sym Introduces an unresolved external symbol into the output file's symbol table. The argument "sym" is the name of the symbol. This is useful for linking entirely from a library, since initially the symbol table is empty and an unresolved reference is needed to force the linking of an initial routine from the library.
- x Does not preserve any local (nonglobal) symbols in the output symbol table; enter external and static symbols only. This option saves some space in the output file.
- H Changes the type of all global symbols to "static". This option can be used to "hide" symbols since static symbols have different accessing rules from global symbols.
- Ldir Changes the algorithm for searching for libraries to look in *dir* before looking in the default location. This option is for *ld* libraries as the -I option is for compiler #include files. The "-L" option is useful for finding libraries that are not in the standard library directory. To be useful, this option must appear before the "-l" option.
- M Prints a warning message for all external variables that are multiply defined.
- N Places the data section immediately following the text section in memory and stores the magic number 0407 in the ICON/UXV header. This prevents the text from being shared (the default).
- S Requests a "silent" *ld* run. All error messages resulting from errors that do not immediately stop the *ld* run are suppressed.
- V Prints on the standard error output a "version id" identifying the *ld* being run.
- VS num Takes *num* as a decimal version number identifying the *a.out* file that is produced. The version stamp is stored in the ICON/UXV header.

## LINK EDITOR COMMAND LANGUAGE

### Expressions

Expressions may contain global symbols, constants, and most of the basic C language operators. (See Figure 7-2, "SYNTAX DIAGRAM FOR INPUT DIRECTIVES".) Constants are as in C with a number recognized as decimal unless preceded with "0" for octal or "0x" for hexadecimal. All numbers are treated as long ints. Symbol names may contain uppercase or lowercase letters, digits, and the underscore ('\_'). Symbols within an expression have the value of the *address* of the symbol only. The *ld* does not do symbol table lookup to find the contents of a symbol, the dimensionality of an array, structure elements declared in a C program, etc.

The *ld* uses a lex-generated input scanner to identify symbols, numbers, operators, etc. The current scanner design makes the following names *reserved* and unavailable as symbol names or section names:

ALIGN	DSECT	MEMORY	PHY	SECTIONS
ASSIGN	GROUP	NOLOAD	RANGE	SPARE
BLOCK	LENGTH	ORIGIN	REGION	TV

align	group	length	origin	spare
assign	l	o	phy	
block	len	org	range	

The operators that are supported, in order of precedence from high to low, are shown in Figure 7-1:

symbol
!~-(UNARY Minus)
* / %
+ -(BINARY Minus)
>> <<
== != > < <= >=
&
!
&&
= += -= *= /=

Figure 18-1. Symbols and Functions of Operators

The above operators have the same meaning as in the C language. Operators on the same line have the same precedence.

## LINK EDITOR

### Assignment Statements

External symbols may be defined and assigned addresses via the assignment statement. The syntax of the assignment statement is

symbol = expression;

or

symbol op= expression;

where *op* is one of the operators +, -, \*, or /.

*Assignment statements must be terminated by a semicolon.*

All assignment statements (with the exception of the one case described in the following paragraph) are evaluated after allocation has been performed. This occurs after all input-file-defined symbols are appropriately relocated but before the actual relocation of the text and data itself. Therefore, if an assignment statement expression contains any symbol name, the address used for that symbol in the evaluation of the expression reflects the symbol address *in the output object file*. References within text and data (to symbols given a value through an assignment statement) access this latest assigned value. Assignment statements are processed in the same order in which they are input to *ld*.

Assignment statements are normally placed outside the scope of section-definition directive (see "Section Definition Directive" under "LINK EDITOR COMMAND LANGUAGE"). However, there exists a special symbol, called ".", that can occur only *within* a section-definition directive. This symbol refers to the *current R address of the ld's location counter*. Thus, *assignment expressions involving "." are evaluated during the allocation phase of ld*. Assigning a value to the "." symbol within a section-definition directive increments/resets *ld's* location counter and can create "holes" within the section, as described in "Section Definition Directives". Assigning the value of the "." symbol to a conventional symbol permits the final allocated address (of a particular point within the link edit run) to be saved.

*Align* is provided as a shorthand notation to allow alignment of a symbol to an *n*-byte boundary within an output section, where *n* is a power of 2. For example, the expression

align(*n*)

is equivalent to

$(. + n - 1) \&\sim(n - 1)$

Link editor expressions may have either an absolute or a relocatable value. When the *ld* creates a symbol through an assignment statement, the symbol's value takes on that type of

expression. That type depends on the following rules:

- An expression with a *single* relocatable symbol (and zero or more constants or absolute symbols) is relocatable. The value is in relation to the section of the referenced symbol.
- All other expressions have absolute values.

### Specifying a Memory Configuration

MEMORY directives are used to specify

- a. The total size of the virtual space of the target machine.
- b. The configured and unconfigured areas of the virtual space.

If no directives are supplied, the *ld* assumes that all memory is configured. The size of the default memory is dependent upon the target machine.

By means of MEMORY directives, an arbitrary name of up to eight characters is assigned to a virtual address range. Output sections can then be forced to be bound to virtual addresses within specifically *named* memory areas. Memory names may contain uppercase or lowercase letters, digits, and the special characters '\$', '!', or '\_'. Names of memory ranges are used by *ld* only and are not carried in the output file symbol table or headers.

When MEMORY directives are used, *all* virtual memory not described in a MEMORY directive is considered to be unconfigured. Unconfigured memory is not used in the *ld*'s allocation process, and hence nothing can be link edited, bound, or assigned to any address within unconfigured memory.

As an option on the MEMORY directive, *attributes* may be associated with a named memory area. This restricts the memory areas (with specific attributes) to which an output section can be bound. The attributes assigned to output sections in this manner are recorded in the appropriate section headers in the output file to allow for possible error checking in the future. For example, putting a text section into writable memory is one potential error condition. Currently, error checking of this type is not implemented.

The attributes currently accepted are

- a. R : readable memory.
- b. W : writable memory.
- c. X : executable, i.e., instructions may reside in this memory.
- d. I : initializable, i.e., stack areas are typically not initialized.

Other attributes may be added in the future if necessary. If no attributes are specified on a

## LINK EDITOR

MEMORY directive or if no MEMORY directives are supplied, memory areas assume the attributes of W, R, I, and X.

The syntax of the MEMORY directive is

```
MEMORY
{
    name1 (attr) :    origin = n1, length = n2
    name2 (attr) :    origin = n3, length = n4
    etc.
}
```

The keyword "origin" (or "org" or "o") must precede the origin of a memory range, and "length" (or "len" or "l") must precede the length as shown in the above prototype. The origin operand refers to the *virtual* address of the memory range. Origin and length are entered as long integer *constants* in either decimal, octal, or hexadecimal (standard C syntax). Origin and length specifications, as well as individual MEMORY directives, may be separated by white space or a comma.

By specifying MEMORY directives, the *ld* can be told that memory is configured in some manner other than the default. For example, if it is necessary to prevent anything from being linked to the first 0x10000 words of memory, a MEMORY directive can accomplish this.

```
MEMORY
{
    valid : org = 0x10000, len = 0xFE0000
}
```

### Section Definition Directives

The purpose of the SECTIONS directive is to describe how input sections are to be combined, to direct where to place output sections (both in relation to each other and to the entire virtual memory space), and to permit the renaming of output sections.

In the default case where no SECTIONS directives are given, all input sections of the same name appear in an output section of that name. For example, if a number of object files from the compiler are linked, each containing the three sections *.text*, *.data*, and *.bss*, the output object file also contains three sections, *.text*, *.data*, and *.bss*. If two object files are linked (one that contains sections *s1* and *s2* and the other containing sections *s3* and *s4*), the output object file contains the four sections *s1*, *s2*, *s3*, and *s4*. The *order* of these sections would depend on the order in which the link editor sees the input files.

The basic syntax of the SECTIONS directive is

```

SECTIONS
{
    secname1 :
    {
        file_specifications,
        assignment_statements*
    }
    secname2 :
    {
        file_specifications,
        assignment_statements*
    }
    etc.
}

```

The various types of section definition directives are discussed in the remainder of this section.

#### *File Specifications*

Within a section definition, the files and sections of files to be included in the output section are listed in the order in which they are to appear in the output section. Sections from an input file are specified by

```
filename ( secname )
```

or

```
filename ( secnam1 secnam2 . . . )
```

Sections of an input file are separated either by white space or commas as are the file specifications themselves.

If a file name appears with no sections listed, then *all* sections from the file are linked into the current output section. For example,

---

\* These may be intermixed.

## LINK EDITOR

```
SECTIONS
{
    outsec1:
    {
        file1.o (sec1)
        file2.o
        file3.o (sec1, sec2)
    }
}
```

The order in which the input sections appears in the output section "outsec1" is given by

- a. Section sec1 from file file1.o
- b. All sections from file2.o, in the order they appear in the file
- c. Section sec1 from file file3.o, and then section sec2 from file file3.o.

If there are any additional input files that contained input sections also named "outsec1", these sections are linked following the last section named in the definition of "outsec1". If there are any other input sections in file1.o or file3.o, they will be placed in output sections with the same names as the input sections unless they are included in other file specifications.

### *Load a Section at a Specified Address*

Bonding of an output section to a specific virtual address is accomplished by an *ld* option as shown on the following SECTIONS directive example:

```
SECTIONS
{
    outsec addr:
    {
        ...
    }
    etc.
}
```

The "addr" is the bonding address expressed as a C constant. If "outsec" does not fit at "addr" (perhaps because of holes in the memory configuration or because "outsec" is too large to fit without overlapping some other output section), *ld* issues an appropriate error message.

So long as output sections do not overlap and there is enough space, they can be bound anywhere in configured memory. The SECTIONS directives defining output sections need not be given to *ld* in any particular order.

The *ld* does not ensure that each section's size consists of an even number of bytes or that each section starts on an even byte boundary. The assembler ensures that the size (in bytes) of a section is evenly divisible by 4. The *ld* directives can be used to force a section to start on an odd byte boundary although this is not recommended. If a section starts on an odd byte boundary, the section's contents are either accessed incorrectly or are not executed properly. When a user specifies an odd byte boundary, the *ld* issues a warning message.

#### *Aligning an Output Section*

It is possible to request that an output section be bound to a virtual address that falls on an *n*-byte boundary, where *n* is a power of 2. The ALIGN option of the SECTIONS directive performs this function, so that the option

```
ALIGN(n)
```

is equivalent to specifying a bonding address of

$$(. + n - 1) \& \sim (n - 1)$$

For example

```
SECTIONS
{
    outsec ALIGN(0x20000) :
    {
        ...
    }
    etc.
}
```

The output section "outsec" is not bound to any given address but is linked to some virtual address that is a multiple of 0x20000 (e.g., at address 0x0, 0x20000, 0x40000, 0x60000, etc.).

#### *Grouping Sections Together*

The default allocation algorithm for *ld*

- a. Links all input *.text* sections together into one output section. This output section is called *.text* and is bound to an address of 0x0.
- b. Links all input *.data* sections together into one output section. This output section is called *.data* and is bound to an address aligned to a machine dependent constant.
- c. Links all input *.bss* sections together into one output section. This output section is called *.bss* and is allocated so as to immediately follow the output section *.data*.

## LINK EDITOR

Note that the output section *.bss* is *not given any particular address alignment*.

*Specifying any SECTIONS directives results in this default allocation not being performed.*

The default allocation of *ld* is equivalent to supplying the following directive:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text : { }
    GROUP ALIGN( align_value ) :
    {
        .data : { }
        .bss  : { }
    }
}
```

where *align\_value* is a machine dependent constant. The GROUP command ensures that the two output sections, *.data* and *.bss*, are allocated (e.g., "grouped") together. Bonding or alignment information is supplied only for the group and not for the output sections contained within the group. The sections making up the group are allocated in the order listed in the directive.

If *.text*, *.data*, and *.bss* are to be placed in the same segment, the following SECTIONS directive is used:

```
SECTIONS
{
    GROUP :
    {
        .text : { }
        .data : { }
        .bss  : { }
    }
}
```

Note that there are still three output *sections* (*.text*, *.data*, and *.bss*), but now they are allocated into consecutive virtual memory.

This entire group of output sections could be bound to a starting address or aligned simply by adding a field to the GROUP directive. To bind to 0xC0000, use

```
GROUP 0xC0000 : {
```

To align to 0x10000, use

```
GROUP ALIGN(0x10000) : {
```

With this addition, first the output section *.text* is bound at 0xC0000 (or is aligned to 0x10000); then the remaining members of the group are allocated in order of their appearance into the next available memory locations.

When the **GROUP** directive is not used, each output section is treated as an independent entity:

```
SECTIONS
{
    .text : { }
    .data ALIGN(0x20000) : { }
    .bss  : { }
}
```

The *.text* section starts at virtual address 0x0 and the *.data* section at a virtual address aligned to 0x20000. The *.bss* section follows immediately after the *.text* section *if there is enough space*. If there is not, it follows the *.data* section.

The order in which output sections are defined to the `ld` *cannot* be used to force a certain allocation order in the output file.

#### *Creating Holes Within Output Sections*

The special symbol dot (.) appears only within section definitions and assignment statements. When it appears on the left side of an assignment statement, "." causes the `ld`'s location counter to be incremented or reset and a "hole" left in the output section. "Holes" built into output sections in this manner take up physical space in the output file and are initialized using a fill character (either the default fill character (0x00) or a supplied fill character). See the definition of the "-f" option in "USING THE LINK EDITOR" and the discussion of filling holes in "Initialized Section Holes or .bss Sections" under "LINK EDITOR COMMAND LANGUAGE".

Consider the following section definition:

```
outsec:
{
    . += 0x1000;
    f1.o (.text)
    . += 0x100;
    f2.o (.text)
    . = align (4);
    f3.o (.text)
}
```

## LINK EDITOR

The effect of this command is as follows:

- a. A 0x1000 byte hole, filled with the default fill character, is left at the beginning of the section. Input file f1.o(.text) is linked after this hole.
- b. The text of input file f2.o begins at 0x100 bytes following the end of f1.o(.text).
- c. The text of f3.o is linked to start at the next full word boundary following the text of f2.o with respect to the beginning of "outsec".

For the purposes of allocating and aligning addresses *within an output section*, the *ld* treats the output section as if it began at address zero. As a result, if, in the above example, "outsec" ultimately is linked to start at an odd address, then the part of "outsec" built from f3.o(.text) also starts at an odd address—even though f3.o(.text) is aligned to a full word boundary. This is prevented by specifying an alignment factor for the entire output section.

```
outsec ALIGN(4) : {
```

It should be noted that the assembler, *as*, always pads the sections it generates to a full word length making explicit alignment specifications unnecessary. This also holds true for the compiler.

Expressions that decrement "." are illegal. For example, subtracting a value from the location counter is not allowed since overwrites are not allowed. The most common operators in expressions that assign a value to "." are "+=" and "align".

### *Creating and Defining Symbols at Link-Edit Time*

The assignment instruction of the *ld* can be used to give symbols a value that is link-edit dependent. Typically, there are three types of assignments:

- a. Use of "." to adjust *ld*'s location counter during allocation
- b. Use of "." to assign an allocation-dependent value to a symbol
- c. Assigning an allocation-independent value to a symbol.

Case a) has already been discussed in the previous section.

Case b) provides a means to assign addresses (known only after allocation) to symbols. For example

```

SECTIONS
{
    outsc1: {...}
    outsc2:
    {
        file1.o (s1)
        s2_start = . ;
        file2.o (s2)
        s2_end = . - 1;
    }
}

```

The symbol "s2\_start" is defined to be the address of file2.o(s2), and "s2\_end" is the address of the last byte of file2.o(s2).

Consider the following example:

```

SECTIONS
{
    outsc1:
    {
        file1.o (.data)
        mark = . ;
        . += 4;
        file2.o (.data)
    }
}

```

In this example, the symbol "mark" is created and is equal to the address of the first byte beyond the end of file1.o's *.data* section. Four bytes are reserved for a future run-time initialization of the symbol mark. The type of the symbol is a long integer (32 bits).

Assignment instructions involving "." must appear within SECTIONS definitions since they are evaluated during *allocation*. Assignment instructions that do not involve "." can appear within SECTIONS definitions but typically do not. Such instructions are evaluated *after* allocation is complete. Reassignment of a defined symbol to a different address is dangerous. For example, if a symbol within *.data* is defined, initialized, and referenced within a set of object files being link-edited, the symbol table entry for that symbol is changed to reflect the new, reassigned physical address. However, the associated initialized data is not moved to the new address. The *ld* issues warning messages for each defined symbol that is being redefined within an ifile. However, assignments of absolute values to new symbols are safe because there are no references or initialized data associated with the symbol.

## LINK EDITOR

### *Allocating a Section Into Named Memory*

It is possible to specify that a section be linked (somewhere) within a specific *named* memory (as previously specified on a MEMORY directive). (The ">" notation is borrowed from the UNIX system concept of "redirected output".)

For example

```
MEMORY
{
    mem1:      o=0x000000  l=0x10000
    mem2 (RW): o=0x020000  l=0x40000
    mem3 (RW): o=0x070000  l=0x40000
    mem1:      o=0x120000  l=0x04000
}

SECTIONS
{
    outsec1: { f1.o(.data) } > mem1
    outsec2: { f2.o(.data) } > mem3
}
```

This directs *ld* to place "outsec1" anywhere within the memory area named "mem1" (i.e., somewhere within the address range 0x0-0xFFFF or 0x120000-0x123FFF). The "outsec2" is to be placed somewhere in the address range 0x70000-0xAFFFF.

### *Initialized Section Holes or BSS Sections*

When "holes" are created within a section (as in the example in "LINK EDITOR COMMAND LANGUAGE"), the *ld* normally puts out bytes of zero as "fill". By default, *.bss* sections are not initialized at all; that is, no initialized data is generated for any *.bss* section by the assembler nor supplied by the link editor, not even zeros.

Initialization options can be used in a SECTIONS directive to set such "holes" or output *.bss* sections to an arbitrary 2-byte pattern. *Such initialization options apply only to .bss sections or "holes"*. As an example, an application might want an uninitialized data table to be initialized to a constant value without recompiling the ".o" file or a "hole" in the text area to be filled with a transfer to an error routine.

Either specific areas within an output section or the entire output section may be specified as being initialized. However, since no text is generated for an uninitialized *.bss* section, if part of such a section is initialized, then the entire section is initialized. In other words, if a *.bss* section is to be combined with a *.text* or *.data* section (both of which are initialized) or if part of an output *.bss* section is to be initialized, then one of the following will hold:

- a. Explicit initialization options must be used to initialize all *.bss* sections in the output section.

- b. The *ld* will use the default fill value to initialize all *.bss* sections in the output section.

Consider the following *ld* ifile:

```
SECTIONS
{
    sec1:
    {
        f1.o
        . =+ 0x200;
        f2.o (.text)
    } = 0xDFFF
    sec2:
    {
        f1.o (.bss)
        f2.o (.bss) = 0x1234
    }
    sec3:
    {
        f3.o (.bss)
        ...
    } = 0xFFFF
    sec4: { f4.o (.bss) }
}
```

In the example above, the 0x200 byte “hole” in section “sec1” is filled with the value 0xDFFF. In section “sec2”, *f1.o(.bss)* is initialized to the default fill value of 0x00, and *f2.o(.bss)* is initialized to 0x1234. All *.bss* sections within “sec3” as well as all “holes” are initialized to 0xFFFF. Section “sec4” is not initialized; that is, no data is written to the object file for this section.

## NOTES AND SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS

### Changing the Entry Point

The *a.out* header contains a field for the (primary) entry point of the file. This field is set using one of the following rules (listed in the order they are applied):

- The value of the symbol specified with the “*-e*” option, if present, is used.
- The value of the symbol “*\_start*”, if present, is used.
- The value of the symbol “*main*”, if present, is used.
- The value zero is used.

## LINK EDITOR

Thus, an explicit entry point can be assigned to this a.out header field through the “-e” option or by using an assignment instruction in an ifile of the form

```
_start = expression;
```

If the *ld* is called through *cc*(1), a startup routine is automatically linked in. Then, when the program is executed, the routine *exit*(1) is called after the main routine finishes to close file descriptors and do other cleanup. The user must therefore be careful when calling the *ld* directly or when changing the entry point. The user must supply the startup routine or make sure that the program always calls *exit* rather than falling through the end. Otherwise, the program will dump core.

### Use of Archive Libraries

Each member of an archive library (e.g., *libc.a*) is a complete object file typically consisting of the standard three sections: *.text*, *.data*, and *.bss*. Archive libraries are created through the use of the ICON/UXV “ar” command from object files generated by running the *cc* or *as*.

An archive library is always processed using *selective inclusion*: Only those members that resolve existing undefined-symbol references are taken from the library for link editing.

Libraries can be placed both inside and outside section definitions. In both cases, a member of a library is included for linking whenever

- a. There exists a reference to a symbol defined in that member.
- b. The reference is found by the *ld* prior to the actual scanning of the library.

When a library member is included by searching the library *inside* a SECTIONS directive, all input sections from the library member are included in the output section being defined. When a library member is included by searching the library *outside* of a SECTIONS directive, all input sections from the library member are included into the output section with the same name. That is, the *.text* section of the member goes into the output section named *.text*, the *.data* section of the member into *.data*, the *.bss* section of the member into *.bss*, etc. If necessary, new output sections are defined to provide a place to put the input sections. Note, however, that

- a. Specific members of a library cannot be referenced explicitly in an ifile.
- b. The default rules for the placement of members and sections cannot be overridden when they apply to archive library members.

The “-l” option is a shorthand notation for specifying an input file coming from a predefined set of directories and having a predefined name. *By convention*, such files are archive libraries. However, they need not be so. Furthermore, archive libraries can be specified without using the “-l” option by simply giving the (full or relative) ICON/UXV file path.

The ordering of archive libraries is important since for a member to be extracted from the library it must satisfy a reference *that is known to be unresolved at the time the library is searched*. Archive libraries can be specified more than once. They are searched every time they are encountered. Archive files have a symbol table at the beginning of the archive. The *ld* will cycle through this symbol table until it has determined that it cannot resolve any more references from that library.

Consider the following example:

- a. The input files file1.o and file2.o each contain a reference to the external function FCN.
- b. Input file1.o contains a reference to symbol ABC.
- c. Input file2.o contains a reference to symbol XYZ.
- d. Library liba.a, member 0, contains a definition of XYZ.
- e. Library libc.a, member 0, contains a definition of ABC.
- f. Both libraries have a member 1 that defines FCN.

If the *ld* command were entered as

```
ld file1.o -la file2.o -lc
```

then the FCN references are satisfied by liba.a, member 1, ABC is obtained from libc.a, member 0, and XYZ remains undefined (since the library liba.a is searched before file2.o is specified). If the *ld* command were entered as

```
ld file1.o file2.o -la -lc
```

then the FCN references is satisfied by liba.a, member 1, ABC is obtained from libc.a, member 0, and XYZ is obtained from liba.a, member 0. If the *ld* command were entered as

```
ld file1.o file2.o -lc -la
```

then the FCN references is satisfied by libc.a, member 1, ABC is obtained from libc.a, member 0, and XYZ is obtained from liba.a, member 0.

The “-u” option is used to force the linking of library members when the link edit run does not contain an actual external reference to the members. For example,

```
ld -u rout1 -la
```

## LINK EDITOR

creates an undefined symbol called "rout1" in the ld's global symbol table. If any member of library liba.a defines this symbol, it (and perhaps other members as well) is extracted. Without the "-u" option, there would have been no "trigger" to cause ld to search the archive library.

### Dealing With Holes in Physical Memory

When memory configurations are defined such that unconfigured areas exist in the virtual memory, each application or user must assume the responsibility of forming output sections that will fit into memory. For example, assume that memory is configured as follows:

```
MEMORY
{
    mem1:    o = 0x00000    l = 0x02000
    mem2:    o = 0x40000    l = 0x05000
    mem3:    o = 0x20000    l = 0x10000
}
```

Let the files f1.o, f2.o, . . . fn.o each contain the standard three sections *.text*, *.data*, and *.bss*, and suppose the combined *.text* section is 0x12000 bytes. There is no configured area of memory in which this section can be placed. Appropriate directives must be supplied to break up the *.text* output section so *ld* may do allocation. For example,

```
SECTIONS
{
    txt1:
    {
        f1.o (.text)
        f2.o (.text)
        f3.o (.text)
    }
    txt2:
    {
        f4.o (.text)
        f5.o (.text)
        f6.o (.text)
    }
    etc.
}
```

### Allocation Algorithm

An output section is formed either as a result of a SECTIONS directive or by combining input sections of the same name. An output section can have zero or more input sections comprising it. After the composition of an output section is determined, it must then be allocated into configured virtual memory. Ld uses an algorithm that attempts to minimize fragmentation of memory, and hence increases the possibility that a link edit run will be able to allocate all output sections within the specified virtual memory configuration. The algorithm proceeds as follows:

- a. Any output sections for which explicit bonding addresses were specified are allocated.
- b. Any output sections to be included in a specific named memory are allocated. In both this and the succeeding step, each output section is placed into the *first* available space within the (named) memory with any alignment taken into consideration.
- c. Output sections not handled by one of the above steps are allocated.

If all memory is contiguous and configured (the default case), and no `SECTIONS` directives are given, then output sections are allocated in the order they appear to the `ld`, normally `.text`, `.data`, `.bss`. Otherwise, output sections are allocated in the order they were defined or made known to the `ld` into the first available space they fit.

### Incremental Link Editing

As previously mentioned, the output of the `ld` can be used as an input file to subsequent `ld` runs *providing that the relocation information is retained* ("`-r`" option). Large applications may find it desirable to partition their C programs into "subsystems", link each subsystem independently, and then link edit the entire application. For example,

Step 1:

```
ld -r -o outfile1 ifile1
```

```
/* ifile1 */
SECTIONS
{
    ssl:
    {
        f1.o
        f2.o
        ...
        fn.o
    }
}
```

## LINK EDITOR

Step 2:

```
ld -r -o outfile2 ifile2
```

```
/* ifile2 */
SECTIONS
{
    ss2:
    {
        g1.o
        g2.o
        ...
        gn.o
    }
}
```

Step 3:

```
ld -a -m -o final.out outfile1 outfile2
```

By judiciously forming subsystems, applications may achieve a form of “incremental link editing” whereby it is necessary to relink only a portion of the total link edit when a few programs are recompiled.

To apply this technique, there are two simple rules

- a. Intermediate link edits should contain only SECTIONS declarations and be concerned only with the formation of output sections from input files and input sections. No binding of output sections should be done in these runs.
- b. All allocation and memory directives, as well as any assignment statements, are included only in the final ld call.

### DSECT, COPY, and NOLOAD Sections

Sections may be given a “type” in a section definition as shown in the following example:

```
SECTIONS
{
    name1 0x200000 (DSECT)      : { file1.o }
    name2 0x400000 (COPY)     : { file2.o }
    name3 0x600000 (NOLOAD)   : { file3.o }
}
```

The DSECT option creates what is called a “dummy section”. A “dummy section” has the following properties:

- a. It does not participate in the memory allocation for output sections. As a result, it takes up no memory and does not show up in the memory map (the “-m” option) generated by the ld.
- b. It may overlay other output sections and even unconfigured memory. DSECTs may overlay other DSECTs.
- c. The global symbols defined within the “dummy section” *are relocated normally*. That is, they appear in the output file’s symbol table with the same value they would have had if the DSECT were actually loaded at its virtual address. DSECT-defined symbols may be referenced by other input sections. Undefined external symbols found within a DSECT cause specified archive libraries to be searched and any members which define such symbols are link edited normally (i.e., not in the DSECT or as a DSECT).
- d. None of the section contents, relocation information, or line number information associated with the section is written to the output file.

In the above example, none of the sections from file1.o are allocated, but all symbols are relocated as though the sections were link edited at the specified address. Other sections could refer to any of the global symbols and they are resolved correctly.

A “copy section” created by the COPY option is similar to a “dummy section”. The only difference between a “copy section” and a “dummy section” is that the contents of a “copy section” and all associated information is written to the output file.

A section with the “type” of NOLOAD differs in only one respect from a normal output section: *its text and/or data is not written to the output file*. A NOLOAD section is allocated virtual space, appears in the memory map, etc.

### Output File Blocking

The BLOCK option (applied to any output section or GROUP directive) is used to direct ld to align a section at a specified byte offset in the output file. It has no effect on the address at which the section is allocated nor on any part of the link edit process. It is used purely to adjust the physical position of the section in the output file.

### SECTIONS

```
{
    .text BLOCK(0x200) : { }
    .data ALIGN(0x20000) BLOCK(0x200) : { }
}
```

With this SECTIONS directive, ld assures that each section, *.text* and *.data*, is physically written at a file offset which is a multiple of 0x200 (e.g., at an offset of 0, 0x200, 0x400, ..., etc. in the file).

## LINK EDITOR

### Nonrelocatable Input Files

If a file produced by the *ld* is intended to be used in a subsequent *ld* run, the first *ld* run has the “-r” option set. This preserves relocation information and permits the sections of the file to be relocated by the subsequent *ld* run.

When the *ld* detects an input file (that does not have relocation or symbol table information), a warning message is given. Such information can be removed by the *ld* (see the “-a” and “-s” options in the part USING THE LINK EDITOR) or by the *strip(1)* program. However, *the link edit run continues using the nonrelocatable input file.*

For such a link edit to be successful (i.e., to actually and correctly link edit all input files, relocate all symbols, resolve unresolved references, etc.), two conditions on the nonrelocatable input files must be met.

- a. Each input file must have no unresolved external references.
- b. Each input file must be bound to the exact same virtual address as it was bound to in the *ld* run that created it.

Note that if these two conditions are not met for all nonrelocatable input files, no error messages are issued. Because of this fact, extreme care must be taken when supplying such input files to the *ld*.

## ERROR MESSAGES

### Corrupt Input Files

The following error messages indicate that the input file is corrupt, nonexistent, or unreadable. The user should check that the file is in the correct directory with the correct permissions. If the object file is corrupt, try recompiling or reassembling it.

- Can't open *name*
- Can't read archive header from archive *name*
- Can't read file header of archive *name*
- Can't read 1st word of file *name*
- Can't seek to the beginning of file *name*
- Fail to read file header of *name*
- Fail to read lno of section *sect* of file *name*

- Fail to read magic number of file *name*
- Fail to read section headers of file *name*
- Fail to read section headers of library *name* member *number*
- Fail to read symbol table of file *name*
- Fail to read symbol table when searching libraries
- Fail to read the aux entry of file *name*
- Fail to read the field to be relocated
- Fail to seek to symbol table of file *name*
- Fail to seek to symbol table when searching libraries
- Fail to seek to the end of library *name* member *number*
- Fail to skip aux entries when searching libraries
- Fail to skip the mem of struct of *name*
- Illegal relocation type
- No reloc entry found for symbol
- Reloc entries out of order in section *sect* of file *name*
- Seek to *name* section *sect* failed
- Seek to *name* section *sect* lno failed
- Seek to *name* section *sect* reloc entries failed
- Seek to relocation entries for section *sect* in file *name* failed.

#### Errors During Output

These errors occur because the *ld* cannot write to the output file. This usually indicates that the file system is out of space.

- Cannot complete output file *name*. Write error.
- Fail to copy the rest of section *num* of file *name*
- Fail to copy the bytes that need no reloc of section *num* of file

## LINK EDITOR

- *name* I/O error on output file *name*.

### Internal Errors

These messages indicate that something is wrong with the *ld* internally. There is probably nothing the user can do except get help.

- Attempt to free nonallocated memory
- Attempt to reinitialize the SDP aux space
- Attempt to reinitialize the SDP slot space
- Default allocation did not put *.data* and *.bss* into the same region
- Failed to close SDP symbol space
- Failure dumping an AIDFNxxx data structure
- Failure in closing SDP aux space
- Failure to initialize the SDP aux space
- Failure to initialize the SDP slot space
- Internal error: audit\_groups, address mismatch
- Internal error: audit\_group, finds a node failure
- Internal error: fail to seek to the member of *name*
- Internal error: in allocate lists, list confusion (*num num*)
- Internal error: invalid aux table id
- Internal error: invalid symbol table id
- Internal error: negative aux table *ld*
- Internal error: negative symbol table id
- Internal error: no symtab entry for DOT
- Internal error: split\_scns, size of *sect* exceeds its new displacement.

**Allocation Errors**

These error messages appear during the allocation phase of the link edit. They generally appear if a section or group does not fit at a certain address or if the given MEMORY or SECTION directives in some way conflict. If you are using an ifile, check that MEMORY and SECTION directives allow enough room for the sections to ensure that nothing overlaps and that nothing is being placed in unconfigured memory. For more information, see "LINK EDITOR COMMAND LANGUAGE" and "NOTES AND SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS".

- Bond address *address* for *sect* is not in configured memory
- Bond address *address* for *sect* overlays previously allocated section *sect* at *address*
- Can't allocate output section *sect*, of size *num*
- Can't allocate section *sect* into owner *mem*
- Default allocation failed: *name* is too large
- GROUP containing section *sect* is too big
- Memory types *name1* and *name2* overlap
- Output section *sect* not allocated into a region
- *Sect* at *address* overlays previously allocated section *sect* at *address*
- *Sect*, bonded at *address*, won't fit into configured memory
- *Sect* enters unconfigured memory at *address*
- Section *sect* in file *name* is too big.

**Misuse of Link Editor Directives**

These errors arise from the misuse of an input directive. Please review the appropriate section in the manual.

- Adding *name(sect)* to multiple output sections.

The input section is mentioned twice in the SECTION directive.

- Bad attribute value in MEMORY directive: *c*.

An attribute must be one of "R", "W", "X", or "I".

- Bad flag value in SECTIONS directive, *option*.

## LINK EDITOR

Only the “-l” option is allowed inside of a SECTIONS directive

- Bad fill value.

The fill value must be a 2-byte constant.

- Bonding excludes alignment.

The section will be bound at the given address regardless of the alignment of that address.

- Cannot align a section within a group
- Cannot bond a section within a group
- Cannot specify an owner for sections within a group.

The entire group is treated as one unit, so the group may be aligned or bound to an address, but the sections making up the group may not be handled individually.

- DSECT *sect* can't be given an owner
- DSECT *sect* can't be linked to an attribute.

Since dummy sections do not participate in the memory allocation, it is meaningless for a dummy section to be given an owner or an attribute.

- Region commands not allowed

The ICON/UXV link editor does not accept the REGION commands.

- Section *sect* not built.

The most likely cause of this is a syntax error in the SECTIONS directive.

- Semicolon required after expression
- Statement ignored.

Caused by a syntax error in an expression.

- Usage of unimplemented syntax.

The ICON/UXV operating system *ld* does not accept all possible *ld* commands.

#### Misuse of Expressions

These errors arise from the misuse of an input expression. Please review the appropriate section in the manual.

- Absolute symbol *name* being redefined.

An absolute symbol may not be redefined.

- ALIGN illegal in this context.

Alignment of a symbol may only be done within a SECTIONS directive.

- Attempt to decrement DOT
- Illegal assignment of physical address to DOT.
- Illegal operator in expression
- Misuse of DOT symbol in assignment instruction.

The DOT symbol (".") cannot be used in assignment statements that are outside SECTIONS directives.

- Symbol *name* is undefined.

All symbols referenced in an assignment statement must be defined.

- Symbol *name* from file *name* being redefined.

A defined symbol may not be redefined in an assignment statement.

- Undefined symbol in expression.

#### Misuse of Options

These errors arise from the misuse of options. Please review the appropriate section of the manual.

- Both `-r` and `-s` flags are set. The `-s` flag is turned off.

## LINK EDITOR

Further relocation requires a symbol table.

- Can't find library *libx.a*
- `-L` path too long (*string*)
- `-o` file name too large (>128 char), truncated to (*string*)
- Too many `-L` options, seven allowed.

Some options require white space before the argument, some do not; see "USING THE LINK EDITOR". Including extra white space or not including the required white space is the most likely cause of the following messages.

- *option* flag does not specify a number
- *option* is an invalid flag
- `-e` flag does not specify a legal symbol name *name*
- `-f` flag does not specify a 2-byte number
- No directory given with `-L`
- `-o` flag does not specify a valid file name: *string*
- the `-l` flag (specifying a default library) is not supported
- `-u` flag does not specify a legal symbol name: *name*.

### Space Restraints

The following error messages may occur if the *ld* attempts to allocate more space than is available. The user should attempt to decrease the amount of space used by the *ld*. This may be accomplished by making the ifile less complicated or by using the "`-r`" option to create intermediate files.

- Fail to allocate *num* bytes for slotvec table
- Internal error: aux table overflow
- Internal error: symbol table overflow
- Memory allocation failure on *num*-byte 'calloc' call
- Memory allocation failure on realloc call
- Run is too large and complex.

### Miscellaneous Errors

These errors occur for many reasons. Refer to the error message for an indication of where to look in the manual.

- Archive symbol table is empty in archive *name*, execute '*ar ts name*' to restore archive symbol table .

On systems with a random access archive capability, the link editor requires that all archives have a symbol table. This symbol table may have been removed by strip.

- Cannot create output file *name* .

The user may not have write permission in the directory where the output file is to be written.

- File *name* has no relocation information.

See "NOTES AND SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS".

- File *name* is of unknown type, magic number = *num*
- Ifile nesting limit exceeded with file *name*.

Ifiles may be nested 16 deep.

- Library *name*, member has no relocation information.
- Line nbr entry (*num num*) found for nonrelocatable symbol.

Section *sect*, file *name*

This is generally caused by an interaction of *yacc*(1) and *cc*(1). Re-*yacc* the offending file with the "-l" option of *yacc*.

See the part "NOTES AND SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS".

- Multiply defined symbol *sym*, in *name* has more than one size.

A multiply defined symbol may not have been defined in the same manner in all files.

- *name(sect)* not found.

An input section specified in a SECTIONS directive was not found in the input file.

## LINK EDITOR

- Section *sect* starts on an odd byte boundary!

This will happen only if the user specifically binds a section at an odd boundary.

- Sections *.text*, *.data*, or *.bss* not found. Optional header may be useless.

The ICON/UXV a.out header uses values found in the *.text*, *.data*, and *.bss* section headers.

- Undefined symbol *sym* first referenced in file *name* .

Unless the `-r` option is used, the *ld* requires that all referenced symbols are defined.

- Unexpected EOF (End Of File).

Syntax error in the ifile.

## SYNTAX DIAGRAM FOR INPUT DIRECTIVES

A syntax diagram for input directives is found in Figure 7-2.

directives	->	expanded directives
<file>	->	{ <cmd> }
<cmd>	->	<memory>
	->	<sections>
	->	<assignment>
	->	<filename>
	->	<flags>
<memory>	->	<b>MEMORY</b> { <memory_spec> { [,] <memory_spec> } }
<memory_spec>	->	<name> [ <attributes> ] : <origin_spec> [,] <length_spec>
<attributes>	->	( { <b>R</b>   <b>W</b>   <b>X</b>   <b>I</b> } )
<origin_spec>	->	<origin> = <long>
<lenth_spec>	->	<length> = <long>
<origin>	->	<b>ORIGIN</b>   <b>o</b>   <b>org</b>   <b>origin</b>
<length>	->	<b>LENGTH</b>   <b>l</b>   <b>len</b>   <b>length</b>
<sections>	->	<b>SECTIONS</b> { { <sec_or_group> } }
<sec_or_group>	->	<section>   <group>   <library>
<group>	->	<b>GROUP</b> <group_options> : { <section_list> } [ <mem_spec> ]
<section_list>	->	<section> { [,] <section> }

Figure 18-2. Syntax Diagram for Input Directives (Sheet 1 of 4)

# LINK EDITOR

directives	->	expanded directives
<section>	->	<name> <sec_options> : { <statement_list> } [<fill>] [<mem_spec>]
<group_options>	->	[<addr>] [<align_option>]
<sec_options>	->	[<addr>] [<align_option>] [<block_option>] [<type_option>]
<addr>	->	<long>
<align_option>	->	<align> ( <long> )
<align>	->	<b>ALIGN</b>   <b>align</b>
<block_option>	->	<block> ( <long> )
<block>	->	<b>BLOCK</b>   <b>block</b>
<type_option>	->	( <b>DSECT</b> )   ( <b>NOLOAD</b> )   ( <b>COPY</b> )
<fill>	->	= <long>
<mem_spec>	->	> <name> > <attributes>
<statement>	->	<file_name> [ ( <name_list> ) ] [<fill>] <library> <assignment>
<name_list>	->	<name> { [,] <name> }
<library>	->	-l<name>
<assignment>	->	<lside> <assign_op> <expr> <end>
<lside>	->	<name>   .
<assign_op>	->	=   +=   -=   *=   /=   =
<end>	->	;;   ,
<expr>	->	<expr> <binary_op> <expr>
<binary_op>	->	<term> *   /   % +   - >>   <<

Figure 18-2. Syntax Diagram for Input Directives (Sheet 2 of 4)

directives	->	expanded directives
	->	== != > < <= >=
	->	&
	->	
	->	&&
	->	
<term>	->	<long>
	->	<name>
	->	<align> ( <term> )
	->	( <expr )
<unary_op>	->	<unary_op> <term>
<flags>	->	! -
	->	-e<whitespace><name>
	->	-f<whitespace><long>
	->	-h<whitespace><long>
	->	-l<name>
	->	-m
	->	-o<whitespace><filename>
	->	-r
	->	-s
	->	-t
	->	-u<whitespace><name>
	->	-z
	->	-H
	->	-L<pathname>
	->	-M
	->	-N
	->	-S
	->	-V
	->	-VS<whitespace><long>
	->	-a
	->	-x

Figure 18-2. Syntax Diagram for Input Directives (Sheet 3 of 4)

## LINK EDITOR

<b>directives</b>	<b>-&gt;</b>	<b>expanded directives</b>
<name>	->	Any valid symbol name
<long>	->	Any valid long integer constant
<whitespace>	->	Blanks, tabs, and newlines
<filename>	->	Any valid ICON/UXV operating system filename. This may include a full or partial pathname.
<pathname>	->	Any valid ICON/UXV operating system pathname (full or partial)

Figure 18-2. Syntax Diagram for Input Directives (Sheet 4 of 4)

## Chapter 19

### THE COMMON OBJECT FILE FORMAT

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	19-1
DEFINITIONS AND CONVENTIONS .....	19-2
FILE HEADER .....	19-3
OPTIONAL HEADER INFORMATION .....	19-8
SECTION HEADERS .....	19-11
SECTIONS .....	19-15
RELOCATION INFORMATION .....	19-15
LINE NUMBERS .....	19-19
SYMBOL TABLE .....	19-20
STRING TABLE .....	19-47
ACCESS ROUTINES .....	19-47



## Chapter 19

# THE COMMON OBJECT FILE FORMAT

### GENERAL

This chapter describes the Common Object File Format (COFF) used on the ICON/UXV operating systems. The COFF is simple enough to be easily incorporated into existing projects, yet flexible enough to meet the needs of most projects. The COFF is the output file produced on *ICON/UXV systems* by the assembler (*as*) and the link editor (*ld*). This format is also used by other operating systems; hence, the word *common* is both descriptive and widely recognized. Some key features of COFF are

- Applications may add system-dependent information to the object file without causing access utilities to become obsolete.
- Space is provided for symbolic information used by debuggers and other applications
- Users may make some modifications in the object file construction at compile time.

The object file supports user-defined sections and contains extensive information for symbolic software testing. An object file contains

- A file header
- Optional header information
- A table of section headers
- Data corresponding to the section header
- Relocation information
- Line numbers
- A symbol table
- A string table.

Figure 19-1 shows the overall structure.

FILE HEADER
Optional Information
Section 1 Header
...
Section n Header
Raw Data for Section 1
...
Raw Data for Section n
Relocation Info for Sect. 1
...
Relocation Info for Sect. n
Line Numbers for Sect. 1
...
Line Numbers for Sect. n
SYMBOL TABLE
STRING TABLE

Figure 19-1. Object File Format

The last four sections (relocation, line numbers, symbol table, and the string table) may be missing if the program is linked with the `-s` option of the *ICON/UXV operating system* link editor or if the line number information, symbol table, and string table are removed by the *strip* command. The line number information does not appear unless the program is compiled with the `-g` option of the compiler (*CC*) command. Also, if there are no unresolved external references after linking, the relocation information is no longer needed and is absent. The string table is also absent if the source file does not contain any symbols with names longer than eight characters.

An object file that contains no errors or unresolved references can be executed on the target machine.

## DEFINITIONS AND CONVENTIONS

Before proceeding further, you should become familiar with the following terms and conventions:

### Sections

A section is the smallest portion of an object file that is relocated and treated as one separate and distinct entity. In the default case, there are three sections named `.text`, `.data`, and `.bss`. Additional sections accommodate multiple text or data segments, shared data segments, or user-specified sections. However, the ICON/UXV operating system loads only the `.text`, `.data`, and `.bss` into memory when the file is executed.

### Physical and Virtual Addresses

The *physical address* of a section or symbol is the offset of that section or symbol from address zero of the address space. The term *physical address* as used in COFF does not correspond to the general usage. The physical address of an object is not necessarily the address at which the object is placed when the process is executed. For example, on a system with paging, the address is located with respect to address zero of virtual memory and the system performs another address translation. The section heading contains two address fields, a physical address, and a virtual address; but in all versions of COFF on *ICON* computer systems, the *physical address* is equivalent to the *virtual address*.

### FILE HEADER

The file header contains the 20 bytes of information shown in Figure 19-2. The last 2 bytes are flags that are used by `ld` and object file utilities.

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-1	unsigned short	<code>f_magic</code>	Magic number, see Figure 19-3.
2-3	unsigned short	<code>f_nscns</code>	Number of section headers (equals the number of sections)
4-7	long int	<code>f_timdat</code>	Time and date stamp indicating when the file was created relative to the number of elapsed seconds since 00:00:00 GMT, January 1, 1970.

Figure 19-2. File Header Contents (Sheet 1 of 2)

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
8-11	long int	f_symptr	File pointer containing the starting address of the symbol table
12-15	long int	f_nsyms	Number of entries in the symbol table
16-17	unsigned short	f_opthdr	Number of bytes in the optional header
18-19	unsigned short	f_flags	Flags (see Figure 19-4)

Figure 19-2. File Header Contents (Sheet 2 of 2)

The size of optional header information (**f\_opthdr**) is used by all referencing programs that seek to the beginning of the section header table. This enables the same utility programs to work correctly on files targeted for different systems.

#### Magic Numbers

The magic number specifies the target machine on which the object file is executable. The currently defined magic numbers are in Figure 19-3.

Mnemonic	Magic Number	System
N3B MAGIC	0550	3B20S Computers
FBOMAGIC	0560	3B2 and 3B5 Computers
VAXWRMAGIC	0570	VAX-11/750 and VAX-11/780 (writable text segments)
VAXROMAGIC	0575	VAX-11/750 and VAX-11780 (read-only text segments)
U370WRMAGIC	0530	IBM 370 (writable text segments)
U370ROMAGIC	0535	IBM 370 (read-only sharable text segments)

Figure 19-3. Magic Numbers

#### Flags

The last 2 bytes of the file header are flags that describe the type of the object file. The currently defined flags are given in Figure 19-4.

---

\* Trademark of AT&T Technologies

# COFF

Mnemonic	Flag	Meaning
F_RELFLG	00001	Relocation information stripped from the file
F_EXEC	00002	File is executable (i.e., no unresolved external references)
F_LNNO	00004	Line numbers stripped from the file
F_LSYMS	00010	Local symbols stripped from the file
F_MINMAL	00020	Not used by <i>ICON/UXV</i>
F_UPDATE	00040	Not used by <i>ICON/UXV</i>
F_SWABD	00100	Not used by <i>ICON/UXV</i>
F_AR16WR	00200	File has the byte ordering used by the PDP*-11/70 processor.

Figure 19-4. File Header Flags (Sheet 1 of 2)

---

\* Trademark of Digital Equipment Corporation

Mnemonic	Flag	Meaning
F_AR32WR	00400	File has the byte ordering used by the VAX-11/780 (i.e., 32 bits per word, least significant byte first).
F_AR32W	01000	File has the byte ordering used by the 3B computers (i.e., 32 bits per word, most significant byte first).
F_PATCH	02000	Not used by <i>ICON/UXV</i>
F_BM32ID	0160000	WE 32000 processor ID field.

Figure 19-4. File Header Flags (Sheet 2 of 2)

#### File Header Declaration

The C structure declaration for the file header is given in Figure 19-5. This declaration may be found in the header file *filehdr.h*.

## COFF

```
struct filehdr {
    unsigned short  f_magic; /* magic number */
    unsigned short  f_nscns; /* number of section */

    long           f_timdat; /* time and data stamp */

    long           f_symptr; /* file ptr to symbol table */

    long           f_nsyms; /* number entries in the symbol table */

    unsigned short f_opthdr; /* size of optional header */

    unsigned short f_flags; /* flags */
};

#define FILHDR struct filehdr
#define FILHSZ sizeof(FILHDR)
```

Figure 19-5. File Header Declaration

## OPTIONAL HEADER INFORMATION

The template for optional information varies among different systems that use the COFF. Applications place all system-dependent information into this record. This allows different operating systems access to information that only that operating system uses without forcing all COFF files to save space for that information. General utility programs (for example, the symbol table access library functions, the disassembler, etc.) are made to work properly on any common object file. This is done by seeking past this record using the size of optional header information in the file header **f\_opthdr**.

### Standard *ICON/UXV* a.out Header

By default, files produced by the link editor for a *ICON/UXV* system always have a standard *ICON/UXV* a.out header in the optional header field. The *ICON/UXV* a.out header is 28 bytes. There is one exception; files produced for the 3B20S Computers have an optional header of 36 bytes. The extra 8 bytes represent unused fields that are present for historical reasons. Therefore, the two formats contain functionally equivalent information. The fields of the optional header are described in Figure 19-6 and 19-7.

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-1	short	magic	Magic number
2-3	short	vstamp	Version stamp
4-7	long int	tsize	Size of text in bytes
8-11	long int	dsize	Size of initialized data in bytes
12-15	long int	bsize	Size of uninitialized data in bytes
16-19	long int	dum1	Unused dummy field
20-23	long int	dum2	Unused dummy field
24-27	long int	entry	Entry point
27-31	long int	text_start	Base address of text
32-35	long int	data_start	Base address of data

Figure 19-6. Optional Header Contents (3B20S Computers Only)

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-1	short	magic	Magic number
2-3	short	vstamp	Version stamp
4-7	long int	tsize	Size of text in bytes
8-11	long int	dsize	Size of initialized data in bytes
12-15	long int	bsize	Size of uninitialized data in bytes
16-19	long int	entry	Entry point
20-23	long int	text_start	Base address of text
24-37	long int	data_start	Base address of data

Figure 19-7. Optional Header Contents (Processors other than the 3B20S)

The magic number in the optional header supplies operating system dependent information about the object file. Whereas, the magic number in the file header specifies the machine on

## COFF

which the object file runs. The magic number in the optional header supplies information telling the operating system on that machine how that file should be executed.

The magic numbers recognized by the ICON/UXV operating system are given in Figure 19-8.

Value	Meaning
0407	The text segment is not write-protected or sharable; the data segment is contiguous with the text segment.
0410	The data segment starts at the next segment following the text segment and the text segment is write protected.
0413	The data segment starts at a certain boundary within the next segment following the text segment. The text segment is write protected.

Figure 19-8. *ICON/UXV* Magic Numbers

### Optional Header Declaration

The C language structure declaration currently used for the *ICON/UXV a.out* file header is given in Figure 19-9. This declaration may be found in the header file *aouthdr.h*.

```

typedef struct aouthdr {
    short  magic;      /* magic number */
    short  vstamp;    /* version stamp */
    long   tsize;     /* text size in bytes, padded */
                    /* to full word boundary */

    long   dsize;     /* initialized data size */

    long   bsize;     /* uninitialized data size */

#ifdef  u9b
    long   dum1;      /* unused dummy field */
    long   dum2;      /* unused dummy field */
#endif
    long   entry;     /* entry point */
    long   text_start; /* base of text for this file */

    long   data_start /* base of data for this file */
} AOUTHDR;

```

Figure 19-9. Aouthdr Declaration

## SECTION HEADERS

Every object file has a table of section headers to specify the layout of data within the file. The section header table consists of one entry for every section in the file. The information in the section header is described in Figure 19-10.

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-7	<i>char</i>	<i>s_name</i>	<i>8-char null padded section name</i>
8-11	<i>long int</i>	<i>s_paddr</i>	<i>Physical address of section</i>
12-15	<i>long int</i>	<i>s_vaddr</i>	<i>Virtual address of section</i>
16-19	<i>long int</i>	<i>s_size</i>	<i>Section size in bytes</i>
20-23	<i>long int</i>	<i>s_scnptr</i>	<i>File pointer to raw data</i>
24-27	<i>long int</i>	<i>s_relptr</i>	<i>File ptr to relocation entries</i>
28-31	<i>long int</i>	<i>s_lnnoptr</i>	<i>File ptr to line number entries</i>
32-33	<i>unsigned short</i>	<i>s_nreloc</i>	<i>Number of entries</i>
34-35	<i>unsigned short</i>	<i>s_nlnno</i>	<i>Number of line number entries</i>
36-39	<i>long int</i>	<i>s_flags</i>	<i>Flags (see Figure 19-11)</i>

**Figure 19-10. Section Header Contents**

The size of a section is padded to a multiple of 4 bytes.

File pointers are byte offsets that can be used to locate the start of data, relocation, or line number entries for the section. They can be readily used with the *ICON/UXV* function *fseek(3S)*.

#### Flags

The lower 4 bits of the flag field indicate a section type. The flags are described in Figure 19-11.

Mnemonic	Flag	Meaning
<i>STYP_REG</i>	<i>0x00</i>	<i>Regular section (allocated, relocated, loaded)</i>
<i>STYP_DSECT</i>	<i>0x01</i>	<i>Dummy section (not allocated, relocated, not loaded)</i>
<i>STYP_NOLOAD</i>	<i>0x02</i>	<i>Noload section (allocated, relocated, not loaded)</i>

Figure 19-11. Section Header Flags (Sheet 1 of 2)

Mnemonic	Flag	Meaning
<i>STYP_GROUP</i>	<i>0x04</i>	<i>Grouped section (formed from input sections)</i>
<i>STYP_PAD</i>	<i>0x08</i>	<i>Padding section (not allocated, not relocated, loaded)</i>
<i>STYP_COPY</i>	<i>0x10</i>	<i>Copy section (for a decision function used in updating fields; not allocated, not relocated, loaded, relocation and line number entries processed normally)</i>
<i>STYP_TEXT</i>	<i>0x20</i>	<i>Section contains executable text</i>
<i>STYP_DATA</i>	<i>0x40</i>	<i>Section contains initialized data</i>
<i>STYP_BSS</i>	<i>0x80</i>	<i>Section contains only uninitialized data</i>

Figure 19-11. Section Header Flags (Sheet 2 of 2)

## COFF

### Section Header Declaration

The C structure declaration for the section headers is described in Figure 19-12. This declaration may be found in the header file *scuhdr.h*.

```
struct scnhdr {
    char    s_name[8];        /* section name */
    long    s_paddr;         /* physical address */
    long    s_vaddr;         /* virtual address */
    long    s_size;          /* section size */
    long    s_scnptr;        /* file ptr to section raw data */

    long    s_relptr;        /* file ptr to relocation */

    long    s_lnnoptr;       /* file ptr to line number */

    unsigned short s_nreloc; /* number of relocation entries */
    unsigned short s_nlnno;  /* number of line number entries */

    long    s_flags;         /* flags */
};

#define SCNHDR struct scnhdr
#define SCNHSZ sizeof(SCNHDR)
```

Figure 19-12. Section Header Declaration

### .bss Section Header

The one deviation from the normal rule in the section header table is the entry for uninitialized data in a **.bss** section. A **.bss** section has a size and symbols that refer to it, and symbols that are defined in it. At the same time, a **.bss** section has no relocation entries, no line number entries, and no data. Therefore, a **.bss** section has an entry in the section header table but occupies no space elsewhere in the file. In this case, the number of relocation and line number entries, as well as all file pointers in a **.bss** section header, are 0.

## SECTIONS

Figure 19-1 shows that section headers are followed by the appropriate number of bytes of text or data. The raw data for each section begins on a full word boundary in the file.

Files produced by the `cc` and the `as` always contain three sections, called `.text`, `.data`, and `.bss`. The `.text` section contains the instruction text (i.e., executable code), the `.data` section contains initialized data variables, and the `.bss` section contains uninitialized data variables.

The link editor "SECTIONS directives" (see Chapter 7) allows users to

- Describe how input sections are to be combined.
- Direct the placement of output sections.
- Rename output sections.

If no SECTIONS directives are given, each input section appears in an output section of the same name. For example, if a number of object files from the "cc" are linked together (each containing the three sections `.text`, `.data`, and `.bss`), the output object file contains three sections, `.text`, `.data`, and `.bss`.

## RELOCATION INFORMATION

Object files have one relocation entry for each relocatable reference in the text or data. The relocation information consists of entries with the format described in Figure 19-13.

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-3	long int	r_symndx	<i>(Virtual) address of reference</i>
4-7	long int	r_symndx	<i>Symbol table index</i>
8-9	unsigned short	r_type	<i>Relocation type</i>

Figure 19-13. Relocation Section Contents

## COFF

The first 4 bytes of the entry are the virtual address of the text or data to which this entry applies. The next field is the index, counted from 0, of the symbol table entry that is being referenced. The type field indicates the type of relocation to be applied.

As the link editor reads each input section and performs relocation, the relocation entries are read. They direct how references found within the input section are treated.

The currently recognized relocation types are given in Figures 19-14 through 19-16.

Mnemonic	Flag	Meaning
R_ABS	0	Reference is absolute; no relocation is necessary. The entry will be ignored.
R_DIR24	04	Direct 24-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address.
R_REL24	05	A "PC-relative" 24-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address. Actual address is calculated by adding a constant to the PC value.

Figure 19-14. 3B20S Computers Relocation Types

Mnemonic	Flag	Meaning
R_BS	0	Reference is absolute; no relocation is necessary. The entry will be ignored.
R_DIR32	06	Direct 32-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address
R_DIR32S	012	Direct 32-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address, with the 32-bit value stored in the reverse order in the object file.

Figure 19-15. 3B5 and 3B2 Relocation Types

Mnemonic	Flag	Meaning
R_ABS	0	Reference is absolute; no relocation is necessary. The entry will be ignored.
R_RELBYTE	017	Direct 8-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address.
R_RELWORD	020	Direct 16-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address.
R_RELLONG	021	Direct 32-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address.
R_PCRBYTE	022	A "PC_relative" 8-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address.
R_PCRWORD	023	A "PC_relative" 16-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address.
R_PCRLONG	024	A "PC_relative" 32-bit reference to the symbol's virtual address.

Figure 19-16. VAX Relocation Types

On the VAX processors, relocation of a symbol index of  $-1$  indicates that the amount by which the section is being relocated is added to the relocatable address.

The *as* automatically generates relocation entries which are then used by the link editor. The link editor uses this information to resolve external references in the file.

#### Relocation Entry Declaration

The structure declaration for relocation entries is given in Figure 19-17. This declaration may be found in the header file *reloc.h*.

```

struct reloc {
    long      r_vaddr; /* virtual address of reference */

    long      r_symndx; /* index into symbol table */

    unsigned short r_type; /* relocation type */
};

#define RELOC    struct reloc

#define RELSZ    10
0

```

Figure 19-17. Relocation Entry Declaration

### LINE NUMBERS

When invoked with the `-g` option, *ICON/UXV operating system ccs (cc, f77)* generates an entry in the object file for every C language source line where a breakpoint can be inserted. You can then reference line numbers when using a software debugger like *sdb*. All line numbers in a section are grouped by function as shown in Figure 19-18.

symbol index	0
physical address	line number
physical address	line number
symbol index	0
physical address	line number
physical address	line number

Figure 19-18. Line Number Grouping

The first entry in a function grouping has line number 0 and has, in place of the physical address, an index into the symbol table for the entry containing the function name.

## COFF

Subsequent entries have actual line numbers and addresses of the text corresponding to the line numbers. The line number entries appear in increasing order of address.

### Line Number Declaration

The structure declaration currently used for line number entries is given in Figure 19-19.

```
struct lineno {
    union
    {
        long  Lsymndx; /* symtbl index of func name */

        long  Lpaddr; /* paddr of line number */
    } Laddr;
    unsigned short  Llnno; /* line number */
};

#define LINENO    struct lineno

#define LINESZ    6
0
```

Figure 19-19. Line Number Entry Declaration

## SYMBOL TABLE

Because of symbolic debugging requirements, the order of symbols in the symbol table is very important. Symbols appear in the sequence shown in Figure 19-20.

file name 1
function 1
local symbols for function 1
function 2
local symbols for function 2
.
statics
.
file name 2
function 1
local symbols for function 1
.
statics
.
defined global symbols
undefined global symbols

**Figure 19-20. COFF Global Symbol Table**

The word “statics” in Figure 19-20 means symbols defined in the C language storage class *static* outside any function. The symbol table consists of at least one fixed-length entry per symbol with some symbols followed by auxiliary entries of the same size. The entry for each symbol is a structure that holds the value, the type, and other information.

#### **Special Symbols**

The symbol table contains some special symbols that are generated by the *cc*, *as*, and other tools. These symbols are given in Figure 19-21.

Symbol	Meaning
<b>.file</b>	file name
<b>.text</b>	address of <b>.text</b> section
<b>.data</b>	address of <b>.data</b> section
<b>.bss</b>	address of <b>.bss</b> section
<b>.bb</b>	address of start of inner block
<b>.eb</b>	address of end of inner block
<b>.bf</b>	address of start of function
<b>.ef</b>	address of end of function
<b>.target</b>	pointer to the structure or union returned by a function
<b>.fake</b>	dummy tag name for structure, union, or enumeration

Figure 19-21. Special Symbols in the Symbol Table (Sheet 1 of 2)

Symbol	Meaning
<b>.eos</b>	end of members of structure, union, or enumeration
<b>_etext,etext</b>	next available address after the end of the output section <i>.text</i>
<b>_edata,edata</b>	next available address after the end of the output section <i>.data</i>
<b>_end,end</b>	next available address after the end of the output section <i>.bss</i> .

Figure 19-21. Special Symbols in the Symbol Table (Sheet 2 of 2)

Six of these special symbols occur in pairs. The **.bb** and **.eb** symbols indicate the boundaries of inner blocks. A **.bf** and **.ef** pair brackets each function; and a **.fake** and **.eos** pair names and defines the limit of structures, unions, and enumerations that were not named. The **.eos** symbol also appears after named structures, unions, and enumerations.

When a structure, union, or enumeration has no tag name, the *cc* invents a name to be used in the symbol table. The name chosen for the symbol table is *.x.fake*, where "x" is an integer. If there are three unnamed structures, unions, or enumerations in the source, their tag names are ".0fake", ".1fake", and ".2fake".

Each of the special symbols has different information stored in the symbol table entry as well as the auxiliary entry.

### *Inner Blocks*

The C language defines a *block* as a compound statement that begins and ends with braces ( { and } ). An *inner block* is a block that occurs within a function (which is also a block).

For each inner block that has local symbols defined, a special symbol **.bb** is put in the symbol table immediately before the first local symbol of that block. Also a special symbol, **.eb** is put in the symbol table immediately after the last local symbol of that block. The sequence is shown in Figure 19-22.

<b>.bb</b>
local symbols for that block
<b>.eb</b>

Figure 19-22. Special Symbols (.bb and .eb)

Because inner blocks can be nested by several levels, the **.bb-.eb** pairs and associated symbols may also be nested. See Figure 19-23.

## COFF

```
{          /* block 1 */
  int i;
  char c;
  ...
  {          /* block 2 */
    long a;
    ...
    {          /* block 3 */
      int x;
      ....
    }          /* block 3 */
  }          /* block 2 */
  {          /* block 4 */
    long i;
    ...
  }          /* block 4 */
}          /* block 1 */
```

**Figure 19-23. Nested blocks**

The symbol table would look like Figure 19-24.

<b>.bb</b> for block 1
i
c
<b>.bb</b> for block 2
a
<b>.bb</b> for block 3
x
<b>.eb</b> for block 3
<b>.eb</b> for block 2
<b>.bb</b> for block 4
i
<b>.bb</b> for block 4
<b>.eb</b> for block 1

Figure 19-24. Example of the Symbol Table

#### Symbols and Functions

For each function, a special symbol **.bf** is put between the function name and the first local symbol of the function in the symbol table. Also, a special symbol **.ef** is put immediately after the last local symbol of the function in the symbol table. The sequence is shown in Figure 19-25.

function name
<b>.bf</b>
local signal
<b>.ef</b>

Figure 19-25. Symbols for Functions

If the return value of the function is a structure or union, a special symbol **.target** is put between the function name and the **.bf**. The sequence is shown in Figure 19-26.

function name
<b>.target</b>
<b>.bf</b>
<b>local symbols</b>
<b>.ef</b>

**Figure 19-26. Special Symbol .Target**

The **cc** invents **.target** to store the function-return structure or union. The symbol **.target** is an automatic variable with "pointer" type. Its value field in the symbol is always 0.

#### **Symbol Table Entries**

All symbols, regardless of storage class and type, have the same format for their entries in the symbol table. The symbol table entries each contain the 18 bytes of information. The meaning of each of the fields in the symbol table entry is described in Figure 19-27

It should be noted that indices for symbol table entries begin at 0 and count upward. Each auxiliary entry also counts as one symbol.

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-7	(see text below)	<code>_n</code>	These 8 bytes contain either the name of a pointer or the name of a symbol.
8-11	long int	<code>n_value</code>	Symbol value; storage class dependent
12-13	short	<code>n_snum</code>	Section number of symbol
14-15	unsigned short	<code>n_type</code>	Basic and derived type specification
16	char	<code>n_sclass</code>	Storage class of symbol
17	char	<code>n_numaux</code>	Number of auxiliary entries.

Figure 19-27. Symbol Table Entry Format

#### *Symbol Names*

The first 8 bytes in the symbol table entry are a union of a character array and two longs. If the symbol name is eight characters or less, the (null-padded) symbol name is stored there. If the symbol name is longer than eight characters, then the entire symbol name is stored in the string table. In this case, the 8 bytes contain two long integers, the first is zero, and the second is the offset (relative to the beginning of the string table) of the name in the string table. Since there can be no symbols with a null name, the zeroes on the first 4 bytes serve to distinguish a symbol table entry with an offset from one with a name in the first 8 bytes as shown in Figure 19-28.

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-7	char	n_name	8-character null-padded symbol name
0-3	long	n_zeroes	Zero in this field indicates the name is in the string table
4-7	long	n_offset	Offset of the name in the string table

**Figure 19-28. Name Field**

Some special symbols are generated by the *cc* and link editor as discussed in "special symbols". The VAX "cc" prepends an underscore ('\_') to all the user defined symbols it generates.

#### *Storage Classes*

The storage class field has one of the values described in Figure 19-29. These "defines" may be found in the header file *storclass.h*.

Mnemonic	Value	Storage Class
C_EFCN	-1	physical end of a function
C_NULL	0	-
C_AUTO	1	automatic variable
C_EXT	2	external symbol
C_STAT	3	static
C_REG	4	register variable
C_EXTDEF	5	external definition
C_LABEL	6	label
C_ULABEL	7	undefined label
C_MOS	8	member of structure
C_ARG	9	function argument
C_STRTAG	10	structure tag
C_MOU	11	member of union
C_UNTAG	12	union tag
C_TPDEF	13	type definition
C_USTATIC	14	uninitialized static
C_ENTAG	15	enumeration tag
C_MOE	16	member of enumeration
C_REGPARG	17	register parameter
C_FIELD	18	bit field

Figure 19-29. Storage Classes (Sheet 1 of 2)

## COFF

Mnemonic	Value	Storage Class
C_BLOCK	100	beginning and end of block
C_FCN	101	beginning and end of function
C_EOS	102	end of structure
C_FILE	103	file name
C_LINE	104	used only by utility programs
C_ALIAS	105	duplicated tag
C_HIDDEN	106	like static, used to avoid name conflicts

Figure 19-29. Storage Classes (Sheet 2 of 2)

All of these storage classes except for C\_ALIAS and C-HIDDEN are generated by the "cc" or "as". The compress utility, **cprs**, generates the C\_ALIAS mnemonic. This utility (described in the *ICON/UXV System Reference Manual*) removes duplicated structure, union, and enumeration definitions and puts ALIAS entries in their places. The storage class C-HIDDEN is not used by any *ICON/UXV* tools.

Some of these storage classes are used only internally by the "cc" and the "as". These storage classes are C\_EFCN, C\_EXTDEF, C\_ULABEL, C\_USTATIC, and C\_LINE.

### *Storage Classes for Special Symbols*

Some special symbols are restricted to certain storage classes. They are given in Figure 19-30.

Special Symbol	Storage Class
<code>.file</code>	<code>C_FILE</code>
<code>.bb</code>	<code>C_BLOCK</code>
<code>.eb</code>	<code>C_BLOCK</code>
<code>.bf</code>	<code>C_FCN</code>
<code>.ef</code>	<code>C_FCN</code>
<code>.target</code>	<code>C_AUTO</code>
<code>.zfake</code>	<code>C_STRTAG, C_UNTAG, C_ENTAG</code>
<code>.eos</code>	<code>C_EOS</code>
<code>.text</code>	<code>C_STAT</code>
<code>.data</code>	<code>C_STAT</code>
<code>.bss</code>	<code>C_STAT</code>

Figure 19-30. Storage Class by Special Symbols

Also some storage classes are used only for certain special symbols. They are summarized in Figure 19-31.

Storage Class	Special Symbol
<code>C_BLOCK</code>	<code>.bb, .eb</code>
<code>C_FCN</code>	<code>.bf, .ef</code>
<code>C_EOS</code>	<code>.eos</code>
<code>C_FILE</code>	<code>.file</code>

Figure 19-31. Restricted Storage Classes

#### *Symbol Value Field*

The meaning of the "value" of a symbol depends on its storage class. This relationship is summarized in Figure 19-32.

Storage Class	Meaning
C_AUTO	stack offset in bytes
C_EXT	relocatable address
C_STAT	relocatable address
C_REG	register number
C_LABEL	relocatable address
C_MOS	offset in bytes
C_ARG	stack offset in bytes
C_STRTAG	0
C_MOU	0
C_UNTAG	0
C_TPDEF	0
C_ENTAG	0
C_MOE	enumeration value
C_REGPARM	register number
C_FIELD	bit displacement
C_BLOCK	relocatable address
C_FCN	relocatable address
C_EOS	size
C_FILE	(see text below)
C_ALIAS	tag index
C_HIDDEN	relocatable address

Figure 19-32. Storage Class and Value

If a symbol has storage class C\_FILE, the value of that symbol equals the symbol table entry index of the next .file symbol. That is, the .file entries form a 1-way linked list in the symbol table. If there are no more .file entries in the symbol table, the value of the symbol is the index of the first global symbol.

Relocatable symbols have a value equal to the virtual address of that symbol. When the section is relocated by the link editor, the value of these symbols changes.

*Section Number Field*

Section numbers are listed in Figure 19-33.

Mnemonic	Section Number	Meaning
N_DEBUG	-2	Special symbolic debugging symbol
N_ABS	-1	Absolute symbol
N_UNDEF	0	Undefined external symbol
N_SCNUM	1-077777	Section number where symbol was defined

**Figure 19-33. Section Number**

A special section number (-2) marks symbolic debugging symbols, including structure/union/enumeration tag names, typedefs, and the name of the file. A section number of -1 indicates that the symbol has a value but is not relocatable. Examples of absolute-valued symbols include automatic and register variables, function arguments, and `.eos` symbols. The `.text`, `.data`, and `.bss` symbols default to section numbers 1, 2, and 3, respectively.

With one exception, a section number of 0 indicates a relocatable external symbol that is not defined in the current file. The one exception is a multiply defined external symbol (i.e., FORTRAN common or an uninitialized variable defined external to a function in C). In the symbol table of each file where the symbol is defined, the section number of the symbol is 0 and the value of the symbol is a positive number giving the size of the symbol. When the files are combined, the link editor combines all the input symbols into one symbol with the section number of the `.bss` section. The maximum size of all the input symbols with the same name is used to allocate space for the symbol and the value becomes the address of the symbol. This is the only case where a symbol has a section number of 0 and a non-zero value.

*Section Numbers and Storage Classes*

Symbols having certain storage classes are also restricted to certain section numbers. They are summarized in Figure 19-34.

Storage Class	Section Number
C_AUTO	N_ABS
C_EXT	N_ABS, N_UNDEF, N_SCNUM
C_STAT	N_SCNUM
C_REG	N_ABS
C_LABEL	N_UNDEF, N_SCNUM
C_MOS	N_ABS
C_ARG	N_ABS
C_STRTAG	N_DEBUG
C_MOU	N_ABS
C_UNTAG	N_DEBUG
C_TPDEF	N_DEBUG
C_ENTAG	N_DEBUG
C_MOE	N_ABS
C_REGPARM	N_ABS
C_FIELD	N_ABS
C_BLOCK	N_SCNUM
C_FCN	N_SCNUM
C_EOS	N_ABS
C_FILE	N_DEBUG
C_ALIAS	N_DEBUG

Figure 19-34. Section Number and Storage Class

*Type Entry*

The type field in the symbol table entry contains information about the basic and derived type for the symbol. This information is generated by the "cc". The VAX "cc" generates this information only if the **-g** option is used. Each symbol has exactly one basic or fundamental type but can have more than one derived type. The format of the 16-bit type entry is

d6	d5	d4	d3	d2	d1	typ
----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

Bits 0 through 3, called “typ”, indicate one of the fundamental types given in Figure 19-35.

Mnemonic	Value	Type
T_NULL	0	type not assigned
T_CHAR	2	character
T_SHORT	3	short integer
T_INT	4	integer
T_LONG	5	long integer
T_FLOAT	6	floating point
T_DOUBLE	7	double word
T_STRUCT	8	structure
T_UNION	9	union
T_ENUM	10	enumeration
T_MOE	11	member of enumeration
T_UCHAR	12	unsigned character
T_USHORT	13	unsigned short
T_UINT	14	unsigned integer
T_ULONG	15	unsigned long

**Figure 19-35. Fundamental Types**

Bits 4 through 15 are arranged as six 2-bit fields marked “d1” through “d6.” These “d” fields represent levels of the derived types given in Figure 19-36.

Mnemonic	Value	Type
DT_NON	0	no derived type
DT_PTR	1	pointer
DT_FCN	2	function
DT_ARY	3	array

**Figure 19-36. Derived Types**

The following examples demonstrate the interpretation of the symbol table entry representing type.

## COFF

```
char *func();
```

Here *func* is the name of a function that returns a pointer to a character. The fundamental type of *func* is 2 (character), the d1 field is 2 (function), and the d2 field is 1 (pointer). Therefore, the type word in the symbol table for *func* contains the hexadecimal number 0x62, which is interpreted to mean "function that returns a pointer to a character."

```
short *tabptr[10][25][9];
```

Here *tabptr* is a 3-dimensional array of pointers to short integers. The fundamental type of *tabptr* is 3 (short integer); the d1, d2, and d3 fields each contains a 3 (array), and the d4 field is 1 (pointer). Therefore, the type entry in the symbol table contains the hexadecimal number 0x7f3 indicating a "3-dimensional array of pointers to short integers."

### Type Entries and Storage Classes

Figure 19-37 shows the type entries that are legal for each storage class.

Storage Class	-----"d" entry-----			"typ" entry
	Function?	Array?	Pointer?	Basic Type
C_AUTO	no	yes	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_EXT	yes	yes	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_STAT	yes	yes	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_REG	no	no	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_LABEL	no	no	no	T_NULL
C_MOS	no	yes	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_ARG	yes	no	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_STRTAG	no	no	no	T_STRUCT
C_MOU	no	yes	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_UNTAG	no	no	no	T_UNION

Figure 19-37. Type Entries by Storage Class (Sheet 1 of 2)

Storage Class	-----“d” entry-----			“typ” entry
	Function?	Array?	Pointer?	Basic Type
C_TPDEF	no	yes	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_ENTAG	no	no	no	T_ENUM
C_MOE	no	no	no	T_MOE
C_REGPARM	no	no	yes	Any except T_MOE
C_FIELD	no	no	no	T_ENUM, T_UCHAR, T_USHORT, T_UNIT, T_ULONG
C_BLOCK	no	no	no	T_NULL
C_FCN	no	no	no	T_NULL
C_EOS	no	no	no	T_NULL
C_FILE	no	no	no	T_NULL
C_ALIAS	no	no	no	T_STRUCT, T_UNION<, T_ENUM

Figure 19-37. Type Entries by Storage Class (Sheet 2 of 2)

Conditions for the “d” entries apply to d1 through d6, except that it is impossible to have two consecutive derived types of “function.”

Although function arguments can be declared as arrays, they are changed to pointers by default. Therefore, no function argument can have “array” as its first derived type.

#### *Structure for Symbol Table Entries*

The C language structure declaration for the symbol table entry is given in Figure 19-38. This declaration may be found in the header file *syms.h*.

# COFF

```
struct syment
{
  union
  {
    char      _n_name[SYMNMLEN];
              /* symbol name */

    struct
    {
      long    _n_zeroes;
              /* symbol name */

      long    _n_offset;
              /* location in string table */
    } _n_n;
    char      _n_nptr[2];
              /* allows overlaying */
    } _n;
    long      n_value;
              /* value of symbol */

    short     n_scnm;
              /* section number */

    unsigned short  n_type;
              /* type and derived */

    char      n_sclass;
              /* storage class */

    char      n_numaux;
              /* number of aux entries */
  };

#define n_name      _n_n_name
#define n_zeroes    _n_n_n_n_zeroes
#define n_offset    _n_n_n_n_offset
#define n_nptr      _n_n_nptr[1]

#define SYMNMLEN 8
#define SYMESZ 18 /* size of a symbol table entry */
```

**Figure 19-38. Symbol Table Entry Declaration**

## Auxiliary Table Entries

Currently, there is at most one auxiliary entry per symbol. The auxiliary table entry contains the same number of bytes as the symbol table entry. However, unlike symbol table entries, the format of an auxiliary table entry of a symbol depends on its type and storage class. They are summarized in Figure 19-39.

Name	Storage	Type Entry		Auxiliary Entry Format
	Class	d1	typ	
<b>.file</b>	C_FILE	DT_NON	T_NULL	file name
<b>.text,.data, .bss</b>	C_STAT	DT_NON	T_NULL	section
tagname	C_STRTAG C_UNTAG C_ENTAG	DT_NON	T_NULL	tag name
<b>.eos</b>	C_EOS	DT_NON	T_NULL	end of structure
fname	C_EXT C_STAT	DT_FCN	(Note 1)	function
arrname <b>.bb</b>	(Note 2) C_BLOCK	DT_ARY DT_NON	(Note 1) T_NULL	array beginning of block
<b>.eb</b>	C_BLOCK	DT_NON	T_NULL	end of block
<b>.bf,.ef</b>	C_FCN	DT_NON	T_NULL	beginning and end of function
name related to structure union, enumeration	(Note 2)	DT_PTR DT_ARR, DT_NON	T_STRUCT, T_UNION, T_ENUM	name related to structure, union, enumeration

**Notes:**

1. Any except T\_MOE.
2. C\_AUTO, C\_STAT, C\_MOS, C\_MOU, C\_TPDEF.

**Figure 19-39. Auxiliary Symbol Table Entries**

In Figure 19-39, "tagname" means any symbol name including the special symbol `.xfake`, and "fname" and "arrname" represent any symbol name.

Any symbol that satisfies more than one condition in Figure 19-39 should have a union format in its auxiliary entry. Symbols that do not satisfy any of the above conditions should **NOT** have any auxiliary entry.

## COFF

### *File Names*

Each of the auxiliary table entries for a file name contains a 14-character file name in bytes 0 through 13. The remaining bytes are 0, regardless of the size of the entry.

### *Sections*

The auxiliary table entries for sections have the format as shown in Figure 19-40.

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-3	long int	x_scnlen	section length
4-6	unsigned short	x_nreloc	number of relocation entries
6-7	unsigned short	x_nlinno	number of line numbers
8-17	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)

**Figure 19-40. Format for Auxiliary Table Entries**

### *Tag Names*

The auxiliary table entries for tag names have the format shown in Figure 19-41.

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-5	-	-	unused (filled with zeros)
6-7	unsigned short	x_size	size of struct, union, and enumeration
8-11	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)
12-15	long int	x_endndx	index of next entry beyond this structure, union, or enumeration
16-17	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)

Figure 19-41. Tag Names Table Entries

*End of Structures*

The auxiliary table entries for the end of structures have the format shown in Figure 19-42:

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-3	long int	x_tagndx	tag index
4-5	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)
6-7	unsigned short	x_size	size of struct, union, or enumeration
8-17	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)

Figure 19-42. Table Entries for End of Structures

## COFF

### *Functions*

The auxiliary table entries for functions have the format shown in Figure 19-43:

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-3	long int	x_tagndx	tag index
4-7	long int	x_fsize	size of function (in bytes)
8-11	long int	x_lnnoptr	file pointer to line number
12-15	long int	x_endndx	index of next entry beyond this point
16-17	unsigned short	x_tvndx	index of the function's address in the transfer vector table (not used in <i>ICON/UXV</i> system)

**Figure 19-43. Table Entries for Functions**

### *Arrays*

The auxiliary table entries for arrays have the format shown in Figure 19-44:

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-3	long int	x_tagndx	tag index
4-5	unsigned short	x_lno	line number of declaration
6-7	unsigned short	x_size	size of array
8-9	unsigned short	x_dimen[0]	first dimension
10-11	unsigned short	x_dimen[1]	second dimension
12-13	unsigned short	x_dimen[2]	third dimension
14-15	unsigned short	x_dimen[3]	fourth dimension
16-17	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)

Figure 19-44. Table Entries for Arrays

*End of Blocks and Functions*

The auxiliary table entries for the end of blocks and functions have the format shown in Figure 19-45:

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-3	-	-	used (filled with zeroes)
4-5	unsigned short	x_lno	C-source line number
6-17	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)

Figure 19-45. End of Block and Function Entries

## COFF

### *Beginning of Blocks and Functions*

The auxiliary table entries for the beginning of blocks and functions have the format shown in Figure 19-46:

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-3	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)
4-5	unsigned short	x_lno	C-source line number
6-11	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)
12-15	long int	x_endndx	index of next entry past this block
16-17	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)

**Figure 19-46. Format for Beginning of Block and Function**

### *Names Related to Structures, Unions, and Enumerations*

The auxiliary table entries for structure, union, and enumerations symbols have the format shown in Figure 19-47:

Bytes	Declaration	Name	Description
0-3	long int	x_tagndx	tag index
4-5	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)
6-7	unsigned short	x_size	size of the structure, union, or numeration
8-17	-	-	unused (filled with zeroes)

Figure 19-47. Entries for Structures, Unions, and Numerations

Names defined by “typedef” may or may not have auxiliary table entries. For example,

```
typedef struct people STUDENT;

struct people {
    char name[20];
    long id;
};

typedef struct people EMPLOYEE;
```

The symbol “EMPLOYEE” has an auxiliary table entry in the symbol table but symbol “STUDENT” will not.

#### *Auxiliary Entry Declaration*

The C language structure declaration for an auxiliary symbol table entry is given in Figure 19-48. This declaration may be found in the header file *syms.h*.

## COFF

```
union auxent {
  struct {
    long x_tagndx;

    union {
      struct {
        unsigned short x_lnno;
        unsigned short x_size;
      } x_lnsz;
      long x_fsize;
    } x_misc;
    union {
      struct {
        long x_lnnoptr;
        long x_endndx;
      } x_fcn;
      struct {
        unsigned short x_dimen[DIMNUM];
      } x_ary;
      struct {
        unsigned short x_tvndx;
      } x_sym;
      struct {
        char x_fname[FILNMLEN];
      } x_file;
      struct {
        long x_scnlen;
        unsigned short x_nreloc;
        unsigned short x_nlinno;
      } x_scn;
      struct {
        long x_tvfill;
        unsigned short x_tvlen;
        unsigned short x_tvran[2];
      } x_tv;
    }
  }
}
#define FILNMLEN 14
#define DIMNUM 4
#define AUXENT union auxent
#define AUXESZ 18
```

Figure 19-48. Auxiliary Symbol Table Entry

## STRING TABLE

Symbol table names longer than eight characters are stored contiguously in the string table with each symbol name delimited by a null byte. The first four bytes of the string table are the size of the string table in bytes; offsets into the string table therefore are greater than or equal to 4.

For example, given a file containing two symbols (with names longer than eight characters, *long\_name\_1* and *another\_one*) the string table has the format as shown in Figure 19-49:

28			
'l'	'o'	'n'	'g'
'_'	'n'	'a'	'm'
'e'	'_'	'l'	'\0'
'a'	'n'	'o'	't'
'h'	'e'	'r'	'_'
'o'	'n'	'e'	'\0'

Figure 19-49. String Table

The index of *long\_name\_1* in the string table is 4 and the index of *another\_one* is 16.

## ACCESS ROUTINES

Supplied with every standard *ICON/UXV* release is a set of access routines that are used for reading the various parts of a common object file. Although the calling program must know the detailed structure of the parts of the object file it processes, the routines effectively insulate the calling program from the knowledge of the overall structure of the object file. In this way, you can concern yourself with the section you are interested in without knowing all the object

## COFF

file details.

The access routines can be divided into four categories:

1. Functions that open or close an object file.
2. Functions that read header or symbol table information.
3. Functions that position an object file at the start of a particular section of the object file.
4. A function that returns the symbol table index for a particular symbol.

These routines can be found in the library *libld.a* and are listed in Section 3 of the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual*. A summary of what is available can be found in the *ICON/UXV Programmer Reference Manual* under LDFCN(4).

## Chapter 20

# SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	20-1
INTRODUCTION .....	20-1
WARNINGS .....	20-2
Comparison Instructions .....	20-2
Overloading of Opcodes .....	20-3
USE OF THE ASSEMBLER .....	20-3
GENERAL SYNTAX RULES .....	20-3
Format of Assembly Language Line .....	20-3
Comments .....	20-4
Identifiers .....	20-4
Register Identifiers .....	20-5
Constants .....	20-6
Other Syntactic Details .....	20-7
SEGMENTS, LOCATION COUNTERS, AND LABELS .....	20-7
Segments .....	20-7
Location Counters and Labels .....	20-8
TYPES .....	20-8
EXPRESSIONS .....	20-9
PSEUDO-OPERATIONS .....	20-10
Data Initialization Operations .....	20-10
Symbol Definition Operations .....	20-11
Location Counter Control Operations: .....	20-11
Symbolic Debugging Operations .....	20-12
Switch Table Operation .....	20-14
SPAN-DEPENDENT OPTIMIZATION .....	20-14
ADDRESS MODE SYNTAX .....	20-16
MACHINE INSTRUCTIONS .....	20-19
Instructions For The MC68000/MC68010/MC68020 .....	20-19
Instructions For the MC68881 .....	20-30



## Chapter 20

# SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

### GENERAL

This chapter was first published as a manual by the Motorola Corporation, first edition 1984. The current edition is reprinted by Icon International with permission by Motorola Inc.

Icon makes no representation or warranties with respect to the contents of this manual and disclaims any implied warranties or fitness for any particular application. Icon reserves the right to revise this manual without obligation to notify any person or organization of such revision.

The information in this document has been carefully checked and is believed to be entirely reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed for inaccuracies.

### INTRODUCTION

This is a reference manual for the ICON/UX resident assembler, *as*. Programmers familiar with the M68000 family of processors should be able to program in *as* by referring to this manual, but this is not a manual for the processor itself. Details about the effects of instructions, meanings of status register bits, handling of interrupts, and many other issues are not dealt with here. This manual, therefore, should be used in conjunction with the following reference manuals:

- M68000 16/32-Bit Microprocessor Programmer's Reference Manual, Fourth Edition; Englewood Cliffs, NJ: PRENTICE-HALL, 1984. This manual is also available from the Motorola Literature Distribution Center, P.O. Box 20912, Phoenix, AZ 85036, part number M68000UM.
- MC68020 32-Bit Microprocessor User's Manual; Englewood Cliffs, NJ: PRENTICE-HALL, 1984. This manual is also available from the Motorola Literature Distribution Center, part number MC68020UM.
- M68000 Family Resident Structured Assembler Reference Manual, part number M68KMASM.

---

#### Trademarks

UNIX is a registered trademark of AT&T.

EXORmacs, EXORterm, and SYSTEM V/68 are trademarks of Motorola, Inc.

VAX is a trademark of Digital Equipment Corporation.

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

- SYSTEM V/68 User's Manual, part number M68KUNUM.
- SYSTEM V/68 VM04 System Manual, part number M68KVM4SYS. This document includes user manual pages to support the MC68881 floating point co-processor provided in SYSTEM V/68 Release 2, Version 2 from Motorola Corp.

This guide also contains information for users of the SGS M68020 Cross Compilation System. For these users, references to *as*(1) and *cc*(1) should be read as *as20*(1) and *cc20*(1). Information about these commands is provided in the SGS M68020 Cross Compilation System Reference Manual, part number M68KUNASX.

### WARNINGS

A few important warnings to the *as* user should be emphasized at the outset. Though for the most part there is a direct correspondence between *as* notation and the notation used in the documents listed in the preceding section, several exceptions exist that could lead the unsuspecting user to write incorrect code. In addition to the exceptions described in the following paragraphs, refer also to sections 10 and 11 for information about address mode syntax and machine instructions.

#### Comparison Instructions

First, the order of the operands in *compare* instructions follows one convention in the M68000 Programmer's Reference Manual and the opposite convention in *as*. Using the convention of the M68000 Programmer's Reference Manual, one might write

<b>CMP.W</b>	<b>D5,D3</b>	<b>Is D3 less than D5?</b>
<b>BLE</b>	<b>IS_LESS</b>	<b>Branch if less.</b>

Using the *as* convention, one would write

<b>cmp.w</b>	<b>%d3,%d5</b>	<b># Is d3 less than d5?</b>
<b>ble</b>	<b>is_less</b>	<b># Branch if less.</b>

As follows the convention used by other assemblers supported in the UNIX<sup>®</sup> operating system (both the 3B20S and the VAX follow this convention). This convention makes for straightforward reading of *compare-and-branch* instruction sequences, but does nonetheless lead to the peculiarity that if a *compare* instruction is replaced by a *subtract* instruction, the effect on the condition codes will be entirely different. This may be confusing to programmers who are used to thinking of a comparison as a subtraction whose result is not stored. Users of *as* who become accustomed to the convention will find that both the *compare* and *subtract* notations make sense in their respective contexts.

---

UNIX is a registered trademark of AT&T.

### Overloading of Opcodes

Another issue that users must be aware of arises from the M68000 processors' use of several different instructions to do more or less the same thing. For example, the M68000 Programmer's Reference Manual lists the instructions **SUB**, **SUBA**, **SUBI**, and **SUBQ**, which all have the effect of subtracting their source operand from their destination operand. As provides the convenience of allowing all these operations to be specified by a single assembly instruction **sub**. On the basis of the operands given to the **sub** instruction, the *as* assembler selects the appropriate M68000 operation code. The danger created by this convenience is that it could leave the misleading impression that all forms of the **SUB** operation are semantically identical. In fact, they are not. The careful reader of the M68000 Programmer's Reference Manual will notice that whereas **SUB**, **SUBI**, and **SUBQ** all affect the condition codes in a consistent way, **SUBA** does not affect the condition codes at all. Consequently, the *as* user must be aware that when the destination of a **sub** instruction is an address register (which causes the **sub** to be mapped into the operation code for **SUBA**), the condition codes will not be affected.

## USE OF THE ASSEMBLER

The SYSTEM V/68 command *as* invokes the assembler and has the following syntax:

```
as [-o output] file
```

When *as* is invoked with the **-o** *output* flag, the output of the assembly is put in the file *output*. If the **-o** flag is not specified, the output is left in a file whose name is formed by removing the **.s** suffix, if there is one, from the input filename and appending a **.o** suffix.

The M68020 cross assembler, *as20*(1), is invoked with the same syntax as *as*(1). For information about additional options for these commands, refer to the *SYSTEM V/68 User's Manual* for *as*(1) and the *SGS M68020 Cross Compilation System Reference Manual* for *as20*(1).

## GENERAL SYNTAX RULES

### Format of Assembly Language Line

Typical lines of *as* assembly code look like these:

```
# Clear a block of memory at location %a3

      text      2
      move.w    &const,%d1
loop:  clr.l     (%a3)+
      dbf      %d1,loop    # go back for const
                               # repetitions

init2:
      clr.l    count; clr.l credit; clr.l debit;
```

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

These general points about the example should be noted:

- An identifier occurring at the beginning of a line and followed by a colon (:) is a *label*. One or more *labels* may precede any assembly language instruction or pseudo-operation. Refer to Section 5.2, "Location Counters and Labels."
- A line of assembly code need not include an instruction. It may consist of a comment alone (introduced by #), a label alone (terminated by :), or it may be entirely blank.
- It is good practice to use tabs to align assembly language operations and their operands into columns, but this is not a requirement of the assembler. An opcode may appear at the beginning of the line, if desired, and spaces may precede a label. A single blank or tab suffices to separate an opcode from its operands. Additional blanks and tabs are ignored by the assembler.
- It is permissible to write several instructions on one line separating them by semicolons. The semicolon is syntactically equivalent to a newline character; however, a semicolon inside a comment is ignored.

### Comments

Comments are introduced by the character # and continue to the end of the line. Comments may appear anywhere and are completely disregarded by the assembler.

### Identifiers

An identifier is a string of characters taken from the set **a-z**, **A-Z**, **\_**, **~**, **%**, and **0-9**. The first character of an identifier must be a letter (uppercase or lowercase) or an underscore. Uppercase and lowercase letters are distinguished; for example, **con35** and **CON35** are two distinct identifiers.

There is no limit on the length of an identifier.

The value of an identifier is established by the **set** pseudo-operation (refer to Section 8.2, "Symbol Definition Operations") or by using it as a label. Refer to Section 5.2, "Location Counters and Labels".

The tilde character (~) has special significance to the assembler. A ~ used alone, as an identifier, means "the current location". A ~ used as the first character in an identifier becomes a period (.) in the symbol table, allowing symbols such as **.eos** and **.Ofake** to be entered into the symbol table, as required by the Common Object File format (COFF). Information about file formats is provided in the *SYSTEM V/68 User's Manual*, Section 4.

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

### Register Identifiers

A register identifier is an identifier preceded by the character %, and represents one of the MC68000 processor's registers. The predefined register identifiers are;

%d0	%d4	%a0	%a4	%acc	%usp
%d1	%d5	%a1	%a5	%pc	%fp
%d2	%d6	%a2	%a6	%sp	
%d3	%d7	%a3	%a7	%sr	

**Note:** The identifiers %a7 and %sp represent the same machine register. Likewise, %a6 and %fp are equivalent. Use of both %a7 and %sp, or %a6 and %fp, in the same program may result in confusion.

The current version of the assembler will correctly assemble instructions intended for the M68010. There will be a warning message issued. The following additions will be flagged with warnings:

REGISTERS ADDED FOR THE MC68010	
NAME	DESCRIPTION
%sfc	Source Function Code Register
%dfc	Destination Function Code Register
%vbr	Vector Base Register

The entire register set of the MC68000 and MC68010 is included in the MC68020 register set. The following are new control registers for the MC68020:

MC68020 REGISTERS	
NAME	DESCRIPTION
%caar	Cache Address Register
%caacr	Cache Control Register
%isp	Interrupt Stack Pointer
%msp	Master Stack Pointer

The following are suppressed registers (zero registers) used in various MC68020 addressing modes:

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68020 ZERO REGISTERS		
SUPPRESSED ADDRESS REGISTERS	SUPPRESSED DATA REGISTERS	SUPPRESSED PROGRAM COUNTER
<code>%za0</code>	<code>%zd0</code>	<code>%zpc</code>
<code>%za1</code>	<code>%zd1</code>	
<code>%za2</code>	<code>%zd2</code>	
<code>%za3</code>	<code>%zd3</code>	
<code>%za4</code>	<code>%zd4</code>	
<code>%za5</code>	<code>%zd5</code>	
<code>%za6</code>	<code>%zd6</code>	
<code>%za7</code>	<code>%zd7</code>	

### Constants

*As* deals only with integer constants. They may be entered in decimal, octal, or hexadecimal, or they may be entered as character constants. Internally, *as* treats all constants as 32-bit binary two's complement quantities.

#### *Numerical Constants*

A decimal constant is a string of digits beginning with a non-zero digit. An octal constant is a string of digits beginning with zero. A hexadecimal constant consists of the characters **0x** or **0X** followed by a string of characters from the set **0-9**, **a-f**, and **A-F**. In hexadecimal constants, uppercase and lowercase letters are not distinguished.

Examples:

```
set      const,35      # Decimal 35
mov.w    &035,%d1     # Octal 35 (decimal 29)
set      const,0x35   # Hex 35 (decimal 53)
mov.w    &0xff,%d1    # Hex ff (decimal 255)
```

#### *Character Constants*

An ordinary character constant consists of a single-quote character (') followed by an arbitrary ASCII character other than the backslash (\). The value of the constant is equal to the ASCII code for the character. Special meanings of characters are overridden when used in character constants; for example, if '# is used, the # is not treated as introducing a comment.

A special character constant consists of '\ followed by another character. All the special character constants and examples of ordinary character constants are listed in the following table.

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

CONSTANT	VALUE	MEANING
'\ b	0x08	Backspace
'\ t	0x09	Horizontal Tab
'\ n	0x0a	Newline (Line Feed)
'\ v	0x0b	Vertical Tab
'\ f	0x0c	Form Feed
'\ r	0x0d	Carriage Return
'\ \	0x5c	Backslash
' '	0x27	Single Quote
'0	0x30	Zero
'A	0x41	Uppercase A
'a	0x61	Lowercase a

### Other Syntactic Details

A discussion of expression syntax appears in Section 7 of this guide. Information about the syntax of specific components of *as* instructions and pseudo-operations is given in Sections 8, 9, and 10.

## SEGMENTS, LOCATION COUNTERS, AND LABELS

### Segments

A program in *as* assembly language may be broken into segments known as *text*, *data* and *bss* segments. The convention regarding the use of these segments is to place instructions in *text* segments, initialized data in *data* segments, and uninitialized data in *bss* segments. However, the assembler does not enforce this convention; for example, it permits intermixing of instructions and data in a *text* segment.

Primarily to simplify compiler code generation, the assembler permits up to four separate *text* segments and four separate *data* segments named **0**, **1**, **2**, and **3**. The assembly language program may switch freely between them by using assembler pseudo-operations (refer to Section 8.3, "Location Counter Control Operations"). When generating the object file, the assembler concatenates the *text* segments to generate a single *text* segment, and the *data* segments to generate a single *data* segment. Thus, the object file contains only one *text* segment and only one *data* segment. There is always only one *bss* segment and it maps directly into the object file.

Because the assembler keeps together everything from a given segment when generating the object file, the order in which information appears in the object file may not be the same as in the assembly language file. For example, if the data for a program consisted of

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

```
data    1          # segment 1
short  0x1111
data    0          # segment 0
long   0xff ff ff
data    1          # segment 1
byte   0xff
```

then equivalent object code would be generated by

```
data    0
long   0xffffffff
short  0x1111
byte   0xff
```

---

### Location Counters and Labels

The assembler maintains separate *location counters* for the *bss* segment and for each of the *text* and *data* segments. The location counter for a given segment is incremented by one for each byte generated in that segment.

The location counters allow values to be assigned to labels. When an identifier is used as a label in the assembly language input, the current value of the current location counter is assigned to the identifier. The assembler also keeps track of which segment the label appeared in. Thus, the identifier represents a memory location relative to the beginning of a particular segment. Any label relative to the location counter should be within the text segment.

## TYPES

Identifiers and expressions may have values of different types.

- In the simplest case, an expression (or identifier) may have an *absolute* value, such as 29, -5000, or 262143.
- An expression (or identifier) may have a value relative to the start of a particular segment. Such a value is known as a *relocatable* value. The memory location represented by such an expression cannot be known at assembly time, but the relative values of two such expressions (i.e., the difference between them) can be known if they refer to the same segment.

Identifiers which appear as labels have *relocatable* values.

- If an identifier is never assigned a value, it is assumed to be an *undefined external*. Such identifiers may be used with the expectation that their values will be defined in another program, and therefore known at load time; but the relative values of *undefined externals* cannot be known.

## EXPRESSIONS

For conciseness, the following abbreviations are useful:

<b>abs</b>	absolute expression
<b>rel</b>	relocatable expression
<b>ext</b>	undefined external

All constants are absolute expressions. An identifier may be thought of as an expression having the identifier's type. Expressions may be built up from lesser expressions using the operators +, -, \*, and /, according to the following type rules:

**abs + abs = abs**  
**abs + rel = rel + abs = rel**  
**abs + ext = ext + abs = ext**

**abs — abs = abs**  
**rel — abs = rel**  
**ext — abs = ext**  
**rel — rel = abs** (provided that  
the two relocatable expressions are relative to the same segment)

**abs \* abs = abs**

**abs / abs = abs**

**— abs = abs**

**Note:** **rel — rel** expressions are permitted only within the context of a switch statement (refer to Section 8.5, "Switch Table Operation".) Use of a **rel — rel** expression is dangerous, particularly when dealing with identifiers from *text* segments. The problem is that the assembler will determine the value of the expression before it has resolved all questions concerning span-dependent optimizations.

The unary minus operator takes the highest precedence; the next highest precedence is given to \* and /, and lowest precedence is given to + and -. Parentheses may be used to coerce the order of evaluation.

If the result of a division is a positive non-integer, it will be truncated toward zero. If the result is a negative non-integer, the direction of truncation cannot be guaranteed.

PSEUDO-OPERATIONS

Data Initialization Operations

**byte** *abs,abs,...*

One or more arguments, separated by commas, may be given. The values of the arguments are computed to produce successive bytes in the assembly output.

**short** *abs,abs,...*

One or more arguments, separated by commas, may be given. The values of the arguments are computed to produce successive 16-bit words in the assembly output.

**long** *expr,expr,...*

One or more arguments, separated by commas, may be given. Each expression may be *absolute*, *relocatable*, or *undefined external*. A 32-bit quantity is generated for each such argument (in the case of *relocatable* or *undefined external* expressions, the actual value may not be filled in until load time).

Alternatively, the arguments may be bit-field expressions. A bit-field expression has the form

*n* : *value*

where both *n* and *value* denote *absolute* expressions. The quantity *n* represents a field width; the low-order *n* bits of *value* become the contents of the bit-field. Successive bit-fields fill up 32-bit long quantities starting with the high-order part. If the sum of the lengths of the bit-fields is less than 32 bits, the assembler creates a 32-bit long with zeroes filling out the low-order bits. For example,

**long**            **4: -1, 16: 0x7f, 12:0, 5000**

and

**long**            **4: -1, 16: 0x7f, 5000**

are equivalent to

**long**            **0xf007f000, 5000**

Bit-fields may not span pairs of 32-bit longs. Thus,

**long**            **24: 0xa, 24: 0xb, 24:0xc**

yields the same thing as

**long**                    **0x00000a00, 0x00000b00, 0x00000c00**

**space** *abs*

The value of *abs* is computed, and the resultant number of bytes of zero data is generated. For example,

**space**                    **6**

is equivalent to

**byte**                    **0,0,0,0,0,0**

## Symbol Definition Operations

**set** *identifier,expr*

The value of *identifier* is set equal to *expr*, which may be absolute or relocatable.

**comm** *identifier,abs*

The named identifier is to be assigned to a common area of size *abs* bytes. If *identifier* is not defined by another program, the loader will allocate space for it.

**lcomm** *identifier,abs*

The named *identifier* is assigned to a *local common* of size *abs* bytes. This results in allocation of space in the *bss* segment.

The type of *identifier* becomes *relocatable*.

**global** *identifier*

This causes *identifier* to be externally visible. If *identifier* is defined in the current program, then declaring it global allows the loader to resolve references to *identifier* in other programs.

If *identifier* is not defined in the current program, the assembler expects an external resolution; in this case, therefore, *identifier* is global by default.

## Location Counter Control Operations:

**data** *abs*

The argument, if present, must evaluate to 0, 1, 2, or 3; this indicates the number of the data segment into which assembly is to be directed. If no argument is present, assembly is directed into *data* segment 0.

**text** *abs*

The argument, if present, must evaluate to 0, 1, 2, or 3; this indicates the number of the *text* segment into which assembly is to be directed. If no argument is present, assembly is directed into *text* segment 0.

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

Before the first **text** or **data** operation is encountered, assembly is by default directed into *text* segment 0.

### **org** *expr*

The current location counter is set to *expr*. *Expr* must represent a value in the current segment, and must not be less than the current location counter.

### **even**

The current location counter is rounded up to the next even value.

### Symbolic Debugging Operations

The assembler allows for symbolic debugging information to be placed into the object code file with special pseudo-operations. The information typically includes line numbers and information about C language symbols, such as their type and storage class. The C compiler (*cc(1)*) generates symbolic debugging information when the **-g** option is used. Assembler programmers may also include such information in source files.

#### *file* and *ln*

The **file** pseudo-operation passes the name of the source file into the object file symbol table. It has the form

**file** *filename*

where *filename* consists of one to 14 characters enclosed in quotation marks.

The **ln** pseudo-operation makes a line number table entry in the object file. That is, it associates a line number with a memory location. Usually the memory location is the current location in *text*. The format is

**ln** *line*[,*value*]

where *line* is the line number. The optional *value* is the address in *text*, *data*, or *bss* to associate with the line number. The default when *value* is omitted (which is usually the case) is the current location in *text*.

#### *Symbol Attribute Operations*

The basic symbolic testing pseudo-operations are **def** and **endif**. These operations enclose other pseudo-operations that assign attributes to a symbol and must be paired.

```
def      name
.        # Attribute
.        # Assigning
.        # Operations
endif
```

## NOTES

- **def** does not define the symbol, although it does create a symbol table entry. Because an undefined symbol is treated as external, a symbol which appears in a **def**, but which never acquires a value, will ultimately result in an error at link edit time.
- to allow the assembler to calculate the sizes of functions for other tools, each **def/endif** pair that defines a function name must be matched by a **def/endif** pair after the function in which a storage class of **—1** is assigned.

The paragraphs below describe the attribute-assigning operations. Keep in mind that all of these operations apply to symbol *name* which appeared in the opening **def** pseudo-operation.

**val** *expr*

Assigns the value *expr* to *name*. the type of the expression *expr* determines with which section *name* is associated. If value is **~**, the current location in the *text* section is used.

**scl** *expr*

Declares the C language type of *name*. The expression *expr* must yield an ABSOLUTE value that corresponds to the C compiler's internal representation of a storage class. The special value **—1** designates the physical end of a function.

**type** *expr*

Declares the C language type of *name*. The expression *expr* must yield an ABSOLUTE value that corresponds to the C compiler's internal representation of a basic or derived type.

**tag** *str*

Associates *name* with the structure, enumeration, or union named *str* which must have already been declared with a **def/endif** pair.

**line** *expr*

Provides the line number of *name*, where *name* is a block symbol. The expression *expr* should yield an ABSOLUTE value that represents a line number.

**size** *expr*

Gives a size for *name*. The expression *expr* must yield an ABSOLUTE value. When *name* is a structure or an array with a predetermined extent, *expr* gives the size in bytes. For bit fields, the size is in bits.

**dim** *expr1,expr2,...*

Indicates that *name* is an array. Each of the expressions must yield an ABSOLUTE value that provides the corresponding array dimension.

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

### Switch Table Operation

The C compiler generates a compact set of instructions for the C language *switch* construct. An example is shown below.

```
sub.l    &1,%d0
cmp.l    %d0,&4
bhi     L%21
add.w    %d0,%d0
mov.w    10(%pc,%d0.w),%d0
jmp      6(%pc,%d0.w)
swbeg    &5

L%22:
short   L%15-L%22
short   L%21-L%22
short   L%16-L%22
short   L%21-L%22
short   L%17-L%22
```

The special **swbeg** pseudo-operation communicates to the assembler that the lines following it contain **rel-rel** subtractions. Remember that ordinarily such subtractions are risky because of span-dependent optimization. In this case, however, the assembler makes special allowances for the subtraction because the compiler guarantees that both symbols will be defined in the current assembler file, and that one of the symbols is a fixed distance away from the current location.

The **swbeg** pseudo-operation takes an argument that looks like an immediate operand. The argument is the number of lines that follow **swbeg** and that contain switch table entries. **Swbeg** inserts two words into text. The first is the **ILLEGAL** instruction code. The second is the number of table entries that follow. The disassembler *dis(1)* needs the **ILLEGAL** instruction as a hint that what follows is a switch table. Otherwise, it would get confused when it tried to decode the table entries, differences between two symbols, as instructions.

### SPAN-DEPENDENT OPTIMIZATION

The assembler makes certain choices about the object code it generates based on the distance between an instruction and its operand(s). Span-dependent optimization occurs most obviously in the choice of object code for branches and jumps. It also occurs when an operand may be represented by the program counter relative address mode instead of as an absolute 2-word (**long**) address. The span-dependent optimization capability is normally enabled; the **-n** command line flag disables it. When this capability is disabled, the assembler makes worst-case assumptions about the types of object code that must be generated. Span-dependent optimizations are performed only within **text** segment 0. Any reference outside **text** segment 0 is assumed to be worst-case.

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

The C compiler (*cc(1)*) generates branch instructions without a specific offset size. When the optimizer is used, it identifies branches which could be represented by the short form, and it changes the operation accordingly. The assembler chooses only between long and very-long representations for branches.

For the MC68000 and MC68010 processors, branch instructions, e.g., **bra**, **bsr**, or **bgt**, can have either a byte or a word pc-relative address operand. A byte or word size specification should be used only when the user is sure that the address intended can be represented in the byte or word allowed. The assembler will take one of these instructions with a size specification and generate the byte or word form of the instruction without asking questions.

Although the largest offset specification allowed for the M68000 and M68010 is a word,\* large programs could conceivably have need for a branch to location not reachable by a word displacement. Therefore, equivalent long forms of these instructions might be needed. When the Assembler encounters a branch instructions without a size specification, it tries to choose between the long and very-long forms of the instruction. If the operand can be represented in a word, then the word form of the instruction will be generated. Otherwise, the very-long form will be generated. For unconditional branches, e.g., **br**, **bra**, and **bsr**, the very-long form is just the equivalent jump (**jmp** and **jsr**) with an absolute address operand (instead of pc-relative). For conditional branches, the equivalent very-long form is a conditional branch around a jump, where the conditional test has been reversed.

The following table summarizes span-dependent optimizations. The assembler chooses only between the long form and the very-long form, while the optimizer chooses between the short and long forms for branches (but not **bsr**).

ASSEMBLER SPAN-DEPENDENT OPTIMIZATIONS			
Instruction	Short Form	Long Form	Very-Long Form
<b>br, bra, bsr</b>	<b>byte offset</b>	word offset (See footnote for information about M68020.)	<b>jmp</b> or <b>jsr</b> with absolute long address
conditional branch	byte offset	word offset (See footnote for information about M68020.)	short conditional branch with reversed condition around <b>jmp</b> with absolute long address
<b>jmp, jsr</b>		pc-relative address	absolute long address
<b>lea.l, pea.l</b>		pc-relative address	absolute long address

\* The M68020 allows long word offset, as shown by the syntax for the branch instructions.

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

For the MC68020 processor, branch instructions can have either a byte, word, or long pc-relative address operand. The assembler still chooses between word and long representations for branches if no byte size specification is given; however, the long form is replaced by a branch long with pc-relative address instead of a jump with absolute long address.

### ADDRESS MODE SYNTAX

The following table summarizes the *as* syntax for MC68000, MC68010, and MC68020 addressing modes. New addressing modes for the MB68020 are shown with "MC68020 Only" in parentheses beneath the MC6800 notation; modes not specified in this way are for all three processors.

In the table, the following abbreviations are used:

- an** Address register, where *n* is any digit from 0 through 7.
- dn** Data register, where *n* is any digit from 0 through 7.
- ri** Index register *i* may be any address or data register with an optional size designation (i.e., **ri.w** for 16 bits or **ri.l** for 32 bits); default size is **.w**.
- scl** Optional scale factor that may be multiplied time index register in some modes. Values for *scl* are 1, 2, 4, or 8; default is 1.
- bd** Two's complement base displacement that is added before indirection takes place; size can be 16 or 32 bits.
- od** Outer displacement that is added as a part of effective address calculation after memory indirection; size can be 16 or 32 bits.
- d** Two's complement or sign-extended displacement that is added as part of effective address calculation; size may be 8 or 16 bits; when omitted, assembler uses value of zero.
- pc** Program counter
- [ ] Grouping characters used to enclose an indirect expression; required characters. Addressing arguments can occur in any order within the brackets.
- ( ) Grouping characters used to enclose an entire effective address; required characters. Addressing arguments can occur in any order within the parentheses.
- { } Indicate that a scale factor is optional; not required characters.

It is important to note that expressions used for the **absolute** addressing modes need not be *absolute expressions* in the sense described in Section 6. Although the addresses used in those addressing modes must ultimately be filled in with constants, that can be done later by the loader. There is no need for the assembler to be able to compute them. Indeed, the **Absolute Long** addressing mode is commonly used for accessing *undefined external* addresses.

**SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE**

<b>EFFECTIVE ADDRESS MODES</b>		
<b>M68000 Family Notation</b>	<b>as Notation</b>	<b>Effective Address Mode</b>
Dn	%dn	Data Register Direct
An	%an	Address Register Direct
(An)	(%an)	Address Register Indirect
(An)+	(%an)+	Address Register Indirect With Postincrement
-(An)	-(%an)	Address Register Indirect With Predecrement
d(An)	d(%an)	Address Register Indirect With Displacement ( <i>d</i> signifies a signed 16-bit absolute displacement)
d(An,Ri)	d(%an,%ri.w) d(%an,%ri.l)	Address Register Indirect With Index Plus Displacement ( <i>d</i> signifies a signed 8-bit absolute displacement)
(bd,An,Ri{*sc1}) (MC68020 Only)	(bd,%an,%ri{*ri})	Address Register Direct With Index Plus Base Displacement
([bd,An,Ri{*sc1}],od) (MC68020 Only)	(bd,%an,%ri{*sc1}],od)	Memory Indirect With Preindexing Plus Base and Outer Displacement
([bd,An],Ri{*sc1}],od) (MC68020 Only)	([bd,%an],%ri{*sc1}],od)	Memory Indirect With Postindexing Plus Base and Outer Displacement
d(PC)	d(%pc)	Program Counter Indirect With Displacement ( <i>d</i> signifies 16-bit displacement)
d(PC,Ri)	d(%pc,%rn.l) d(%pc,%rn.w)	Program Counter Direct With Index and Displacement ( <i>d</i> signifies 8-bit displacement)
(bd,PC,Ri{*sc1}) (MC68020 Only)	(bd,%pc,%ri{*sc1})	Program Counter Direct With Index and Base Displacement
([bd,PC],Ri{*sc1}],od) (MC68020 Only)	([bd,%pc],%ri{*sc1}],od)	Program counter Memory Indirect With Postindexing Plus Base and Outer Displacement
([bd,PC,Ri{*sc1}],od) (MC68020 Only)	([bd,%pc,%ri{*sc1}],od)	Program Counter Memory Indirect With Preindexing Plus Base and Outer Displacement

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

EFFECTIVE ADDRESS MODES		
M68000 Family Notation	as Notation	Effective Address Mode
d,PC,Ri*scale,od) (MCC68020 Only)	d,pc,ri*scale,od)	Program Counter Memory Indirect With Preindexing Plus Base and Outer Displacement
xxx.W	xxx	Absolute Short Address (xxx signifies an expression yielding a 16-bit memory address)
xxx.L	xxx	Absolute Long Address (xxx signifies an expression yielding a 32-bit memory address)
#xxx	&xxx	Immediate Data (xxx signifies an absolute constant expression)

In the table above, the index register notation should be understood as **ri.size\*scale**, where both size and scale are optional. Refer to Chapter 2 of the *M68000 Family Resident Structured Assembler Reference Manual* for additional information about effective address modes. Section 2 of the *MC68020 32-Bit Microprocessor User's Manual* also provides information about generating effective addresses and assembler syntax.

Note that suppressed address register `%zan` can be used in place of `%an`, suppressed PC register `%zpc` can be used in place of `%pc`, and suppressed data register `%zdn` can be used in place of `%dn`, if suppression is desired.

The new address modes for the MB68020 use two different formats of extension. The brief format provides fast indexed addressing, while the full format provides a number of options in size of displacement and indirection. The assembler will generate the brief format if the effective address expression is not memory indirect, value of displacement is within a byte, and no base or index suppression is specified; otherwise, the assembler will generate the full format.

Some source code variations of the new modes may be redundant with the MC68000 address register indirect, address register indirect with displacement, and program counter with displacement modes. The assembler will select the more efficient mode when redundancy occurs. For example, when the assembler sees the form `(An)`, it will generate address register indirect mode (mode 2). The assembler will generate address register indirect with displacement (mode 5) when seeing any of the following forms (as long as `bd` fits in 16 bits or less):

```
bd(An)
(bd,An)
(An,bd)
```

## MACHINE INSTRUCTIONS

## Instructions For The MC68000/MC68010/MC68020

The following table shows how MC68000/MC68010/MC68020 instructions should be written in order to be understood correctly by the *as* assembler. The entire instruction set can be used for the MC68020. Instructions that are MC68010/MC68020-only or MC68020-only are noted as such in the "OPERATION" column.

Several abbreviations are used in the table:

- S** The letter **S**, as in **add.S**, stands for one of the operation size attribute letters **b**, **w**, or **l**, representing a byte, word, or long operation.
- A** The letter **A**, as in **add.A**, stands for one of the address operation size attribute letters **w** or **l**, representing a word or long operation.
- CC** In the contexts **bCC**, **dbCC**, and **sCC**, the letters **CC** represent any of the following condition code designations (except that **f** and **t** may not be used in the **bCC** instruction):

<b>cc</b>	carry clear	<b>ls</b>	low or same
<b>cs</b>	carry set	<b>lt</b>	less than
<b>eq</b>	equal	<b>mi</b>	minus
<b>f</b>	false	<b>ne</b>	not equal
<b>ge</b>	greater or equal	<b>pl</b>	plus
<b>gt</b>	greater than	<b>t</b>	true
<b>hi</b>	high	<b>vc</b>	overflow clear
<b>hs</b>	high or same (=cc)	<b>vs</b>	overflow set
<b>le</b>	less or equal		
<b>lo</b>	low (=cs)		

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

**EA** This represents an arbitrary effective address.

**I** An absolute expression, used as an immediate operand.

**Q** An absolute expression evaluating to a number from 1 to 8.

**L** A label reference, or any expression representing a memory address in the current segment.

**d** Two's complement or sign-extended displacement that is added as part of effective address calculation; size may be 8 by 16 bits; when omitted, assembler uses value of zero.

**%dx, %dy, %dn** Represent data registers.

**%ax, %ay, %an** Represent address registers.

**%rx, %ry, %rn** Represent either data or address registers.

**%rc** Represents control register (**%sfc, %dfc, %cacr, %usr, %vbr, %caar, %msp, %isp**).

**offset** Either an immediate operand or a data register.

**width** Either an immediate operand or a data register.

SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS			
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX		OPERATION
ABCD	abcd.d	%dy, %dx —(%ay),—(%ax)	Add Decimal with Extend
ADD	add.S	EA,%dn %dn,EA	Add Binary
ADDA	add.A	EA,%an	Add Address
ADDI	add.S	&I,EA	Add Immediate
ADDQ	add.S	&Q,EA	Add Quick
ADDX	addx.S	%dy,%dx —(%ay),—(%ax)	Add Extended
AND	and.S	EA,%dn %dn,EA	AND Logical
ANDI	and.S	&I,EA	AND Immediate
ANDI to CCR	and.b	&I,%cc	AND Immediate to Condition Codes
ANDI to SR	and.w	&I,%sr	AND Immediate to the Status Register
ASL	asl.S	%dx,%dy &Q,%dy	Arithmetic Shift (Left)
	als.w	&1,EA	
	als.w	EA	
ASR	asr.S	%dx,%dy &Q,%dy	Arithmetic Shift (Right)
	asr.w	&1,EA	
	asr.w	EA	
Bcc	bCC	L	Branch Conditionally (16-bit Displacement)
	bCC.b	L	Branch Conditionally (Short) (8-bit Displacement)
	bCC.l	L	Branch Conditionally (Long) (32-bit Displacement) (MC68020 Only)

SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS		
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX	OPERATION
BCHG	bchg    %dn,EA &I,EA	Test a Bit and Change  NOTE: <b>bchg</b> should be written with no suffix. If the second operand is a data register, <b>.l</b> is assumed; otherwise, <b>.b</b> is.
BCLR	bclr    %dn,EA &I,EA	Test a Bit and Clear  NOTE: <b>bclr</b> should be written with no suffix. If the second operand is a data register, <b>.l</b> is assumed; otherwise, <b>.b</b> is.
BFCHG	bfchg   EA{offset:width}	Complement Bit Field (MC68020 Only)
BFCLR	bfclr   EA{offset:width}	Clear Bit Field (MC68020 Only)
BFEXTS	bfexts   EA{offset:width},%dn	Extract Bit Field (Signed) (MC68020 Only)
BFEXTU	bfextu   EA{offset:width},%dn	Extract Bit Field (Unsigned) (MC68020 Only)
BFFFO	bfffo    EA{offset:width},%dn	Find First One in Bit Field (MC68020 Only)
BFINS	bfins    %dn,EA{offset:width}	Insert Bit Field (MC68020 Only)
BFSET	bfset    EA{offset:width}	Set Bit Field (MC68020 Only)
BFTST	bftst    EA{offset:width}	Test Bit Field (MC68020 Only)
BKPT	bkpt    &I	Breakpoint (MC68020 Only)

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS		
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX	OPERATION
BRA	bra    L	Branch Always (16-bit Displacement)
	bra.b    L	Branch Always (Short) (8-bit Displacement)
	br.l    L	Branch Always (Long) (32-bit Displacement) (MC68020 Only)
	br    L	Same as <b>bra</b>
	br.b    L	Same as <b>bra.b</b>
BSET	bset    %dn,EA &I,EA	Test a Bit and Set  NOTE: <b>bset</b> should be written with no suffix. If the second operand is a data register, <b>.l</b> is assumed; otherwise <b>.b</b> is.
BSR	bsr    L	Branch to Subroutine (16-bit Displacement)
	bsr.b    L	Branch to Subroutine (Short) (8-bit Displacement)
	bsr.l    L	Branch to Subroutine (Long) (32-bit Displacement) (MC68020 Only)
BTST	btst    %dn,EA &I,EA	Test a Bit and Set  NOTE: <b>btst</b> should be written with no suffix. If the second operand is a data register, <b>.l</b> is assumed; otherwise <b>.b</b> is.
CALLM	callm    &I,EA	Call Module (MC68020 Only)
CAS	cas    %ds,%dy,EA	Compare and Swap Operands (MC68020 Only)
CAS2	cas2    %dx:%dy,%dx:%dy,%rx:%ry	Compare and Swap Dual Operands (MC68020 Only)

SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS		
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX	OPERATION
CHK	chk.w EA,%dn	Check Register Against Bounds
	chk.l EA,%dn	Check Register Against Bounds (Long) (MC68020 Only)
CHK2	chk2.S EA,%rn	Check Register Against Bounds (MC68020 Only)
CLR	clr.S EA	Clear an Operand
CMP	cmp.S %dn,EA	Compare
CMPA	cmp.A %an,EA	Compare Address
CMPI	cmp.S EA,&I	Compare Immediate
CMPM	cmp.S (%ax)+,(%ay)+	Compare Memory
CMP2	cmp.S %rn,EA	Compare Register Against Bounds (MC68020 Only)*
DBcc	dbCC %dn,L	Test Condition, Decrement, and Branch
	dbra %dn,L	Decrement and Branch Always
	dbr %dn,L	Same as <b>dbra</b>
DIVS	divs.w EA,%dx	Signed Divide 32/16 → 32
	tdivs.l EA,%dx	Signed Divide (Long) 32/32 → 32 (MC68020 Only)
	tdivs.l EA,%dx:%dy	Signed Divide (Long) 32/32 → 32r:32q (MC68020 Only)
	divs.l EA,%dx:%dy	Signed Divide (Long) 64/32 → 32r:32q (MC68020 Only)

\* Note: The order of operands in *as* is the reverse of that in the M68000 Programmer's Reference Manual.

SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS		
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX	OPERATION
DIVU	divu.w EA,%dn	Unsigned Divide 32/16 → 32
	tdivu.l EA,%dx divu.l EA,%dx	Unsigned Divide (Long) 32/32 → 32 (MC68020 Only)
	tdivu.l EA,%dx:%dy	Unsigned Divide (Long) 32/32 → 32r:32q (MC68020 Only)
	divu.l EA,%dx:%dy	Unsigned Divide (Long) 64/32 → 32r:32q (MC68020 Only)
EOR	eor.S %dn,EA	Exclusive OR Logical
EORI	eor.S &I,EA	Exclusive OR Immediate
EORI to CCR	eor.b &I,%cc	Exclusive OR Immediate to Condition Code Register
EORI to SR	eor.w &I,%sr	Exclusive OR Immediate to the Status Register
EXG	exg %rx,%ry	Exchange Registers
EXT	ext.w %dn	Sign-Extend Low-Order Byte of Data to Word
	ext.l %dn	Sign-Extend Low-Order Word of Data to Long
	extb.l %dn	Sign-Extend Low-Order Byte of Data to Long (MC68020 Only)
	extw.l %dn	Same as ext.l (MC68020 Only)
JMP	jmp EA	Jump
JSR	jsr EA	Jump to Subroutine
LEA	lea.l EA,%an	Load Effective Address
LINK	link %an,&I	Link and Allocate

SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS		
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX	OPERATION
LSL	lsl.S    %dx,%dy &Q,%dy	Logical Shift (Left)
	lsl.w    &1,EA lsl.w    EA	
LSR	lsr.S    %dx,%dy &Q,&dy	Logical Shift (Right)
	lsr.w    &1,EA lsr.w    EA	
MOVE	mov.S    EA,EA	Move Data from Source to Destination
		NOTE: If the destination is an address register, the instruction generated is <b>MOVEA</b> .
MOVE to CCR	mov.w    EA,%cc	Move to Condition Codes
MOVE from CCR	mov.w    %cc,EA (MC68010/MC68020 Only)	Move from Condition Codes
MOVE to SR	mov.w    EA,%sr	Move to the Status Register
MOVE from SR	mov.w    %sr,EA	Move from the Status Register
MOVE USP	mov.l    %usp,%an %an,%usp	Move User Stack Pointer
MOVEA	mov.A    EA,%an	Move Address
MOVEC to CCR	mov.l    %rn,%rc	Move to Control Register (MC68010/MC68020 Only)
MOVEC from CCR	mov.l    %rc,%rn (MC68010/MC68020 Only)	Move from Control Register

**SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE**

<b>MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS</b>		
<b>MNEMONIC</b>	<b>ASSEMBLER SYNTAX</b>	<b>OPERATION</b>
MOVEM	movm.A    &I,EA EA,&I	Move Multiple Registers* (See footnote)
MOVEP	movp.A    %dx,d(%ay) d(%ay),%dx	Move Peripheral Data
MOVEQ	mov.l     &I,%dn	Move Quick
MOVES	movs.S    %rn,EA movs.S    EA,%rn	Move to/form Address Space (MC68010/MC68020 Only)
MULS	mult.w    EA,%dx	Signed Multiply 16*16 → 32
	tmult.l    EA,%dx mult.l     EA,%dx	Signed Multiply (Long) 32*32 → 32 (MC68020 Only)
	mult.l     EA,%dx:%dy	Signed Multiply (Long) 32*32 → 64 (MC68020 Only)
MULU	mulu.w    EA,%dx	Unsigned Multiply 16*16 → 32
	tmulu.l    EA,%dx mulu.l     EA,%dx	Unsigned Multiply (Long) 32*32 → 32 (MC68020 Only)
	mulu.l     EA,%dx:%dy	Unsigned Multiply (Long) 32*32 → 64 (MC68020 Only)
NBCD	nbcd.b    EA	Negate Decimal with Extend
NEG	neg.S     EA	Negate
NEGX	negx.S    EA	Negate with Extend
NOP	nop	No Operation
NOT	not.S     EA	Logical Complement

\* The immediate operand is a mask designating which registers are to be moved to memory or which registers are to receive memory data. not all addressing modes are permitted, and the correspondence between mask bits and register numbers depends on the addressing mode used. Refer to the MC68000 Programmer's Reference Manual for details.

**SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE**

<b>MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS</b>			
<b>MNEMONIC</b>	<b>ASSEMBLER SYNTAX</b>		<b>OPERATION</b>
OR	or.S	EA,%dn %dn,EA	Inclusive OR Logical
ORI	or.S	&I,EA	Inclusive OR Immediate
ORI to CCR	or.b	&I,%cc	Inclusive OR Immediate to Condition Codes
ORI to SR	or.w	&I,%sr	Inclusive OR Immediate to the Status Register
PACK	pack pack	—(%ax),—(%ay),&I %dx,%dy,&I	Pack BCD (MC68020 Only)
PEA	pea.l	EA	Push Effective Address
RESET	reset		Reset External Devices
ROL	rol.S  rol.w rol.w	%dx,%dy &Q,%dy  &1,EA EA	Rotate (without Extend) (Left)
ROR	ror.S  ror.w ror.w	%dx,%dy &Q,%dy  &1,EA EA	Rotate (without Extend) (Right)
ROXL	roxl.S  roxl.w roxl.w	%dx,%dy &Q,%dy  &1,EA EA	Rotate with Extend (Left)
ROXR	roxr.S  roxr.w roxr.w	%dx,%dy &Q,%dy  &1,EA EA	Rotate with Extend (Right)
RTD	rtd	&I	Return and Deallocate Parameters (MC68010/MC68020 Only)
RTE	rte		Return from Exception
RTM	rtm	%rn	Return from Module (MC68020 Only)

SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS		
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX	OPERATION
RTR	rtr	Return and Restore Condition Codes
RTS	rts	Return from Subroutine
SBCD	sbcd.b    %dy,%dx —(%ay),—(%ax)	Subtract Decimal with Extend
Scc	sCC.b    EA	Set According to Condition
STOP	stop    &I	Load Status Register and Stop
SUB	sub.S    EA,%dn %dn,EA	Subtract Binary
SUBA	sub.A    EA,%an	Subtract Address
SUBI	sub.S    &I,EA	Subtract Immediate
SUBQ	sub.S    &Q,EA	Subtract Quick
SUBX	subx.S   %dy,%dx —(%ay),—(%ax)	Subtract with Extend
SWAP	swap.w   %dn	Swap Register Halves
TAS	tas.b    EA	Test and Set an Operand
TRAP	trap    &I	Trap
TRAPV	trapv	Trap on Overflow
TRAPcc	tCC tpCC.A   &I	Trap on Condition (MC68020 Only)
TST	tst.S    EA	Test an Operand
UNLK	unlk    %an	Unlink
UNPK	unpk    —(%ax),—(%ay),&I %dx,%dy,&I	Unpack BCD (MC68020 Only)

# SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

## Instructions For the MC68881

The following table shows how the floating point co-processor (MC68881) instructions should be written to be understood by the *as* assembler. In the table, *fpcc* represents any of the following floating point condition code designations:

TRAP ON UNORDERED	
<i>fpcc</i>	MEANING
ge	greater than or equal
gl	greater or less than
gle	greater or less than or equal
gt	greater than
le	less than or equal
lt	less than
ngt	not greater than
nge	not greater than or equal
nlt	not less than
ngl	not greater or less than
nle	not greater or less than or equal
ngle	not greater or less than or equal
sneq	not equal
sf	never
seq	equal
st	always

NO TRAP ON UNORDERED	
<i>fpcc</i>	MEANING
eq	equal
oge	greater than or equal
ogl	greater or less than
ogt	greater than
ole	less than or equal
olt	less than
or	ordered
t	always
ule	unordered or less or equal
ult	unordered less than
uge	unordered greater than or equal
ueq	unordered equal
ugt	unordered greater than
un	unordered
neq	unordered ore greater or less
f	never

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

The designation *ccc* represents a group of constants in MC68881 constant ROM which have the following values:

<i>ccc</i>	VALUE
00	pi
0B	log <sub>10</sub> (2)
0C	e
0D	log <sub>2</sub> (e)
0D	log <sub>10</sub> (e)
0F	0.0
10	log <sub>n</sub> (2)
11	log <sub>n</sub> (10)
12	10**0
13	10**1
14	10**2
15	10**4
16	10**8
17	10**16
18	10**32
19	10**64
1A	10**128
1B	10**256
1C	10**512
1D	10**1024
1E	10**2048
1F	10**4096

Additional abbreviations used in the table are:

EA	represents and effective address
L	a label reference or any expression representing a memory address in the current segment
I	represents an absolute expression, used as an immediate operand
%dn	represents data register
%fpm,%fpn,%fpq	represents floating point data registers
%control	represents floating point control register
%status	represents floating point status register
%iaddr	represents floating point instruction address register
SF	represents source format letters:
b	byte integer
w	word integer
l	long word integer
s	single precision
d	double precision
x	extended precision
p	packed binary code decimal
A	represents source format letters w or l
B	represents source format letters b, w, l, s, or p

## SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

NOTE: The source format must be specified if more than one source format is permitted or a default source format *x* is assumed. Source format need not be specified if only one format is permitted by the operation.

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS		
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX	OPERATION
FABS	fabs.SF EA,%fpm fabs.x %fpm,%fpm fabs.x %fpm	absolute value function
FACOS	facos.SF EA,%fpm facos.x %fpm,%fpm facos.x %fpm	arccosine function
FADD	fadd.SF EA,%fpm fadd.x %fpm,%fpm	floating point add
FASIN	fasin.SF EA,%fpm fasin.x %fpm,%fpm fasin.x %fpm	arcsine function
FATAN	fatn.SF EA,%fpm fatn.x %fpm,%fpm fatn.x %fpm	arctangent function
FATANH	fatnh.SF EA,%fpm fatnh.x %fpm,%fpm fatnh.x %fpm	hyperbolic arctangent function
FBfpc	fbfpc.A L	co-processor branch conditionally
FCMP	fcmp.SF %fpm,EA fcmp.x %fpm,%fpm	floating point compare
FCOS	fcos.SF EA,%fpm fcos.x %fpm,%fpm fcos.x %fpm	cosine function
FCOSH	fcosh.SF EA,%fpm fcosh.x %fpm,%fpm fcosh.x %fpm	hyperbolic cosine function
FDBfpc	fdbfpc.w %dn,L	decrement and branch on condition
FDIV	fdiv.SF EA,%fpm fdiv.x %fpm,%fpm	floating point divided

SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS			
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX		OPERATION
FETOX	fetox.SF fetox.x fatan.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	e**x function
FETOXM1	fetoxm1.SF fetoxm1.x fetoxm1.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	e**x(x-1) function
FGETEXP	fgetexp.SF fgetexp.x fgetexp.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	get the exponent function
FGETMAN	fgetman.SF fgetman.x fgetman.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	get the mantissa function
FINT	fint.SF fint.x fint.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	integer part function
FLOG2	flog2.SF flog2.x flog2.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	binary log function
FLOG10	flog10.SF flog10.x flog10.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	common log function
FLOGN	flogn.SF flogn.x flogn.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	natural log function
FLOGNP1	flognp1.SF flognp1.x flognp1.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	natural log (x+1) function
FMOD	fmod.SF fmod.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm	floating point module

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS		
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX	OPERATION
FMOVE	fmov.SF EA,%fpm	move to floating point register
	fmov.x %fpm,%fpm	
	fmov.SF %fpm,EA	move from floating point register to memory
	fmov.p %fpm,EA{&I}	
	fmov.p %fpm,EA{%dn}	
	fmov.l EA,%control	move from memory to special register
	fmov.l EA,%status	
	fmov.l EA,%iaddr	
	fmov.l %control,EA	move to memory from special register
	fmov.l %status,EA	
fmov.l %iaddr,EA		
FMOVECR	fmovecr.x &ccc,%fpm	move a ROM-stored to a floating point register
FMOVEM	fmovm.x EA,&I	move to multiple floating point register
	fmovm.x &I,EA	move from multiple registers to memory
	fmovm.x EA,%dn	move to a data register
	fmovm.x %dn,EA	move a data register to memory
	fmovm.l EA,%control/%status/%iaddr	move to special registers
	fmovm.l %control/%status/%iaddr,EA	move from special registers

NOTE: The immediate operand is a mask designating which registers are to be moved to memory or which registers are to receive memory data. Not all addressing modes are permitted and the correspondence between mask bbits and register numbers depends on the addressing mode used.

**SYSTEM V/68 ASSEMBLER USER'S GUIDE**

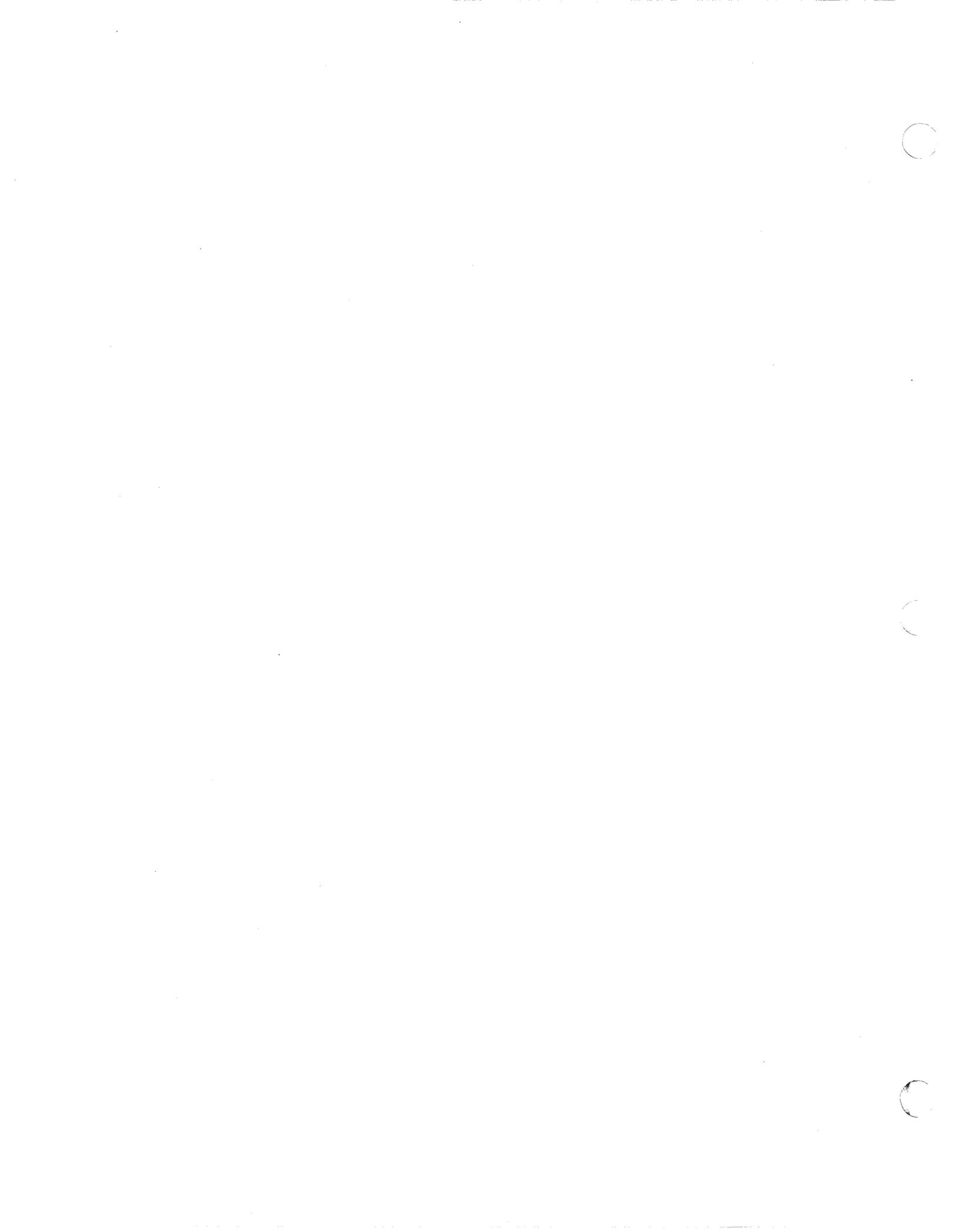
<b>MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS</b>			
<b>MNEMONIC</b>	<b>ASSEMBLER SYNTAX</b>		<b>OPERATION</b>
FMUL	fmul.SF fmul.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm	floating point multiply
FNEG	fneg.SF fneg.x fneg.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	negate function
FNOP	fnop		floating point no-op
FREM	frem.SF frem.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm	floating point remainder
FRESTORE	frestore	EA	restore internal state of co-processor
FSAVE	fsave	EA	co-processor save
FSCALE	fscale.SF fscale.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm	floating point scale exponent
FSfpec	fsfpec.b	EA	set on condition
FSGLDIV	fsgldiv.B fsgldiv.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm	floating point single precision divide
FSGLMUL	fsglmul.B fsglmul.s	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm	floating point single precision multiply
FSIN	fsin.SF fsin.x fsin.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	sine function
FSINCOS	fsincos.SF fsincos.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm:%fpm	sine/cosine function
FSINH	fsinh.SF fsinh.x fsinh.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	hyperbolic sine function
FSQRT	fsqrt.SF fsqrt.x fsqrt.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	square root function

MC68000 INSTRUCTION FORMATS			
MNEMONIC	ASSEMBLER SYNTAX		OPERATION
FSUB	fsub.SF fsub.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm	square root function
FTAN	ftan.SF ftan.x ftan.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	tangent function
FTANH	ftanh.SF ftanh.x ftanh.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	hyperbolic tangent function
FTENTOX	ftentox.SF ftentox.x ftentox.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	10**x function
FTfpcc	ftfpcc		trap on condition without a parameter
FTPfpcc	ftfpcc.A	&I	trap on condition with a parameter
FTST	ftest.SF ftest.x	EA %fpm	floating point test an operand
FTWOTOX	ftwotox.SF ftwotox.x ftwotox.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm %fpm	2**x function
FYTOX	fytox.SF fytox.x	EA,%fpm %fpm,%fpm	floating point y**x

## Chapter 21

### ARBITRARY PRECISION DESK CALCULATOR LANGUAGE (BC)

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	21-1
BASES .....	21-3
SCALING .....	21-4
FUNCTIONS .....	21-5
SUBSCRIPTED VARIABLES .....	21-7
CONTROL STATEMENTS .....	21-7
ADDITIONAL FEATURES .....	21-10
APPENDIX 9.1 .....	21-11



## Chapter 21

# ARBITRARY PRECISION DESK CALCULATOR LANGUAGE (BC)

### GENERAL

The arbitrary precision desk calculator language (BC) is a language and compiler for doing arbitrary precision arithmetic under ICON/UXV. The output of the compiler is interpreted and executed by a collection of routines that can input, output, and do arithmetic on infinitely large integers and on scaled fixed-point numbers. These routines are based on a dynamic storage allocator. Overflow does not occur until all available core storage is exhausted.

The BC language has a complete control structure as well as immediate-mode operation. Functions can be defined and saved for later execution. A small collection of library functions is also available, including *sin*, *cos*, *arctan*, *log*, *exponential*, and *Bessel* functions of integer order.

The BC compiler was written to make conveniently available a collection of routines (called DC) that are capable of doing arithmetic on integers of arbitrary size. The compiler is not intended to provide a complete programming language. It is a minimal language facility.

Some of the uses of this compiler are:

- Compile large integers
- Compute accurately to many decimal places
- Convert numbers from one base to another base.

There is a scaling provision that permits the use of decimal point notation. Provision is also made for input and output in bases other than decimal. Numbers can be converted from decimal to octal by simply setting the output base to equal eight.

The actual limit on the number of digits that can be handled depends on the amount of core storage available. This is possible even on the smallest versions of ICON/UXV.

The syntax of BC is very similar to that of the C language. This enables users who are familiar with C language to easily work with BC.

The simplest kind of statement is an arithmetic expression on a line by itself. For instance, if you type in the addition of two numbers (with the + operator) such as

## BC

142857 + 285714

the program responds immediately with the sum

428571.

The operators  $-$ ,  $*$ ,  $/$ ,  $\%$ , and  $^$  can also be used. They indicate subtraction, multiplication, division, remaindering, and integer result truncated toward zero. Division by zero produces an error comment.

Any term in an expression may be prefixed by a minus sign to indicate that it is to be negated (the **unary** minus sign). The expression

$7+-3$

is interpreted to mean that  $-3$  is to be added to 7.

More complex expressions with several operators and with parentheses are interpreted just as in power, then  $*$ ,  $\%$ , and  $/$ , and finally,  $+$  and  $-$ . Contents of parentheses are evaluated before material outside the parentheses. Exponentiations are performed from right to left and the other operators from left to right.

$a^b^c$  and  $a^{(b^c)}$

are equivalent as are the two expressions

$a*b*c$  and  $(a*b)*c$ .

However, BC shares with Fortran and C language the undesirable convention that

$a/b*c$  is equivalent to  $(a/b)*c$ .

Internal storage registers to hold numbers have single lowercase letter names. The value of an expression can be assigned to a register in the usual way. The statement

$x = x + 3$

has the effect of increasing by three the value of the contents of the register named  $x$ . When, as in this case, the outermost operator is an "=", the assignment is performed; but the result is not printed. Only 26 of these named storage registers are available.

There is a built-in square root function whose result is truncated to an integer (see the part on "SCALING"). Entering the lines

```
x = sqrt(191)
x
```

produces the printed result

13

## BASES

There are two special internal quantities; **ibase** (input base) and **obase** (output base). The contents of **ibase**, initially set to 10 (decimal), determines the base used for interpreting numbers read in. For example, the input lines

```
ibase = 8
11
```

produces the output line

9

and the system is ready to do octal to decimal conversions. Beware, however, of trying to change the input base back to decimal by typing

```
ibase = 10
```

Because the number 10 is interpreted as octal, this statement has no effect. For dealing in hexadecimal notation, the characters A through F are permitted in numbers (regardless of what base is in effect) and are interpreted as digits having values 10 through 15, respectively. The statement

```
ibase = A
```

changes the base to decimal regardless of what the current input base is. Negative and large positive input bases are permitted but are useless. No mechanism has been provided for the input of arbitrary numbers in bases less than 1 and greater than 16.

The content of **obase**, initially 10 (decimal), is used as the base for output numbers. The input lines

**BC**

```
obase = 16  
1000
```

produces the output line

```
3E8
```

which is to be interpreted as a 3-digit hexadecimal number. Very large output bases are permitted and are sometimes useful. For example, large numbers can be output in groups of five digits by setting **obase** to 100000. Strange output bases (i.e., 1, 0, or negative) are handled appropriately.

Very large numbers are split across lines with 70 characters per line. Lines which are continued end with a backslash (\). Decimal output conversion is practically instantaneous, but output of very large numbers (i.e., more than 100 digits) with other bases is rather slow. Nondecimal output conversion of a 100-digit number takes about 3 seconds.

The **ibase** and **obase** have no effect on the course of internal computation or on the evaluation of expressions. They only affect input and output conversions, respectively.

## SCALING

A third special internal quantity called **scale** is used to determine the scale of calculated quantities. The number of digits after the decimal point of a number is referred to as its scale. Numbers may have up to 99 decimal digits after the decimal point. This fractional part is retained in further computations.

The contents of **scale** must be no greater than 99 and no less than 0. It is initially set to 0. However, appropriate scaling can be arranged when more than 99 fraction digits are required.

When two scaled numbers are combined by means of one of the arithmetic operations, the result has a scale determined by the following rules:

- Addition and subtraction—The scale of the result is the larger of the scales of the two operands. In this case, there is never any truncation of the result.
- Multiplication—The scale of the result is never less than the maximum of the two scales of the operands and never more than the sum of the scales of the operands. Subject to those two restrictions, the scale of the result is set equal to the contents of the internal quantity **scale**.
- Division—The scale of a quotient is the contents of the internal quantity **scale**. The scale of a remainder is the sum of the scales of the quotient and the divisor.

- Exponentiation—The result of an exponentiation is scaled as if the implied multiplications were performed. An exponent must be an integer.
- Square root—The scale of a square root is set to the maximum of the scale of the argument and the contents of **scale**.

All of the internal operations are actually carried out in terms of integers with digits being discarded when necessary. In every case where digits are discarded, truncation and not rounding is performed.

The internal quantities **scale**, **ibase**, and **obase** can be used in expressions just like other variables. The input line

```
scale = scale + 1
```

increases the value of **scale** by one, and the input line

```
scale
```

causes the current value of **scale** to be printed.

The value of **scale** retains its meaning as a number of decimal digits to be retained in internal computation even when **ibase** or **obase** are not equal to 10. The internal computations (which are still conducted in decimal regardless of the bases) are performed to the specified number of decimal digits, never hexadecimal, octal, or any other kind of digits.

## FUNCTIONS

The name of a function is a single lowercase letter. Function names are permitted to coincide with simple variable names. Twenty-six different defined functions are permitted in addition to the 26 variable names. The input line

```
define a(x){
```

begins the definition of a function with one argument. This line must be followed by one or more statements which make up the body of the function ending with a right brace ( `}` ). The general form of a function is

## BC

```
define a(x) {  
    ...  
    ...  
    return  
}
```

Return of control from a function occurs when a **return** statement is executed or when the end of the function is reached. The **return** statement can take either of the two forms:

```
return  
return(x)
```

In the first case, the value of the function is 0; and in the second, the value of the function is the expression in parentheses.

Variables used in the function can be declared as automatic by a statement of the form

```
auto x,y,z
```

There can be only one **auto** statement in a function, and it must be the first statement in the definition. These automatic variables are allocated space and initialized to zero on entry to the function and thrown away on return (exit). The values of any variables with the same names outside the function are not disturbed. Functions may be called recursively and the automatic variables at each level of call are protected. The parameters named in a function definition are treated in the same way as the automatic variables of that function with the single exception that they are given a value on entry to the function. An example of a function definition is

```
define a(x,y){  
    auto z  
    z = x*y  
    return(z)  
}
```

The value of this function *a*, when called, is the product of its two arguments, "x" and "y".

A function is called by the appearance of its name followed by a string of arguments enclosed in parentheses and separated by commas. The result is unpredictable if the wrong number of arguments is used.

Functions with no arguments are defined and called using parentheses with nothing between them: ().

If the function *a* above has been defined, then the line

```
a(7,3.14)
```

causes the result 21.98 to be printed, and the line

```
z = a(a(3,4),5)
```

causes the result 60 to be printed.

### SUBSCRIPTED VARIABLES

A single lowercase letter variable name followed by an expression in brackets is called a subscripted variable (an array element). The variable name is called the array name, and the expression in brackets is called the subscript. Only 1-dimensional arrays are permitted. The names of arrays are permitted to coincide with the names of simple variables and function names. Any fractional part of a subscript is discarded before use. Subscripts must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to 2047.

Subscripted variables may be used in expressions, in function calls, and in return statements.

An array name may be used as an argument to a function or may be declared as automatic in a function definition by the use of empty brackets:

```
f(a[])
define f(a[])
auto a[]
```

When an array name is so used, the whole contents of the array are copied for the use of the function and thrown away on exit from the function. Array names that refer to whole arrays cannot be used in any other contexts.

### CONTROL STATEMENTS

The **if**, **while**, and **for** statements may be used to alter the flow within programs or to cause iteration. The range of each of them is a statement or a compound statement consisting of a collection of statements enclosed in braces. They are written in the following way:

```
if(relation) statement
while(relation) statement
for(expression1; relation; expression2) statement
```

BC

or

```
if(relation) {statements}  
while(relation) {statements}  
for(expression1; relation; expression2) {statements}
```

A relation in one of the control statements is an expression of the form

$x > y$

where two expressions are related by one of the following six relational operators:

```
< less than  
> greater than  
<= less than or equal to  
>= greater than or equal to  
== equal to  
!= not equal to
```

**Beware** of using “=” instead of “==” as a relational operator. Unfortunately, both of these are legal, so there will be no diagnostic message, but “=” will not do a comparison.

The **if** statement causes execution of its range if and *only if* the relation is true. Then control passes to the next statement in sequence.

The **while** statement causes execution of its range repeatedly as long as the relation is true. The relation is tested before each execution of its range; and if the relation is false, control passes to the next statement beyond the range of the **while** statement.

The **for** statement begins by executing **expression1**. Then the relation is tested; and if true, the statements in the range of the **for** are executed. Then **expression2** is executed. The relation is then tested, etc. The typical use of the **for** statement is for a controlled iteration, as in the statement

```
for(i=1; i<=10; i=i+1) i
```

which prints the integers from one to ten. The following are some examples of the use of the control statements:

```

define f(n){
  auto i, x
  x=1
  for(i=1; i<=n; i=i+1) x=x*i
  return(x)
}

```

The input line

```
f(a)
```

prints "a" factorial if "a" is a positive integer. The following is the definition of a function that computes values of the binomial coefficient (m and n are assumed to be positive integers):

```

define b(n,m){
  auto x, j
  x=1
  for(j=1; j<=m; j=j+1) x=x*(n-j+1)/j
  return(x)
}

```

The following function computes values of the exponential function by summing the appropriate series without regard for possible truncation errors:

```

scale = 20
define e(x){
  auto a, b, c, d, n
  a = 1
  b = 1
  c = 1
  d = 0
  n = 1
  while(1==1){
    a = a*x
    b = b*n
    c = c + a/b
    n = n + 1
    if(c==d) return(c)
    d = c
  }
}

```

## ADDITIONAL FEATURES

There are some additional language features that every user should know.

Normally, statements are typed one to a line. It is also permissible, however, to type several statements on a line by separating the statements by semicolons.

If an assignment statement is parenthesized, it then has a value; and it can be used anywhere that an expression can. For example, the input line

$$(x=y+17)$$

not only makes the indicated assignment, but also prints the resulting value.

The following is an example of a use of the value of an assignment statement even when it is not parenthesized. The input line

$$x = a[i=i+1]$$

causes a value to be assigned to  $x$  and also increments  $i$  before it is used as a subscript.

The following constructs work in BC in exactly the same manner as they do in the C language. Refer to Appendix 7.1 or the C language programming documents for more details.

$x=y=z$	is the same as	$x=(y=z)$
$x =+ y$	"	$x = x+y$
$x =- y$	"	$x = x-y$
$x =* y$	"	$x = x*y$
$x =/ y$	"	$x = x/y$
$x =\% y$	"	$x = x\%y$
$x =^ y$	"	$x = x^y$
$x++$	"	$(x=x+1)-1$
$x--$	"	$(x=x-1)+1$
$++x$	"	$x = x+1$
$--x$	"	$x = x-1$

*Warning: In some of these constructions, spaces are significant. There is a real difference between  $x=-y$  and  $x= -y$ . The first replaces  $x$  by  $x-y$  and the second by  $-y$ .*

The following are three important things to remember when using BC programs:

- To exit a BC program, type **quit**.
- There is a comment convention identical to that of the C language. Comments begin with **/\*** and end with **\*/**.
- There is a library of math functions that may be obtained by typing at command level:

**bc -l**

This command loads a set of library functions that includes sine (**s**), cosine (**c**), arctangent (**a**), natural logarithm (**l**), exponential (**e**), and Bessel functions of integer order [**j(n,x)**]. The library sets the scale to 20, but it can be reset to another value.

If you type

**bc file ...**

the BC program reads and executes the named file or files before accepting commands from the keyboard. In this way, programs and function definitions are loaded.

## APPENDIX 9.1

### NOTATION

In the following pages, syntactic categories are in *italics* and literals are in **bold**. Material in brackets “[ ]” is optional.

### TOKENS

Tokens consist of keywords, identifiers, constants, operators, and separators. Token separators may be blanks, tabs, or comments. Newline characters or semicolons separate statements.

Comments are introduced by the characters **/\*** and terminated by **\*/**.

There are three kinds of identifiers—ordinary, array, and function. All three types consist of single lowercase letters. Array identifiers are followed by square brackets, possibly enclosing an expression describing a subscript. Arrays are singly dimensioned and may contain up to 2048 elements. Indexing begins at zero so an array may be indexed from 0 to 2047. Subscripts are truncated to integers. Function identifiers are followed by parentheses, possibly enclosing arguments. The three types of identifiers do not conflict. A program can have a variable named **x**, an array named **x**, and a function named **x**; all of which are separate and distinct.

## BC

The following are reserved keywords:

ibase	if
obase	break
scale	define
sqrt	auto
length	return
while	quit
for	

Constants consist of arbitrarily long numbers with an optional decimal point. The hexadecimal digits A through F are also recognized as digits with values 10 through 15, respectively.

### EXPRESSIONS

The value of an expression is printed unless the main operator is an assignment. Precedence is the same as the order of presentation here with highest appearing first. Left or right associativity, where applicable, is discussed with each operator.

#### *Named Expressions*

Named expressions are places where values are stored. Simply stated, named expressions are legal on the left side of an assignment. The value of a named expression is the value stored in the place named.

#### *identifiers*

Simple identifiers are named expressions. They have an initial value of zero.

#### *array-name[expression]*

Array elements are named expressions. They have an initial value of zero.

#### *scale, ibase, and obase*

The internal registers **scale**, **ibase**, and **obase** are all named expressions. The **scale** register is the number of digits after the decimal point to be retained in arithmetic operations. It has an initial value of zero. The **ibase** and **obase** registers are the input and output number radix, respectively. Both **ibase** and **obase** have initial values of ten.

## Function Calls

*function name ([expression[, expression..]])*

A function call consists of a function name followed by parentheses containing a comma-separated list of expressions, which are the function arguments. A whole array passed as an argument is specified by the array name followed by empty square brackets. All function arguments are passed by value. As a result, changes made to the formal parameters have no effect on the actual arguments. If the function terminates by executing a **return** statement, the value of the function is the value of the expression in the parentheses of the **return** statement or is zero if no expression is provided or if there is no **return** statement.

*sqrt(expression)*

The result is the square root of the expression. The result is truncated in the least significant decimal place. The scale of the result is the scale of the expression or the value of **scale**, whichever is larger.

*length(expression)*

The result is the total number of significant decimal digits in the expression. The scale of the result is zero.

*scale(expression)*

The result is the scale of the expression. The scale of the result is zero.

## Constants

Constants are primitive expressions.

## Parentheses

An expression surrounded by parentheses is a primitive expression. The parentheses are used to alter the normal precedence.

The unary operators bind right to left.

*-expression*

The result is the negative of the expression.

## BC

*++ named-expression*

The named expression is incremented by one. The result is the value of the named expression after incrementing.

*-- named-expression*

The named expression is decremented by one. The result is the value of the named expression after decrementing.

*named-expression++*

The named expression is incremented by one. The result is the value of the named expression before incrementing.

*named-expression--*

The named expression is decremented by one. The result is the value of the named expression before decrementing.

The exponentiation operator binds right to left.

*expression ^ expression*

The result is the first expression raised to the power of the second expression. The second expression must be an integer. If  $a$  is the scale of the left expression and  $b$  is the absolute value of the right expression, then the scale of the result is

$$\min(a \times b, \max(\text{scale}, a))$$

The operators  $*$ ,  $/$ , and  $\%$  bind left to right.

*expression \* expression*

The result is the product of the two expressions. If  $a$  and  $b$  are the scales of the two expressions, then the scale of the result is

$$\min(a + b, \max(\text{scale}, a, b))$$

*expression / expression*

The result is the quotient of the two expressions. The scale of the result is the value of **scale**.

*expression % expression*

The % operator produces the remainder of the division of the two expressions. More precisely,  $a\%b$  is  $a - a/b*b$ .

The scale of the result is the sum of the scale of the divisor and the value of **scale**.

The additive operators bind left to right.

*expression + expression*

The result is the sum of the two expressions. The scale of the result is the maximum of the scales of the expressions.

*expression - expression*

The result is the difference of the two expressions. The scale of the result is the maximum of the scales of the expressions.

The assignment operators bind right to left.

*named-expression = expression*

This expression results in assigning the value of the expression on the right to the named expression on the left.

*named-expression =+ expression*

*named-expression =- expression*

*named-expression =\* expression*

*named-expression =/ expression*

*named-expression =% expression*

*named-expression ^= expression*

The result of the above expressions is equivalent to "named expression = named expression OP expression", where OP is the operator after the = sign.

## RELATIONAL OPERATORS

Unlike all other operators, the relational operators are only valid as the object of an **if** or **while** statement or inside a **for** statement.

*expression* < *expression*  
*expression* > *expression*  
*expression* <= *expression*  
*expression* >= *expression*  
*expression* == *expression*  
*expression* != *expression*

### STORAGE CLASSES

There are only two storage classes in BC-global and automatic (local). Only identifiers that are to be local to a function need be declared with the **auto** command. The arguments to a function are local to the function. All other identifiers are assumed to be global and available to all functions. All identifiers, global and local, have initial values of zero. Identifiers declared as **auto** are allocated on entry to the function and released on returning from the function. They therefore do not retain values between function calls. The **auto** arrays are specified by the array name followed by empty square brackets.

Automatic variables in BC do not work in exactly the same way as in C language. On entry to a function, the old values of the names that appear as parameters and as automatic variables are pushed onto a stack. Until return is made from the function, reference to these names refers only to the new values.

### STATEMENTS

Statements must be separated by a semicolon or newline. Except where altered by control statements, execution is sequential.

When a statement is an expression unless the main operator is an assignment, the value of the expression is printed followed by a newline character.

Statements may be grouped together and used when one statement is expected by surrounding them with braces { }.

The following statement prints the string inside the quotes.

*"any string"*

*if(relation)statement*

The substatement is executed if the relation is true.

*while(relation)statement*

The **while** statement is executed while the relation is true. The test occurs before each execution of the statement.

**for**(*expression*; *relation*; *expression*)*statement*

The **for** statement is the same as

```
first-expression
while(relation) {
    statement
    last-expression
}
```

All three expressions must be present.

**break**

The **break** statement causes termination of a **for** or **while** statement.

**auto** *identifier*[*identifier*]

The **auto** statement causes the values of the identifiers to be pushed down. The identifiers can be ordinary identifiers or array identifiers. Array identifiers are specified by following the array name with empty square brackets. The **auto** statement must be the first statement in a function definition.

```
define([parameter[parameter...]]){
    statements}
```

The **define** statement defines a function. The parameters may be ordinary identifiers or array names. Array names must be followed by empty square brackets.

```
return
return(expression)
```

The **return** statement causes the following:

- Termination of a function
- Popping of the auto variables on the stack
- Specifies the results of the function.

The first form is equivalent to **return(0)**. The result of the function is the result of the expression in parentheses.

## BC

The **quit** statement stops execution of a BC program and returns control to ICON/UXV software when it is first encountered. Because it is not treated as an executable statement, it cannot be used in a function definition or in an **if**, **for**, or **while** statement.

## Chapter 22

### INTERACTIVE DESK CALCULATOR (DC)

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	22-1
DC COMMANDS.....	22-1
INTERNAL REPRESENTATION OF NUMBERS .....	22-4
THE ALLOCATOR.....	22-5
INTERNAL ARITHMETIC.....	22-5
ADDITION AND SUBTRACTION.....	22-6
MULTIPLICATION .....	22-6
DIVISION.....	22-6
REMAINDER.....	22-7
SQUARE ROOT.....	22-7
EXPONENTIATION.....	22-7
INPUT CONVERSION AND BASE.....	22-8
OUTPUT COMMANDS .....	22-8
OUTPUT FORMAT AND BASE.....	22-8
INTERNAL REGISTERS.....	22-8
STACK COMMANDS .....	22-9
SUBROUTINE DEFINITIONS AND CALLS.....	22-9
INTERNAL REGISTERS—PROGRAMMING DC.....	22-9
PUSHDOWN REGISTERS AND ARRAYS .....	22-9
MISCELLANEOUS COMMANDS .....	22-10
DESIGN CHOICES.....	22-10



## Chapter 22

# INTERACTIVE DESK CALCULATOR (DC)

### GENERAL

The **DC** program is an interactive desk calculator program implemented on ICON/UXV to do arbitrary-precision integer arithmetic. It has provisions for manipulating scaled fixed-point numbers and for input and output in bases other than decimal.

The size of numbers that can be manipulated by **DC** is limited only by available core storage. On typical implementations of the UNIX system, the size of numbers that can be handled varies from several hundred on the smallest systems to several thousand on the largest.

The **DC** program works like a stacking calculator using reverse Polish notation. Ordinarily, **DC** operates on decimal integers; but an input base, output base, and a number of fractional digits to be maintained can be specified.

A language called **BC** has been developed which accepts programs written in the familiar style of higher-level programming languages and compiles the output which is interpreted by **DC**. Some of the commands described below were designed for the compiler interface and are not easy for a human user to manipulate.

Numbers that are typed into **DC** are put on a pushdown stack. The **DC** commands work by taking the top number or two off the stack, performing the desired operation, and pushing the result on the stack. If an argument is given, input is taken from that file until its end, then it is taken from the standard input.

### DC COMMANDS

Any number of commands are permitted on a line. Blanks and new-line characters are ignored except within numbers and in places where a register name is expected.

The following constructions are recognized:

number (e.g. 244)

The value of a number is pushed onto the stack. A number is an unbroken string of digits 0 through 9 and uppercase letters A through F (treated as digits with values 10 through 15, respectively). The number may be preceded by an underscore (  ) to input a negative number and numbers may contain decimal points.

**dc**

The top two values on the stack are added (+), subtracted (-), multiplied (\*), divided (/), remaindered (%), or exponentiated (^) by using

+ - \* / % ^

The two entries are popped off the stack, and the result is pushed on the stack in their place. The result of a division is an integer truncated toward zero. An exponent must not have any digits after the decimal point.

**sx**

The top of the main stack is popped and stored in a register named *x* (where *x* may be any character). If *s* is uppercase, *x* is treated as a stack; and the value is pushed onto it. Any character, even blank or newline, is a valid register name.

The value of register *x* is pushed onto the stack. Register *x* is not altered. If the *l* in

**lx**

is uppercase, register *x* is treated as a stack, and its top value is popped onto the main stack. All registers start with empty value which is treated as a zero by the command *l* and is treated as an error by the command *L*.

The following characters perform the stated tasks:

**d**

The top value on the stack is duplicated.

**p**

The top value on the stack is printed. The top value remains unchanged.

**f**

All values on the stack and in registers are printed.

**x**

Treats the top element of the stack as a character string, removes it from the stack, and executes it as a string of **DC** commands.

[ ... ]

Puts the bracketed character string onto the top of the stack.

q

Exits the program. If executing a string, the recursion level is popped by two. If q is uppercase, the top value on the stack is popped; and the string execution level is popped by that value.

&lt;x &gt;x =x !&lt;x !&gt;x !=x

The top two elements of the stack are popped and compared. Register x is executed if they obey the stated relation. Exclamation point is negation.

v

Replaces the top element on the stack by its square root. The square root of an integer is truncated to an integer.

!

Interprets the rest of the line as an ICON/UXV software command. Control returns to DC when the command terminates.

c

All values on the stack are popped; the stack becomes empty.

i

The top value on the stack is popped and used as the number radix for further input. If i is uppercase, the value of the input base is pushed onto the stack. No mechanism has been provided for the input of arbitrary numbers in bases less than 1 or greater than 16.

o

The top value on the stack is popped and used as the number radix for further output. If o is uppercase, the value of the output base is pushed onto the stack.

k

dc

The top of the stack is popped, and that value is used as a scale factor that influences the number of decimal places that are maintained during multiplication, division, and exponentiation. The scale factor must be greater than or equal to zero and less than 100. If *k* is uppercase, the value of the scale factor is pushed onto the stack.

z

The value of the stack level is pushed onto the stack.

?

A line of input is taken from the input source (usually the console) and executed.

## INTERNAL REPRESENTATION OF NUMBERS

Numbers are stored internally using a dynamic storage allocator. Numbers are kept in the form of a string of digits to the base 100 stored one digit per byte (centennial digits). The string is stored with the low-order digit at the beginning of the string. For example, the representation of 157 is 57,1. After any arithmetic operation on a number, care is taken that all digits are in the range 0 to 99 and that the number has no leading zeros. The number zero is represented by the empty string.

Negative numbers are represented in the 100s complement notation, which is analogous to twos complement notation for binary numbers. The high-order digit of a negative number is always -1 and all other digits are in the range 0 to 99. The digit preceding the high-order -1 digit is never a 99. The representation of -157 is 43,98,-1. This is called the canonical form of a number. The advantage of this kind of representation of negative numbers is ease of addition. When addition is performed digit by digit, the result is formally correct. The result need only be modified, if necessary, to put it into canonical form.

Because the largest valid digit is 99 and the byte can hold numbers twice that large, addition can be carried out and the handling of carries done later when it is convenient.

An additional byte is stored with each number beyond the high-order digit to indicate the number of assumed decimal digits after the decimal point. The representation of .001 is 1,*s* where the scale has been italicized to emphasize the fact that it is not the high-order digit. The value of this extra byte is called the **scale factor** of the number.

## THE ALLOCATOR

The DC program uses a dynamic string storage allocator for all of its internal storage. All reading and writing of numbers internally is through the allocator. Associated with each string in the allocator is a 4-word header containing pointers to the beginning of the string, the end of the string, the next place to write, and the next place to read. Communication between the allocator and DC is via pointers to these headers.

The allocator initially has one large string on a list of free strings. All headers except the one pointing to this string are on a list of free headers. Requests for strings are made by size. The size of the string actually supplied is the next higher power of two. When a request for a string is made, the allocator first checks the free list to see if there is a string of the desired size. If none is found, the allocator finds the next larger free string and splits it repeatedly until it has a string of the right size. Leftover strings are put on the free list. If there are no larger strings, the allocator tries to combine smaller free strings into larger ones. Since all strings are the result of splitting large strings, each string has a neighbor that is next to it in core and, if free, can be combined with it to make a string twice as long.

If a string of the proper length cannot be found, the allocator asks the system for more space. The amount of space on the system is the only limitation on the size and number of strings in DC. If the allocator runs out of headers at any time in the process of trying to allocate a string, it also asks the system for more space.

There are routines in the allocator for reading, writing, copying, rewinding, forward spacing, and backspacing strings. All string manipulation is done using these routines.

The reading and writing routines increment the read pointer or write pointer so that the characters of a string are read or written in succession by a series of read or write calls. The write pointer is interpreted as the end of the information-containing portion of a string and a call to read beyond that point returns an end of string indication. An attempt to write beyond the end of a string causes the allocator to allocate a larger space and then copy the old string into the larger block.

## INTERNAL ARITHMETIC

All arithmetic operations are done on integers. The operands (or operand) needed for the operation are popped from the main stack and their scale factors stripped off. Zeros are added or digits removed as necessary to get a properly scaled result from the internal arithmetic routine. For example, if the scale of the operands is different and decimal alignment is required, as it is for addition, zeros are appended to the operand with the smaller scale. After performing the required arithmetic operation, the proper scale factor is appended to the end of the number before it is pushed on the stack.

A register called **scale** plays a part in the results of most arithmetic operations. The **scale** register limits the number of decimal places retained in arithmetic computations. The **scale** register may be set to the number on the top of the stack truncated to an integer with the **k**

dc

command. The **K** command may be used to push the value of **scale** on the stack. The value of **scale** must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than 100. The descriptions of the individual arithmetic operations includes the exact effect of **scale** on the computations.

## ADDITION AND SUBTRACTION

The scales of the two numbers are compared and trailing zeros are supplied to the number with the lower scale to give both numbers the same scale. The number with the smaller scale is multiplied by 10 if the difference of the scales is odd. The scale of the result is then set to the larger of the scales of the two operands.

Subtraction is performed by negating the number to be subtracted and proceeding as in addition.

The addition is performed digit by digit from the low-order end of the number. The carries are propagated in the usual way. The resulting number is brought into canonical form, which may require stripping of leading zeros, or for negative numbers, replacing the high-order configuration 99,-1 by the digit -1. In any case, digits that are not in the range 0 through 99 must be brought into that range, propagating any carries or borrows that result.

## MULTIPLICATION

The scales are removed from the two operands and saved. The operands are both made positive. Then multiplication is performed in a digit by digit manner that exactly follows the hand method of multiplying. The first number is multiplied by each digit of the second number, beginning with its low-order digit. The intermediate products are accumulated into a partial sum which becomes the final product. The product is put into the canonical form and its sign is computed from the signs of the original operands.

The scale of the result is set equal to the sum of the scales of the two operands. If that scale is larger than the internal register **scale** and also larger than both of the scales of the two operands, then the scale of the result is set equal to the largest of these three last quantities.

## DIVISION

The scales are removed from the two operands. Zeros are appended, or digits are removed from the dividend to make the scale of the result of the integer division equal to the internal quantity **scale**. The signs are removed and saved.

Division is performed much as it would be done by hand. The difference of the lengths of the two numbers is computed. If the divisor is longer than the dividend, zero is returned.

Otherwise, the top digit of the divisor is divided into the top two digits of the dividend. The result is used as the first (high-order) digit of the quotient. If it turns out to be one unit too low, the next trial quotient is larger than 99; and this is adjusted at the end of the process. The trial digit is multiplied by the divisor, the result subtracted from the dividend, and the process is repeated to get additional quotient digits until the remaining dividend is smaller than the divisor. At the end, the digits of the quotient are put into the canonical form with propagation of carry as needed. The sign is set from the sign of the operands.

### REMAINDER

The division routine is called, and division is performed exactly as described. The quantity returned is the remains of the dividend at the end of the divide process. Since division truncates toward zero, remainders have the same sign as the dividend. The scale of the remainder is set to the maximum of the scale of the dividend and the scale of the quotient plus the scale of the divisor.

### SQUARE ROOT

The scale is removed from the operand. Zeros are added if necessary to make the integer result have a scale that is the larger of the internal quantity **scale** and the scale of the operand. The method used to compute the square root is Newton's method with successive approximations by the rule.

The initial guess is found by taking the integer square root of the top two digits.

### EXPONENTIATION

Only exponents with 0 scale factor are handled. If the exponent is 0, then the result is 1. If the exponent is negative, then it is made positive; and the base is divided into 1. The scale of the base is removed.

The integer exponent is viewed as a binary number. The base is repeatedly squared, and the result is obtained as a product of those powers of the base that correspond to the positions of the one-bits in the binary representation of the exponent. Enough digits of the result are removed to make the scale of the result the same as if the indicated multiplication had been performed.

## INPUT CONVERSION AND BASE

Numbers are converted to the internal representation as they are read in. The scale stored with a number is simply the number of fractional digits input. Negative numbers are indicated by preceding the number with an underscore (`_`). The hexadecimal digits A through F correspond to the numbers 10 through 15 regardless of input base. The `i` command can be used to change the base of the input numbers. This command pops the stack, truncates the resulting number to an integer, and uses it as the input base for all further input. The input base (`ibase`) is initialized to 10 (decimal) but may, for example, be changed to 8 or 16 for octal or hexadecimal to decimal conversions. The command `I` pushes the value of the input base on the stack.

## OUTPUT COMMANDS

The command `p` causes the top of the stack to be printed. It does not remove the top of the stack. All of the stack and internal registers are output by typing the command `f`. The `o` command is used to change the output base (`obase`). This command uses the top of the stack truncated to an integer as the base for all further output. The output base is initialized to 10 (decimal). It works correctly for any base. The command `O` pushes the value of the output base on the stack.

## OUTPUT FORMAT AND BASE

The input and output bases only affect the interpretation of numbers on input and output; they have no effect on arithmetic computations. Large numbers are output with 70 characters per line; a backslash (`\`) indicates a continued line. All choices of input and output bases work correctly, although not all are useful. A particularly useful output base is 100000, which has the effect of grouping digits in fives. Bases of 8 and 16 are used for decimal-octal or decimal-hexadecimal conversions.

## INTERNAL REGISTERS

Numbers or strings may be stored in internal registers or loaded on the stack from registers with the commands `s` and `l`. The command `sx` pops the top of the stack and stores the result in register `x`. The `x` can be any character. The command `lx` puts the contents of register `x` on the top of the stack. The `l` command has no effect on the contents of register `x`. The `s` command, however, is destructive.

## STACK COMMANDS

The command **c** clears the stack. The command **d** pushes a duplicate of the number on the top of the stack onto the stack. The command **z** pushes the stack size on the stack. The command **X** replaces the number on the top of the stack with its scale factor. The command **Z** replaces the top of the stack with its length.

## SUBROUTINE DEFINITIONS AND CALLS

Enclosing a string in brackets “[ ]” pushes the ASCII string on the stack. The **q** command quits or (in executing a string) pops the recursion levels by two.

## INTERNAL REGISTERS—PROGRAMMING DC

The load and store commands, together with “[ ]” to store strings, the **x** command to execute, and the testing commands (**<**, **>**, **=**, **!<**, **!>**, **!=**), can be used to program **DC**. The **x** command assumes the top of the stack is a string of **DC** commands and executes it. The testing commands compare the top two elements on the stack and, if the relation holds, execute the register that follows the relation. For example, to print the numbers 0 through 9,

```
[lip1+ si li10>a]sa
0si lax
```

## PUSHDOWN REGISTERS AND ARRAYS

These commands are designed for use by a compiler, not directly by programmers. They involve pushdown registers and arrays. In addition to the stack that commands work on, **DC** can be thought of as having individual stacks for each register. These registers are operated on by the commands **S** and **L**. **Sx** pushes the top value of the main stack onto the stack for the register **x**. **Lx** pops the stack for register **x** and puts the result on the main stack. The commands **s** and **l** also work on registers but not as pushdown stacks. The command **l** does not affect the top of the register stack, but **s** destroys what was there before.

The commands to work on arrays are **:** and **;**. The command **:x** pops the stack and uses this value as an index into the array **x**. The next element on the stack is stored at this index in **x**. An index must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than 2048. The command **;x** loads the main stack from the array **x**. The value on the top of the stack is the index into the array **x** of the value to be loaded.

dc

## MISCELLANEOUS COMMANDS

The command ! interprets the rest of the line as an ICON/UXV software command and passes it to ICON/UXV to execute. One other compiler command is Q. This command uses the top of the stack as the number of levels of recursion to skip.

## DESIGN CHOICES

The real reason for the use of a dynamic storage allocator is that a general purpose program can be used for a variety of other tasks. The allocator has some value for input and for compiling (i.e., the bracket [...] commands) where it cannot be known in advance how long a string will be. The result is that at a modest cost in execution time:

- All considerations of string allocation and sizes of strings are removed from the remainder of the program.
- Debugging is made easier.
- The allocation method used wastes approximately 25 percent of available space.

The choice of 100 as a base for internal arithmetic seemingly has no compelling advantage. Yet the base cannot exceed 127 because of hardware limitations and at the cost of 5 percent in space debugging was made a great deal easier, and decimal output was made much faster.

The reason for a stack-type arithmetic design was to permit all DC commands from addition to subroutine execution to be implemented in essentially the same way. The result was a considerable degree of logical separation of the final program into modules with very little communication between modules.

The rationale for the lack of interaction between the scale and the bases is to provide an understandable means of proceeding after a change of base or scale (when numbers had already been entered). An earlier implementation which had global notions of scale and base did not work out well. If the value of **scale** is interpreted in the current input or output base, then a change of base or scale in the midst of a computation causes great confusion in the interpretation of the results. The current scheme has the advantage that the value of the input and output bases are only used for input and output, respectively, and they are ignored in all other operations. The value of scale is not used for any essential purpose by any part of the program. It is used only to prevent the number of decimal places resulting from the arithmetic operations from growing beyond all bounds.

The rationale for the choices for the scales of the results of arithmetic is that in no case should any significant digits be thrown away if, on appearances, the user actually wanted them. Thus, if the user wants to add the numbers 1.5 and 3.517, it seemed reasonable to give them the result 5.017 without requiring to unnecessarily specify rather obvious requirements for precision.

On the other hand, multiplication and exponentiation produce results with many more digits than their operands. It seemed reasonable to give as a minimum the number of decimal places in the operands but not to give more than that number of digits unless the user asked for them by specifying a value for **scale**. Square root can be handled in just the same way as multiplication. The operation of division gives arbitrarily many decimal places, and there is simply no way to guess how many places the user wants. In this case only, the user must specify a **scale** to get any decimal places at all.

The scale of remainder was chosen to make it possible to recreate the dividend from the quotient and remainder. This is easy to implement; no digits are thrown away.

dc

*NOTES*





## Chapter 23

### LEXICAL ANALYZER GENERATOR (LEX)

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	23-1
LEX SOURCE .....	23-3
LEX REGULAR EXPRESSIONS .....	23-4
LEX ACTIONS .....	23-9
AMBIGUOUS SOURCE RULES .....	23-13
LEX SOURCE DEFINITIONS .....	23-15
USAGE .....	23-17
LEX AND YACC .....	23-17
EXAMPLES .....	23-18
LEFT CONTEXT SENSITIVITY .....	23-19
CHARACTER SET .....	23-21
SUMMARY OF SOURCE FORMAT .....	23-21
CAVEATS AND BUGS .....	23-23



## Chapter 23

# LEXICAL ANALYZER GENERATOR (LEX)

### GENERAL

The **Lex** is a program generator that produces a program in a general purpose language that recognizes regular expressions. It is designed for lexical processing of character input streams. It accepts a high-level, problem oriented specification for character string matching. The regular expressions are specified by you (the user) in the source specifications given to **Lex**. The **Lex** program generator source is a table of regular expressions and corresponding program fragments. The table is translated to a program that reads an input stream, copies the input stream to an output stream, and partitions the input into strings that match the given expressions. As each such string is recognized, the corresponding program fragment is executed. The recognition of the expressions is performed by a deterministic finite automaton generated by **Lex**. The program fragments written by you are executed in the order in which the corresponding regular expressions occur in the input stream.

The user supplies the additional code beyond expression matching needed to complete the tasks, possibly including codes written by other generators. The program that recognizes the expressions is generated in the general purpose programming language employed for your program fragments. Thus, a high-level expression language is provided to write the string expressions to be matched while your freedom to write actions is unimpaired.

The **Lex** written code is not a complete language, but rather a generator representing a new language feature which can be added to different programming languages, called "host languages". Just as general purpose languages can produce code to run on different computer hardware, **Lex** can write code in different host languages. The host language is used for the output code generated by **Lex** and also for the program fragments added by the user. Compatible run-time libraries for the different host languages are also provided. This makes **Lex** adaptable to different environments and different users. Each application may be directed to the combination of hardware and host language appropriate to the task, the user's background, and the properties of local implementations. At present, the only supported host language is the C language, although Fortran (in the form of Ratfor) has been available in the past. The **Lex** generator exists on the ICON/UXV operating system, but the codes generated by **Lex** may be taken anywhere the appropriate compilers exist.

The **Lex** program generator turns the user's expressions and actions (called **source**) into the host general purpose language; the generated program is named **yylex**. The **yylex** program recognizes expressions in a stream (called **input**) and performs the specified actions for each expression as it is detected. See Figure 23-1.

For example, consider a program to delete from the input all blanks or tabs at the ends of lines.

TPA695911-1  
12W X 12H

Figure 23-1. Overview of Lex

```
%%
[ \t]+$ ;
```

is all that is required. The program contains a `%%` delimiter to mark the beginning of the rules. This rule contains a regular expression that matches one or more instances of the characters blank or tab (written for visibility, in accordance with the C language convention) and occurs prior to the end of a line. The brackets indicate the character class made of blank and tab; the `+` indicates "one or more ..."; and the `$` indicates "end of line," as in **QED**. No action is specified, so the program generated by **Lex** `yylex()` ignores these characters. Everything else is copied. To change any remaining string of blanks or tabs to a single blank, add another rule.

```
%%
[ \t]+$ ;
[ \t]+ printf(" ");
```

The coded instructions (generated for this source) scans for both rules at once, observes (at the termination of the string of blanks or tabs) whether or not there is a newline character, and then executes the desired rule action. The first rule matches all strings of blanks or tabs at the end of lines, and the second rule matches all remaining strings of blanks or tabs.

The **Lex** program generator can be used alone for simple transformations or for analysis and statistics gathering on a lexical level. The **Lex** generator can also be used with a parser generator to perform the lexical analysis phase; it is particularly easy to interface **Lex** and **yacc**. The **Lex** program recognizes only regular expressions; **yacc** writes parsers that accept a large class of context free grammars but requires a lower level analyzer to recognize input tokens. Thus, a combination of **Lex** and **yacc** is often appropriate. When used as a preprocessor for a later parser generator, **Lex** is used to partition the input stream; and the parser generator assigns structure to the resulting pieces. The flow of control in such a case is shown in Figure 23.2. Additional programs, written by other generators or by hand, can be added easily to programs written by **Lex**. You will realize that the name `yylex` is what **yacc** expects its lexical analyzer to be named, so that the use of this name by **Lex** simplifies interfacing.

TPA695912-1  
20W X 20H

### Figure 23-2. Lex With Yacc

In the program written by **Lex**, the user's fragments (representing the **actions** to be performed as each regular expression is found) are gathered as cases of a switch. The automaton interpreter directs the control flow. Opportunity is provided for the user to insert either declarations or additional statements in the routine containing the actions or to add subroutines outside this action routine.

The **Lex** program generator is not limited to a source that can be interpreted on the basis of one character look-ahead. For example, if there are two rules, one looking for "ab" and another for "abcdefg" and the input stream is "abcdefh," **Lex** recognizes "ab" and leaves the input pointer just before "cd ...". Such backup is more costly than the processing of simpler languages.

### LEX SOURCE

The general format of **Lex** source is

```
{definitions}  
%%  
{rules}  
%%  
{user subroutines}
```

where the definitions and the user subroutines are often omitted. The first %% is required to mark the beginning of the rules, but the second %% is optional. The absolute minimum **Lex** program is

## LEX

%%

(no definitions, no rules) which translates into a program that copies the input to the output unchanged.

In the outline of **Lex** programs shown above, the rules represent your control decisions. They are in a table containing

- A left column with regular expressions
- A right column with actions and program fragments to be executed when the expressions are recognized.

Thus an individual rule might be

```
integer    printf("found keyword INT");
```

to look for the string **integer** in the input stream and print the message "found keyword INT" whenever it appears. In this example, the host procedural language is C, and the C language library function **printf** is used to print the string. The end of the expression is indicated by the first blank or tab character. If the action is merely a single C language expression, it can just be given on the right side of the line; if it is compound or takes more than a line, it should be enclosed in braces. As a more useful example, suppose you desire to change a number of words from British to American spelling. The **Lex** rules such as:

```
colour     printf("color");
mechanize  printf("mechanize");
petrol     printf("gas");
```

would be a start. These rules are not sufficient since the word "petroleum" would become "gaseum".

## LEX REGULAR EXPRESSIONS

The definitions of regular expressions are very similar to those in **QED**. A regular expression specifies a set of strings to be matched. It contains text characters (which match the corresponding characters in the strings being compared) and operator characters (which specify repetitions, choices, and other features). The letters of the alphabet and the digits are always text characters; the regular expression

```
integer
```

matches the string "integer" wherever it appears, and the expression

a57D

looks for the string "a57D".

### Operators

The operator characters are

```
" \ [ ] ^ - ? . * + | ( ) $ / { } % < >
```

and if they are to be used as text characters, an escape should be used. The quotation mark operator " indicates that whatever is contained between a pair of quotes is to be taken as text characters. Thus:

```
xyz"++"
```

matches the string `xyz++` when it appears. Note that a part of a string may be quoted. It is harmless, but unnecessary, to quote an ordinary text character; the expression

```
"xyz++"
```

is equivalent to the one above. Thus, by quoting every nonalphanumeric character being used as a text character, the user can avoid remembering the list above of current operator characters and is safe should further extensions to `Lex` lengthen the list.

An operator character may also be turned into a text character by preceding it with a backslash (`\`) as in

```
xyz\+\+
```

which is another, less readable, equivalent of the above expressions. Another use of the quoting mechanism is to get a blank into an expression; normally, as explained above, blanks or tabs end a rule. Any blank character not contained within `[]` (see below) must be quoted. Several normal C language escapes with `\` are recognized: `\n` is newline, `\t` is tab, and `\b` is backspace. To enter `\` itself, use `\\`. Since newline is illegal in an expression, `\n` must be used; it is not required to escape tab and backspace. Every character except blank, tab, newline, and the list of operator characters above is always a text character.

## LEX

### Character Classes

Classes of characters can be specified using the operator pair `[]`. The construction `[abc]` matches a single character which may be "a", "b", or "c". Within square brackets, most operator meanings are ignored. Only three characters are special; these are `\`, `-`, and `^`. The `-` character indicates ranges. For example,

```
[a-z0-9<>_]
```

indicates the character class containing all the lowercase letters, the digits, the angle brackets, and underline. Ranges may be given in either order. Using `-` between any pair of characters which are not both uppercase letters, both lowercase letters, or both digits is implementation dependent and gets a warning message (e.g., `[0-z]` in ASCII is many more characters than is in EBCDIC). If it is desired to include the character `-` in a character class, it should be first or last; thus:

```
[_+0-9]
```

matches all the digits and the two signs.

In character classes, the `^` operator must appear as the first character after the left bracket to indicate that the resulting string is complemented with respect to the computer character set. Thus:

```
[^abc]
```

matches all characters except "a", "b", or "c", including all special or control characters; or

```
[^a-zA-Z]
```

is any character that is not a letter. The `\` character provides the usual escapes within character class brackets.

### Arbitrary Character

To match almost any character, the operator character (dot)

is the class of all characters except newline. Escaping into octal is possible although nonportable.

```
[\40-\176]
```

matches all printable ASCII characters from octal 40 (blank) to octal 176 (tilde).

### Optional Expressions

The operator `?` indicates an optional element of an expression. Thus:

`ab?c`

matches either "ac" or "abc".

### Repeated Expressions

Repetitions of classes are indicated by the operators `*` and `+`. For example,

`a*`

is any number of consecutive "a" characters, including zero; while

`a+`

is one or more instances of "a". For example,

`[a-z]+`

is all strings of lowercase letters. And

`[A-Za-z][A-Za-z0-9]*`

indicates all alphanumeric strings with a leading alphabetic character. This is a typical expression for recognizing identifiers in computer languages.

### Alternation and Grouping

The operator `|` indicates alternation

`(ab|cd)`

matches either "ab" or "cd". Note that parentheses are used for grouping; although they are not necessary on the outside level,

`ab|cd`

## LEX

would have sufficed. Parentheses can be used for more complex expressions.

$(ab|cd+)?(ef)^*$

matches such strings as "abefef", "efefef", "cdef", or "cddd"; but not "abc", "abcd", or "abcdef".

### Context Sensitivity

The **Lex** program recognizes a small amount of surrounding context. The two simplest operators for this are  $\wedge$  and  $\$$ . If the first character of an expression is  $\wedge$ , the expression is only matched at the beginning of a line (after a newline character or at the beginning of the input stream). This never conflicts with the other meaning of  $\wedge$  (complementation of character classes) since that only applies within the  $[]$  operators. If the very last character is  $\$$ , the expression is only matched at the end of a line (when immediately followed by newline). The latter operator is a special case of the  $/$  operator character which indicates trailing context. The expression

$ab/cd$

matches the string "ab" but only if followed by "cd". Thus:

$ab\$$

is the same as

$ab/\backslash n$

Left context is handled in **Lex** by "start conditions" as explained later. If a rule is only to be executed when the **Lex** automaton interpreter is in start condition **x**, the rule should be prefixed by

$\langle x \rangle$

using the angle bracket operator characters. If we considered "being at the beginning of a line" to be start condition **ONE**, then the  $\wedge$  operator would be equivalent to

$\langle ONE \rangle$

Start conditions are explained more fully later.

### Repetitions and Definitions

The operators `{}` specify either repetitions (if they enclose numbers) or definition expansion (if they enclose a name). For example,

```
{digit}
```

looks for a predefined string named "digit" and inserts it at that point in the expression. The definitions are given in the first part of the **Lex** input before the rules. In contrast,

```
a{1,5}
```

looks for 1 to 5 occurrences of "a".

Finally, initial `%` is special being the separator for **Lex** source segments.

### LEX ACTIONS

When an expression written as above is matched, **Lex** executes the corresponding action. This part describes some features of **Lex** that aid in writing actions. Note that there is a default action that consists of copying the input to the output. This is performed on all strings not otherwise matched. Thus, the **Lex** user who wishes to absorb the entire input, without producing any output, must provide rules to match everything. When **Lex** is being used with **yacc**, this is the normal situation. One may consider that actions are what is done instead of copying the input to the output; thus, in general, a rule that merely copies can be omitted. Also, a character combination that is omitted from the rules and that appears as input is likely to be printed on the output, thus calling attention to the gap in the rules.

One of the simplest things that can be done is to ignore the input. Specifying a C language null statement, `;` as an action causes this result. A frequent rule is

```
[ \t\n] ;
```

which causes the three spacing characters (blank, tab, and newline) to be ignored.

Another easy way to avoid writing actions is the action character `|` which indicates that the action for this rule is the action for the next rule. The previous example could also have been written

```
" " |  
"\t" |  
"\n" ;
```

## LEX

with the same result although in different style. The quotes around `\n` and `\t` are not required.

In more complex actions, you may often want to know the actual text that matched some expression like `"[a-z]+"`. The **Lex** program leaves this text in an external character array. Thus, to print the name found, a rule like

```
[a-z]+ printf("%s", yytext);
```

prints the string in `yytext[]`. The C language function `printf` accepts a format argument and data to be printed; in this case, the format is "print string" (`%` indicating data conversion, and `s` indicating string type), and the data are the characters in `yytext[]`. This places the matched string on the output. This action is so common that it may be written as **ECHO**.

```
[a-z]+ ECHO;
```

is the same as the above. Since the default action is just to print the characters found, one might ask why give a rule like this one which merely specifies the default action. Such rules are often required to avoid matching some other rule that is not desired. For example, if there is a rule that matches **read**, it normally matches the instances of **read** contained in **bread** or **readjust**. To avoid this, a rule of the form `"[a-z]+"` is needed. This is explained further below.

Sometimes it is more convenient to know the end of what has been found; hence, **Lex** also provides a count `yyleng` of the number of characters matched. To count both the number of words and the number of characters in words in the input, write

```
[a-zA-Z]+ {words++; chars += yyleng;}
```

which accumulates in `chars` the number of characters in the words recognized. The last character in the string matched can be accessed by

```
yytext[yyleng-1]
```

Occasionally, a **Lex** action may decide that a rule has not recognized the correct span of characters. Two routines are provided to aid with this situation. First, `yymore()` can be called to indicate that the next input expression recognized is to be tacked on to the end of this input. Normally, the next input string would overwrite the current entry in `yytext`. Second, `yless(n)` may be called to indicate that not all the characters matched by the currently successful expression are wanted right now. The argument "n" indicates the number of characters in `yytext` to be retained. Further characters previously matched are returned to the input. This provides the same sort of look ahead offered by the `/` operator but in a different form.

Example:

Consider a language that defines a string as a set of characters between quotation (") marks and provides that to include a (") in a string it must be preceded by a \. The regular expression which matches that is somewhat confusing, so that it might be preferable to write

```
\["^"]* {
    if (yytext[yyval-1] == '\\')
        yymore();
    else
        ... normal user processing
}
```

will, when faced with a string such as "abc\"def", first match the five characters "abc\"; then the call to *yymore()* will cause the next part of the string "def" to be tacked on the end. Note that the final quote terminating the string should be picked up in the code labeled "normal processing".

The function *yyles()* might be used to reprocess text in various circumstances. Consider the C language problem of distinguishing the ambiguity of "=-a". Suppose it is desired to treat this as "= - a" but also to print a message: a rule might be

```
=-[a-zA-Z] {
    printf("Operator (=-) ambiguous\n");
    yyles(yyleng-1);
    ... action for =- ...
}
```

which prints a message, returns the letter after the operator to the input stream, and treats the operator as "=-". Alternatively, it might be desired to treat this as "= -a". To do this, just return the minus sign as well as the letter to the input.

```
=-[a-zA-Z] {
    printf("Operator (=-) ambiguous\n");
    yyles(yyleng-2);
    ... action for = ...
}
```

performs the other interpretation. Note that the expressions for the two cases might more easily be written

```
=-/[A-Za-z]
```

in the first case, and

```
=/-[A-Za-z]
```

## LEX

in the second; no backup is required in the rule action. It is not necessary to recognize the whole identifier to observe the ambiguity. The possibility of “=-3”, however, makes

=-/[^ \t\n]

a still better rule.

In addition to these routines, **Lex** also permits access to the I/O routines it uses. They are as follows:

1. *input()* returns the next input character.
2. *output(c)* writes the character “c” on the output.
3. *unput(c)* pushes the character “c” back onto the input stream to be read later by *input()*.

By default, these routines are provided as macro definitions; but the user can override them and supply private versions. These routines define the relationship between external files and internal characters and must all be retained or modified consistently. They may be redefined to cause input or output to be transmitted to or from strange places including other programs or internal memory. The character set used must be consistent in all routines and a value of zero returned by *input* must mean end of file. The relationship between *unput* and *input* must be retained or the **Lex** look ahead will not work. The **Lex** program does not look ahead at all if it does not have to, but every rule ending in +, \*, ?, or \$ or containing / implies look ahead. Look ahead is also necessary to match an expression that is a prefix of another expression. The standard **Lex** library imposes a 100-character limit on backup.

Another **Lex** library routine that you may sometimes want to redefine is *yywrap()* which is called whenever **Lex** reaches an end of file. If *yywrap* returns a 1, **Lex** continues with the normal wrap up on end of input. Sometimes, however, it is convenient to arrange for more input to arrive from a new source. In this case, the user should provide a *yywrap* which arranges for new input and returns 0. This instructs **Lex** to continue processing. The default *yywrap* always returns 1.

This routine is also a convenient place to print tables, summaries, etc., at the end of a program. Note that it is not possible to write a normal rule that recognizes end of file; the only access to this condition is through *yywrap*. In fact, unless a private version of *input()* is supplied, a file containing nulls cannot be handled since a value of 0 returned by *input* is taken to be end of file.

## AMBIGUOUS SOURCE RULES

The **Lex** program can handle ambiguous specifications. When more than one expression can match the current input, **Lex** chooses as follows:

1. The longest match is preferred.
2. Among rules that matched the same number of characters, the rule given first is preferred.

Thus, suppose the rules

```
integer  keyword action ...;
[a-z]+  identifier action ...;
```

are to be given in that order. If the input is "integers", it is taken as an identifier because

"[a-z]+"

matches eight characters while "integer" matches only seven. If the input is "integer", both rules match seven characters; and the keyword rule is selected because it was given first. Anything shorter (e.g., "int") does not match the expression "integer" and so the identifier interpretation is used.

The principle of preferring the longest match makes rules containing expressions like `.*` dangerous. For example:

```
','*
```

might appear to be a good way of recognizing a string in single quotes. However, it is an invitation for the program to read far ahead looking for a distant single quote. Presented with the input

```
'first' quoted string here, 'second' here
```

the above expression will match

```
'first' quoted string here, 'second'
```

which is probably not what was wanted. A better rule is of the form

```
'[^\\n]*'
```

## LEX

which, on the above input, stops after ('first'). The consequences of errors like this are mitigated by the fact that the dot (.) operator does not match newline. Thus expressions like .\* stop on the current line. Do not try to defeat this with expressions like [.\n]+ or equivalents; the Lex generated program tries to read the entire input file causing internal buffer overflows.

Note that Lex is normally partitioning the input stream not searching for all possible matches of each expression. This means that each character is accounted for once and only once. For example, suppose it is desired to count occurrences of both "she" and "he" in an input text. Some Lex rules to do this might be

```
she  s++;
he   h++;
\n   |
.    ;
```

where the last two rules ignore everything besides "he" and "she". Remember that dot (.) does not include newline. Since "she" includes "he", Lex normally *does not* recognize the instances of "he" included in "she" since once it has passed a "she" those characters are gone.

Sometimes the user desires to override this choice. The action *REJECT* means "go do the next alternative". It causes whatever rule was second choice after the current rule to be executed. The position of the input pointer is adjusted accordingly. Suppose you really want to count the included instances of "he". Use the following rule to change the previous example to accomplish the task.

```
she  {s++; REJECT;}
he   {h++; REJECT;}
\n   |
.    ;
```

After counting each expression, it is rejected; whenever appropriate, the other expression is then counted. In this example, you could note that "she" includes "he" but not vice versa and omit the *REJECT* action on "he". In other cases, it is not possible to state which input characters are in both classes.

Consider the two rules

```
a[bc]+ { ... ; REJECT;}
a[cd]+ { ... ; REJECT;}

```

If the input is "ab", only the first rule matches, and on "ad" only the second matches. The input string "accb" matches the first rule for four characters and then the second rule for three characters. In contrast, the input "accd" agrees with the second rule for four characters and then the first rule for three.

In general, *REJECT* is useful whenever the purpose of *Lex* is not to partition the input stream but to detect all examples of some items in the input, and the instances of these items may overlap or include each other. Suppose a digram table of the input is desired; normally, the digrams overlap, that is the word "the" is considered to contain both "th" and "he". Assuming a 2-dimensional array named *digram* to be incremented, the appropriate source is

```
%%
[a-z][a-z]  {digram[yytext[0]][yytext[1]]++; REJECT;}
\n         ;
```

where the *REJECT* is necessary to pick up a letter pair beginning at every character rather than at every other character.

The action *REJECT* does not rescan the input; instead it remembers the results of the previous scan. This means that if a rule with trailing context is found and *REJECT* executed the user must not have used *unput* to change the characters forthcoming from the input stream. This is the only restriction on the user's ability to manipulate the not-yet-processed input.

## LEX SOURCE DEFINITIONS

Recalling the format of the *Lex* source,

```
{definitions}
%%
{rules}
%%
{user routines}
```

So far, only the rules have been described. You need additional options to define variables for use in the program and for use by *Lex*. Variables can go either in the definitions section or in the rules section.

Remember *Lex* is generating the rules into a program. Any source not intercepted by *Lex* is copied into the generated program. There are three classes of such things.

1. Any line not part of a *Lex* rule or action that begins with a blank or tab is copied into the *Lex* generated program. Such source input prior to the first %% delimiter is external to any function in the code; if it appears immediately after the first %% , it appears in an appropriate place for declarations in the function written by *Lex* which contains the actions. This material must look like program fragments and should precede the first *Lex* rule.

## LEX

Lines that begin with a blank or tab and that contain a comment are passed through to the generated program. This can be used to include comments in either the **Lex** source or the generated code; the comments should follow the host language convention.

2. Anything included between lines containing only `%{` and `%}` is copied out as above. The delimiters are discarded. This format permits entering text like preprocessor statements that must begin in column 1 or copying lines that do not look like programs.
3. Anything after the third `%%` delimiter, regardless of formats, etc., is copied out after the **Lex** output.

Definitions intended for **Lex** are given before the first `%%` delimiter. Any line in this section not contained between `%{` and `%}` and beginning in column 1 is assumed to define **Lex** substitution strings. The format of such lines is

```
name    translation
```

and it causes the string given as a translation to be associated with the name. The name and translation must be separated by at least one blank or tab, and the name must begin with a letter. The translation can then be called out by the `{name}` syntax in a rule. Using `{D}` for the digits and `{E}` for an exponent field, for example, abbreviate rules to recognize numbers

```
D          [0-9]
E          [DEde][+-]?{D}+
%%
{D}+      printf("integer");
{D}+"."{D}*({E})? |
{D}*"{D}+({E})? |
{D}+{E}   printf("real");
```

Note the first two rules for real numbers; both require a decimal point and contain an optional exponent field. The first requires at least one digit before the decimal point, and the second requires at least one digit after the decimal point. To correctly handle the problem posed by a Fortran expression such as "35.EQ.I", which does not contain a real number, a context-sensitive rule such as:

```
[0-9]+/"EQ    printf("integer");
```

could be used in addition to the normal rule for integers.

The definitions section may also contain other commands including the selection of a host language, a character set table, a list of start conditions, or adjustments to the default size of arrays within **Lex** itself for larger source programs. These possibilities are discussed later.

## USAGE

There are two steps in compiling a **Lex** source program. First, the **Lex** source must be turned into a generated program in the host general purpose language. Then this program must be compiled and loaded usually with a library of **Lex** subroutines. The generated program is on a file named *lex.yy.c*. The I/O library is defined in terms of the C language standard library.

On ICON/UXV, the library is accessed by the loader flag `-ll`. So an appropriate set of commands is

```
lex source
cc lex.yy.c -ll
```

The resulting program is placed on the usual file *a.out* for later execution. To use **Lex** with **yacc**, see part "LEX AND YACC". Although the default **Lex** I/O routines use the C language standard library, the **Lex** automata themselves do not do so; if private versions of *input*, *output*, and *unput* are given, the library is avoided.

## LEX AND YACC

To use **Lex** with **yacc**, observe that **Lex** writes a program named *yylex()* (the name required by **yacc** for its analyzer). Normally, the default main program on the **Lex** library calls this routine; but if **yacc** is loaded and its main program is used, **yacc** calls *yylex()*. In this case, each **Lex** rule ends with

```
return(token);
```

where the appropriate token value is returned. An easy way to get access to **yacc**'s names for tokens is to compile the **Lex** output file as part of the **yacc** output file by placing the line

```
# include "lex.yy.c"
```

in the last section of **yacc** input. If the grammar is to be named "good" and the lexical rules are to be named "better", the ICON/UXV software command sequence could be

```
yacc good
lex better
cc y.tab.c -ly -ll
```

The **yacc** library (`-ly`) should be loaded before the **Lex** library to obtain a main program that invokes the **yacc** parser. The generations of **Lex** and **yacc** programs can be done in either order.

## LEX

### EXAMPLES

As a problem, consider copying an input file while adding three to every positive number divisible by seven. A suitable **Lex** source program follows:

```
%%  
int k;  
[0-9]+ {  
    k = atoi(yytext);  
    if (k%7 == 0)  
        printf("%d", k+3);  
    else  
        printf("%d",k);  
}
```

The rule "[0-9]+" recognizes strings of digits; *atoi()* converts the digits to binary and stores the result in "k". The operator % (remainder) is used to check whether "k" is divisible by seven; if it is, "k" is incremented by three as it is written out. It may be objected that this program alters such input items as "49.63" or "X7". Furthermore, it increments the absolute value of all negative numbers divisible by seven. To avoid this, add a few more rules after the active one, as here:

```
%%  
int k;  
-?[0-9]+ {  
    k = atoi(yytext);  
    printf("%d", k%7 == 0 ? k+3 : k);  
}  
-?[0-9.]+ ECHO;  
[A-Za-z][A-Za-z0-9]+ ECHO;
```

Numerical strings containing a dot (.) or preceded by a letter will be picked up by one of the last two rules and not changed. The "if-else" has been replaced by a C language conditional expression to save space; the form "a?b:c" means "if a then b else c".

For an example of statistics gathering, here is a program that histograms the lengths of words, where a word is defined as a string of letters:

```

                int lengs[100];
%%
[a-z]+      lengs[yyleng]++;
.
\n          ;
%%
yywrap()
{
int i;
printf("Length No. words\n");
for(i=0; i<100; i++)
    if (lengs[i] > 0)
        printf("%5d%10d\n",i,lengs[i]);
return(1);
}

```

This program accumulates the histogram while producing no output. At the end of the input, it prints the table. The final statement "return(1);" indicates that **Lex** is to perform wrap up. If *yywrap* returns zero (false), it implies that further input is available and the program is to continue reading and processing. Providing a *yywrap* (that never returns true) causes an infinite loop.

## LEFT CONTEXT SENSITIVITY

Sometimes it is desirable to have several sets of lexical rules to be applied at different times in the input. For example, a compiler preprocessor might distinguish preprocessor statements and analyze them differently from ordinary statements. This requires sensitivity to prior context, and there are several ways of handling such problems. The  $\wedge$  operator, for example, is a prior context operator recognizing immediately preceding left context just as  $\$$  recognizes immediately following right context. Adjacent left context could be extended to produce a facility similar to that for adjacent right context, but it is unlikely to be as useful since often the relevant left context appeared some time earlier such as at the beginning of a line.

This part describes three means of dealing with different environments: a simple use of flags (when only a few rules change from one environment to another), the use of "start conditions" on rules, and the possibility of making multiple lexical analyzers all run together. In each case, there are rules that recognize the need to change the environment in which the following input text is analyzed and that set a parameter to reflect the change. This may be a flag explicitly tested by the user's action code; this is the simplest way of dealing with the problem since **Lex** is not involved at all. It may be more convenient, however, to have **Lex** remember the flags as initial conditions on the rules. Any rule may be associated with a start condition. It is only recognized when **Lex** is in that start condition. The current start condition may be changed at any time. Finally, if the sets of rules for the different environments are very dissimilar, clarity may be best achieved by writing several distinct lexical analyzers and switching from one to another as desired.

Consider the following problem: copy the input to the output, changing the word "magic" to "first" on every line which began with the letter "a", changing "magic" to "second" on every line

## LEX

which began with the letter "b", and changing "magic" to "third" on every line which began with the letter "c". All other words and all other lines are left unchanged.

These rules are so simple that the easiest way to do this job is with a flag.

```
int flag.  
%%  
^a {flag = 'a'; ECHO;}  
^b {flag = 'b'; ECHO;}  
^c {flag = 'c'; ECHO;}  
\n {flag = 0 ; ECHO;}  
magic {  
  switch (flag)  
  {  
    case 'a': printf("first"); break;  
    case 'b': printf("second"); break;  
    case 'c': printf("third"); break;  
    default: ECHO; break;  
  }  
}
```

should be adequate.

To handle the same problem with start conditions, each start condition must be introduced to **Lex** in the definitions section with a line reading

```
%Start  name1 name2 ...
```

where the conditions may be named in any order. The word "Start" may be abbreviated to "s" or "S". The conditions may be referenced at the head of a rule with <> brackets;

```
<name1>expression
```

is a rule that is only recognized when **Lex** is in the start condition **name1**. To enter a start condition, execute the action statement

```
BEGIN name1;
```

which changes the start condition to **name1**. To resume the normal state

```
BEGIN 0;
```

resets the initial condition of the **Lex** automaton interpreter. A rule may be active in several start conditions.

<name1,name2,name3>

is a legal prefix. Any rule not beginning with the <> prefix operator is always active.

The same example as before can be written as follows:

```
%START AA BB CC
%%
^a      {ECHO; BEGIN AA;}
^b      {ECHO; BEGIN BB;}
^c      {ECHO; BEGIN CC;}
\n      {ECHO; BEGIN O;}
<AA>magic    printf("first");
<BB>magic    printf("second");
<CC>magic    printf("third");
```

where the logic is exactly the same as in the previous method of handling the problem, but **Lex** does the work rather than the user's code.

## CHARACTER SET

The programs generated by **Lex** handle character I/O only through the routines *input()*, *output()*, and *unput()*. Thus, the character representation provided in these routines is accepted by **Lex** and used to return values in *yytext()*. For internal use, a character is represented as a small integer which, if the standard library is used, has a value equal to the integer value of the bit pattern representing the character on the host computer. Normally, the letter **a** is represented in the same form as the character constant 'a'. If this interpretation is changed by providing I/O routines that translate the characters, **Lex** must be given a translation table that is in the definitions section and must be bracketed by lines containing only **%T**; the translation table contains lines of the form

```
{integer} {character string}
```

which indicate the value associated with each character.

## SUMMARY OF SOURCE FORMAT

The general form of a **Lex** source file is

## LEX

```
{definitions}  
%%  
{rules}  
%%  
{user subroutines}
```

The definitions section contains a combination of

1. Definitions in the form "name space translation".
2. Included code in the form "space code".
3. Included code in the form:

```
%{  
code  
%}
```

4. Start conditions given in the form:

```
%S name1 name2 ...
```

5. Character set tables in the form:

```
%T  
number space character-string  
...  
%T
```

6. Changes to internal array sizes in the form:

```
%x nnn
```

where "nnn" is a decimal integer representing an array size and "a" selects the parameter as follows:

<b>Letter</b>	<b>Parameter</b>
p	positions
n	states
e	tree nodes
a	transitions
k	packed character classes
o	output array size

Lines in the rules section have the form "expression action" where the action may be continued on succeeding lines by using braces to delimit it.

Regular expressions in **Lex** use the following operators:

x	the character "x".
"x"	an "x", even if x is an operator.
\x	an "x", even if x is an operator.
[xy]	the character x or y.
[x-z]	the characters x, y, or z.
[^x]	any character but x.
.	any character but newline.
^x	an x at the beginning of a line.
<y>x	an x when Lex is in start condition y.
x\$	an x at the end of a line.
x?	an optional x.
x*	0,1,2, ... instances of x.
x+	1,2,3, ... instances of x.
x y	an x or a y.
(x)	an x.
x/y	an x but only if followed by y.
{xx}	the translation of xx from the definitions section.
x{m,n}	m through n occurrences of x.

### CAVEATS AND BUGS

There are pathological expressions that produce exponential growth of the tables when converted to deterministic machines; fortunately, they are rare.

*REJECT* does not rescan the input; instead it remembers the results of the previous scan. This means that if a rule with trailing context is found and *REJECT* executed, the user must not have used *unput* to change the characters forthcoming from the input stream. This is the only restriction on the user's ability to manipulate the not-yet-processed input.

**LEX**

**NOTES**

## Chapter 24

### YET ANOTHER COMPILER-COMPILER (yacc)

	PAGE
GENERAL .....	24-1
BASIC SPECIFICATIONS .....	24-3
ACTIONS.....	24-6
LEXICAL ANALYSIS.....	24-9
PARSER OPERATION.....	24-11
AMBIGUITY AND CONFLICTS.....	24-15
PRECEDENCE .....	24-21
ERROR HANDLING .....	24-23
THE "yacc" ENVIRONMENT .....	24-26
HINTS FOR PREPARING SPECIFICATIONS .....	24-27
ADVANCED TOPICS .....	24-30
APPENDIX 12.1 .....	24-33
APPENDIX 12.2 .....	24-38
APPENDIX 12.3 .....	24-38
APPENDIX 12.4 .....	24-47



## Chapter 24

# YET ANOTHER COMPILER-COMPILER (yacc)

### GENERAL

The **yacc** program provides a general tool for imposing structure on the input to a computer program. The **yacc** user prepares a specification of the input process. This includes rules describing the input structure, code to be invoked when these rules are recognized, and a low-level routine to do the basic input. The **yacc** program then generates a function to control the input process. This function, called a *parser*, calls the user-supplied low-level input routine (the *lexical analyzer*) to pick up the basic items (called *tokens*) from the input stream. These tokens are organized according to the input structure rules, called *grammar rules*. When one of these rules has been recognized, then user code (supplied for this rule, an **action**) is invoked. Actions have the ability to return values and make use of the values of other actions.

The **yacc** program is written in a portable dialect of the C language, and the actions and output subroutine are in the C language as well. Moreover, many of the syntactic conventions of **yacc** follow the C language.

The heart of the input specification is a collection of grammar rules. Each rule describes an allowable structure and gives it a name. For example, one grammar rule might be

```
date : month_name day ',' year ;
```

where "date", "month\_name", "day", and "year" represent structures of interest in the input process; presumably, "month name", "day", and "year" are defined elsewhere. The comma is enclosed in single quotes. This implies that the comma is to appear literally in the input. The colon and semicolon merely serve as punctuation in the rule and have no significance in controlling the input. With proper definitions, the input

```
July 4, 1776
```

might be matched by the rule.

An important part of the input process is carried out by the lexical analyzer. This user routine reads the input stream, recognizes the lower-level structures, and communicates these tokens to the parser. For historical reasons, a structure recognized by the lexical analyzer is called a "terminal symbol", while the structure recognized by the parser is called a "nonterminal symbol". To avoid confusion, terminal symbols will usually be referred to as "tokens".

There is considerable leeway in deciding whether to recognize structures using the lexical analyzer or grammar rules. For example, the rules

## YACC

```
month_name : 'J' 'a' 'n' ;  
month_name : 'F' 'e' 'b' ;
```

...

```
month_name : 'D' 'e' 'c' ;
```

might be used in the above example. The lexical analyzer only needs to recognize individual letters, and "month name" is a nonterminal symbol. Such low-level rules tend to waste time and space and may complicate the specification beyond the ability of **yacc** to deal with it. Usually, the lexical analyzer recognizes the month names and returns an indication that a "month name" is seen. In this case, "month name" is a "token".

Literal characters such as a comma must also be passed through the lexical analyzer and are also considered tokens.

Specification files are very flexible. It is relatively easy to add to the above example the rule

```
date : month '/' day '/' year ;
```

allowing

```
7 / 4 / 1776
```

as a synonym for

```
July 4, 1776
```

on input. In most cases, this new rule could be "slipped in" to a working system with minimal effort and little danger of disrupting existing input.

The input being read may not conform to the specifications. These input errors are detected as early as is theoretically possible with a left-to-right scan. Thus, not only is the chance of reading and computing with bad input data substantially reduced, but the bad data can usually be quickly found. Error handling, provided as part of the input specifications, permits the reentry of bad data or the continuation of the input process after skipping over the bad data.

In some cases, **yacc** fails to produce a parser when given a set of specifications. For example, the specifications may be self-contradictory, or they may require a more powerful recognition mechanism than that available to **yacc**. The former cases represent design errors; the latter cases can often be corrected by making the lexical analyzer more powerful or by rewriting some of the grammar rules. While **yacc** cannot handle all possible specifications, its power compares favorably with similar systems. Moreover, the constructions which are difficult for **yacc** to handle are also frequently difficult for human beings to handle. Some users have

reported that the discipline of formulating valid **yacc** specifications for their input revealed errors of conception or design early in the program development.

The **yacc** program has been extensively used in numerous practical applications, including **lint**, the Portable C Compiler, and a system for typesetting mathematics.

The remainder of this document describes the following subjects as they relate to **yacc**

- Basic process of preparing a **yacc** specification
- Parser operation
- Handling ambiguities
- Handling operator precedences in arithmetic expressions
- Error detection and recovery
- The operating environment and special features of the parsers **yacc** produces
- Suggestions to improve the style and efficiency of the specifications
- Advanced topics.

In addition, there are four appendices. Appendix 12.1 is a brief example, and Appendix 12.2 is a summary of the **yacc** input syntax. Appendix 12.3 gives an example using some of the more advanced features of **yacc**, and Appendix 12.4 describes mechanisms and syntax no longer actively supported but provided for historical continuity with older versions of **yacc**.

## BASIC SPECIFICATIONS

Names refer to either tokens or nonterminal symbols. The **yacc** program requires token names to be declared as such. In addition, it is often desirable to include the lexical analyzer as part of the specification file. It may be useful to include other programs as well. Thus, every specification file consists of three sections: the *declarations*, (*grammar*) *rules*, and *programs*. The sections are separated by double percent (**%%**) marks. (The percent symbol is generally used in **yacc** specifications as an escape character.)

In other words, a full specification file looks like

## YACC

```
declarations
%%
rules
%%
programs
```

when each section is used.

The declaration section may be empty, and if the programs section is omitted, the second %% mark may also be omitted. The smallest legal yacc specification is

```
%%
rules
```

since the other two sections may be omitted.

Blanks, tabs, and newlines are ignored, but they may not appear in names or multicharacter reserved symbols. Comments may appear wherever a name is legal. They are enclosed in /\* ... \*/ , as in C language.

The rules section is made up of one or more grammar rules. A grammar rule has the form

```
A : BODY ;
```

where "A" represents a nonterminal name, and "BODY" represents a sequence of zero or more names and literals. The colon and the semicolon are yacc punctuation.

Names may be of arbitrary length and may be made up of letters, dots, underscores, and noninitial digits. Uppercase and lowercase letters are distinct. The names used in the body of a grammar rule may represent tokens or nonterminal symbols.

A literal consists of a character enclosed in single quotes ('). As in C language, the backslash (\) is an escape character within literals, and all the C language escapes are recognized. Thus:

```
'\n'  newline
'\r'  return
'\''  single quote ( ' )
'\'\'  backslash ( \ )
'\t'  tab
'\b'  backspace
'\f'  form feed
'\xxx' "xxx" in octal
```

are understood by `yacc`. For a number of technical reasons, the NUL character ('\0' or 0) should never be used in grammar rules.

If there are several grammar rules with the same left-hand side, the vertical bar (|) can be used to avoid rewriting the left-hand side. In addition, the semicolon at the end of a rule can be dropped before a vertical bar. Thus the grammar rules

```
A : B C D ;
A : E F ;
A : G ;
```

can be given to `yacc` as

```
A : B C D
   | E F
   | G
   ;
```

by using the vertical bar. It is not necessary that all grammar rules with the same left side appear together in the grammar rules section although it makes the input much more readable and easier to change.

If a nonterminal symbol matches the empty string, this can be indicated by

```
empty : ;
```

which is understood by `yacc`.

Names representing tokens must be declared. This is most simply done by writing

```
%token name1 name2 ...
```

in the declarations section. Every name not defined in the declarations section is assumed to represent a nonterminal symbol. Every nonterminal symbol must appear on the left side of at least one rule.

Of all the nonterminal symbols, the *start symbol* has particular importance. The parser is designed to recognize the start symbol. Thus, this symbol represents the largest, most general structure described by the grammar rules. By default, the start symbol is taken to be the left-hand side of the first grammar rule in the rules section. It is possible and desirable to declare the start symbol explicitly in the declarations section using the `%start` keyword

```
%start symbol
```

## YACC

to define the start symbol.

The end of the input to the parser is signaled by a special token, called the *end-marker*. If the tokens up to but not including the end-marker form a structure that matches the start symbol, the parser function returns to its caller after the end-marker is seen and accepts the input. If the end-marker is seen in any other context, it is an error.

It is the job of the user-supplied lexical analyzer to return the end-marker when appropriate. Usually the end-marker represents some reasonably obvious I/O status, such as "end of file" or "end of record".

## ACTIONS

With each grammar rule, the user may associate actions to be performed each time the rule is recognized in the input process. These actions may return values and may obtain the values returned by previous actions. Moreover, the lexical analyzer can return values for tokens if desired.

An action is an arbitrary C language statement and as such can do input and output, call subprograms, and alter external vectors and variables. An action is specified by one or more statements enclosed in curly braces ({} and {}). For example:

```
A : '( B )'  
  {  
    hello( 1, "abc" );  
  }
```

and

```
XXX : YYY ZZZ  
    {  
      printf("a message\n");  
      flag = 25;  
    }
```

are grammar rules with actions.

To facilitate easy communication between the actions and the parser, the action statements are altered slightly. The dollar sign symbol (\$) is used as a signal to yacc in this context.

To return a value, the action normally sets the pseudo-variable \$\$ to some value. For example, the action

```
{ $$ = 1; }
```

does nothing but return the value of one.

To obtain the values returned by previous actions and the lexical analyzer, the action may use the pseudo-variables **\$1**, **\$2**, ..., which refer to the values returned by the components of the right side of a rule, reading from left to right. If the rule is

```
A : B C D ;
```

then **\$2** has the value returned by C, and **\$3** the value returned by D.

The rule

```
expr : '(' expr ')' ;
```

provides a more concrete example. The value returned by this rule is usually the value of the "expr" in parentheses. This can be indicated by

```
expr : '(' expr ')'
      {
        $$ = $2 ;
      }
```

By default, the value of a rule is the value of the first element in it (**\$1**). Thus, grammar rules of the form

```
A : B ;
```

frequently need not have an explicit action.

In the examples above, all the actions came at the end of rules. Sometimes, it is desirable to get control before a rule is fully parsed. The **yacc** permits an action to be written in the middle of a rule as well as at the end. This rule is assumed to return a value accessible through the usual **\$** mechanism by the actions to the right of it. In turn, it may access the values returned by the symbols to its left. Thus, in the rule

## YACC

```
A : B
    {
        $$ = 1;
    }
    C
    {
        x = $2;
        y = $3;
    }
;
```

the effect is to set  $x$  to 1 and  $y$  to the value returned by C.

Actions that do not terminate a rule are actually handled by **yacc** by manufacturing a new nonterminal symbol name and a new rule matching this name to the empty string. The interior action is the action triggered off by recognizing this added rule. The **yacc** program actually treats the above example as if it had been written

```
$ACT : /* empty */
    {
        $$ = 1;
    }
;

A : B $ACT C
    {
        x = $2;
        y = $3;
    }
;
```

where **\$ACT** is an empty action.

In many applications, output is not done directly by the actions. A data structure, such as a parse tree, is constructed in memory and transformations are applied to it before output is generated. Parse trees are particularly easy to construct given routines to build and maintain the tree structure desired. For example, suppose there is a C function *node* written so that the call

```
node( L, n1, n2 )
```

creates a node with label  $L$  and descendants  $n1$  and  $n2$  and returns the index of the newly created node. Then parse tree can be built by supplying actions such as

```

expr : expr '+' expr
    {
      $$ = node( '+', $1, $3 );
    }

```

in the specification.

The user may define other variables to be used by the actions. Declarations and definitions can appear in the declarations section enclosed in the marks `%{` and `%}`. These declarations and definitions have global scope, so they are known to the action statements and the lexical analyzer. For example:

```
%{ int variable = 0; %}
```

could be placed in the declarations section making "variable" accessible to all of the actions. The `yacc` parser uses only names beginning with `yy`. The user should avoid such names.

In these examples, all the values are integers. A discussion of values of other types is found in the part "ADVANCED TOPICS".

## LEXICAL ANALYSIS

The user must supply a lexical analyzer to read the input stream and communicate tokens (with values, if desired) to the parser. The lexical analyzer is an integer-valued function called `yyllex`. The function returns an integer, the *token number*, representing the kind of token read. If there is a value associated with that token, it should be assigned to the external variable `yylval`.

The parser and the lexical analyzer must agree on these token numbers in order for communication between them to take place. The numbers may be chosen by `yacc` or the user. In either case, the `#define` mechanism of C language is used to allow the lexical analyzer to return these numbers symbolically. For example, suppose that the token name `DIGIT` has been defined in the declarations section of the `yacc` specification file. The relevant portion of the lexical analyzer might look like

## YACC

```
yylex()
{
    extern int yyval;
    int c;
    ...
    c = getchar();
    ...
    switch( c )
    {
        ...
        case '0':
        case '1':
        ...
        case '9':
            yyval = c-'0';
            return( DIGIT );
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

to return the appropriate token.

The intent is to return a token number of DIGIT and a value equal to the numerical value of the digit. Provided that the lexical analyzer code is placed in the programs section of the specification file, the identifier DIGIT is defined as the token number associated with the token DIGIT.

This mechanism leads to clear, easily modified lexical analyzers. The only pitfall to avoid is using any token names in the grammar that are reserved or significant in C language or the parser. For example, the use of token names `if` or `while` will almost certainly cause severe difficulties when the lexical analyzer is compiled. The token name `error` is reserved for error handling and should not be used naively.

As mentioned above, the token numbers may be chosen by `yacc` or the user. In the default situation, the numbers are chosen by `yacc`. The default token number for a literal character is the numerical value of the character in the local character set. Other names are assigned token numbers starting at 257.

To assign a token number to a token (including literals), the first appearance of the token name or literal in the declarations section can be immediately followed by a nonnegative integer. This integer is taken to be the token number of the name or literal. Names and literals not defined by this mechanism retain their default definition. It is important that all token numbers be distinct.

For historical reasons, the end-marker must have token number 0 or negative. This token number cannot be redefined by the user. Thus, all lexical analyzers should be prepared to return 0 or a negative number as a token upon reaching the end of their input.

A very useful tool for constructing lexical analyzers is the `lex` program. These lexical analyzers are designed to work in close harmony with `yacc` parsers. The specifications for these lexical analyzers use regular expressions instead of grammar rules. `Lex` can be easily used to produce quite complicated lexical analyzers, but there remain some languages (such as FORTRAN) which do not fit any theoretical framework and whose lexical analyzers must be crafted by hand.

## PARSER OPERATION

The `yacc` program turns the specification file into a C language program, which parses the input according to the specification given. The algorithm used to go from the specification to the parser is complex and will not be discussed here. The parser itself, however, is relatively simple and understanding how it works will make treatment of error recovery and ambiguities much more comprehensible.

The parser produced by `yacc` consists of a finite state machine with a stack. The parser is also capable of reading and remembering the next input token (called the *look-ahead* token). The *current state* is always the one on the top of the stack. The states of the finite state machine are given small integer labels. Initially, the machine is in state 0 (the stack contains only state 0) and no look-ahead token has been read.

The machine has only four actions available—*shift*, *reduce*, *accept*, and *error*. A step of the parser is done as follows:

1. Based on its current state, the parser decides if it needs a look-ahead token to choose the action to be taken. If it needs one and does not have one, it calls `yylex` to obtain the next token.
2. Using the current state and the look-ahead token if needed, the parser decides on its next action and carries it out. This may result in states being pushed onto the stack or popped off of the stack and in the look-ahead token being processed or left alone.

The *shift* action is the most common action the parser takes. Whenever a shift action is taken, there is always a look-ahead token. For example, in state 56 there may be an action

```
IF shift 34
```

which says, in state 56, if the look-ahead token is IF, the current state (56) is pushed down on the stack, and state 34 becomes the current state (on the top of the stack). The look-ahead token is cleared.

The *reduce* action keeps the stack from growing without bounds. Reduce actions are appropriate when the parser has seen the right-hand side of a grammar rule and is prepared to announce that it has seen an instance of the rule replacing the right-hand side by the left-hand side. It may be necessary to consult the look-ahead token to decide whether to reduce or not

## YACC

(usually it is not necessary). In fact, the default action (represented by a dot) is often a reduce action.

Reduce actions are associated with individual grammar rules. Grammar rules are also given small integer numbers, and this leads to some confusion. The action

. reduce 18

refers to grammar rule 18, while the action

IF shift 34

refers to state 34.

Suppose the rule

A : x y z ;

is being reduced. The reduce action depends on the left-hand symbol (A in this case) and the number of symbols on the right-hand side (three in this case). To reduce, first pop off the top three states from the stack. (In general, the number of states popped equals the number of symbols on the right side of the rule.) In effect, these states were the ones put on the stack while recognizing *x*, *y*, and *z* and no longer serve any useful purpose. After popping these states, a state is uncovered which was the state the parser was in before beginning to process the rule. Using this uncovered state and the symbol on the left side of the rule, perform what is in effect a shift of A. A new state is obtained, pushed onto the stack, and parsing continues. There are significant differences between the processing of the left-hand symbol and an ordinary shift of a token, however, so this action is called a *goto* action. In particular, the look-ahead token is cleared by a shift but is not affected by a *goto*. In any case, the uncovered state contains an entry such as

A goto 20

causing state 20 to be pushed onto the stack and become the current state.

In effect, the reduce action "turns back the clock" in the parse popping the states off the stack to go back to the state where the right-hand side of the rule was first seen. The parser then behaves as if it had seen the left side at that time. If the right-hand side of the rule is empty, no states are popped off of the stacks. The uncovered state is in fact the current state.

The reduce action is also important in the treatment of user-supplied actions and values. When a rule is reduced, the code supplied with the rule is executed before the stack is adjusted. In addition to the stack holding the states, another stack running in parallel with it holds the values returned from the lexical analyzer and the actions. When a shift takes place, the

external variable "yyval" is copied onto the value stack. After the return from the user code, the reduction is carried out. When the *goto* action is done, the external variable "yyval" is copied onto the value stack. The pseudo-variables \$1, \$2, etc., refer to the value stack.

The other two parser actions are conceptually much simpler. The *accept* action indicates that the entire input has been seen and that it matches the specification. This action appears only when the look-ahead token is the end-marker and indicates that the parser has successfully done its job. The *error* action, on the other hand, represents a place where the parser can no longer continue parsing according to the specification. The input tokens it has seen (together with the look-ahead token) cannot be followed by anything that would result in a legal input. The parser reports an error and attempts to recover the situation and resume parsing. The error recovery (as opposed to the detection of error) will be discussed later.

Consider:

```
%token DING DONG DELL
%%
rhyme : sound place
      ;
sound : DING DONG
      ;
place : DELL
      ;
```

as a **yacc** specification.

When **yacc** is invoked with the **-v** option, a file called *y.output* is produced with a human-readable description of the parser. The *y.output* file corresponding to the above grammar (with some statistics stripped off the end) is

## YACC

```
state 0
    $accept : _rhyme $end

    DING shift 3
    . error

    rhyme goto 1
    sound goto 2

state 1
    $accept : rhyme_$end

    $end accept
    . error

state 2
    rhyme : sound_place

    DELL shift 5
    . error

    place goto 4

state 3
    sound : DING_DONG

    DONG shift 6
    . error

state 4
    rhyme : sound place_ (1)

    . reduce 1

state 5
    place : DELL_ (3)

    . reduce 3

state 6
    sound : DING DONG_ (2)

    . reduce 2
```

where the actions for each state are specified and there is a description of the parsing rules being processed in each state. The \_ character is used to indicate what has been seen and what is yet to come in each rule. The following input

## DING DONG DELL

can be used to track the operations of the parser. Initially, the current state is state 0. The parser needs to refer to the input in order to decide between the actions available in state 0, so the first token, *DING*, is read and becomes the look-ahead token. The action in state 0 on *DING* is *shift 3*, state 3 is pushed onto the stack, and the look-ahead token is cleared. State 3 becomes the current state. The next token, *DONG*, is read and becomes the look-ahead token. The action in state 3 on the token *DONG* is *shift 6*, state 6 is pushed onto the stack, and the look-ahead is cleared. The stack now contains 0, 3, and 6. In state 6, without even consulting the look-ahead, the parser reduces by

```
sound : DING DONG
```

which is rule 2. Two states, 6 and 3, are popped off of the stack uncovering state 0. Consulting the description of state 0 (looking for a goto on *sound*),

```
sound goto 2
```

is obtained. State 2 is pushed onto the stack and becomes the current state.

In state 2, the next token, *DELL*, must be read. The action is *shift 5*, so state 5 is pushed onto the stack, which now has 0, 2, and 5 on it, and the look-ahead token is cleared. In state 5, the only action is to reduce by rule 3. This has one symbol on the right-hand side, so one state, 5, is popped off, and state 2 is uncovered. The goto in state 2 on *place* (the left side of rule 3) is state 4. Now, the stack contains 0, 2, and 4. In state 4, the only action is to reduce by rule 1. There are two symbols on the right, so the top two states are popped off, uncovering state 0 again. In state 0, there is a goto on *rhyme* causing the parser to enter state 1. In state 1, the input is read and the end-marker is obtained indicated by *\$end* in the *y.output* file. The action in state 1 (when the end-marker is seen) successfully ends the parse.

The reader is urged to consider how the parser works when confronted with such incorrect strings as *DING DONG DONG*, *DING DONG*, *DING DONG DELL DELL*, etc. A few minutes spent with this and other simple examples is repaid when problems arise in more complicated contexts.

## AMBIGUITY AND CONFLICTS

A set of grammar rules is ambiguous if there is some input string that can be structured in two or more different ways. For example, the grammar rule

```
expr : expr '-' expr
```

## YACC

is a natural way of expressing the fact that one way of forming an arithmetic expression is to put two other expressions together with a minus sign between them. Unfortunately, this grammar rule does not completely specify the way that all complex inputs should be structured. For example, if the input is

$$\text{expr} - \text{expr} - \text{expr}$$

the rule allows this input to be structured as either

$$(\text{expr} - \text{expr}) - \text{expr}$$

or as

$$\text{expr} - (\text{expr} - \text{expr})$$

(The first is called "left association", the second "right association".)

The `yacc` program detects such ambiguities when it is attempting to build the parser. Given the input

$$\text{expr} - \text{expr} - \text{expr}$$

consider the problem that confronts the parser. When the parser has read the second `expr`, the input seen

$$\text{expr} - \text{expr}$$

matches the right side of the grammar rule above. The parser could reduce the input by applying this rule. After applying the rule, the input is reduced to "expr" (the left side of the rule). The parser would then read the final part of the input

$$- \text{expr}$$

and again reduce. The effect of this is to take the left associative interpretation.

Alternatively, if the parser sees

$$\text{expr} - \text{expr}$$

it could defer the immediate application of the rule and continue reading the input until

expr — expr — expr

is seen. It could then apply the rule to the rightmost three symbols reducing them to “expr” which results in

expr — expr

being left. Now the rule can be reduced once more. The effect is to take the right associative interpretation. Thus, having read

expr — expr

the parser can do one of two legal things, a shift or a reduction. It has no way of deciding between them. This is called a “shift/reduce conflict”. It may also happen that the parser has a choice of two legal reductions. This is called a “reduce/reduce conflict”. Note that there are never any shift/shift conflicts.

When there are shift/reduce or reduce/reduce conflicts, **yacc** still produces a parser. It does this by selecting one of the valid steps wherever it has a choice. A rule describing the choice to make in a given situation is called a “disambiguating rule”.

The **yacc** program invokes two disambiguating rules by default:

1. In a shift/reduce conflict, the default is to do the shift.
2. In a reduce/reduce conflict, the default is to reduce by the *earlier* grammar rule (in the input sequence).

Rule 1 implies that reductions are deferred in favor of shifts when there is a choice. Rule 2 gives the user rather crude control over the behavior of the parser in this situation, but reduce/reduce conflicts should be avoided when possible.

Conflicts may arise because of mistakes in input or logic or because the grammar rules (while consistent) require a more complex parser than **yacc** can construct. The use of actions within rules can also cause conflicts if the action must be done before the parser can be sure which rule is being recognized. In these cases, the application of disambiguating rules is inappropriate and leads to an incorrect parser. For this reason, **yacc** always reports the number of shift/reduce and reduce/reduce conflicts resolved by Rule 1 and Rule 2.

In general, whenever it is possible to apply disambiguating rules to produce a correct parser, it is also possible to rewrite the grammar rules so that the same inputs are read but there are no conflicts. For this reason, most previous parser generators have considered conflicts to be fatal errors. Our experience has suggested that this rewriting is somewhat unnatural and produces slower parsers. Thus, **yacc** will produce parsers even in the presence of conflicts.

## YACC

As an example of the power of disambiguating rules, consider

```
stat : IF '(' cond ')' stat
      | IF '(' cond ')' stat ELSE stat
      ;
```

which is a fragment from a programming language involving an "if-then-else" statement. In these rules, "IF" and "ELSE" are tokens, "cond" is a nonterminal symbol describing conditional (logical) expressions, and "stat" is a nonterminal symbol describing statements. The first rule will be called the "simple-if" rule and the second the "if-else" rule.

These two rules form an ambiguous construction since input of the form

```
IF ( C1 ) IF ( C2 ) S1 ELSE S2
```

can be structured according to these rules in two ways

```
IF ( C1 )
{
  IF ( C2 )
    S1
}
ELSE
  S2
```

or

```
IF ( C1 )
{
  IF ( C2 )
    S1
  ELSE
    S2
}
```

where the second interpretation is the one given in most programming languages having this construct. Each "ELSE" is associated with the last preceding "un-ELSE'd" IF. In this example, consider the situation where the parser has seen

```
IF ( C1 ) IF ( C2 ) S1
```

and is looking at the "ELSE". It can immediately reduce by the simple-if rule to get

IF ( C1 ) stat

and then read the remaining input

ELSE S2

and reduce

IF ( C1 ) stat ELSE S2

by the if-else rule. This leads to the first of the above groupings of the input.

On the other hand, the "ELSE" may be shifted, "S2" read, and then the right-hand portion of

IF ( C1 ) IF ( C2 ) S1 ELSE S2

can be reduced by the if-else rule to get

IF ( C1 ) stat

which can be reduced by the simple-if rule. This leads to the second of the above groupings of the input which is usually desired.

Once again, the parser can do two valid things—there is a shift/reduce conflict. The application of disambiguating rule 1 tells the parser to shift in this case, which leads to the desired grouping.

This shift/reduce conflict arises only when there is a particular current input symbol, "ELSE", and particular inputs, such as

IF ( C1 ) IF ( C2 ) S1

have already been seen. In general, there may be many conflicts, and each one will be associated with an input symbol and a set of previously read inputs. The previously read inputs are characterized by the state of the parser.

The conflict messages of `yacc` are best understood by examining the verbose (`-v`) option output file. For example, the output corresponding to the above conflict state might be

## YACC

23: shift/reduce conflict (shift 45, reduce 18) on ELSE

state 23

```
stat : IF ( cond ) stat_      (18)
stat : IF ( cond ) stat_ELSE stat

ELSE  shift 45
      .      reduce 18
```

where the first line describes the conflict—giving the state and the input symbol. The ordinary state description gives the grammar rules active in the state and the parser actions. Recall that the underline marks the portion of the grammar rules which has been seen. Thus in the example, in state 23 the parser has seen input corresponding to

```
IF ( cond ) stat
```

and the two grammar rules shown are active at this time. The parser can do two possible things. If the input symbol is “ELSE”, it is possible to shift into state 45. State 45 will have, as part of its description, the line

```
stat : IF ( cond ) stat ELSE_stat
```

since the “ELSE” will have been shifted in this state. In state 23, the alternative action [describing a dot (.)] is to be done if the input symbol is not mentioned explicitly in the actions. In this case, if the input symbol is not “ELSE”, the parser reduces to

```
stat : IF '(' cond ')' stat
```

by grammar rule 18.

Once again, notice that the numbers following “shift” commands refer to other states, while the numbers following “reduce” commands refer to grammar rule numbers. In the *y.output* file, the rule numbers are printed after those rules which can be reduced. In most one states, there is reduce action possible in the state and this is the default command. The user who encounters unexpected shift/reduce conflicts will probably want to look at the verbose output to decide whether the default actions are appropriate.

## PRECEDENCE

There is one common situation where the rules given above for resolving conflicts are not sufficient. This is in the parsing of arithmetic expressions. Most of the commonly used constructions for arithmetic expressions can be naturally described by the notion of precedence levels for operators, together with information about left or right associativity. It turns out that ambiguous grammars with appropriate disambiguating rules can be used to create parsers that are faster and easier to write than parsers constructed from unambiguous grammars. The basic notion is to write grammar rules of the form

```
expr : expr OP expr
```

and

```
expr : UNARY expr
```

for all binary and unary operators desired. This creates a very ambiguous grammar with many parsing conflicts. As disambiguating rules, the user specifies the precedence or binding strength of all the operators and the associativity of the binary operators. This information is sufficient to allow **yacc** to resolve the parsing conflicts in accordance with these rules and construct a parser that realizes the desired precedences and associativities.

The precedences and associativities are attached to tokens in the declarations section. This is done by a series of lines beginning with a **yacc** keyword: **%left**, **%right**, or **%nonassoc**, followed by a list of tokens. All of the tokens on the same line are assumed to have the same precedence level and associativity; the lines are listed in order of increasing precedence or binding strength. Thus:

```
%left '+' '-'
%left '*' '/'
```

describes the precedence and associativity of the four arithmetic operators. Plus and minus are left associative and have lower precedence than star and slash, which are also left associative. The keyword **%right** is used to describe right associative operators, and the keyword **%nonassoc** is used to describe operators, like the operator **.LT.** in FORTRAN, that may not associate with themselves. Thus:

```
A .LT. B .LT. C
```

is illegal in FORTRAN and such an operator would be described with the keyword **%nonassoc** in **yacc**. As an example of the behavior of these declarations, the description

## YACC

```
%right '='
%left '+' '-'
%left '*' '/'

%%

expr : expr '=' expr
     | expr '+' expr
     | expr '-' expr
     | expr '*' expr
     | expr '/' expr
     | NAME
     ;
```

might be used to structure the input

$$a = b = c*d - e - f*g$$

as follows

$$a = ( b = ( ((c*d)-e) - (f*g) ) )$$

in order to perform the correct precedence of operators. When this mechanism is used, unary operators must, in general, be given a precedence. Sometimes a unary operator and a binary operator have the same symbolic representation but different precedences. An example is unary and binary “-”. Unary minus may be given the same strength as multiplication, or even higher, while binary minus has a lower strength than multiplication. The keyword, **%prec**, changes the precedence level associated with a particular grammar rule. The keyword **%prec** appears immediately after the body of the grammar rule, before the action or closing semicolon, and is followed by a token name or literal. It causes the precedence of the grammar rule to become that of the following token name or literal. For example, the rules

```
%left '+' '-'
%left '*' '/'

%%

expr : expr '+' expr
     | expr '-' expr
     | expr '*' expr
     | expr '/' expr
     | '-' expr %prec '*'
     | NAME
     ;
```

might be used to give unary minus the same precedence as multiplication.

A token declared by `%left`, `%right`, and `%nonassoc` need not be, but may be, declared by `%token` as well.

The precedences and associativities are used by `yacc` to resolve parsing conflicts. They give rise to disambiguating rules. Formally, the rules work as follows:

1. The precedences and associativities are recorded for those tokens and literals that have them.
2. A precedence and associativity is associated with each grammar rule. It is the precedence and associativity of the last token or literal in the body of the rule. If the `%prec` construction is used, it overrides this default. Some grammar rules may have no precedence and associativity associated with them.
3. When there is a reduce/reduce conflict or there is a shift/reduce conflict and either the input symbol or the grammar rule has no precedence and associativity, then the two disambiguating rules given at the beginning of the section are used, and the conflicts are reported.
4. If there is a shift/reduce conflict and both the grammar rule and the input character have precedence and associativity associated with them, then the conflict is resolved in favor of the action (shift or reduce) associated with the higher precedence. If the precedences are the same, then the associativity is used; left associative implies reduce, right associative implies shift, and nonassociating implies error.

Conflicts resolved by precedence are not counted in the number of shift/reduce and reduce/reduce conflicts reported by `yacc`. This means that mistakes in the specification of precedences may disguise errors in the input grammar. It is a good idea to be sparing with precedences and use them in an essentially "cookbook" fashion until some experience has been gained. The `y.output` file is very useful in deciding whether the parser is actually doing what was intended.

## ERROR HANDLING

Error handling is an extremely difficult area, and many of the problems are semantic ones. When an error is found, for example, it may be necessary to reclaim parse tree storage, delete or alter symbol table entries, and, typically, set switches to avoid generating any further output.

It is seldom acceptable to stop all processing when an error is found. It is more useful to continue scanning the input to find further syntax errors. This leads to the problem of getting the parser "restarted" after an error. A general class of algorithms to do this involves discarding a number of tokens from the input string and attempting to adjust the parser so that input can continue.

## YACC

To allow the user some control over this process, `yacc` provides a simple, but reasonably general feature. The token name "error" is reserved for error handling. This name can be used in grammar rules. In effect, it suggests places where errors are expected and recovery might take place. The parser pops its stack until it enters a state where the token "error" is legal. It then behaves as if the token "error" were the current look-ahead token and performs the action encountered. The look-ahead token is then reset to the token that caused the error. If no special error rules have been specified, the processing halts when an error is detected.

In order to prevent a cascade of error messages, the parser, after detecting an error, remains in error state until three tokens have been successfully read and shifted. If an error is detected when the parser is already in error state, no message is given, and the input token is quietly deleted.

As an example, a rule of the form

```
stat : error
```

means that on a syntax error the parser attempts to skip over the statement in which the error is seen. More precisely, the parser scans ahead, looking for three tokens that might legally follow a statement, and start processing at the first of these. If the beginnings of statements are not sufficiently distinctive, it may make a false start in the middle of a statement and end up reporting a second error where there is in fact no error.

Actions may be used with these special error rules. These actions might attempt to reinitialize tables, reclaim symbol table space, etc.

Error rules such as the above are very general but difficult to control. Rules such as

```
stat : error ';' ;
```

are somewhat easier. Here, when there is an error, the parser attempts to skip over the statement but does so by skipping to the next semicolon. All tokens after the error and before the next semicolon cannot be shifted and are discarded. When the semicolon is seen, this rule will be reduced and any "cleanup" action associated with it performed.

Another form of error rule arises in interactive applications where it may be desirable to permit a line to be reentered after an error. The following example

```

input : error '\n'
      {
        printf( "Reenter last line: " );
      }
      input
    {
      $$ = $4;
    }
  ;

```

is one way to do this. There is one potential difficulty with this approach. The parser must correctly process three input tokens before it admits that it has correctly resynchronized after the error. If the reentered line contains an error in the first two tokens, the parser deletes the offending tokens and gives no message. This is clearly unacceptable. For this reason, there is a mechanism that can force the parser to believe that error recovery has been accomplished. The statement

```
yyerrok ;
```

in an action resets the parser to its normal mode. The last example can be rewritten as

```

input : error '\n'
      {
        yyerrok;
        printf( "Reenter last line: " );
      }
      input
    {
      $$ = $4;
    }
  ;

```

which is somewhat better.

As previously mentioned, the token seen immediately after the "error" symbol is the input token at which the error was discovered. Sometimes, this is inappropriate; for example, an error recovery action might take upon itself the job of finding the correct place to resume input. In this case, the previous look-ahead token must be cleared. The statement

```
yyclearin ;
```

in an action will have this effect. For example, suppose the action after error were to call some sophisticated resynchronization routine (supplied by the user) that attempted to advance the input to the beginning of the next valid statement. After this routine is called, the next token returned by *yylex* is presumably the first token in a legal statement. The old illegal token must be discarded and the error state reset. A rule similar to

## YACC

```
stat : error
    {
        resynch();
        yyerrok ;
        yyclearin;
    }
;
```

could perform this.

These mechanisms are admittedly crude but do allow for a simple, fairly effective recovery of the parser from many errors. Moreover, the user can get control to deal with the error actions required by other portions of the program.

### THE "yacc" ENVIRONMENT

When the user inputs a specification to **yacc**, the output is a file of C language programs, called *y.tab.c* on most systems. (Due to local file system conventions, the names may differ from installation to installation.) The function produced by **yacc** is called *yyparse()*; it is an integer valued function. When it is called, it in turn repeatedly calls *yylex()*, the lexical analyzer supplied by the user (see "LEXICAL ANALYSIS"), to obtain input tokens. Eventually, an error is detected, *yyparse()* returns the value 1, and no error recovery is possible, or the lexical analyzer returns the end-marker token and the parser accepts. In this case, *yyparse()* returns the value 0.

The user must provide a certain amount of environment for this parser in order to obtain a working program. For example, as with every C language program, a program called *main()* must be defined that eventually calls *yyparse()*. In addition, a routine called *yyerror()* prints a message when a syntax error is detected.

These two routines must be supplied in one form or another by the user. To ease the initial effort of using **yacc**, a library has been provided with default versions of *main()* and *yyerror()*. The name of this library is system dependent; on many systems, the library is accessed by a *-ly* argument to the loader. The source codes

```
main()
{
    return ( yyparse() );
}
```

and

```
#include <stdio.h>

yyerror(s)
    char *s;
{
    fprintf( stderr, "%s\n", s );
}
```

show the triviality of these default programs. The argument to *yyerror()* is a string containing an error message, usually the string "syntax error". The average application wants to do better than this. Ordinarily, the program should keep track of the input line number and print it along with the message when a syntax error is detected. The external integer variable *yychar* contains the look-ahead token number at the time the error was detected. This may be of some interest in giving better diagnostics. Since the *main()* program is probably supplied by the user (to read arguments, etc.), the *yacc* library is useful only in small projects or in the earliest stages of larger ones.

The external integer variable *yydebug* is normally set to 0. If it is set to a nonzero value, the parser will output a verbose description of its actions including a discussion of the input symbols read and what the parser actions are. Depending on the operating environment, it may be possible to set this variable by using a debugging system.

## HINTS FOR PREPARING SPECIFICATIONS

This part contains miscellaneous hints on preparing efficient, easy to change, and clear specifications. The individual subsections are more or less independent.

### Input Style

It is difficult to provide rules with substantial actions and still have a readable specification file. The following are a few style hints.

1. Use all uppercase letters for token names and all lowercase letters for nonterminal names. This rule comes under the heading of "knowing who to blame when things go wrong".
2. Put grammar rules and actions on separate lines. This allows either to be changed without an automatic need to change the other.
3. Put all rules with the same left-hand side together. Put the left-hand side in only once and let all following rules begin with a vertical bar.
4. Put a semicolon only after the last rule with a given left-hand side and put the semicolon on a separate line. This allows new rules to be easily added.

## YACC

5. Indent rule bodies by two tab stops and action bodies by three tab stops.

The example in Appendix 12.1 is written following this style, as are the examples in this section (where space permits). The user must make up his own mind about these stylistic questions. The central problem, however, is to make the rules visible through the morass of action code.

### Left Recursion

The algorithm used by the yacc parser encourages so called "left recursive" grammar rules. Rules of the form

```
name : name rest_of_rule ;
```

match this algorithm. These rules such as

```
list : item
      | list ',' item
      ;
```

and

```
seq  : item
      | seq item
      ;
```

frequently arise when writing specifications of sequences and lists. In each of these cases, the first rule will be reduced for the first item only; and the second rule will be reduced for the second and all succeeding items.

With right recursive rules, such as

```
seq  : item
      | item seq
      ;
```

the parser is a bit bigger; and the items are seen and reduced from right to left. More seriously, an internal stack in the parser is in danger of overflowing if a very long sequence is read. Thus, the user should use left recursion wherever reasonable.

It is worth considering if a sequence with zero elements has any meaning, and if so, consider writing the sequence specification as

```

seq : /* empty */
    | seq item
    ;

```

using an empty rule. Once again, the first rule would always be reduced exactly once before the first item was read, and then the second rule would be reduced once for each item read. Permitting empty sequences often leads to increased generality. However, conflicts might arise if yacc is asked to decide which empty sequence it has seen when it hasn't seen enough to know!

### Lexical Tie-ins

Some lexical decisions depend on context. For example, the lexical analyzer might want to delete blanks normally but not within quoted strings, or names might be entered into a symbol table in declarations but not in expressions.

One way of handling this situation is to create a global flag that is examined by the lexical analyzer and set by actions. For example,

```

%{
    int dflag;
%}
... other declarations ...

%%

prog : decls stats
    ;

decls : /* empty */
    {
        dflag = 1;
    }
    | decls declaration
    ;

stats : /* empty */
    {
        dflag = 0;
    }
    | stats statement
    ;

... other rules ...

```

specifies a program that consists of zero or more declarations followed by zero or more statements. The flag "dflag" is now 0 when reading statements and 1 when reading

## YACC

declarations, *except for the first token in the first statement*. This token must be seen by the parser before it can tell that the declaration section has ended and the statements have begun. In many cases, this single token exception does not affect the lexical scan.

This kind of "back-door" approach can be elaborated to a noxious degree. Nevertheless, it represents a way of doing some things that are difficult if not impossible to do otherwise.

### Reserved Words

Some programming languages permit you to use words like "if", which are normally reserved as label or variable names, provided that such use does not conflict with the legal use of these names in the programming language. This is extremely hard to do in the framework of **yacc**. It is difficult to pass information to the lexical analyzer telling it "this instance of *if* is a keyword and that instance is a variable". The user can make a stab at it using the mechanism described in the last subsection, but it is difficult.

A number of ways of making this easier are under advisement. Until then, it is better that the keywords be *reserved*, i.e., forbidden for use as variable names. There are powerful stylistic reasons for preferring this.

## ADVANCED TOPICS

This part discusses a number of advanced features of **yacc**.

### Simulating Error and Accept in Actions

The parsing actions of error and accept can be simulated in an action by use of macros **YYACCEPT** and **YYERROR**. The **YYACCEPT** macro causes *yyparse()* to return the value 0; **YYERROR** causes the parser to behave as if the current input symbol had been a syntax error; *yyerror()* is called, and error recovery takes place. These mechanisms can be used to simulate parsers with multiple end-markers or context sensitive syntax checking.

### Accessing Values in Enclosing Rules

An action may refer to values returned by actions to the left of the current rule. The mechanism is simply the same as with ordinary actions, a dollar sign followed by a digit.

```

sent : adj noun verb adj noun
    {
        look at the sentence ...
    }
;
adj  : THE
    {
        $$ = THE;
    }
    {
        YOUNG
    }
    {
        $$ = YOUNG;
    }
;
...
noun : DOG
    {
        $$ = DOG;
    }
    {
        CRONE
    }
    {
        if( $0 == YOUNG )
        {
            printf( "what?\n" );
        }
        $$ = CRONE;
    }
;
...

```

In this case, the digit may be 0 or negative. In the action following the word `CRONE`, a check is made that the preceding token shifted was not `YOUNG`. Obviously, this is only possible when a great deal is known about what might precede the symbol "noun" in the input. There is also a distinctly unstructured flavor about this. Nevertheless, at times this mechanism prevents a great deal of trouble especially when a few combinations are to be excluded from an otherwise regular structure.

### Support for Arbitrary Value Types

By default, the values returned by actions and the lexical analyzer are integers. The `yacc` program can also support values of other types including structures. In addition, `yacc` keeps track of the types and inserts appropriate union member names so that the resulting parser is strictly type checked. The `yacc` value stack is declared to be a *union* of the various types of values desired. The user declares the union and associates union member names to each token and nonterminal symbol having a value. When the value is referenced through a `$$` or `$n` construction, `yacc` will automatically insert the appropriate union name so that no unwanted conversions take place. In addition, type checking commands such as `lint` is far more silent.

## YACC

There are three mechanisms used to provide for this typing. First, there is a way of defining the union. This must be done by the user since other programs, notably the lexical analyzer, must know about the union member names. Second, there is a way of associating a union member name with tokens and nonterminals. Finally, there is a mechanism for describing the type of those few values where **yacc** cannot easily determine the type.

To declare the union, the user includes

```
%union
{
  body of union ...
}
```

in the declaration section. This declares the **yacc** value stack and the external variables *yylval* and *yyval* to have type equal to this union. If **yacc** was invoked with the **-d** option, the union declaration is copied onto the *y.tab.h* file. Alternatively, the union may be declared in a header file, and a typedef used to define the variable **YYSTYPE** to represent this union. Thus, the header file might have said

```
typedef union
{
  body of union ...
}
YYSTYPE;
```

instead. The header file must be included in the declarations section by use of **%{** and **%}**.

Once **YYSTYPE** is defined, the union member names must be associated with the various terminal and nonterminal names. The construction

```
< name >
```

is used to indicate a union member name. If this follows one of the keywords **%token**, **%left**, **%right**, and **%nonassoc**, the union member name is associated with the tokens listed. Thus, saying

```
%left <optype> '+' '-'
```

causes any reference to values returned by these two tokens to be tagged with the union member name *optype*. Another keyword, **%type**, is used to associate union member names with nonterminals. Thus, one might say

```
%type <nodetype> expr stat
```

to associate the union member *nodetype* with the nonterminal symbols “*expr*” and “*stat*”.

There remains a couple of cases where these mechanisms are insufficient. If there is an action within a rule, the value returned by this action has no *a priori* type. Similarly, reference to left context values (such as *\$0*) leaves *yacc* with no easy way of knowing the type. In this case, a type can be imposed on the reference by inserting a union member name between *<* and *>* immediately after the first *\$*. The example

```
rule : aaa
      {
        $<intval>$ = 3;
      }
      bbb
    {
      fun( $<intval>2, $<other>0 );
    }
    ;
```

shows this usage. This syntax has little to recommend it, but the situation arises rarely.

A sample specification is given in Appendix 12.3. The facilities in this subsection are not triggered until they are used. In particular, the use of *%type* will turn on these mechanisms. When they are used, there is a fairly strict level of checking. For example, use of *\$n* or *\$\$* to refer to something with no defined type is diagnosed. If these facilities are not triggered, the *yacc* value stack is used to hold *int*'s, as was true historically.

## APPENDIX 12.1

### A Simple Example

This example gives the complete *yacc* applications for a small desk calculator; the calculator has 26 registers labeled “a” through “z” and accepts arithmetic expressions made up of the operators +, -, \*, /, % (mod operator), & (bitwise and), | (bit wise or), and assignments. If an expression at the top level is an assignment, the value is printed; otherwise, the expression is printed. As in C language, an integer that begins with 0 (zero) is assumed to be octal; otherwise, it is assumed to be decimal.

As an example of a *yacc* specification, the desk calculator does a reasonable job of showing how precedence and ambiguities are used and demonstrates simple recovery. The major oversimplifications are that the lexical analyzer is much simpler for most applications, and the output is produced immediately line by line. Note the way that decimal and octal integers are read in by grammar rules. This job is probably better done by the lexical analyzer.

```
%{
# includes<stdio.h>
# includes<ctype.h>
```

## YACC

```
int regs[26];
int base;
```

```
%}
```

```
%start list
```

```
%token DIGIT LETTER
```

```
%left '^'
```

```
%left '&'
```

```
%left '+' '-'
```

```
%left '*' '/' '%'
```

```
%left UMINUS /* supplies precedence for unary minus */
```

```
%% /* beginning of rule section */
```

```
list : /* empty */
      | list stat '\n'
      | list error '\n'
```

```
{
```

```
yyerrork;
```

```
}
```

```
;
```

```
stat : expr
      {
        printf( "%dn", $1 );
      }
      | LETTER '=' expr
      {
        regs[$1] = $3
      }
      ;
```

```
expr : '(' expr ')'
      {
        $$ = $2;
      }
      | expr '+' expr
      {
        $$ = $1 + $3
      }
      | expr '-' expr
      {
        $$ = $1 - $3
      }
      | expr '*' expr
```

```

    {
        $$ = $1 * $3;
    }
    {
        expr '/' expr
    }
    {
        $$ = $1/$3;
    }
    {
        exp '%' expr
    }
    {
        $$ = $1 % $3
    }
    {
        expr '&' expr
    }
    {
        $$ = $1 & $3;
    }
    {
        expr '|' expr
    }
    {
        $$ = $1 | $3
    }
    {
        '-' expr %prec UMINUS
    }
    {
        $$ = - $2;
    }
    {
        LETTER
    }
    {
        $$ = reg[$1];
    }
    {
        number
    }
;

number : DIGIT
    {
        $$ = $1; base = ($1==0) ? 8 ; 10;
    }
    {
        number DIGIT
    }
    {
        $$ = bas * $1 + $2
    }
;

%% /* start of program */

yylex() /* lexical analysis routine */
{
    /* return LETTER for lowercase letter,
    yylval = 0 through 25*/

    /* returns DIGIT for digit, yylval = 0 through 9*/
    /* all other characters are returned immediately */

    int c;

```

## YACC

```
/*skip blanks*/
while (c=getchar( ) == ' ')
;

/* c is now nonblank */

if( islower( c ))
{
    yylval = c- 'a';
    return( LETTER );
}
if( isdigit( c ))
}
    yylval = c-'0';
    return( DIGIT );

}
return( c );
}
```

## APPENDIX 12.2

### YACC Input Syntax

This appendix has a description of the **yacc** input syntax as a **yacc** specification. Context dependencies, etc. are not considered. Ironically, the **yacc** input specification language is most naturally specified as an LR(2) grammar; the sticky part comes when an identifier is seen in a rule immediately following an action. If this identifier is followed by a colon, it is the start of the next rule; otherwise, it is a continuation of the current rule which just happens to have an action embedded in it. As implemented, the lexical analyzer looks ahead after seeing an identifier and decides whether the next token (skipping blanks, newlines, and comments, etc.) is a colon. If so, it returns the token `C_IDENTIFIER`. Otherwise, it returns `IDENTIFIER`. Literals (quoted strings) are also returned as `IDENTIFIERS` but never as part of `C_IDENTIFIER`s.

```
/* grammar for the input to yacc */

/* basic entries */
%token IDENTIFIER /* includes identifiers and literals */
%token C_IDENTIFIER /* identifier (but not literal)
    followed by a colon */
%token NUMBER /* [0-9]+ */

/* reserved words: %type=> TYPE %left=>LEFT,etc. */

%token LEFT RIGHT NONASSOC TOKEN PREC TYPE START UNION
```

```

%token MARK /* the %% mark */
%token LCURL /* the % { mark */
%token RCURL /* the % } mark */

```

```

/* ASCII character literals stand for themselves */

```

```

%token spec

```

```

%%

```

```

spec : defs MARK rules tail
;

```

```

tail : MARK
{
    In this action, eat up the rest of the file
}
| /* empty: the second MARK is optional */
;

```

```

defs : /* empty */
     defs def
;

```

```

defs : START IDENTIFIER
     UNION
     {
         Copy union definition to output
     }
     LCURL
     {
         Copy C code to output file
     }
     RCURL
;
ndefs rword tag nlist
;

```

```

rword : TOKEN
      LEFT
      RIGHT
      NONASSOC
      TYPE
;

```

```

tag : /* empty: union tag is optional */
    '<' IDENTIFIER '>'
;

```

```

nlist : nmno

```

## YACC

```
| nlist nmno
| nlist','nmno
;

nmno : IDENTIFIER /*Note: literal illegal with % type */
| IDENTIFIER NUMBER /* Note: illegal with % type */
;

/* rule section */

rules : C_IDENTIFIER rbody proc
| rules rule
;

rule : C_IDENTIFIER rbody prec
| '(' rbody prec
;

rbody : /* empty */
| rbody IDENTIFIER
| rbody act
;

act : '{'
    {
        Copy action translate $$' etc.
    }
    '}'
;

Bprec : /* empty */
| PREC IDENTIFIER
| PREC IDENTIFIER act
| prec','
;
```

### APPENDIX 12.3

#### An Advanced Example

This appendix gives an example of a grammar using some of the advanced features. The desk calculator example in Appendix 12.1 is modified to provide a desk calculator that does floating point interval arithmetic. The calculator understands floating point constants; the arithmetic operations +, -, \*, /, unary - "a" through "z". Moreover, it also understands intervals written

(X,Y)

where  $X$  is less than or equal to  $Y$ . There are 26 interval valued variables "A" through "Z" that may also be used. The usage is similar to that in Appendix 12.1; assignments returns no value and prints nothing while expressions print the (floating or interval) value.

This example explores a number of interesting features of `yacc` and C language. Intervals are represented by a structure consisting of the left and right endpoint values stored as doubles. This structure is given a type name, `INTERVAL`, by using `typedef`. The `yacc` value stack can also contain floating point scalars and integers (used to index into the arrays holding the variable values). Notice that the entire strategy depends strongly on being able to assign structures and unions in C language. In fact, many of the actions call functions that return structures as well.

It is also worth noting the use of `YYERROR` to handle error conditions—division by an interval containing 0 and an interval presented in the wrong order. The error recovery mechanism of `yacc` is used to throw away the rest of the offending line.

In addition to the mixing of types on the value stack, this grammar also demonstrates an interesting use of syntax to keep track of the type (for example, scalar or interval) of intermediate expressions. Note that scalar can be automatically promoted to an interval if the context demands an interval value. This causes a large number of conflicts when the grammar is run through `yacc`—18 Shift/Reduce and 26 Reduce/Reduce. The problem can be seen by looking at the two input lines.

$$2.5+(3.5-4.)$$

and

$$2.5 + ( 3.5,4 )$$

Notice that the 2.5 is to be used in an interval value expression in the second example, but this fact is not known until the comma is read. By this time, 2.5 is finished, and the parser cannot go back and change its mind. More generally, it might be necessary to look ahead an arbitrary number of tokens to decide whether to convert a scalar to an interval. This problem is evaded by having two rules for each binary interval valued operator—one when the left operand is a scalar and one when the left operand is an interval. In the second case, the right operand must be an interval, so the conversion will be applied automatically. Despite this evasion, there are still many cases where the conversion may be applied or not, leading to the above conflicts. They are resolved by listing the rules that yield scalars first in the specification file; in this way, the conflict will be resolved in the direction of keeping scalar valued expressions scalar valued until they are forced to become intervals.

This way of handling multiple types is very instructive but not very general. If there were many kinds of expression types instead of just two, the number of rules needed would increase dramatically and the conflicts even more dramatically. Thus, while this example is instructive, it is better practice in a more normal programming language environment to keep the type information as part of the value and not as part of the grammar.

## YACC

Finally, a word about the lexical analysis. The only unusual feature is the treatment of floating point constants. The C language library routine *atof()* is used to do the actual conversion from a character string to a double precision value. If the lexical analyzer detects an error, it responds by returning a token that is illegal in the grammar provoking a syntax error in the parser and thence error recovery.

```
%{  
  
#include<stdio.h>  
#include<ctype.h>  
  
typedef struct interval  
{  
    double lo, hi;  
} INTERVAL;  
  
INTERVAL vmul(), vdiv( );  
  
double atof( );  
  
double dreg[ 26 ];  
INTERVAL vreg[ 26 ];  
  
%}  
  
%start line  
  
%union  
{  
    int ival;  
    double dval;  
    INTERVAL vval;  
}  
  
%token <ival> DREG VREG /*indices into dreg, vreg arrays */  
  
%token <dval> CONST /* floating point constant */  
  
%type <dval> dexp /* expression */  
  
%type <vval> vexp /* interval expression */  
  
/* precedence information about the operators */  
  
%left '+' '-'  
%left '*' '/'  
%left UMINUS /* precedence for unary minus */  
  
% %
```

```

lines : /* empty */
      | lines line
      ;
line  : dexp '\n'
      {
          printf( "%15.8f\n".$1 );
      }
      | vexp '\n'
      {
          printf( "(%15.8f , %15.8f )0,$1.1o,$1.hi );
      }
      | DREG '=' '\n'
      {
          dreg[$1] = $3;
      }
      | VREG '=' vexp '\n'
      {
          vreg[$1] = $3;
      }
      | error '\n'
      {
          yyerrork;
      }
      ;

dexp  : CONST
      | DREG
      {
          $$ = dreg[$1]
      }
      | dexp '+' dexp
      {
          $$ = $1 + $3
      }
      | dexp '-' dexp
      {
          $$ = $1 - $3
      }

```

# YACC

```

    {
    dexp '*' dexp
    }

        $$ = $1 * $3

    {
    dexp '/' dexp
    }

        $$ = $1 / $3

    {
    '-' dexp %prec UMINUS
    }

        $$ = -$2

    {
    '(' dexp'
    }

        $$ = $2

    }
;
vexp : dexp
    {
        $$hi = $$lo = $1;

    {
    '(' dexp',' dexp'
    }

        $$lo = $2;
        $$hi = $4;
        If( $$lo > $$hi )
        {
            printf( "interval out of order n" );
            YYERROR;
        }
    }

    {
    VREG
    }

        $$ = vreg[$1]

    {
    vexp '+' vexp
    }

```

```

{
    $$hi = $1hi + $3hi;
    $$lo = $1lo + $3lo

}
dexp '+' vexp

    $$hi = $1 + $3hi;
    $$lo = $1 + $3lo

}
vexp '=' vexp

    $$hi = $1hi - $3lo;
    $$lo = $1lo - $3hi

}
dexp '-' vdep

{

    $$hi = $1 - $3lo;
    $$lo = $1 - $3hi

}
vexp '*' vexp

    $$ = vmul( $1lo,$hi,$3 )

}
dexp '*' vexp

    $$ = vmul( $1, $1, $3 )

}
vexp '/' vexp
{
    if( dcheck( $3 ) ) YYERROR;
    $$ = vdiv( $1lo, $1hi, $3 )
}
dexp '/' vexp

    if( dcheck( $3 ) ) YYERROR;

```

## YACC

```
        $$ = vdiv( $1.lo, $1.hi, $3 )
    }
    { '-' vexp %prec UMINUS
    }
        $$ .hi = -$2.lo; $$ .lo = $2.hi
    }
    { '(' vexp ')'
    }
        $$ = $2
    }
;
;
```

%%

```
# define BSZ 50 /* buffer size for floating point number */
```

```
/* lexical analysis */
```

```
yylex( )
```

```
{
    register c;

                                /* skip over blanks */
                                ;

    if( isupper( c ) )
    {
        yylval.ival = c - 'A'
        return( VREG );
    }
    if( islower( c ) )
    {

        yylval.ival = c - 'a',
        return( DREG );
    }

    /* gobble up digits. points, exponents */
    if( idigit( c ) || c=='.' )
    {

        char buf[BSZ+1], *cp = buf;
        int dot = 0, exp = 0;

        for( ; (cp-buf)<BSZ ; ++cp,c=getchar( ) )
        {

            *cp = c;
            if( isdigit( c ) )
```

```

        continue;
    if( c == '.' )
    {
        if( dot++ || exp )
            return( '.' ); /* will cause syntax error */
        continue;
    }
    if( c == 'e' )
    {
        if( exp++ )
            return( 'e' ); /* will cause syntax error */
        continue;
    }
    /* end of number */
    break;
}
*cp = '\0';
if(cp-buff) >= BSZ )
    printf( "constant too long truncated\n" );
else
    ungetc( c, stdin ); /* push back last char read */
    yylval.dval = atof( buf );
    return( CONST );
}
return( c );
}

INTERVAL
hilo( a, b, c, d )
double a, b, c, d;
{
    /* returns the smallest interval containing a, b, c, and d */

    /* used by *,/ routine */
    INTERVAL v;

    if( a>b )
    {
        v.hi = a;
        v.lo = b;
    }
    else
    {
        v.hi = b;
        v.lo = a;
    }
    if( c>d )
    {

```

## YACC

```
        if( c>v.hi )
            v.hi = c;
        if( d<v.lo )
            v.lo = d;
    }
    else
    {
        if( d>v.hi )
            v.hi = d;
        if( c<v.lo )
            v.lo = c;
    }
    return( v );
}
INTERVAL vmul( a, b, v )
    double a, b;
    INTERVAL v;
{
    return( hilo( a*v.hi, a*v.lo, b*v.hi, b*v.lo ) );
}
dcheck( v )
    INTERVAL v;
{
    if( v.hi >=0.&& v.lo <=0. )
    {
        printf( "divisor internal contains 0.\n" );
        return( 1 );
    }
    return( 0 );
}
INTERVAL vdiv( a, b, v )
    double a, b;
    INTERVAL v;
{
    return( hilo( a/v.hi, a/v.lo, b/v.hi, b/v.lo ) );
}
```

## APPENDIX 12.4

## Old Features Supported But Not Encouraged

This appendix mentions synonyms and features that are supported for historical continuity but, for various reasons, are not encouraged.

1. Literals may also be delimited by double quotes.
2. Literals may be more than one character long. If all the characters are alphabetic, numeric, or `_`, the type number of the literal is defined just as if the literal did not have the quotes around it. Otherwise, it is difficult to find the value for such literal.

The use of multicharacter literals is likely to mislead those unfamiliar with `yacc` since it suggests that `yacc` is doing a job which must be actually done by the lexical analyzer.

3. Most places where `%` is legal, backslash "`\`" may be used. In particular, `\\` is the same as `%%`, `\left` the same as `% left`, etc.
4. There are a number of other synonyms:

`%<` is the same as `%left`  
`%>` is the same as `%right`  
`%binary` and `%2` are the same as `%nonassoc`  
`%0` and `%term` are the same as `%token`  
`%=` is the same as `%prec`

5. Action may also have the form

`= { ... }`

and the curly braces can be dropped if the action is a single C language statement.

6. The C language code between `%{` and `%}` use to be permitted at the head of the rules section as well as in the declaration section.

**YACC**

***NOTES***

## Chapter 25

### UNIX SYSTEM TO UNIX SYSTEM COPY (UUCP)

	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>25-1</b>
<b>THE UUCP NETWORK</b> .....	<b>25-1</b>
<b>Network Hardware</b> .....	<b>25-1</b>
<b>Network Topology</b> .....	<b>25-2</b>
<b>Forwarding</b> .....	<b>25-4</b>
<b>Security</b> .....	<b>25-4</b>
<b>Software Structure</b> .....	<b>25-5</b>
<b>Rules of the Road</b> .....	<b>25-5</b>
<b>Special Places: The Public Area</b> .....	<b>25-6</b>
<b>Permissions</b> .....	<b>25-6</b>
<b>NETWORK USAGE</b> .....	<b>25-7</b>
<b>Name Space</b> .....	<b>25-7</b>
<b>Forwarding Syntax</b> .....	<b>25-8</b>
<b>Types of Transfers</b> .....	<b>25-9</b>
<b>Remote Executions</b> .....	<b>25-10</b>
<b>Spooling</b> .....	<b>25-10</b>
<b>Notification</b> .....	<b>25-11</b>
<b>Tracking and Status</b> .....	<b>25-11</b>
<b>Job Status</b> .....	<b>25-12</b>
<b>Network Status</b> .....	<b>25-12</b>
<b>Job Control</b> .....	<b>25-13</b>
<b>UTILITIES THAT USE UUCP</b> .....	<b>25-13</b>
<b>The Stockroom</b> .....	<b>25-13</b>
<b>Mall</b> .....	<b>25-13</b>
<b>Netnews</b> .....	<b>25-14</b>
<b>Uuto</b> .....	<b>25-14</b>
<b>Other Applications</b> .....	<b>25-14</b>



## Chapter 25

# UNIX SYSTEM TO UNIX SYSTEM COPY (UUCP)

### INTRODUCTION

The **uucp** network has provided a means of information exchange between UNIX systems over the direct distant dialing network for several years. This chapter provides you with the background to make use of the network.

The first half of the document discusses concepts. Understanding these basic principles helps the user make the best possible use of the **uucp** network. The second half explains the use of the user level interface to the network and provides numerous examples.

There are several major uses of the network. Some of the uses are:

- Distribution of software
- Distribution of documentation
- Personal communication (mail)
- Data transfer between closely sited machines
- Transmission of debugging dumps and data exposing bugs
- Production of hard copy output on remote printers.

### THE UUCP NETWORK

The **uucp(1)** network is a network of UNIX systems that allows file transfer and remote execution to occur on a network of UNIX systems. The extent of the network is a function of both the interconnection hardware and the controlling network software. Membership in the network is tightly controlled via the software to preserve the integrity of all members of the network. You cannot use the **uucp** facility to send files to systems that are not part of the **uucp** network. The following parts describe the topology, services, operating rules, etc., of the network to provide a framework for discussing use of the network.

#### Network Hardware

The **uucp** was originally designed as a dialup network so that systems in the network could use the DDD network to communicate with each other. The three most common methods of connecting systems are:

## UUCP

1. Connecting two UNIX systems directly by cross-coupling (via a null modem) two of the computers ports. This means of connection is useful for only short distances (several hundred feet can be achieved although the RS232 standard specifies a much shorter distance) and is usually run at high speed (9600 baud). These connections run on asynchronous terminal ports.
2. Using a modem (a private line or a limited distance modem) to directly connect processors over a private line (using 103- or 212-type data sets).
3. Connecting a processor to another system through a modem, an automatic calling unit (ACU), and the DDD network. This is by far the most common interconnection method, and it makes available the largest number of connections.

### Network Topology

A large number of connections between systems are possible via the DDD network. The topology of the network is determined by both the hardware connections and the software that control the network. The next two parts deal with how that topology is controlled.

#### *Hardware Topology*

As discussed earlier, it is possible to build a network using permanent or dial up connections. In Figure 25-1, a group of systems (A, B, C, D, and E) are shown connected via hard-wired lines. All systems are assumed to have some answer-only data sets so that remote users or systems can be connected. A few systems have automatic calling units (K, D, F, and G) and one system (H) has no capability for calling other systems. Users should be aware that the network consists of a series of point-to-point connections (A-B, B-C, D-B, E-B) even though it appears in Figure 25-1 that A and C are directly connected through B. The following observations are made:

1. System H is isolated. It can be made part of the network by arranging for other systems to poll it at fixed intervals. This is an important concept to remember since transfers from systems that are polled do not leave the system until that system is called by a polling system.
2. Systems K, F, G, and D easily reach all other systems since they have calling units.
3. If system A (E or G) wishes to send a file to H (K, F, or G), it must first send it to D (via system B) since D is the only system with a calling unit.

#### *Software Topology*

The hardware capability of systems in the network defines the maximum number of connections in the network. The software at each node restricts the access by other systems and thereby defines the extent of the network. The systems of Figure 25-1 can be configured so that they appear as a network of systems that have equal access to each other or some restrictions can be applied. As part of the security mechanism used by **uucp**, the extent of access that other systems have can be controlled at each node. Figures 25-2 and 25-3 show how the network might appear at one node. Access is available from all systems in Figure

TPA-696231-1  
19W X 24H

Figure 25-1. UUCP Nodes

TPA-696232-1  
24W X 14H

Figure 25-2. UUCP Network Excluding One Node

TPA-696233-1  
24W X 13H

### Figure 25-3. UUCP Network With Several Levels of Permissions

25-2, however, in Figure 25-3 some of the systems have been configured to have greater or less access privileges than others (i.e., systems C, E, and G have one set of access privileges, systems F and B have another set, etc.).

The **uucp** uses the ICON/UXV password mechanism coupled with a system file (*/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys*) and a file system permission file (*/usr/lib/uucp/USERFILE*) to control access between systems. The password file entries for **uucp** (usually, **luucp**, **nuucp**, **uucp**, etc.) allow only those remote systems that know the passwords for these IDs to access the local system. (Great care should be taken in revealing the password for these **uucp** logins since knowing the password allows a system to join the network.) The system file (*/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys*) defines the remote systems that a local host knows about. This file contains all information needed for a local host to contact a remote system (including system name, password, login sequence, etc.) and as such is protected from viewing by ordinary users.

In summary, while the available hardware on a network of systems determines the connectivity of the systems, the combination of password file entries and the **uucp** system files determine the extent of the network.

#### Forwarding

One of the recent additions to **uucp** (for ICON/UXV) is a limited forwarding capability whereby systems that are part of the network can forward files through intermediate nodes. For example, in Figure 25-1, it is possible to send a file between node **A** and **C** through intermediate node **B**. For security reasons, when forwarding, files may only be transmitted to the *public* area or fetched from the remote systems *public* area.

#### Security

The most critical feature of any network is the security that it provides. Users are familiar with the security that UNIX system provides in protecting files from access by other users and in accessing the system via passwords. In building a network of processors, the notion of security is widened because access by a wider community of users is granted. Access is granted on a system basis (that is, access is granted to all users on a remote system). This follows from the fact that the process of sending (receiving) a file to (from) another system is done via

daemons that use one special user ID(s). This user ID(s) is granted (denied) access to the system via the **uucp** system file (*/usr/lib/uucp/L.sys*) and the areas that the system has access to is controlled by another file (*/usr/lib/uucp/USERFILE*). For example, access can be granted to the entire file system tree or limited to specific areas.

### Software Structure

The **uucp** network is a batch network. That is, when a request is made, it is spooled for later transmission by a daemon. This is important to users because the success or failure of a command is only known at some later time via **mail(1)** notification. For most transfers, there is little trouble in transmitting files between systems, however, transmissions are occasionally delayed or fail because a remote system cannot be reached.

### Rules of the Road

There are several rules by which the network runs. These rules are necessary to provide the smooth flow of data between systems and to prevent duplicate transmissions and lost jobs. The following chapters outline these rules and their influence on the network.

#### *Queuing*

Jobs submitted to the network are assigned a sequence number for transmission. Jobs are represented by a file (or files) in a common spool directory (*/usr/spool/uucp*). When a file transfer daemon (**uucico**) is started to transmit a job, it selects a system to contact and then transmits all jobs to that system. Before breaking off the conversation, any jobs to be received from that remote system are accepted. The system selected as the one to contact is randomly selected if there is work for more than one system. In releases of **uucp** prior to UNIX, the first system appearing in the spool directory is selected so preference is given to the most recently spawned jobs. **Uucp** may be sending to or receiving from many systems simultaneously. The number of incoming requests is only limited by the number of connections on the system, and the number of outgoing transfers is limited by the number of ACUs (or direct connections).

#### *Dialing and the DDD Network*

In order to transfer data between processors that are not directly connected, an auto dialer is used to contact the remote system. There are several factors that can make contacting a remote system difficult.

1. All lines to the remote system may be busy. There is a mechanism within **uucp** that restricts contact with a remote system to certain times of the day (week) to minimize this problem.
2. The remote system may be down.
3. There may be difficulty in dialing the number (especially if a large sequence of numbers involving access through PBXs is involved). The dialing algorithm tries dialing a number twice and the algorithm used to dial remote systems is not perfect, particularly when intermediate dial tones are involved.

## UUCP

### *Scheduling and Polling*

When a job is submitted to the network, an attempt to contact that system is made immediately. Only one conversation at a time can exist between the same two systems.

Systems that are polled can do nothing to force immediate transmission of data. Jobs will only be transmitted when the system is polled (hourly, daily, etc.) by a remote system.

### *Retransmissions and Hysteresis*

The **uucp** network is fairly persistent in its attempt to contact remote systems to complete a transmission. To prevent **uucp** from continually calling systems that are unavailable, hysteresis is built into the algorithm used to contact other systems. This mechanism forces a minimum fixed delay (specifiable on a per system basis) to occur before another transmission can take place to that system.

### *Purging and Cleanup*

Transfers that cannot be completed after a defined period of time (72 hours is the value that is set when the system is distributed) are deleted and the user is notified.

### **Special Places: The Public Area**

In order to allow the transfer of files to a system for which a user does not have a login on, the *public* directory (usually kept in */usr/spool/uucppublic*) is available with general access privileges. When receiving files in the *public* area, the user should dispose of them quickly as the administrative portion of **uucp** purges this area on a regular basis.

### **Permissions**

#### *File Level Protection*

In transferring files between systems, users should make sure that the destination area is writable by **uucp**. The **uucp** daemons preserve execute permission between systems and assign permission 0666 to transferred files.

#### *System Level Protection*

The system administrator at each site determines the global access permissions for that processor. Thus, access between systems may be confined by the administrator to only some sections of the file system.

*Forwarding Permissions*

The forwarding feature is a new addition to the **uucp** package. You should be aware that

1. When forwarding is attempted through a node that is running an old version of **uucp**, the transmission fails.
2. Nodes that allow forwarding can restrict the forwarding feature in several ways.
  - a. Forwarding is allowed for only certain users.
  - b. Forwarding to certain destination nodes (e.g., Australia) should be avoided.
  - c. Forwarding for selected source nodes is allowed.
3. The most important restriction is that forwarding is allowed only for files sent to or fetched from the *public* area.

**NETWORK USAGE**

The following parts discuss the user interface to the network and give examples of command usage.

**Name Space**

In order to reference files on remote systems, a syntax is necessary to uniquely identify a file. The notation must also have several defaults to allow the reference to be compact. Some restrictions must also be placed on pathnames to prevent security violations. For example, pathnames may not include "." as a component because it is difficult to determine whether the reference is to a restricted area.

*Naming Conventions*

**Uucp** uses a special syntax to build references to files on remote systems. The basic syntax is

system-name!pathname

where the system-name is a system that **uucp** is aware of. The *pathname* part of the name may contain any of the following:

1. A fully qualified *pathname* such as

mhtsa!/usr/you/file

The *pathname* may also be a directory name as in

## UUCP

mhtsa!usr/you/directory

2. The login directory on a remote may be specified by use of the `~` character. The combination `~user` references the login directory of a user on the remote system. For example,

mhtsa!~adm/file

would expand to

mhtsa!usr/sys/adm/file

if the login directory for user adm on the remote system is `/usr/sys/adm`.

3. The *public* area is referenced by a similar use of the prefix `~/user` preceding the pathname. For example,

mhtsa!~/you/file

would expand to

mhtsa!usr/spool/uucp/you/file

if `/usr/spool/uucp` is used as the spool directory.

4. Pathnames not using any of the combinations or prefixes discussed above are prefixed with the current directory (or the login directory on the remote). For example,

mhtsa!file

would expand to

mhtsa!usr/you/file

The naming convention can be used in reference to either the source or destination file names.

### Forwarding Syntax

The newest feature of **uucp** is the ability to allow files to be passed between systems via intermediate nodes. This is done via a variation of the **bang (!)** syntax that describes the path to be taken to reach that file. For example, a user on system **a** wishing to transmit a file to system **e** might specify the transfer as

```
uucp file b!c!d!e!~/you/file
```

if the user desires the request to be sent through b, c, and d before reaching e. Note that the pathname is the path that the file would take to reach node e. Note also that the destination must be specified as the *public* area. Fetching a file from another system via intermediate nodes is done similarly. For example,

```
uucp b!c!d!e!~/you/file x
```

fetches file from system e and renames it x on the local system. The forwarding prefix is the path from the local system and not the path from the remote to the local system. The forwarding feature may also be used in conjunction with remote execution. For example,

```
uux mhtsa!uucp mhtsb!mhrtc!/usr/spool/uucppublic/file x
```

sends a request to mhtsa to execute the **uucp** command to copy a file from mhrtc to x on mhtsa.

### Types of Transfers

**Uucp** has a very flexible command syntax for file transmission. The following chapters give examples of different combinations of transfers.

#### *Transmissions of Files to a Remote*

Any number of files can be transferred to a remote system via **uucp**. The syntax supports the \*, ? and [..] metacharacters. For example,

```
uucp *.[ch] mhtsa!dir
```

transfers all files whose name ends in c or h to the directory dir in the users login directory on mhtsa.

#### *Fetching Files From a Remote*

Files can be fetched from a remote system in a similar manner. For example,

```
uucp mhtsa!*.[ch] dir
```

will fetch all files ending in c or h from the users login directory on mhtsa and place the copies in the subdirectory dir on the local system.

## UUCP

### *Switching*

Transmission of files can be arranged in such a way that the local system effectively acts as a switch. For example,

```
uucp mhtsb!files mhtsa!filed
```

will fetch files from the users login directory on mhtsb, rename it as filed, and place it in the login directory on mhtsa.

### *Broadcasting*

Broadcast capability (that is, copying a file to many systems) is not supported by uucp, however, it can be simulated via a shell script as in

```
for i in mhtsa mhtsb mhtsd
do
    uucp file $i!broad
done
```

Unfortunately, one uucp command is spawned for each transmission so that it is not possible to track the transfer as a single unit.

### **Remote Executions**

The remote execution facility allows commands to be executed remotely. For example,

```
uux "!diff mhtsa!/etc/passwd mhtsd!/etc/passwd > !pass.diff"
```

will execute the command diff(1) on the password file on mhtsa and mhtsd and place the result in pass.diff.

### **Spooling**

To continue modifying a file while a copy is being transmitted across the network, the -c option should be used. This forces a copy of the file to be queued. The default for uucp is not to queue copies of the files since it is wasteful of both Central Processing Unit time and storage. For example, the following command forces the file work to be copied into the spool directory before it is transmitted.

```
uucp -c work mhtsa!~/you/work
```

### Notification

The success or failure of a transmission is reported to users asynchronously via the `mail(1)` command. A new feature of `uucp` is to provide notification to the user in a file (of the users choice). The choices for notification are:

1. Notification returned to the requesters system (via the `-m` option). This is useful when the requesting user is distributing files to other machines. Instead of logging onto the remote machine to read mail, mail is sent to the requester when the copy is finished.
2. A variation of the `-m` option is to force notification in a file (using the `-mfile` option where *file* is a file name). For example,

```
uucp -mans /etc/passwd mhtsb!/dev/null
```

sends the file `/etc/passwd` to system `mhtsb` and place the file in the bit bucket (`/dev/null`). The status of the transfer is reported in the file `ans` as,

```
uucp job 0306 (8/20-23.08:09) (0:31:23) /etc/passwd copy succeeded
```

3. `Uux(1)` always reports the exit status of the remote execution unless notification is suppressed (via the `-n` option). Notification can be sent to a different user on the remote system via the `-nuser` option.

### Tracking and Status

The most pervasive change to the `uucp` package is revising the internal formatting of jobs so that each invocation of `uucp` or `uux(1)` corresponds to a single job. It is now possible to associate a single job number with each command execution so that the job can be terminated or its status obtained.

#### *The Job ID*

The default for the `uucp` and `uux` command is not to print the job number for each job. This was done for compatibility with previous versions of `uucp` and to prevent the many shell scripts built around `uucp` from printing job numbers. If the following environment variable

```
JOBNO=ON
```

is made part of the users environment and exported, `uucp` and `uux` prints the job number. Similarly, if the user wishes to turn the job numbers off, the environment variable is set as follows:

```
JOBNO=OFF
```

If you wish to force printing of job numbers without using the environment mechanism, use the `-j` option. For example,

## UUCP

```
uucp -j /etc/passwd mh5b!/dev/null
uucp job 282
```

forces the job number (282) to be printed. If the `-j` option is not used, the IDs of the jobs (belonging to the user) are found by using the `uustat(1)` command. This provides the job number. For example,

```
uustat
0282 tom mh5b 08/20-21:47 08/20-21:47 JOB IS QUEUED
0272 tom mh5b 08/20-21:46 08/20-21:46 JOB IS QUEUED
```

shows that the user has two jobs (282 and 272) queued.

### Job Status

The `uustat` command allows a user to check on one or all jobs that have been queued. The ID printed when a job is queued is used as a key to query status of the particular job. An example of a request for the status of a given job is

```
uustat -j0711

0711 tom mh5b 07/30-02:18 07/30-02:18 JOB IS QUEUED
```

There are several status messages that may be printed for a given job; the most frequent ones are `JOB IS QUEUED` and `JOB COMPLETED` (meanings are obvious). The manual page for `uustat` lists the other status messages.

### Network Status

The status of the last transfer to each system on the network is found by using the `uustat` command. For example,

```
uustat -mall
```

reports the status of the last transfer to all of the systems known to the local system. The output might appear as

mhb5c	08/10-12:35	CONVERSATION SUCCEEDED
resear	08/20-17:01	CONVERSATION SUCCEEDED
minimo	07/22-16:31	DIAL FAILED
austra	08/20-18:36	WRONG TIME TO CALL
ucbvax	08/20-20:37	LOGIN FAILED

where the status indicates the time and state of the last transfer to each system. When sending files to a system that has not been contacted recently, it is a good idea to use `uustat` to see when the last access occurred (because the remote system may be down or out of service).

### Job Control

With the unique job ID generated for each **uucp** or **uux** command, it is possible to control jobs in the following ways.

#### *Job Termination*

A job that consists of transferring many files from several different systems can be terminated using the **-k** option of **uustat**. If any part of the job has left the system, then only the remaining parts of the job on the local system is terminated.

#### *Requeuing a Job*

The **uucp** package clears out its working area of jobs on a regular basis (usually every 72 hours) to prevent the buildup of jobs that cannot be delivered. The **-r** option is used to force the date of a job to be changed to the current date, thereby lengthening the time that **uucp** attempts to transmit the job. It should be noted that the **-r** option does not impart immortality to a job. Rather, it only postpones deleting the job during housekeeping functions until the next cleanup.

#### *Network Names*

Users may find the names of the systems on the network via the **uname(1)** command. Only the names of the systems in the network are printed.

## UTILITIES THAT USE UUCP

There are several utilities that rely on **uucp** or **uux(1)** to transfer files to other systems. The following parts outline the more important of these functions. This increases awareness of the extent of the use of the network.

### The Stockroom

The ICON/UXV stockroom is a facility whereby a library of source can be maintained at a central location for distribution of source or bug fixes. Access to and distribution of library entries is controlled by shell scripts that use **uucp**.

### Mail

The **mail(1)** command uses **uux** to forward mail to other systems. For example, when a user types

```
mail mh!sa!tom
```

the **mail** command invokes **uux** to execute **rmail** on the remote system (**rmail** is a link to the **mail** command). Forwarding mail through several systems (e.g., mail a!b!tom) does not use the **uucp** forwarding feature but is simulated by the **mail** command itself.

## UUCP

### Netnews

The **netnews(1)** command that is locally supported on many systems uses **uux** in much the same way that **mail** does to broadcast network mail to systems subscribing to news categories.

### Uuto

The **uuto(1)** command uses the **uucp** facility to send files while allowing the local system to control the file access. Suppose your login is **emsgene** and you are on system **aaaaa**. You have a friend (David) on system **bbbbbb** with a login name of **wldmc**. Also assume that both systems are networked to each other [See **uname(1)**]. To send files using **uuto**, enter the following:

```
uuto filename aaaaa!wldmc
```

where **filename** is the name of a file to be sent. The files are sent to a public directory defined in the **uucp** source. In this example, David will receive the following mail:

```
From nuucp Tue Jan 25 11:09:55 1983
/usr/spool/uucppublic/receive/wldmc/aaaaa\
//filename from aaaaa!emsgene arrived
```

See **uuto(1)** for more details.

### Other Applications

The Office Automation System (OAS) uses **uux** to transmit electronic mail between systems in a manner similar to the standard **mail** command. Some sites have replaced utilities such as **lpr(1)**, **opr(1)**, etc., with shell scripts that invoke **uux** or **uucp**. Other sites use the **uucp** network as a backup for higher speed networks (e.g., PCL, NSC HYPERchannel, etc.).

## Chapter 26

### A Fast File System for UNIX

	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>ABSTRACT</b> .....	26-1
<b>INTRODUCTION</b> .....	26-2
<b>OLD FILE SYSTEM</b> .....	26-2
<b>NEW FILE SYSTEM ORGANIZATION</b> .....	26-4
<b>Optimizing Storage Utilization</b> .....	26-4
<b>File System Parameterization</b> .....	26-7
<b>Layout Policies</b> .....	26-8
<b>PERFORMANCE</b> .....	26-10
<b>FILE SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL ENHANCEMENTS</b> .....	26-13
<b>Long File Names</b> .....	26-13
<b>File Locking</b> .....	26-13
<b>Symbolic Links</b> .....	26-14
<b>Rename</b> .....	26-15
<b>Quotas</b> .....	26-15
<b>ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS</b> .....	26-16
<b>REFERENCES</b> .....	26-17



## Chapter 26

### A Fast File System for UNIX

*Marshall Kirk McKusick, William N. Joy<sup>1</sup>, Samuel J. Leffler<sup>2</sup>, Robert S. Fabry*

Computer Systems Research Group  
Computer Science Division  
Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science  
University of California, Berkeley  
Berkeley, CA 94720

#### ABSTRACT

A reimplementation of the UNIX® file system is described. The reimplementation provides substantially higher throughput rates by using more flexible allocation policies that allow better locality of reference and can be adapted to a wide range of peripheral and processor characteristics. The new file system clusters data that is sequentially accessed and provides two block sizes to allow fast access to large files while not wasting large amounts of space for small files. File access rates of up to ten times faster than the traditional UNIX file system are experienced. Long needed enhancements to the programmers' interface are discussed. These include a mechanism to place advisory locks on files, extensions of the name space across file systems, the ability to use long file names, and provisions for administrative control of resource usage.

Revised February 18, 1984<sup>3</sup>

CR Categories and Subject Descriptors: D.4.3 [Operating Systems]: File Systems Management – *file organization, directory structures, access methods*; D.4.2 [Operating Systems]: Storage Management – *allocation/deallocation strategies, secondary storage devices*; D.4.8 [Operating Systems]: Performance – *measurements, operational analysis*; H.3.2 [Information Systems]: Information Storage – *file organization*

Additional Keywords and Phrases: UNIX, file system organization, file system performance, file system design, application program interface.

General Terms: file system, measurement, performance.

#### INTRODUCTION

---

® UNIX is a registered trademark of AT&T.

<sup>1</sup> William N. Joy is currently employed by : Sun Microsystems, Inc.,  
2550 Garcia Avenue, Mountain View, CA 94043

<sup>2</sup> Samuel J. Leffler is currently employed by: Lucasfilm Ltd., PO Box 2009, San Rafael, CA 94912

<sup>3</sup> This work was done under grants from the National Science Foundation under grant MCS80-05144, and the Defense Advance Research Projects Agency (DoD) under ARPA Order No. 4031 monitored by Naval Electronic System Command under Contract No. N00039-82-0235.

## UNIX Fast File System

This paper describes the changes from the original 512 byte UNIX file system to the new one released with the 4.2 Berkeley Software Distribution. It presents the motivations for the changes, the methods used to effect these changes, the rationale behind the design decisions, and a description of the new implementation. This discussion is followed by a summary of the results that have been obtained, directions for future work, and the additions and changes that have been made to the facilities that are available to programmers.

The original UNIX system that runs on the PDP-11<sup>4</sup> has simple and elegant file system facilities. File system input/output is buffered by the kernel; there are no alignment constraints on data transfers and all operations are made to appear synchronous. All transfers to the disk are in 512 byte blocks, which can be placed arbitrarily within the data area of the file system. Virtually no constraints other than available disk space are placed on file growth [Ritchie74], [Thompson78].<sup>5</sup>

When used on the VAX-11 together with other UNIX enhancements, the original 512 byte UNIX file system is incapable of providing the data throughput rates that many applications require. For example, applications such as VLSI design and image processing do a small amount of processing on a large quantities of data and need to have a high throughput from the file system. High throughput rates are also needed by programs that map files from the file system into large virtual address spaces. Paging data in and out of the file system is likely to occur frequently [Ferrin82b]. This requires a file system providing higher bandwidth than the original 512 byte UNIX one that provides only about two percent of the maximum disk bandwidth or about 20 kilobytes per second per arm [White80], [Smith81b].

Modifications have been made to the UNIX file system to improve its performance. Since the UNIX file system interface is well understood and not inherently slow, this development retained the abstraction and simply changed the underlying implementation to increase its throughput. Consequently, users of the system have not been faced with massive software conversion.

Problems with file system performance have been dealt with extensively in the literature; see [Smith81a] for a survey. Previous work to improve the UNIX file system performance has been done by [Ferrin82a]. The UNIX operating system drew many of its ideas from Multics, a large, high performance operating system [Feiertag71]. Other work includes Hydra [Almes78], Spice [Thompson80], and a file system for a LISP environment [Symbolics81]. A good introduction to the physical latencies of disks is described in [Pechura83].

### OLD FILE SYSTEM

In the file system developed at Bell Laboratories (the "traditional" file system), each disk drive is divided into one or more partitions. Each of these disk partitions may contain one file system. A file system never spans multiple partitions.<sup>6</sup> A file system is described by its super-block, which contains the basic parameters of the file system. These include the number of data blocks in the file system, a count of the maximum number of files, and a pointer to the *free list*, a linked list of all the free blocks in the file system.

---

4 DEC, PDP, VAX, MASSBUS, and UNIBUS are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation

5 In practice, a file's size is constrained to be less than about one gigabyte.

6 By "partition" here we refer to the subdivision of physical space on a disk drive. In the traditional file system, as in the new file system, file systems are really located in logical disk partitions that may overlap. This overlapping is made available, for example, to allow programs to copy entire disk drives containing multiple file systems.

Within the file system are files. Certain files are distinguished as directories and contain pointers to files that may themselves be directories. Every file has a descriptor associated with it called an *inode*. An inode contains information describing ownership of the file, time stamps marking last modification and access times for the file, and an array of indices that point to the data blocks for the file. For the purposes of this section, we assume that the first 8 blocks of the file are directly referenced by values stored in an inode itself.<sup>7</sup> An inode may also contain references to indirect blocks containing further data block indices. In a file system with a 512 byte block size, a singly indirect block contains 128 further block addresses, a doubly indirect block contains 128 addresses of further singly indirect blocks, and a triply indirect block contains 128 addresses of further doubly indirect blocks.

A 150 megabyte traditional UNIX file system consists of 4 megabytes of inodes followed by 146 megabytes of data. This organization segregates the inode information from the data; thus accessing a file normally incurs a long seek from the file's inode to its data. Files in a single directory are not typically allocated consecutive slots in the 4 megabytes of inodes, causing many non-consecutive blocks of inodes to be accessed when executing operations on the inodes of several files in a directory.

The allocation of data blocks to files is also suboptimum. The traditional file system never transfers more than 512 bytes per disk transaction and often finds that the next sequential data block is not on the same cylinder, forcing seeks between 512 byte transfers. The combination of the small block size, limited read-ahead in the system, and many seeks severely limits file system throughput.

The first work at Berkeley on the UNIX file system attempted to improve both reliability and throughput. The reliability was improved by staging modifications to critical file system information so that they could either be completed or repaired cleanly by a program after a crash [Kowalski78]. The file system performance was improved by a factor of more than two by changing the basic block size from 512 to 1024 bytes. The increase was because of two factors: each disk transfer accessed twice as much data, and most files could be described without need to access indirect blocks since the direct blocks contained twice as much data. The file system with these changes will henceforth be referred to as the *old file system*.

This performance improvement gave a strong indication that increasing the block size was a good method for improving throughput. Although the throughput had doubled, the old file system was still using only about four percent of the disk bandwidth. The main problem was that although the free list was initially ordered for optimal access, it quickly became scrambled as files were created and removed. Eventually the free list became entirely random, causing files to have their blocks allocated randomly over the disk. This forced a seek before every block access. Although old file systems provided transfer rates of up to 175 kilobytes per second when they were first created, this rate deteriorated to 30 kilobytes per second after a few weeks of moderate use because of this randomization of data block placement. There was no way of restoring the performance of an old file system except to dump, rebuild, and restore the file system. Another possibility, as suggested by [Maruyama76], would be to have a process that periodically reorganized the data on the disk to restore locality.

### NEW FILE SYSTEM ORGANIZATION

In the new file system organization (as in the old file system organization), each disk drive contains one or more file systems. A file system is described by its super-block, located at the beginning of the file system's disk partition. Because the super-block contains critical data, it

---

<sup>7</sup> The actual number may vary from system to system, but is usually in the range 5-13.

## UNIX Fast File System

is replicated to protect against catastrophic loss. This is done when the file system is created; since the super-block data does not change, the copies need not be referenced unless a head crash or other hard disk error causes the default super-block to be unusable.

To insure that it is possible to create files as large as  $2^{32}$  bytes with only two levels of indirection, the minimum size of a file system block is 4096 bytes. The size of file system blocks can be any power of two greater than or equal to 4096. The block size of a file system is recorded in the file system's super-block so it is possible for file systems with different block sizes to be simultaneously accessible on the same system. The block size must be decided at the time that the file system is created; it cannot be subsequently changed without rebuilding the file system.

The new file system organization divides a disk partition into one or more areas called *cylinder groups*. A cylinder group is comprised of one or more consecutive cylinders on a disk. Associated with each cylinder group is some bookkeeping information that includes a redundant copy of the super-block, space for inodes, a bit map describing available blocks in the cylinder group, and summary information describing the usage of data blocks within the cylinder group. The bit map of available blocks in the cylinder group replaces the traditional file system's free list. For each cylinder group a static number of inodes is allocated at file system creation time. The default policy is to allocate one inode for each 2048 bytes of space in the cylinder group, expecting this to be far more than will ever be needed.

All the cylinder group bookkeeping information could be placed at the beginning of each cylinder group. However if this approach were used, all the redundant information would be on the top platter. A single hardware failure that destroyed the top platter could cause the loss of all redundant copies of the super-block. Thus the cylinder group bookkeeping information begins at a varying offset from the beginning of the cylinder group. The offset for each successive cylinder group is calculated to be about one track further from the beginning of the cylinder group than the preceding cylinder group. In this way the redundant information spirals down into the pack so that any single track, cylinder, or platter can be lost without losing all copies of the super-block. Except for the first cylinder group, the space between the beginning of the cylinder group and the beginning of the cylinder group information is used for data blocks.<sup>8</sup>

### Optimizing Storage Utilization

Data is laid out so that larger blocks can be transferred in a single disk transaction, greatly increasing file system throughput. As an example, consider a file in the new file system composed of 4096 byte data blocks. In the old file system this file would be composed of 1024 byte blocks. By increasing the block size, disk accesses in the new file system may transfer up to four times as much information per disk transaction. In large files, several 4096 byte blocks may be allocated from the same cylinder so that even larger data transfers are possible before requiring a seek.

---

<sup>8</sup> While it appears that the first cylinder group could be laid out with its super-block at the "known" location, this would not work for file systems with blocks sizes of 16 kilobytes or greater. This is because of a requirement that the first 8 kilobytes of the disk be reserved for a bootstrap program and a separate requirement that the cylinder group information begin on a file system block boundary. To start the cylinder group on a file system block boundary, file systems with block sizes larger than 8 kilobytes would have to leave an empty space between the end of the boot block and the beginning of the cylinder group. Without knowing the size of the file system blocks, the system would not know what roundup function to use to find the beginning of the first cylinder group.

The main problem with larger blocks is that most UNIX file systems are composed of many small files. A uniformly large block size wastes space. Table 1 shows the effect of file system block size on the amount of wasted space in the file system. The files measured to obtain these figures reside on one of our time sharing systems that has roughly 1.2 gigabytes of on-line storage. The measurements are based on the active user file systems containing about 920 megabytes of formatted space.

Space used	% waste	Organization
775.2 Mb	0.0	Data only, no separation between files
807.8 Mb	4.2	Data only, each file starts on 512 byte boundary
828.7 Mb	6.9	Data + inodes, 512 byte block UNIX file system
866.5 Mb	11.8	Data + inodes, 1024 byte block UNIX file system
948.5 Mb	22.4	Data + inodes, 2048 byte block UNIX file system
1128.3 Mb	45.6	Data + inodes, 4096 byte block UNIX file system

Table 1 – Amount of wasted space as a function of block size.

The space wasted is calculated to be the percentage of space on the disk not containing user data. As the block size on the disk increases, the waste rises quickly, to an intolerable 45.6% waste with 4096 byte file system blocks.

To be able to use large blocks without undue waste, small files must be stored in a more efficient way. The new file system accomplishes this goal by allowing the division of a single file system block into one or more *fragments*. The file system fragment size is specified at the time that the file system is created; each file system block can optionally be broken into 2, 4, or 8 fragments, each of which is addressable. The lower bound on the size of these fragments is constrained by the disk sector size, typically 512 bytes. The block map associated with each cylinder group records the space available in a cylinder group at the fragment level; to determine if a block is available, aligned fragments are examined. Figure 1 shows a piece of a map from a 4096/1024 file system.

Bits in map	XXXX	XXOO	OOXX	OOOO
Fragment numbers	0-3	4-7	8-11	12-15
Block numbers	0	1	2	3

Figure 1 – Example layout of blocks and fragments in a 4096/1024 file system.

Each bit in the map records the status of a fragment; an “X” shows that the fragment is in use, while a “O” shows that the fragment is available for allocation. In this example, fragments 0–5, 10, and 11 are in use, while fragments 6–9, and 12–15 are free. Fragments of adjoining blocks cannot be used as a full block, even if they are large enough. In this example, fragments 6–9 cannot be allocated as a full block; only fragments 12–15 can be coalesced into a full block.

## UNIX Fast File System

On a file system with a block size of 4096 bytes and a fragment size of 1024 bytes, a file is represented by zero or more 4096 byte blocks of data, and possibly a single fragmented block. If a file system block must be fragmented to obtain space for a small amount of data, the remaining fragments of the block are made available for allocation to other files. As an example consider an 11000 byte file stored on a 4096/1024 byte file system. This file would use two full size blocks and one three fragment portion of another block. If no block with three aligned fragments is available at the time the file is created, a full size block is split yielding the necessary fragments and a single unused fragment. This remaining fragment can be allocated to another file as needed.

Space is allocated to a file when a program does a write system call. Each time data is written to a file, the system checks to see if the size of the file has increased.<sup>9</sup> If the file needs to be expanded to hold the new data, one of three conditions exists:

- 1) There is enough space left in an already allocated block or fragment to hold the new data. The new data is written into the available space.
- 2) The file contains no fragmented blocks (and the last block in the file contains insufficient space to hold the new data). If space exists in a block already allocated, the space is filled with new data. If the remainder of the new data contains more than a full block of data, a full block is allocated and the first full block of new data is written there. This process is repeated until less than a full block of new data remains. If the remaining new data to be written will fit in less than a full block, a block with the necessary fragments is located, otherwise a full block is located. The remaining new data is written into the located space.
- 3) The file contains one or more fragments (and the fragments contain insufficient space to hold the new data). If the size of the new data plus the size of the data already in the fragments exceeds the size of a full block, a new block is allocated. The contents of the fragments are copied to the beginning of the block and the remainder of the block is filled with new data. The process then continues as in (2) above. Otherwise, if the new data to be written will fit in less than a full block, a block with the necessary fragments is located, otherwise a full block is located. The contents of the existing fragments appended with the new data are written into the allocated space.

The problem with expanding a file one fragment at a time is that data may be copied many times as a fragmented block expands to a full block. Fragment reallocation can be minimized if the user program writes a full block at a time, except for a partial block at the end of the file. Since file systems with different block sizes may reside on the same system, the file system interface has been extended to provide application programs the optimal size for a read or write. For files the optimal size is the block size of the file system on which the file is being accessed. For other objects, such as pipes and sockets, the optimal size is the underlying buffer size. This feature is used by the Standard Input/Output Library, a package used by most user programs. This feature is also used by certain system utilities such as archivers and loaders that do their own input and output management and need the highest possible file system bandwidth.

The amount of wasted space in the 4096/1024 byte new file system organization is empirically observed to be about the same as in the 1024 byte old file system organization. A file system with 4096 byte blocks and 512 byte fragments has about the same amount of wasted space as

---

<sup>9</sup> A program may be overwriting data in the middle of an existing file in which case space would already have been allocated.

the 512 byte block UNIX file system. The new file system uses less space than the 512 byte or 1024 byte file systems for indexing information for large files and the same amount of space for small files. These savings are offset by the need to use more space for keeping track of available free blocks. The net result is about the same disk utilization when a new file system's fragment size equals an old file system's block size.

In order for the layout policies to be effective, a file system cannot be kept completely full. For each file system there is a parameter, termed the free space reserve, that gives the minimum acceptable percentage of file system blocks that should be free. If the number of free blocks drops below this level only the system administrator can continue to allocate blocks. The value of this parameter may be changed at any time, even when the file system is mounted and active. The transfer rates that appear in section 4 were measured on file systems kept less than 90% full (a reserve of 10%). If the number of free blocks falls to zero, the file system throughput tends to be cut in half, because of the inability of the file system to localize blocks in a file. If a file system's performance degrades because of overfilling, it may be restored by removing files until the amount of free space once again reaches the minimum acceptable level. Access rates for files created during periods of little free space may be restored by moving their data once enough space is available. The free space reserve must be added to the percentage of waste when comparing the organizations given in Table 1. Thus, the percentage of waste in an old 1024 byte UNIX file system is roughly comparable to a new 4096/512 byte file system with the free space reserve set at 5%. (Compare 11.8% wasted with the old file system to 6.9% waste + 5% reserved space in the new file system.)

### File System Parameterization

Except for the initial creation of the free list, the old file system ignores the parameters of the underlying hardware. It has no information about either the physical characteristics of the mass storage device, or the hardware that interacts with it. A goal of the new file system is to parameterize the processor capabilities and mass storage characteristics so that blocks can be allocated in an optimum configuration-dependent way. Parameters used include the speed of the processor, the hardware support for mass storage transfers, and the characteristics of the mass storage devices. Disk technology is constantly improving and a given installation can have several different disk technologies running on a single processor. Each file system is parameterized so that it can be adapted to the characteristics of the disk on which it is placed.

For mass storage devices such as disks, the new file system tries to allocate new blocks on the same cylinder as the previous block in the same file. Optimally, these new blocks will also be rotationally well positioned. The distance between "rotationally optimal" blocks varies greatly; it can be a consecutive block or a rotationally delayed block depending on system characteristics. On a processor with an input/output channel that does not require any processor intervention between mass storage transfer requests, two consecutive disk blocks can often be accessed without suffering lost time because of an intervening disk revolution. For processors without input/output channels, the main processor must field an interrupt and prepare for a new disk transfer. The expected time to service this interrupt and schedule a new disk transfer depends on the speed of the main processor.

The physical characteristics of each disk include the number of blocks per track and the rate at which the disk spins. The allocation routines use this information to calculate the number of milliseconds required to skip over a block. The characteristics of the processor include the expected time to service an interrupt and schedule a new disk transfer. Given a block allocated to a file, the allocation routines calculate the number of blocks to skip over so that the next block in the file will come into position under the disk head in the expected amount of time that it takes to start a new disk transfer operation. For programs that sequentially access large

## UNIX Fast File System

amounts of data, this strategy minimizes the amount of time spent waiting for the disk to position itself.

To ease the calculation of finding rotationally optimal blocks, the cylinder group summary information includes a count of the available blocks in a cylinder group at different rotational positions. Eight rotational positions are distinguished, so the resolution of the summary information is 2 milliseconds for a typical 3600 revolution per minute drive. The super-block contains a vector of lists called *rotational layout tables*. The vector is indexed by rotational position. Each component of the vector lists the index into the block map for every data block contained in its rotational position. When looking for an allocatable block, the system first looks through the summary counts for a rotational position with a non-zero block count. It then uses the index of the rotational position to find the appropriate list to use to index through only the relevant parts of the block map to find a free block.

The parameter that defines the minimum number of milliseconds between the completion of a data transfer and the initiation of another data transfer on the same cylinder can be changed at any time, even when the file system is mounted and active. If a file system is parameterized to lay out blocks with a rotational separation of 2 milliseconds, and the disk pack is then moved to a system that has a processor requiring 4 milliseconds to schedule a disk operation, the throughput will drop precipitously because of lost disk revolutions on nearly every block. If the eventual target machine is known, the file system can be parameterized for it even though it is initially created on a different processor. Even if the move is not known in advance, the rotational layout delay can be reconfigured after the disk is moved so that all further allocation is done based on the characteristics of the new host.

### Layout Policies

The file system layout policies are divided into two distinct parts. At the top level are global policies that use file system wide summary information to make decisions regarding the placement of new inodes and data blocks. These routines are responsible for deciding the placement of new directories and files. They also calculate rotationally optimal block layouts, and decide when to force a long seek to a new cylinder group because there are insufficient blocks left in the current cylinder group to do reasonable layouts. Below the global policy routines are the local allocation routines that use a locally optimal scheme to lay out data blocks.

Two methods for improving file system performance are to increase the locality of reference to minimize seek latency as described by [Trivedi80], and to improve the layout of data to make larger transfers possible as described by [Nevalainen77]. The global layout policies try to improve performance by clustering related information. They cannot attempt to localize all data references, but must also try to spread unrelated data among different cylinder groups. If too much localization is attempted, the local cylinder group may run out of space forcing the data to be scattered to non-local cylinder groups. Taken to an extreme, total localization can result in a single huge cluster of data resembling the old file system. The global policies try to balance the two conflicting goals of localizing data that is concurrently accessed while spreading out unrelated data.

One allocatable resource is inodes. Inodes are used to describe both files and directories. Inodes of files in the same directory are frequently accessed together. For example, the "list directory" command often accesses the inode for each file in a directory. The layout policy tries to place all the inodes of files in a directory in the same cylinder group. To ensure that files are distributed throughout the disk, a different policy is used for directory allocation. A new directory is placed in a cylinder group that has a greater than average number of free inodes, and the smallest number of directories already in it. The intent of this policy is to allow

the inode clustering policy to succeed most of the time. The allocation of inodes within a cylinder group is done using a next free strategy. Although this allocates the inodes randomly within a cylinder group, all the inodes for a particular cylinder group can be read with 8 to 16 disk transfers. (At most 16 disk transfers are required because a cylinder group may have no more than 2048 inodes.) This puts a small and constant upper bound on the number of disk transfers required to access the inodes for all the files in a directory. In contrast, the old file system typically requires one disk transfer to fetch the inode for each file in a directory.

The other major resource is data blocks. Since data blocks for a file are typically accessed together, the policy routines try to place all data blocks for a file in the same cylinder group, preferably at rotationally optimal positions in the same cylinder. The problem with allocating all the data blocks in the same cylinder group is that large files will quickly use up available space in the cylinder group, forcing a spill over to other areas. Further, using all the space in a cylinder group causes future allocations for any file in the cylinder group to also spill to other areas. Ideally none of the cylinder groups should ever become completely full. The heuristic solution chosen is to redirect block allocation to a different cylinder group when a file exceeds 48 kilobytes, and at every megabyte thereafter.<sup>10</sup> The newly chosen cylinder group is selected from those cylinder groups that have a greater than average number of free blocks left. Although big files tend to be spread out over the disk, a megabyte of data is typically accessible before a long seek must be performed, and the cost of one long seek per megabyte is small.

The global policy routines call local allocation routines with requests for specific blocks. The local allocation routines will always allocate the requested block if it is free, otherwise it allocates a free block of the requested size that is rotationally closest to the requested block. If the global layout policies had complete information, they could always request unused blocks and the allocation routines would be reduced to simple bookkeeping. However, maintaining complete information is costly; thus the implementation of the global layout policy uses heuristics that employ only partial information.

If a requested block is not available, the local allocator uses a four level allocation strategy:

- 1) Use the next available block rotationally closest to the requested block on the same cylinder. It is assumed here that head switching time is zero. On disk controllers where this is not the case, it may be possible to incorporate the time required to switch between disk platters when constructing the rotational layout tables. This, however, has not yet been tried.
- 2) If there are no blocks available on the same cylinder, use a block within the same cylinder group.
- 3) If that cylinder group is entirely full, quadratically hash the cylinder group number to choose another cylinder group to look for a free block.
- 4) Finally if the hash fails, apply an exhaustive search to all cylinder groups.

Quadratic hash is used because of its speed in finding unused slots in nearly full hash tables [Knuth75]. File systems that are parameterized to maintain at least 10% free space rarely use

---

<sup>10</sup> The first spill over point at 48 kilobytes is the point at which a file on a 4096 byte block file system first requires a single indirect block. This appears to be a natural first point at which to redirect block allocation. The other spillover points are chosen with the intent of forcing block allocation to be redirected when a file has used about 25% of the data blocks in a cylinder group. In observing the new file system in day to day use, the heuristics appear to work well in minimizing the number of completely filled cylinder groups.

## UNIX Fast File System

this strategy. File systems that are run without maintaining any free space typically have so few free blocks that almost any allocation is random; the most important characteristic of the strategy used under such conditions is that the strategy be fast.

### PERFORMANCE

Ultimately, the proof of the effectiveness of the algorithms described in the previous section is the long term performance of the new file system.

Our empirical studies have shown that the inode layout policy has been effective. When running the "list directory" command on a large directory that itself contains many directories (to force the system to access inodes in multiple cylinder groups), the number of disk accesses for inodes is cut by a factor of two. The improvements are even more dramatic for large directories containing only files, disk accesses for inodes being cut by a factor of eight. This is most encouraging for programs such as spooling daemons that access many small files, since these programs tend to flood the disk request queue on the old file system.

Table 2 summarizes the measured throughput of the new file system. Several comments need to be made about the conditions under which these tests were run. The test programs measure the rate at which user programs can transfer data to or from a file without performing any processing on it. These programs must read and write enough data to insure that buffering in the operating system does not affect the results. They are also run at least three times in succession; the first to get the system into a known state and the second two to insure that the experiment has stabilized and is repeatable. The tests used and their results are discussed in detail in [Kridle83].<sup>11</sup> The systems were running multi-user but were otherwise quiescent. There was no contention for either the CPU or the disk arm. The only difference between the UNIBUS and MASSBUS tests was the controller. All tests used an AMPEX Capricorn 330 megabyte Winchester disk. As Table 2 shows, all file system test runs were on a VAX 11/750. All file systems had been in production use for at least a month before being measured. The same number of system calls were performed in all tests; the basic system call overhead was a negligible portion of the total running time of the tests.

---

<sup>11</sup> A UNIX command that is similar to the reading test that we used is "cp file /dev/null", where "file" is eight megabytes long.

Type of File System	Processor and Bus Measured	Speed	Read Bandwidth	% CPU
old 1024	750/UNIBUS	29 Kbytes/sec	29/983 3%	11%
new 4096/1024	750/UNIBUS	221 Kbytes/sec	221/983 22%	43%
new 8192/1024	750/UNIBUS	233 Kbytes/sec	233/983 24%	29%
new 4096/1024	750/MASSBUS	466 Kbytes/sec	466/983 47%	73%
new 8192/1024	750/MASSBUS	466 Kbytes/sec	466/983 47%	54%

Table 2a – Reading rates of the old and new UNIX file systems.

Type of File System	Processor and Bus Measured	Speed	Read Bandwidth	% CPU
old 1024	750/UNIBUS	48 Kbytes/sec	48/983 5%	29%
new 4096/1024	750/UNIBUS	142 Kbytes/sec	142/983 14%	43%
new 8192/1024	750/UNIBUS	215 Kbytes/sec	215/983 22%	46%
new 4096/1024	750/MASSBUS	323 Kbytes/sec	323/983 33%	94%
new 8192/1024	750/MASSBUS	466 Kbytes/sec	466/983 47%	95%

Table 2b – Writing rates of the old and new UNIX file systems.

Unlike the old file system, the transfer rates for the new file system do not appear to change over time. The throughput rate is tied much more strongly to the amount of free space that is maintained. The measurements in Table 2 were based on a file system with a 10% free space reserve. Synthetic work loads suggest that throughput deteriorates to about half the rates given in Table 2 when the file systems are full.

The percentage of bandwidth given in Table 2 is a measure of the effective utilization of the disk by the file system. An upper bound on the transfer rate from the disk is calculated by multiplying the number of bytes on a track by the number of revolutions of the disk per second. The bandwidth is calculated by comparing the data rates the file system is able to achieve as a percentage of this rate. Using this metric, the old file system is only able to use about 3–5% of the disk bandwidth, while the new file system uses up to 47% of the bandwidth.

Both reads and writes are faster in the new system than in the old system. The biggest factor in this speedup is because of the larger block size used by the new file system. The overhead of allocating blocks in the new system is greater than the overhead of allocating blocks in the old system, however fewer blocks need to be allocated in the new system because they are bigger. The net effect is that the cost per byte allocated is about the same for both systems.

In the new file system, the reading rate is always at least as fast as the writing rate. This is to be expected since the kernel must do more work when allocating blocks than when simply reading them. Note that the write rates are about the same as the read rates in the 8192 byte block file system; the write rates are slower than the read rates in the 4096 byte block file system. The slower write rates occur because the kernel has to do twice as many disk allocations per second, making the processor unable to keep up with the disk transfer rate.

## UNIX Fast File System

In contrast the old file system is about 50% faster at writing files than reading them. This is because the write system call is asynchronous and the kernel can generate disk transfer requests much faster than they can be serviced, hence disk transfers queue up in the disk buffer cache. Because the disk buffer cache is sorted by minimum seek distance, the average seek between the scheduled disk writes is much less than it would be if the data blocks were written out in the random disk order in which they are generated. However when the file is read, the read system call is processed synchronously so the disk blocks must be retrieved from the disk in the non-optimal seek order in which they are requested. This forces the disk scheduler to do long seeks resulting in a lower throughput rate.

In the new system the blocks of a file are more optimally ordered on the disk. Even though reads are still synchronous, the requests are presented to the disk in a much better order. Even though the writes are still asynchronous, they are already presented to the disk in minimum seek order so there is no gain to be had by reordering them. Hence the disk seek latencies that limited the old file system have little effect in the new file system. The cost of allocation is the factor in the new system that causes writes to be slower than reads.

The performance of the new file system is currently limited by memory to memory copy operations required to move data from disk buffers in the system's address space to data buffers in the user's address space. These copy operations account for about 40% of the time spent performing an input/output operation. If the buffers in both address spaces were properly aligned, this transfer could be performed without copying by using the VAX virtual memory management hardware. This would be especially desirable when transferring large amounts of data. We did not implement this because it would change the user interface to the file system in two major ways: user programs would be required to allocate buffers on page boundaries, and data would disappear from buffers after being written.

Greater disk throughput could be achieved by rewriting the disk drivers to chain together kernel buffers. This would allow contiguous disk blocks to be read in a single disk transaction. Many disks used with UNIX systems contain either 32 or 48 512 byte sectors per track. Each track holds exactly two or three 8192 byte file system blocks, or four or six 4096 byte file system blocks. The inability to use contiguous disk blocks effectively limits the performance on these disks to less than 50% of the available bandwidth. If the next block for a file cannot be laid out contiguously, then the minimum spacing to the next allocatable block on any platter is between a sixth and a half a revolution. The implication of this is that the best possible layout without contiguous blocks uses only half of the bandwidth of any given track. If each track contains an odd number of sectors, then it is possible to resolve the rotational delay to any number of sectors by finding a block that begins at the desired rotational position on another track. The reason that block chaining has not been implemented is because it would require rewriting all the disk drivers in the system, and the current throughput rates are already limited by the speed of the available processors.

Currently only one block is allocated to a file at a time. A technique used by the DEMOS file system when it finds that a file is growing rapidly, is to preallocate several blocks at once, releasing them when the file is closed if they remain unused. By batching up allocations, the system can reduce the overhead of allocating at each write, and it can cut down on the number of disk writes needed to keep the block pointers on the disk synchronized with the block allocation [Powell79]. This technique was not included because block allocation currently accounts for less than 10% of the time spent in a write system call and, once again, the current throughput rates are already limited by the speed of the available processors.

## FILE SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL ENHANCEMENTS

The performance **enhancements** to the UNIX file system did not require any changes to the semantics or data structures visible to application programs. However, several changes had been generally **desired for some time** but had not been introduced because they would require users to dump and restore all their file systems. Since the new file system already required all existing file systems to be dumped and restored, these functional enhancements were introduced at this time.

### Long File Names

File names can now be of nearly arbitrary length. Only programs that read directories are affected by this **change**. To **promote portability to UNIX systems** that are not running the new file system, a set of directory access routines have been introduced to provide a consistent interface to directories on both old and new systems.

Directories are allocated in 512 byte units called chunks. This size is chosen so that each allocation can be transferred to disk in a single operation. Chunks are broken up into variable length records termed **directory entries**. A **directory entry** contains the information necessary to map the name of a file to its associated **inode**. No **directory entry** is allowed to span multiple chunks. The first three fields of a **directory entry** are fixed length and contain: an **inode number**, the size of the entry, and the length of the file name contained in the entry. The remainder of an entry is variable length and contains a null terminated file name, padded to a 4 byte boundary. The maximum length of a file name in a directory is currently 255 characters.

Available space in a directory is recorded by having one or more entries accumulate the free space in their entry size fields. This results in **directory entries** that are larger than required to hold the entry name plus fixed length fields. Space allocated to a directory should always be completely accounted for by totaling up the sizes of its entries. When an entry is deleted from a directory, its space is returned to a previous entry in the same directory chunk by increasing the size of the previous entry by the size of the deleted entry. If the first entry of a directory chunk is free, then the entry's **inode number** is set to zero to indicate that it is unallocated.

### File Locking

The old file system had **no provision** for locking files. Processes that needed to synchronize the updates of a file had to use a separate "lock" file. A process would try to create a "lock" file. If the creation succeeded, then the process could proceed with its update; if the creation failed, then the process would wait and try again. This mechanism had three drawbacks. Processes consumed CPU time by looping over attempts to create locks. Locks left lying around because of system crashes had to be manually removed (normally in a system startup command script). Finally, **processes running as system administrator** are always permitted to create files, so were forced to use a **different mechanism**. While it is possible to get around all these problems, the solutions are not straight forward, so a mechanism for locking files has been added.

The most general **schemes** allow multiple processes to concurrently update a file. Several of these techniques are discussed in [Peterson83]. A simpler technique is to serialize access to a file with locks. To attain reasonable **efficiency**, certain applications require the ability to lock pieces of a file. Locking down to the byte level has been implemented in the Onyx file system by [Bass81]. However, for the standard system applications, a mechanism that locks at the granularity of a file is sufficient.

## UNIX Fast File System

Locking schemes fall into two classes, those using hard locks and those using advisory locks. The primary difference between advisory locks and hard locks is the extent of enforcement. A hard lock is always enforced when a program tries to access a file; an advisory lock is only applied when it is requested by a program. Thus advisory locks are only effective when all programs accessing a file use the locking scheme. With hard locks there must be some override policy implemented in the kernel. With advisory locks the policy is left to the user programs. In the UNIX system, programs with system administrator privilege are allowed to override any protection scheme. Because many of the programs that need to use locks must also run as the system administrator, we chose to implement advisory locks rather than create an additional protection scheme that was inconsistent with the UNIX philosophy or could not be used by system administration programs.

The file locking facilities allow cooperating programs to apply advisory *shared* or *exclusive* locks on files. Only one process may have an exclusive lock on a file while multiple shared locks may be present. Both shared and exclusive locks cannot be present on a file at the same time. If any lock is requested when another process holds an exclusive lock, or an exclusive lock is requested when another process holds any lock, the lock request will block until the lock can be obtained. Because shared and exclusive locks are advisory only, even if a process has obtained a lock on a file, another process may access the file.

Locks are applied or removed only on open files. This means that locks can be manipulated without needing to close and reopen a file. This is useful, for example, when a process wishes to apply a shared lock, read some information and determine whether an update is required, then apply an exclusive lock and update the file.

A request for a lock will cause a process to block if the lock can not be immediately obtained. In certain instances this is unsatisfactory. For example, a process that wants only to check if a lock is present would require a separate mechanism to find out this information. Consequently, a process may specify that its locking request should return with an error if a lock can not be immediately obtained. Being able to conditionally request a lock is useful to "daemon" processes that wish to service a spooling area. If the first instance of the daemon locks the directory where spooling takes place, later daemon processes can easily check to see if an active daemon exists. Since locks exist only while the locking processes exist, lock files can never be left active after the processes exit or if the system crashes.

Almost no deadlock detection is attempted. The only deadlock detection done by the system is that the file to which a lock is applied must not already have a lock of the same type (i.e. the second of two successive calls to apply a lock of the same type will fail).

### Symbolic Links

The traditional UNIX file system allows multiple directory entries in the same file system to reference a single file. Each directory entry "links" a file's name to an inode and its contents. The link concept is fundamental; inodes do not reside in directories, but exist separately and are referenced by links. When all the links to an inode are removed, the inode is deallocated. This style of referencing an inode does not allow references across physical file systems, nor does it support inter-machine linkage. To avoid these limitations *symbolic links* similar to the scheme used by Multics [Feiertag71] have been added.

A symbolic link is implemented as a file that contains a pathname. When the system encounters a symbolic link while interpreting a component of a pathname, the contents of the symbolic link is prepended to the rest of the pathname, and this name is interpreted to yield the resulting pathname. In UNIX, pathnames are specified relative to the root of the file system

hierarchy, or relative to a process's current working directory. Pathnames specified relative to the root are called absolute pathnames. Pathnames specified relative to the current working directory are termed relative pathnames. If a symbolic link contains an absolute pathname, the absolute pathname is used, otherwise the contents of the symbolic link is evaluated relative to the location of the link in the file hierarchy.

Normally programs do not want to be aware that there is a symbolic link in a pathname that they are using. However certain system utilities must be able to detect and manipulate symbolic links. Three new system calls provide the ability to detect, read, and write symbolic links; seven system utilities required changes to use these calls.

In future Berkeley software distributions it may be possible to reference file systems located on remote machines using pathnames. When this occurs, it will be possible to create symbolic links that span machines.

### Rename

Programs that create a new version of an existing file typically create the new version as a temporary file and then rename the temporary file with the name of the target file. In the old UNIX file system renaming required three calls to the system. If a program were interrupted or the system crashed between these calls, the target file could be left with only its temporary name. To eliminate this possibility the rename system call has been added. The rename call does the rename operation in a fashion that guarantees the existence of the target name.

Rename works both on data files and directories. When renaming directories, the system must do special validation checks to insure that the directory tree structure is not corrupted by the creation of loops or inaccessible directories. Such corruption would occur if a parent directory were moved into one of its descendants. The validation check requires tracing the descendants of the target directory to insure that it does not include the directory being moved.

### Quotas

The UNIX system has traditionally attempted to share all available resources to the greatest extent possible. Thus any single user can allocate all the available space in the file system. In certain environments this is unacceptable. Consequently, a quota mechanism has been added for restricting the amount of file system resources that a user can obtain. The quota mechanism sets limits on both the number of inodes and the number of disk blocks that a user may allocate. A separate quota can be set for each user on each file system. Resources are given both a hard and a soft limit. When a program exceeds a soft limit, a warning is printed on the users terminal; the offending program is not terminated unless it exceeds its hard limit. The idea is that users should stay below their soft limit between login sessions, but they may use more resources while they are actively working. To encourage this behavior, users are warned when logging in if they are over any of their soft limits. If users fails to correct the problem for too many login sessions, they are eventually reprimanded by having their soft limit enforced as their hard limit.

**ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

We thank Robert Elz for his ongoing interest in the new file system, and for adding disk quotas in a rational and efficient manner. We also acknowledge Dennis Ritchie for his suggestions on the appropriate modifications to the user interface. We appreciate Michael Powell's explanations on how the DEMOS file system worked; many of his ideas were used in this implementation. Special commendation goes to Peter Kessler and Robert Henry for acting like real users during the early debugging stage when file systems were less stable than they should have been. The criticisms and suggestions by the reviews contributed significantly to the coherence of the paper. Finally we thank our sponsors, the National Science Foundation under grant MCS80-05144, and the Defense Advance Research Projects Agency (DoD) under ARPA Order No. 4031 monitored by Naval Electronic System Command under Contract No. N00039-82-C-0235.

## REFERENCES

[Almes78] 20 Almes, G., and Robertson, G. "An Extensible File System for Hydra" Proceedings of the Third International Conference on Software Engineering, IEEE, May 1978.

[Bass81] 20 Bass, J. "Implementation Description for File Locking", Onyx Systems Inc, 73 E. Trimble Rd, San Jose, CA 95131 Jan 1981.

[Feiertag71] 20 Feiertag, R. J. and Organick, E. I., "The Multics Input-Output System", Proceedings of the Third Symposium on Operating Systems Principles, ACM, Oct 1971. pp 35-41

[Ferrin82a] 20 Ferrin, T.E., "Performance and Robustness Improvements in Version 7 UNIX", Computer Graphics Laboratory Technical Report 2, School of Pharmacy, University of California, San Francisco, January 1982. Presented at the 1982 Winter Usenix Conference, Santa Monica, California.

[Ferrin82b] 20 Ferrin, T.E., "Performance Issues of VMUNIX Revisited", ;login: (The Usenix Association Newsletter), Vol 7, #5, November 1982. pp 3-6

[Kridle83] 20 Kridle, R., and McKusick, M., "Performance Effects of Disk Subsystem Choices for VAX Systems Running 4.2BSD UNIX", Computer Systems Research Group, Dept of EECS, Berkeley, CA 94720, Technical Report #8.

[Kowalski78] 20 Kowalski, T. "FSCK - The UNIX System Check Program", Bell Laboratory, Murray Hill, NJ 07974. March 1978

[Knuth75] 20 Kunth, D. "The Art of Computer Programming", Volume 3 - Sorting and Searching, Addison-Wesley Publishing Company Inc, Reading, Mass, 1975. pp 506-549

[Maruyama76] Maruyama, K., and Smith, S. "Optimal reorganization of Distributed Space Disk Files", CACM, 19, 11. Nov 1976. pp 634-642

[Nevalainen77] 20 Nevalainen, O., Vesterinen, M. "Determining Blocking Factors for Sequential Files by Heuristic Methods", The Computer Journal, 20, 3. Aug 1977. pp 245-247

[Pechura83] 20 Pechura, M., and Schoeffler, J. "Estimating File Access Time of Floppy Disks", CACM, 26, 10. Oct 1983. pp 754-763

[Peterson83] 20 Peterson, G. "Concurrent Reading While Writing", ACM Transactions on Programming Languages and Systems, ACM, 5, 1. Jan 1983. pp 46-55

[Powell79] 20 Powell, M. "The DEMOS File System", Proceedings of the Sixth Symposium on Operating Systems Principles, ACM, Nov 1977. pp 33-42

[Ritchie74] 20 Ritchie, D. M. and Thompson, K., "The UNIX Time-Sharing System", CACM 17, 7. July 1974. pp 365-375

[Smith81a] 20 Smith, A. "Input/Output Optimization and Disk Architectures: A Survey", Performance and Evaluation 1. Jan 1981. pp 104-117

[Smith81b] 20 Smith, A. "Bibliography on File and I/O System Optimization and Related Topics", Operating Systems Review, 15, 4. Oct 1981. pp 39-54

## **UNIX Fast File System**

[Symbolics81] 20 "Symbolics File System", Symbolics Inc, 9600 DeSoto Ave, Chatsworth, CA 91311 Aug 1981.

[Thompson78] 20 Thompson, K. "UNIX Implementation", Bell System Technical Journal, 57, 6, part 2. pp 1931-1946 July-August 1978.

[Thompson80] 20 Thompson, M. "Spice File System", Carnegie-Mellon University, Department of Computer Science, Pittsburg, PA 15213 #CMU-CS-80, Sept 1980.

[Trivedi80] 20 Trivedi, K. "Optimal Selection of CPU Speed, Device Capabilities, and File Assignments", Journal of the ACM, 27, 3. July 1980. pp 457-473

[White80] 20 White, R. M. "Disk Storage Technology", Scientific American, 243(2), August 1980.

© Copyright 1988  
Icon International, Inc.  
All rights reserved worldwide.

Printed in the U.S.A.

171-063-006 A1

